

# PROVINCIAL DEVELOPMENT PLAN

*"OUR PROVINCE, OUR HERITAGE, MAKE IT WORK!  
DIRANG BOKAMOSO"*



# 2030

**NORTH WEST  
PLANNING COMMISSION**

## FOREWORD

The National Development Plan (NDP) provides as a strategic framework for government, a new platform for growth and development. It further highlights the need to reflect critically on our intergovernmental planning system, if we are to achieve integration and cohesion to advance the imperatives of the NDP across spheres.

Crucially, the NDP must inform all strategic planning frameworks across government. This necessitates and calls for the formulation of strategic plans and IDPs that are fully aligned to the national vision 2030 and the National Development Plan (NDP). It is within this context that the North West Planning Commission has formulated a Provincial Development Plan (PDP), and guidelines for local government aligned to the National Development Plan (NDP) and the Provincial Development Plan (PDP). To enhance effectiveness and efficiency, an Implementation Strategy has also been developed.

The Provincial Development Plan (PDP) clearly articulates the challenges we face as a province and how we can overcome such challenges. Based on the key chapters identified from the National Development Plan (NDP) for the North West Province, it is hoped that departments and municipalities, will prepare for the first generation of plans in 2013 - 2019 with greater urgency and commitment. Leadership will also be critical to mobilise society and build a common platform to advance the Provincial Development Plan (PDP) for growth, development and prosperity. While Marikana

has seriously dented the development and growth prospect of the North West Province, it is important to use the Provincial Development Plan to alter the negativity that the Marikana incident has caused. The importance of the Platinum Belt in the provincial economy cannot be overemphasised. This area requires a special coordinated approach, with all spheres of government working together, and the Provincial Development Plan provides the opportunity to do so.

We are certain that with this plan we will craft a better tomorrow for our people and province. In line with our theme **"OUR PROVINCE, OUR HERITAGE, MAKE IT WORK- DIRANG BOKAMOSO"**- lets get down to work" and ensure that the legacy of underdevelopment, poverty and inequality is fully addressed in the North West.

We are greatly indebted to all the participants who helped to shape this plan – We especially want to thank the consultants, Urban-Econ for helping us in this important process. It is not the Planning Commission that will implement this plan but all spheres of government, SOE's and other relevant and key stakeholders, therefore effective governance and leadership will be crucial for the success of this plan.



**DARKEY AFRICA – HEAD NWPC**

**On behalf of the North West Planning Commission**

**11 August 2013**

# Vision Statement

*We, the people of South-Africa, have journeyed far since the long lines of our first democratic election on 27 April 1994, when we elected a government for us all.*

We began to tell a new story then. We have lived and renewed that story along the way.

*Now in 2030 we live in a country which we have remade.*

We have created a home where everybody feels free yet bounded to others; where everyone embraces their full potential. We are proud to be a community that cares.

We have received the mixed legacy of inequalities in opportunity and in where we have lived, but we have agreed to change our narrative of conquest, oppression, resistance and victory.

We felt our way towards a new sense of ourselves:

- Trying, succeeding and making mistakes
- Proclaiming success and closing our minds to failure

- Feeling orientated and disorientated through our own actions
- Affirming some realities and denying others
- Proclaiming openness to the world, yet courting insularity
- Eager to live together, yet finding it difficult to recognise shared burdens
- Learning to recognise and acknowledge shared successes.

Our new story is open ended with temporary destinations, only for new paths to open up once more.

It is a story of unfolding learning.  
Even when we flounder, we remain hopeful.  
In this story, we always arrive and depart.

We have come some way.

We know:

What we do, and how we do it, is as important as what we want to achieve.

What we are, is because of who we have been and what we want to become.

We will continue to make it to make us, because we are happy with being who we are.

Who are we?

We are Africans.

We are an African country.

We are part of our multi-national region.

We are an essential part of our continent.

Being Africans, we are acutely aware of the wider world, deeply implicated in our past and present.

That wider world carries some of our inheritance.



We have learned a great deal from our complex past; adding continuously to our experience of being African.

*Therefore, in 2030, we experience daily how:*

*We participate fully in efforts to liberate ourselves from conditions that hinder the flowering of our talents.*

We feel loved, respected and cared for at home, in the community and the public institutions we have created.

We feel understood.

We feel needed.

We feel trustful.

We feel trusted.

We feel accommodative.

We feel accommodated.

We feel informed.

We feel healthy.

We feel safe.

We feel resourceful and inventive.

We learn together.

We talk to each other.

We share our work.

We play.

We worship.

We ponder and laugh.

We are energised by sharing our resourcefulness.

We are resilient,

We love reading.

All our citizens read, write, converse, and value ideas and thoughts.

We are fascinated by scientific invention and its use in the enhancement of our lives.

We live the joy of speaking many of our languages.

We know our history and that of other people.

We have clear values.

We create rather than eliminate; value arises from improving through creativity that which we inherited.

I have a space that I can call my own.

This space I share.

This space I cherish with others.

I maintain it with others.

I am not self-sufficient alone.

We are self-sufficient in community.

*We all see to it and assist so that all life's enablers are available in a humane way.*

Through our service we show our solidarity.

We enjoy the same quality of service.

We are connected through our caring.

The beating heart of our country is a community that has all the enablers of modern life:

- We have water
- We use a toilet
- We have food on the table
- We fall asleep without fear

- We listen to the rain on the roof
- We gather together in front of heat

What we contribute in our taxes, we get back through the high quality of our public services.

That is why we have:

- Good clinics and hospitals with well trained, caring doctors, administrators, nurses who rush to our aid with empathy and expertise
- Affordable and effective medicines, because they were made for all of us
- Good schools with well educated, trained and caring teachers

Each community has:

- A school
- Teachers who love teaching and learning
- A local library filled with a wealth of knowledge
- A librarian
- A police station with respected and upright police members
- A clinic with nurses who love caring for people

In our well-designed community surroundings we feel safe everywhere.

There, we enjoy meeting one another.

We find so much pleasure in one another's company.

Everywhere we go in our country, we hear the laughter of our children.

*We all have actively set out to change our  
lives in ways which also benefit the  
broader community.*

We are a people at work.

We work to create plenty.

Our work brings us ever closer to our dreams.

Work grounds our dreams even the more fantastic  
they are.

The reality of work connects us to our dreams.

We work towards goals with patience invested in  
actual effort.

We invest in our efforts and are not waiting in  
disengaged expectation.

Because we are impatient to succeed, we work  
with painstaking rigour.

Our efforts, not so much those of others, make us  
stronger.

Then we are patient for the results of our efforts.

This kind of patience gives birth to our new work  
ethic.

In this work ethic we ground our dreams.

We have built our own houses.

We are confident and self-sufficient.

We are traders.

We are inventors.

We are workers.

We create companies.

We set up stalls.



We are studious.

We are gardeners.

We feel a call to serve.

We make things.

Out of our homes we create objects of value.

We invest and reap good returns for our efforts.

We travel to trade beyond our borders, carrying  
our values with us.

As artists we express and celebrate, we expose  
and nurture, we explore, shift and change  
frontiers.

Through sports of all kinds, we push the limits of  
our possibilities.

Our philosophies and stories have enriched the  
world.

We respect ability, competence and talent.

Now our economy is growing.

Our prosperity is increasing.

We are energised by our resourcefulness.

We are connected by the sounds we hear, the  
sights we see, the scents we smell, the objects we  
touch, the food we eat, the liquids we drink, the  
thoughts we think, the emotions we feel, the  
dreams we imagine. We are a web of  
relationships, fashioned in a web of histories, the  
stories of our lives inescapably shaped by stories  
of others.

We love sharing our stories in our schools, places  
of worship, libraries, in the variety of media  
whatever they may be.

We are inevitably and intimately implicated in one  
another.

*We all assist the institutions we have creatively redesigned to meet our varied needs; we reach out across communities to strengthen our resolve to live with honesty, to be set against corruption and dehumanising actions.*

We have made the rules by which we want ourselves to live:

- We hold the Constitution of our country as the covenant guide to a fair society
- Since 1994 we've changed our laws to obey our Constitution
- Now we live it: justice rules us, because just laws make community possible
- The law enables us to live together fulfilling our mutual obligations and responsibilities in the shared public spaces of our mutual affiliation.

*We know that those, to whom we have given the privilege to govern our land, do so*

# *on our behalf and for the benefit of all the people.*

Government begins in the home, grows into the community, expands towards the city, flares toward the province, and engulfs the entire land.

We know our leaders as we have elected them and pledged them into office:

- They are wise in the use of our wealth
- Wise in knowing and understanding our wishes and needs
- Wise in expecting us to express ourselves to them in any appropriate manner we have agreed to be allowable
- Wise in not silencing those who criticise, but enable them, through our rules of engagement, to be even more rigorous in supporting a just society.

Our leaders' wisdom is ours, because we sense our wisdom in theirs.

- They do more than respond to us
- They bring new thoughts and ideas
- They share with us what they think
- They inspire us, because we then seek to aspire with them
- With them we renew our world continuously.

But our gift of leaders extends far beyond politics.

We have them in abundance in every avenue of life.

We have come far with our cultural, religious, and ancestral traditions.

Contemporary citizens that we are, we are conscious of the intimate relationships between tradition and change.

*We say to one another: I cannot be without you, without you this South-African community is an incomplete community, without one single person, without one single group, without the region or the continent, we are not the best that we can be.*

We love the land.  
We greet one another again.  
We enjoy being visited.  
We are courteous and curious.

We love arguing, we debate fiercely, and we contest ceaselessly.  
We solve our differences through discussion.  
We refrain from being cruel, demeaning or hurtful in disagreement.

We feel we belong.  
We celebrate all the differences among us.  
We are not imprisoned by the roles ascribed to us.



Our family life strengthens the women, men and children who live in it.

The older share their wisdom with the young.

The young invigorate us with their energy, openness, optimism, and questioning minds.

The welfare of each of us is the welfare of all.

Everybody lives longer.

We experience fulfilment in life, living it in the successful society we are creating.

We feel prosperous.

Our connectedness across time and distance is the central principle of our nationhood.

We are a nation , who have come together and shared extraordinarily to remake our society.

We ply between our cities and our ancestral origins.

Others' ancestral origins are beyond our country.

Where they go, from time to time, is a piece of our home too.

We discover the country and the world.

We live peacefully with neighbours.

We have good friends in other societies.

We have welcomed people from distant lands, who have chosen to live among us.

We value interdependence and reciprocity.

We feel hospitable.

We are a community of multiple, overlapping identities, cosmopolitan in our nationhood.

Our multiculturalism is a defining element of our indigeneity.

We are, because we are so many.

Our manyness is our strength – we carry it in us throughout our lives.

We are safe, not so much because we are guarded, but because of the strength of our belonging.

*We acknowledge that each and every one of us is intimately and inextricably of this earth with its beauty and life-giving sources; that our lives on earth are both enriched and complicated by what we have contributed to its condition.*

South-Africa, our country, is our land. Our land is our home.

We sweep and keep clean our yard.

We travel through it. We enjoy its varied climate, landscape, and vegetation.

It is as diverse as we are.

We live and work in it, on it with care, preserving it for future generations. We discover it all the time.

As it gives life to us, we honour the life in it.

From time-to-time it reminds us of its enormous,  
infinite power.

When rain and floods overwhelm, winds buffet,  
seas rage, and the sun beats unrelentingly in  
drought.

In humility, we learn of our limitations.

To create living spaces within this beautiful land is  
to commensurate with our desired values.

*South-Africa belongs to all its peoples.*

*Now, in 2030, our story keeps growing as  
if spring is always with us.*

*Once, we uttered the dream of a rainbow.*

*Now we see it, living it. It does not curve  
over the sky.*

*It is refracted in each one of us at home, in  
the community, in the city, and across the  
land, in an abundance of colour.*

*When we see it in the faces of our children,  
we know: there will always be, for us, a  
worthy future.*

|



## EXECUTIVE SUMMARY

The National Development Plan (NDP) provides a vision for South-Africa toward 2030 and outlines a scenario of a better future that continues to build on the successes already achieved since 1994. The plan is built on the notion that South-Africa belongs to all its people and that the future is therefore collective. Making it work is everyone's shared responsibility.

As such, the **North West Provincial Development Plan (PDP)** is predominantly based on the National Development Plan (NDP) in an attempt to align with the objectives and priorities it identifies as well as with the vision for 2030 of a united South-Africa.

Additional influences that shaped the North West Provincial Development Plan (PDP) in order to apply the objectives of the National Development Plan (NDP) on a provincial level are as follows:

- **The North West provincial development perspective** - the trends, needs and challenges in terms of the current spatial, demographic and economic situation.
- **The institutional/policy environment** - national and provincial policies, strategies, plans and frameworks as well as the municipal development priorities as captured in Integrated Development Plans (IDP's), Local Economic Development Strategies (LED's) and Spatial Development Frameworks (SDF's) of each demarcation.
- **The strategic development approach and principles for development strategies** - Case studies and best practise examples (predominantly the United Nations, World Bank and the Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development).

## KEY PROVINCIAL PRIORITIES

In the North West province eight of the priorities identified in the National Development Plan (NDP) were identified as key focus areas for the North West Provincial Development Plan (PDP). The selected focus areas represent the main challenge areas hampering growth in the province. Particular focus will be placed on both the rural economy (due to the predominant rural character of the province) as well as on the upgrading, the provisioning and the maintenance of economic infrastructure as the precondition of overall economic growth and development and for its significant potential to sustain employment. The province will also prioritise the transformation of human settlements (mainly due to the challenges presented with housing and living conditions in mining communities) and the eradication of corruption. All of the above will be done while building and establishing a capable and developmental state.

The chosen development priorities with which the North West intends to align to the National Development Plan (NDP) are the following:

1. *Economy and employment*
2. *Economic infrastructure*
3. *An integrated and inclusive rural economy*
4. *Human settlement and spatial transformation*
5. *Improving education, training and innovation*
6. *Building a capable and developmental state*
7. *Fighting corruption*
8. *Transforming society and uniting the province*

The development priorities constitute the first five-year inaugural plan of economic transformation in the North West province. The 2014-2019 planning cycle will be the first in a series of five-year planning cycles that will advance the goals of the Provincial Development Plan (PDP).

## FINDINGS AND STRUCTURE

The Provincial Development Plan (PDP) is provided according to the following structure:

**Section 2** - Demographic perspective and trends

*Section 3 - Economy and employment*

*Section 4 - Economic infrastructure*

*Section 5 - An integrated and inclusive rural economy*

*Section 6 - Human settlement and spatial transformation*

*Section 7 - Improving education, training and innovation*

**Section 8** - Environmental sustainability

**Section 9** - Social protection

*Section 10 - Improving health*

**Section 11** - Building safer communities

*Section 12 - Building a capable and developmental state*

*Section 13 - Eradicating corruption*

**Section 14** - Transforming society and uniting the province

### SECTION 2 - DEMOGRAPHIC PERSPECTIVE AND TRENDS

- The provincial population comprises of 3.5 million people and should increase to 3.9 or 4 million by 2030. This population consist of 1.06 million households, which on average, consist of 3.3 people.
- The population is dominated by the youth with more than 60 per cent of the population under the age of 34.
- Setswana is the predominant language spoken in the province, followed by Afrikaans and Sesotho.
- The North West province as a whole has had a positive net migration in recent years. More people are migrating to the province than from the province. Urbanisation toward the larger towns and cities is also very common



and municipalities need to improve planning in this regard.

- Human development in the province (0.57) measured according to the human development index was found to be lower than the national index (0.58) while the provincial GINI-coefficient<sup>1</sup> (0.61) remains lower than national levels (0.63). The percentage of the provincial population (46%) living in poverty conditions was higher than the national average (39.9%). Based on these development indicators poverty and inequality were concluded to be a reality in the province.

### SECTION 3 - ECONOMY AND EMPLOYMENT

#### PROVINCIAL PRIORITY AREA 1

- The provincial economy needs to become more productive, more competitive and more diversified.
- Skills development and training in practices in high demand from industry are an important element of allowing employment oriented economic growth. Continued learning, research and development and technological innovation, to increase levels of production and competitiveness will be equally important.
- Creating an enabling environment in terms of physical and institutional factors is critical to attract and retain investment in the province and to allow for efficiency in the economy.
- In order to achieve employment and economic growth it will be necessary to



<sup>1</sup> The GINI coefficient measures the extent to which the distribution of income or consumption expenditure among individuals or households within an economy deviates from a perfectly equal distribution. The coefficient varies between 0, which reflects complete equality and one, which indicates complete inequality (one person has all the income or consumption, all others have none).

prioritise certain economic sectors that will lead the overall economy in building on its competitive advantages and diversifying its structure.

## OBJECTIVES

- Eliminate income poverty: reduce the percentage of the population living in poverty from 46 per cent to 0 per cent in 2030.
- Reduce inequality: the Gini coefficient should fall from 0.61 to 0.53.
- The unemployment rate should fall from 24 per cent in 2010 to 14 per cent by 2020 and to 6 per cent by 2030. This requires an additional 770 500 jobs. Total employment should rise from 748 000 to 1 563 000.
- The labour force participation rate should increase from 52 per cent to 58 per cent in 2020 and 64 per cent in 2030.
- The provincial Gross Value Added (GVA) should increase by 2.9 times in real terms. Such growth will require an average annual Gross Value Added (GVA) growth of 5.4 per cent.
- Raise per capita income from R 67 700 in 2011 to R 120 000 by 2030.
- On average, the dependency ratio (the number of people depending on one wage earner) will decrease from 3.4 in 2010 to 1.5 in 2030. A falling dependency ratio will be a central contributor to reducing poverty.

### Economic sector priorities:

In order to achieve employment and economic growth it will be necessary to prioritise certain economic sectors that will lead the overall economy in building on their competitive advantages and diversifying their structure. The two economic sectors in the North West with a comparative advantage (in relation to the rest of South-Africa) include the agriculture and the mining sectors. Prioritising certain sectors does not imply that growth in other sectors are not

equally important, in fact, some sectors are merely not prioritised due to their proven potential for growth and employment creation without institutional support. These industries often include services such as retail, trade, personal services and transport (excluding public transport to some extent).

Prioritised sectors are identified as such for their potential to encourage or drive growth and or for their ability to create employment. The sectors identified include:

#### 1. Agriculture

- 135 734 direct jobs must be created through the agriculture, agro-processing and related sectors by 2030. This will require 71 000 additional jobs to be created.
- Maintain a positive trade balance for primary and processed agricultural products.
- Agriculture must maintain an average growth rate of 8.5 per cent between now and 2030. Against this growth rate, the Gross Value Added (GVA) contribution of the sector will increase from R 3.39 million to R 17.31 million in 2030 (2010 R-values).
- The sectoral Gross Value Added (GVA) contribution of agriculture will expand from 2.3 per cent in 2010 to 4.1 per cent in 2030.

#### 2. Mining

- Mining must create 55 000 additional jobs by 2030 to sustain 218 000 direct jobs which will represent 13.9 per cent of the total provincial employment.
- Mining must maintain an average growth rate of 2.5 per cent between now and 2030. Against this growth rate, the Gross Value Added (GVA) contribution of the sector will increase from R 54.97 million to R 90.08 million in 2030 (2010 R-values).
- The sectoral Gross Value Added (GVA) contribution of mining will be reduced from 37.7 per cent in 2010 to 21.6 per cent in 2030.

### 3. Construction and infrastructure

- 91 000 direct jobs must be created through the construction sector by 2030 of which 57 000 will be new employment opportunities
- The construction sector must sustain an average annual growth rate of 8 per cent between now and 2030. Against this growth rate, the Gross Value Added (GVA) contribution of the sector will increase from R 3.46 million to R 16.12 million in 2030 (2010 R-values).
- The sectoral Gross Value Added (GVA) contribution of the construction sector will increase from 2.4 per cent in 2010 to 3.9 per cent in 2030.

### 4. Specific manufacturing sub-sectors with special reference to renewable energy manufacturing

- The manufacturing sector must create 127 000 new employment opportunities to sustain 178 000 direct jobs by 2030 which will represent 22.7 per cent of the total provincial employment.
- The manufacturing sector must maintain an average growth rate of 8.7 per cent between now and 2030. Against this growth rate, the Gross Value Added (GVA) contribution of the sector will increase from R 7.18 million to R 38.07 million in 2030 (2010 R-values).
- The sectoral Gross Value Added (GVA) contribution of the sector will increase from 19.6 per cent in 2010 to 21.9 per cent in 2030.

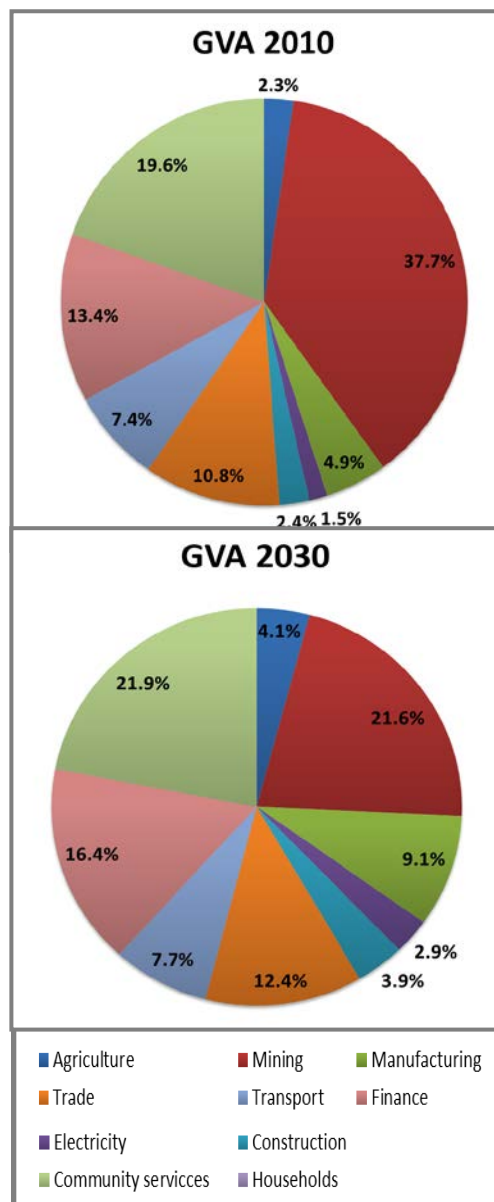
### 5. Tourism (as part of the Trade, Transport and Finance sectors)

### 6. Overarching strategic priorities: Small, Medium and Micro-sized Enterprises (SMME) development and financial sector

inclusion and development (SMMEs are located in all sectors of the economy)

The figure below illustrates the composition of the provincial economy if all the objectives set out for 2030 should be reached.

Figure E.1: sectoral contribution, 2010 and 2030



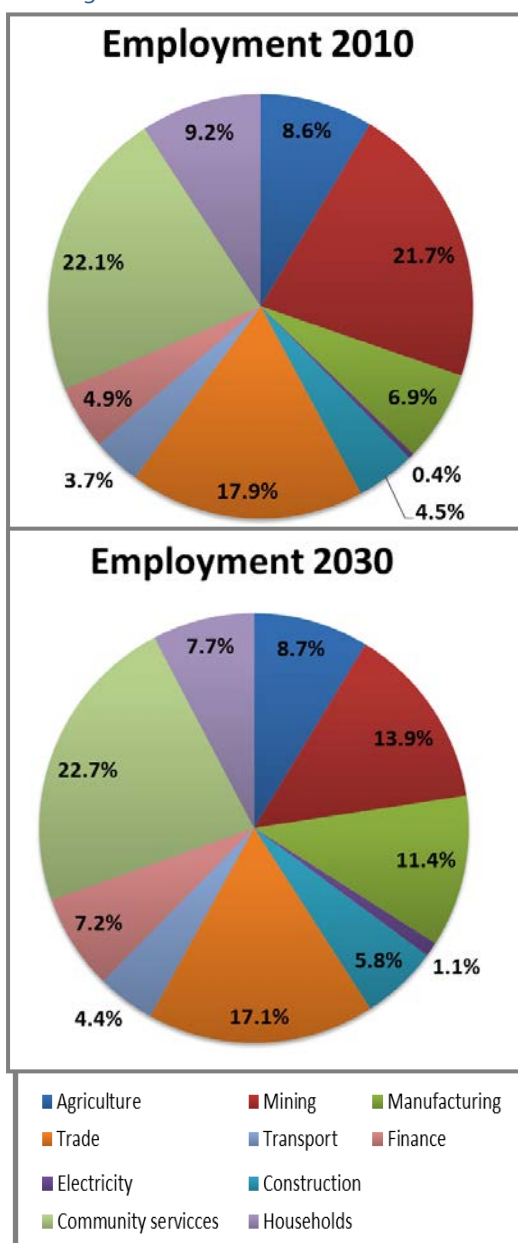
Source: Urban-Econ calculations based on Global Insight Data (2013), Stats SA (2012-2013) and the NDP (2012)

It can be concluded that if the objectives set out for Gross Value Added (GVA) growth in the province should be achieved, the economy thereof will be diversified which in turn will reduce

volatility in the North West province and improve efficiency and performance.

The diversified economic profile of the North West province will also affect the employment profile of the province as indicated in Figure E.2.

Figure E.2: sectoral employment distribution 2010 and 2030



Source: Urban-Econ calculations based on Global Insight Data (2013), Stats SA (2012-2013) and the NDP (2012)

To achieve the economic profile described above a number of key actions will have to be implemented.

## ACTIONS

### Encouraging employment oriented growth

1. Promote labour absorbing industries through Small, Medium and Micro-sized Enterprises (SMME) support, promoting public and private procurement, expanded public works programme, stimulation of rural economies and ensuring adequate contribution of mining companies in local communities and development.
2. Promote competitiveness with amongst others sufficient infrastructure investment and service delivery.

### Development, training and innovation

3. Improving relevant skills and human capital formation.
4. Establish a post-school system that caters for a wide range of industry specific needs.
5. Improve the utilisation of research and innovation. .

### Create an environment for sustainable employment and economic growth

6. Remove the most pressing constraints on growth, investment and job creation, including energy generation and distribution, urban planning approval processes, water supply and wastewater management, logistics, tele-communications, and licensing for water, minerals and environmental permits. Regulatory certainty and institutional reforms will draw competitive outcomes in network industries.
7. Reduce policy uncertainty through more effective dialogue with private sector. Business and labour should adopt a strategic approach to negotiations and building trust between themselves.
8. Lower the cost of living for the poor.

9. Strengthen capacity in the public sector to implement economic policy.

### Agriculture

10. Enable the provision of tenure security to existing and prospective farmers on communal land.
11. Improve market linkages, support (including training, education and extension services) and access to finance for small-scale farmers on communal land and for beneficiaries of land reform.
12. Ensure technology advances by means of expanded agricultural research.
13. Prioritise investment in irrigation infrastructure, including water storage, distribution and reticulation, as well as in water-saving technology.

### Mining and minerals

14. Downstream production (beneficiation) can raise the value of exports and should therefore be promoted. However, due in part to the capital and cost intensive nature of beneficiation, more potential for employment creation exist in backward linkages such as equipment and chemicals manufacturing and engineering/construction and other services. Since mining companies are obligated to not only procure local products and services, but to also facilitate local enterprise development, supplier industries and services should be prioritised.
15. Encourage and support focused research to enable improved extraction methods, better energy and water efficiency, and better use of metals/minerals in new energy systems and machinery.
16. Improve the Social and Labour (SLP) process of delivering human resource and economic development by mines in communities, by defining the roles of stakeholders more clearly.

### Construction

17. Improve the capacity of state departments and local government in terms of specifically project management, long-term planning and monitoring and evaluation.
18. Increase support to supplier industries and small-scale construction firms (existing and emerging).
19. Promote more sustainable and energy efficient building techniques to reduce the demand on electricity over the long-term.
20. Encourage and support local manufacturing of inputs to the construction industry and increasingly to the renewable industries sector.

### Manufacturing

21. Identify large sub-sector specific value chain projects (clusters) for public support.
22. Provide quality infrastructure in support of these large value chain clusters.
23. Intensifying research and development support for product development, innovation and commercialisation.
24. Approach the manufacturing of renewable energies as a new and upcoming sector.

### Tourism

25. Create a television channel illustrating all tourism establishments and showcasing all the product offerings of the North West province.
26. Promote the cultural and creative industries (including performance arts) and encourage procurement of local art.
27. Exploit the lucrative business tourism market by establishing the province as a conference and business destination.

### Small and expanding firms




28. Business incubators should be set up, including private-sector partnerships, with rewards for success. This could include early-stage entrepreneurship training, artisan training and assisting small-scale farmers and construction firms.
29. Broaden access to financial services for lower income markets and for the rural population, especially focussing on enterprise lending.

### Improving the developmental capability of the public and private sector as equal partners

30. Improve the relationship between the public and private sector.
31. Define and utilise private sector capabilities.
32. Improve institutional coordination. A lack of coordination between provincial departments and local government slows down the implementation of programmes and the delivery of infrastructure and services.

## SECTION 4 – ECONOMIC INFRASTRUCTURE

### PROVINCIAL PRIORITY AREA 2

- Water is central to provincial growth and development with a particular focus on efficiency of use (and re-use) as well as on efficient management of existing resources. A central part of the approach should be directed to maintenance of existing infrastructure. 
- Renewable energies, especially solar and waste/biomass to energy initiatives will play an increasingly important role in the following two decades and will contribute a much greater share of provincial energy consumption.
- Accelerated investments in roads and rail infrastructure will facilitate further development of mining, agriculture and tourism opportunities and open up agro-

processing and manufacturing opportunities in the North West Province.

- Information and Communication Technology (ICT) will underpin the development of a dynamic and connected information society and a vibrant knowledge economy that is more inclusive and prosperous.

### OBJECTIVES

- Produce sufficient energy to support industry at competitive prices, ensuring access for poor households, while reducing carbon emissions per unit of power by approximately one-third.
- The proportion of people with access to electricity should raise from 84 percent in 2011 to 95 per cent by 2030, with non-grid options available for the rest.
- Increase renewable energy consumption to 37% by 2030.
- By 2030 67% of households should have a solar water heater installed.
- Manage water demand per district as set out in the North West Water Provision and Management Plan (Department of Water Affairs, 2008) (refer to Chapter 4).
- Ensure enough water for agriculture and industry, recognising the trade-offs in the use of water.
- Increase number of households with access to piped water from 92 per cent in 2011 to 100 per cent in 2030.
- Decrease the number of households without refuse removal services from 6.4 per cent in 2011 to 0 per cent in 2030.
- Make high-speed broadband internet available to all in the North West province.
- Establish effective, safe and affordable public transport.



- Reduce the number of households without sufficient sanitation from 8.1 per cent in 2011 to 0 per cent in 2030.
- Acceleration of investments in road, rail, bulk water, water treatment and transmission infrastructure (SIP 4).

### ACTIONS

#### Water Resources

1. Develop and improve water infrastructure (the focus being on re-use, conservation and maintenance).
2. Improve water management per district according to the North West Water Provision and Management Plan (Department of Water Affairs, 2008).

#### Electricity

3. Develop energy infrastructure and services provision.
4. Expand renewable energy with special reference to solar power (solar power heaters and solar photovoltaic technologies).
5. Increase energy efficiency (reduce demand).

#### Transport

6. Develop (provide, upgrade and maintain) transport infrastructure.
7. Improve public transport and mobility in rural areas.
8. Improve spatial development and rural connectivity.

#### Information and Communications Infrastructure

9. Accelerate deployment of Information and Communication Technology (ICT) infrastructure and increase utilisation.

## SECTION 5 – AN INTEGRATED AND INCLUSIVE RURAL ECONOMY

### PROVINCIAL PRIORITY AREA 3

Agriculture production needs to be expanded with emphasis on well supported small-scale farming, communal farmers, commercial farmers and cooperatives.

- Human capital development (education and healthcare) and access to basic services plays a very important role in rural communities and should be considered priority. Analyse consumption patterns to inform projects to be initiated.
- In urban nodes in regions that undergo land reform and agricultural expansion it will be necessary to focus attention on the following:
  - Encourage and prioritise the rapid resolution of land claims.
  - Integration land reform activities with sustainable agricultural development initiatives.
  - Comprehensive agriculture support.
  - Encouragement of small enterprise development through focusing on skills development access to finance and land and small business support, especially for female farmers and entrepreneurs.
- Under-development in areas under traditional administration must be confronted through agricultural development, improved land management and administration, infrastructure provision and targeted support to rural women.
- It is critical to develop linkages with the mining and agricultural sectors in manufacturing (agro-processing, input products and beneficiation) and services and to develop the tourism industry to unlock the potential of the arts and culture industries in rural communities.
- Develop the tourism industry to unlock the potential of the arts and culture industries in rural communities.

## OBJECTIVES

- 35 734 direct jobs must be created through the agriculture, agro-processing and related sectors by 2030.
- Maintain a positive trade balance for primary and processed agricultural products.
- Agriculture must maintain an average growth rate of 8.5 per cent between now and 2030. Against this growth rate, the Gross Value Added (GVA) contribution of the sector will increase from R 3.39 million to R 17.31 million in 2030 (2010 R-values).
- The sectoral Gross Value Added (GVA) contribution of agriculture will expand from 2.3 per cent in 2010 to 4.1 per cent in 2030.

## ACTIONS

Rural economies will be activated through improved infrastructure and service delivery, a review of land tenure, services to small and micro farmers, a review of mining industry commitments to social investment, and tourism investments.

### Agriculture Development

1. Expand commercial agriculture.
2. Support small-scale farming, cooperatives and communal farmers.
3. Improving the outcomes of land reform.

### Human Capital Development and Basic Services

4. Ensure effective human capital development in rural areas.
5. Create food security.
6. Improve access to services in rural communities, villages and settlements.

### Support for non-agricultural activities


7. Develop agro-processing and beneficiation opportunities while recognising beneficiation constraints.

8. Increase market access and entry for rural Small, Medium and Micro-sized Enterprises (SMME).

9. Increase the rural tourism offerings.

## SECTION 6 - HUMAN SETTLEMENT AND SPATIAL TRANSFORMATION

### PROVINCIAL PRIORITY AREA 4

- Address the apartheid geography and create the conditions for more humane – and environmentally sustainable – living and working environments.
- It is important to address the entrenched spatial patterns that exacerbate social inequality and economic inefficiency, cognisant of the unique needs and potentials of different rural and urban areas in line with emerging development corridors. 
- Ensure that the delivery of housing contributes to the restructuring of towns and cities and strengthens the livelihood prospects of households.
- Active citizenship in spatial development should be supported through properly funded interventions that encompass citizen-led neighbourhood vision and planning processes; and the introduction of social compacts.
- Settlement planning should ensure the creation of spaces that are liveable, equitable, sustainable, resilient and efficient, and that support economic opportunities and social cohesion.
- Develop the governance and administrative capability to undertake settlement planning.
- Provincial spatial development must include the following **intervention zones / areas**:
  - Competitiveness Corridors

- Nodes Of Competitiveness
- Rural Restructuring Zones
- Resource Critical Regions
  - Critical Biodiversity Areas
  - Ecological Support Areas
- Special Intervention Areas
  - Job Intervention Zones
  - Growth Management Zones
  - Green Economy Zones

### OBJECTIVES

- More people living closer to their places of work.
- Better quality public transport.
- More jobs in or close to dense, urban townships.
- Eradicate informal housing from 21.2 per cent to zero per cent by 2030.


### ACTIONS

1. Develop common vision for human settlement development and ensure spatial restructuring and the redressing historical segregation.
2. Build cohesive, integrated and inclusive human settlements through spatial equity, economic competitiveness and environmental sustainability in spatial planning.
3. Regulate human settlement patterns through:
  - Strengthened instruments of land use planning.
  - Diversity in housing choice, spatial mix, flexibility and finance options.
  - Ensured oversight and quality assurance.
4. Develop a focused strategy on the NW housing gap market, involving banks, subsidies and employer housing schemes.
5. Eradicate informal settlements.

6. Create efficiency in the planning system through actions such as strengthening the provincial and municipal planning capabilities and capacity.
7. Promote community involvement in spatial planning processes and enable participation across all sectors of society.

## SECTION 7 - IMPROVING EDUCATION, TRAINING AND INNOVATION

### PROVINCIAL PRIORITY AREA 5

- Improving education is one of the key strategies to reducing inequality and alleviating poverty in the North West province. Strong Early Childhood Development (ECD), basic education, further and higher education systems are critical to the development of the province. 
- A strong basic education system in the North West province depends on adequate human capacity, school management, district support, infrastructure and results-oriented mutual accountability between schools and communities.
- The reach of further and higher education systems in the North West province needs to be expanded and diversified through Further Education and Training Colleges (FETs), public adult learning centres, sector education and training authorities, professional colleges and Community Education and Training Centres.
- Due to the spatial structure of the province distance learning will have to expand significantly to achieve its potential in improving education, training and innovation.
- Private providers will be important partners in improving education, training and innovation in the NW.

- Research and innovation has a key role to play in improving the national and even global competitiveness of the provincial economy. Coordination between the different role-players in this sector is crucial.

### OBJECTIVES

- Eradicate micronutrient deficiencies in children that are younger than 18 months.
- The percentage of Grade 1 learners in the North West province who received Grade R must increase from 67 per cent in 2009 to 100 per cent in 2030.
- By 2030 all primary schools must have Grade R on offer.
- Percentage of Grade 3 learners performing at the required literacy level according to the country's Annual National Assessments must increase from 50 per cent in 2012 to 80 per cent in 2030.
- Percentage of Grade 3 learners performing at the required numeracy level according to the country's Annual National Assessments must increase from 36 per cent in 2012 to 80 per cent in 2030.
- Percentage of Grade 6 learners performing at the required literacy level according to the country's Annual National Assessments must increase from 39 per cent in 2012 to 80 per cent in 2030.
- Percentage of Grade 6 learners performing at the required numeracy level according to the country's Annual National Assessments must increase from 21 per cent in 2012 to 80 per cent in 2030.
- Increase percentage of schools as parallel medium ordinary schools should be increased from 58 per cent to 100 per cent in 2030.
- The percentage of learners in schools where at least one educator has received specialised

training in the identification and support of special needs

- All schools must have the following by 2030:
  - Reliable electricity supply
  - Reliable water supply
  - Ablution facilities
  - A library
  - A laboratory
  - A computer center
  - A communication system
  - Sport facilities
- The percentage of schools in the North West province visited at least twice a year by district officials for monitoring and support purposes must increase from 66 per cent to 100 per cent in 2030.
- At least 80 per cent of students should complete 12 years of schooling.
- Expand the further education and training sector with improved quality and relevance of its courses. The sector should reach a participation rate of 25 per cent by 2030.
- Improve the Further Education and Training (FET) graduation rate to 75 per cent by 2030.
- By 2030, 329 000 skilled workers and 345 400 semi-skilled workers must be established in the North West province.
- Skills development programmes must be focused on the community services, finance, trade and manufacturing sectors.
- By 2030, 75 per cent of academic staff at universities should have completed a PhD.
- Produce 100 doctoral graduates per million per year.

### ACTIONS

#### Early Childhood Development (ECD)

1. Expand nutrition programme for mothers and infants.

2. Improve Early Childhood Development (ECD) training and education. All children must have access to at least two years of Childhood Development (ECD)

### Basic Education

3. Improve learning outcomes.
4. Eradicate infrastructure backlogs.
5. Develop human capacity.
6. Expertise is recognised as the only criterion for appointing and promoting personnel within the education sector.
7. Regularly test teachers in the subjects they teach to determine their level of knowledge and competence.
8. Improve school management.
9. Schools already operating at a high level of efficiency should not be burdened by having to fulfil additional and unnecessary tasks that aim to improve accountability in schools performing weakly. Schools performing very poorly should receive the closest attention.
10. Gradually give principals more power to administer schools, including financial management, procurement of textbooks and other educational material, as well as hiring and firing educators.
11. Improve district support throughout the province.
12. Construct a result oriented framework of mutual accountability where districts are accountable for supporting schools, schools are accountable to the community in relation to the annual school plan, and parents are accountable for the behaviour, attitude and work ethic of their children.
13. Promote sports, physical education, arts and culture

14. Encourage accountability and community ownership through providing all stakeholders with clear information on accountability measures.

15. Enhance Information and Communication Technology (ICT) in schools.

16. Align, capacitate and motivate all role-players.

### Higher Education

17. Align skills development with economic growth sectors and clusters. A comprehensive intervention strategy needs to be put in place without delay to ensure that meaningful information and data on skills development becomes available and is used for skill planning purposes in the North West province.
18. The province must conduct a comprehensive skills audit identify critical skills areas and develop the skills of the youth accordingly with the support of the private sector.
19. Strengthen and expand the number of further education and training colleges so that the participation rate can grow to 25 per cent.
20. Regain the trust of the public through expanding colleges, improving the quality and advocating the role of colleges all over the province.
21. Promote distance education and Information and Communication Technology (ICT).
22. Transform current public adult learning centres into Community Education and Training Centres that offer a variety of courses ranging from adult basic education to secondary and non-formal education.
23. Establish North West University (NWU) as leading innovator.

## SECTION 8 - ENVIRONMENTAL SUSTAINABILITY

- The transition to a low carbon future and a more diverse and inclusive economy in the North West province can be aided by the rich endowment of natural resources and mineral deposits in the province if responsibly used. 
- The effects of climate change is a reality in the North West province and it is especially the poorer communities who could be exposed in future if development challenges are not addressed in a manner that ensures environmental sustainability and builds resilience climate change.
- Investment in skills, technology and institutional capacity is crucial in all aspects regarding a sustainable society and low-carbon economy. Management structures are a key priority towards developing a sustainable North West province and will need to be supported by focused, institutionalised capacity building.
- Consumer awareness initiatives and sufficient recycling infrastructure must be made priority in the province.
- The development of environmentally sustainable green products and services will contribute to the creation of jobs in niche markets such as renewable energy manufacturing. The North West province needs to explore this market towards developing a competitive advantage that will be a provincial and national advantage.

### OBJECTIVES

- Effective land-use policies that control environmental and social cost of new developments must be implemented.
- The North West province must be committed to the protection of biodiversity.

- Resource Critical Areas must be identified and protected through a 'spatial contract' binding on all spheres of government and relevant role-players.
- Waste management must be effective throughout the province. Recycling and re-use must be high and the value of the waste as a resource with socio-economic potential is realised.
- Reduce carbon emissions as part of South Africa's international commitments.
- The province must be prepared for climate change and other environmental pressures through coordinated planning.
- The protection of the freshwater eco-system and Water Critical Biodiversity Areas must be identified recognising the North West as a water scarce province.

### ACTIONS

1. Sustain ecosystems and use natural resources more efficiently.
2. Improve energy efficiency and develop renewable sources.
3. Promote research and knowledge generation.
4. Address the provincial water challenge in the provision and protection of water resources.
5. Promote clean air emissions.
6. Build sustainable communities.
7. Improve the role of local government in building sustainable communities.
8. Increase awareness and participation among rural communities.
9. Responding to climate change: mitigation and adaptation.

10. Managing a transition to a environmentally sustainable, low carbon economy.
11. Enhancing management systems and human capital development.

### SECTION 9 - SOCIAL PROTECTION

- Social support should go beyond relieving poverty through promoting self-reliant sustainable development. Social support should be provided in such a manner that once the support is removed the individual, household or community can be self-sustainable. The focus of social support must thus be on building and utilising capabilities as part of the poverty relief process.
- Social protection must be approached holistically. The needs, realities, conditions and livelihoods of individuals, households and communities do not stand isolated from the broader environment in which they operate. Social cohesion forms an integrated part of social protection because it affects the well-being of an individual on a daily basis.
- The social protection system must cover the entire life-cycle of an individual, from conception through ensuring adequate nutrition for pregnant mothers to retirement by ensuring that old age related poverty is eliminated.



#### OBJECTIVES

Ensure progressively and through multiple avenues that no one lives below a social floor.

#### ACTIONS

1. Determine a social floor that can be progressively realised through a social wage approach.
2. Ensure developmental social welfare services.
3. Ensure and promote private sector participation in social protection.

4. Address the skills deficit to improve development and reach in rural areas.
5. Improve efficiency in the delivery of services, reduce exclusions and address administrative bottlenecks.
6. Focus on competition, access, efficiency and costs of transport, food, telecommunications and other goods and services to lower the cost of living, especially for poor households.
7. Create household food and nutrition security.
8. Establish and promote labour market initiatives such as the public works programmes, training and skills development, and other labour market related incentives.

### SECTION 10 - IMPROVING HEALTH

#### PROVINCIAL PRIORITY AREA 6

- Health is not just a medical issue. The social determinants of health need to be addressed, including promoting healthy behaviours and lifestyles.
- Access to quality health care and well managed facilities is an important function of provincial government and more should be done to provide health care services to all.
- A major goal is to reduce the disease burden to manageable levels.
- Households need information and incentives to change their behaviour toward healthy and active lifestyles.
- Training and skills development of hospital managers, doctors, nurses and community health workers are a key priority. Focus is placed on adequate and qualified health staff, especially in terms of deploying them to the areas where they are most needed.



### OBJECTIVES

- By 2030 life expectancy should be increased from 53.2 years for females and 50.4 years for males to 70 years for both.
- The under-20 age group should largely be an HIV-free generation.
- The infant mortality rate should decline from 30.1 to 20 per 1 000 live birth.
- All HIV-positive people should be on treatment and preventive measures such as condoms and microbicides should be widely available, especially to young people.
- Train and establish 46 600 community health workers by 2030.


### ACTIONS

1. Address the social determinants that affect health and disease.
2. Ensure collaboration across sectors.
3. Promote healthy lifestyle choices from an early age. Promote active lifestyles and balanced diets, control alcohol abuse and health awareness to reduce non-communicable diseases.
4. Strengthening the health care system and improving its management.
5. Improvement of health care financing and management.
6. Well-functioning and competitive hospitals (health facilities management).
7. Effective and well-managed health research.
8. Prevent and reduce the disease burden and promote health.
9. Combat HIV and aids and decrease the burden of disease from TB. Broaden coverage of

antiretroviral (ARV) treatment to all HIV-positive people.

10. Improve human resources within the health sector through amongst others the deployment of primary health care teams and the review management positions and appointments to strengthen accountability.

### SECTION 11 - BUILDING SAFER COMMUNITIES

- Demilitarise the police and improve professionalism throughout the police service.  The police should at all times act professional, impartial, responsive and competent.
- Building safer communities is not only the responsibility of one government department or even one sphere of government. An integrated approach is needed to build safer sustainable communities. Coordination is required between a variety of departments, the private sector and community bodies. Such coordinated operations must include among others revitalised community-safety centres.
- All vulnerable groups including women, children and rural communities should enjoy equal protection through effective, coordinated responses of the police, business, community and civil society.

### OBJECTIVES

In 2030 people living in the North West province feel safe at home, at school and at work. They enjoy a community life free of fear. Women walk freely in the streets and children play safely outside. The provincial police service is adequately resourced and professional. The police service is staffed by highly skilled officers who value their work, serve the community, safeguard lives and property without discrimination, protect the peaceful environment against violence, and respect the rights to equality and justice.



### ACTIONS

1. Demilitarise the police and improve professionalism. The police service in the North West province should at all times have the characteristics of a police service and not that of a police force. . The police service should be transformed into a professional, capable institution with a clear mandate and defined roles and responsibilities
2. Ensure an effective recruitment system for professionalism.
3. Improve utilisation of the code of conduct. Introduce a code of conduct that is linked to disciplinary regulations and performance appraisal.
4. Strengthening capacity and training.
5. Achieve an integrated approach to crime prevention and improve coordination between role-players.
6. Ensure equal protection for vulnerable groups including the following:
  - Improved protection of children.
  - Safety in schools.
  - Reduce women and gender based violence.
  - Improve rural and farm safety.
7. Community participation in safety through amongst others Community Safety Volunteer Programmes and Community Police Forums.
8. Crime prevention through physical / environmental design.
9. Promote and implement measures for road traffic safety that will reduce the risk of a person using the provincial road network being killed or seriously injured.

## SECTION 12 - BUILDING A CAPABLE AND DEVELOPMENTAL STATE

### PROVINCIAL PRIORITY AREA 7

- The province needs to build a professional public service that is capable of playing a developmental and transformative role. 
- Staff at all the spheres of government must have the authority, experience and support they need to do their jobs. This will require a more long-term approach to skills development.
- The province needs to improve inter-departmental coordination and cooperation and proactively improve relationships with national and local government.
- The ability of the public sector to serve society should not be compromised by political instability.

### OBJECTIVES

A capable and effective state, able to enhance economic opportunities, supports the development of capabilities and intervenes to ensure a rising floor of social rights for the poor. The developmental state combines efforts of the public and private sector as equal partners in the development of the North West province.


### ACTIONS

1. Build a capable public service according to the principles for good governance in the Constitution of South-Africa.
2. Stabilise the political-administrative interface.
3. Strengthen accountability and oversight between departments and spheres of government.
4. Improve interdepartmental and intergovernmental coordination.

5. Improve human resource development and management.
6. Make the public service a career of choice.
7. Develop technical and specialist professional skills.
8. Mainstreaming public participation to improve the democratic process and to rebuild trust.

### SECTION 13 - FIGHTING CORRUPTION

#### PROVINCIAL PRIORITY AREA 8

- Corruption affects the ability of government to deliver services, discourages investment and prevents business start-ups and business growth. 
- Corruption needs to be fought predominantly by means of deterrence, prevention and education. The public however plays a key role through transparency in the public and private sector and by means of greater community awareness through education; society should hold the state accountable on its developmental and service delivery mandate.
- Strong social factors also play a key role in corruption. Perceptions that the structure of the economy is unjust, historical inequities and new forms of empowerment that have benefited politically connected individuals fuel a process of justification of unjust benefit. These underlying social determinants must be addressed as part of the fight against corruption.
- Every public institution should have mechanisms in place to allow safe yet effective whistle blowing from the public as well as from public servants.


### OBJECTIVES

By 2030 the North West province will comprise of a population, public sector and a public service that have zero tolerance for corruption.

### ACTIONS

1. Building a resilient anti-corruption system and providing mechanisms for effective and safe reporting.
2. Develop and encourage a societal approach to fighting corruption.
3. Improve accountability and transparency, including increased public awareness and access to information.

### SECTION 14 - TRANSFORMING SOCIETY AND UNITING THE PROVINCE

- The values provided in the constitution and in the Bill of Responsibilities provide the basis for human dignity that should be taught to and accepted by each member of the provincial population. 
- Through sports, art and culture in the North West province, human well-being will be enhanced and stimulated and social cohesion will be promoted.
- Every individual living in the North West province must realise his or her potential and role within society through active participation and leadership.
- In building a society where opportunity is not defined by race, gender, class or religion, it is necessary to improve access to quality education, healthcare and basic services. In order to correct the imbalances of the past it remains necessary to implement and strengthen measures of redress.

### OBJECTIVES

By 2030, all citizens of the North West province will be more aware of the things they have in

common and appreciate each other for their differences. Their experiences will progressively cut across the divisions of race, gender, space and class. The people of the province will be more accepting of others' multiple identities, their background, their belief and their culture.

### **ACTIONS**

1. Foster and promote values of human dignity.
2. Ensure equal opportunities and socio-economic inclusion and redress.
3. Encourage and facilitate active citizenry toward a social compact.
4. All persons living in the province must learn at least one local African language (preferably Setswana). Business must encourage and reward employees accomplishing this target.
5. Promote sports, art and culture in schools and communities.

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

FOREWORD .....	ii
EXECUTIVE SUMMARY .....	xvi
<b>1. INTRODUCTION</b>	
1.1. THE CONTEXT .....	1
1.1.1. THE NATIONAL DEVELOPMENT PLAN, 2030 .....	2
1.1.2. DEVELOPMENT PRIORITY .....	3
1.1.3. THE NEED FOR STRUCTURAL CHANGE .....	4
1.2. REPORT OUTLINE .....	6
<b>2. DEMOGRAPHIC PERSPECTIVE AND TRENDS</b>	
2.1. INTRODUCTION .....	10
2.2. POPULATION AND GROWTH TRENDS .....	11
2.2.1. HOUSEHOLD DYNAMICS .....	15
2.2.2. POPULATION STRUCTURE .....	16
2.2.3. DEPENDENCY RATIO .....	17
2.2.4. LANGUAGE .....	19
2.2.5. MIGRATION .....	20
2.3. VULNERABLE GROUPS .....	22
2.3.1. CHILDREN .....	23
2.3.2. YOUTH .....	23
2.3.3. WOMEN .....	30
2.3.4. ELDERLY .....	31
2.4. DEVELOPMENT INDICATORS .....	33
2.4.1. POPULATION LIVING IN POVERTY .....	33
2.4.2. HUMAN DEVELOPMENT INDEX (HDI) .....	34
2.4.3. GINI COEFFICIENT .....	35
<b>3. ECONOMY AND EMPLOYMENT</b>	
3.1. INTRODUCTION .....	39
3.2. THE CURRENT PERSPECTIVE .....	39
3.1.1. GROSS VALUE ADDED (GVA) .....	39
3.1.2. EMPLOYMENT .....	41
3.1.2. LEVEL OF CONCENTRATION .....	49
3.1.3. COMPARATIVE ADVANTAGE .....	50
3.2. VISION 2030 .....	52
3.2.1. VISION 2030 PROJECTIONS .....	52
3.2.2. HOW TO ACHIEVE IT .....	54
3.3. ENCOURAGING EMPLOYMENT ORIENTED GROWTH .....	55

3.3.1. PROMOTING LABOUR ABSORBING INDUSTRIES .....	55
3.3.2. PROMOTING COMPETITIVENESS .....	63
3.4. DEVELOPMENT, TRAINING AND INNOVATION.....	63
3.4.1. IMPROVING RELEVANT SKILLS AND HUMAN CAPITAL FORMATION .....	64
3.4.2. ESTABLISH A POST-SCHOOL SYSTEM THAT CATERS FOR A WIDE RANGE OF INDUSTRY SPECIFIC NEEDS.....	64
3.4.3. IMPROVE THE UTILISATION OF RESEARCH AND INNOVATION.....	65
3.5. CREATING AN ENABLING ENVIRONMENT .....	65
3.5.1. REDUCE POLICY UNCERTAINTY.....	66
3.5.2. LOWERING THE COST OF LIVING FOR THE POOR.....	66
3.5.3. IMPROVE INFRASTRUCTURE PROVISION AND SERVICE DELIVERY .....	67
3.5.4. STRENGTHENING CAPACITY IN THE PUBLIC SECTOR TO IMPLEMENT ECONOMIC POLICY .....	67
3.6. SECTOR SPECIFIC STRATEGIES.....	68
3.6.1. AGRICULTURE .....	72
3.6.2. MINING .....	74
3.6.3. CONSTRUCTION AND INFRASTRUCTURE .....	77
3.6.4. SPECIFIC MANUFACTURING SUB-SECTORS.....	79
3.6.5. TOURISM .....	82
3.6.6. SMME DEVELOPMENT AND FINANCIAL ACCESSIBILITY .....	84
3.7. IMPROVING THE DEVELOPMENTAL CAPABILITY OF THE PUBLIC AND PRIVATE SECTOR AS EQUAL PARTNERS .....	86
3.7.1. IMPROVING THE RELATIONSHIP BETWEEN THE PUBLIC AND PRIVATE SECTOR .....	86
3.7.2. PRIVATE SECTOR CAPABILITIES .....	87
3.7.3. IMPROVE INSTITUTIONAL COORDINATION .....	88
3.8. ECONOMY AND EMPLOYMENT IMPLEMENTATION PLAN.....	90
<b>4. ECONOMIC INFRASTRUCTURE</b>	
4.1. INTRODUCTION .....	92
4.2. THE CURRENT PERSPECTIVE.....	93
4.2.1. WATER.....	93
4.2.2. ENERGY .....	95
4.2.3. TRANSPORT .....	98
4.2.4. INFORMATION AND COMMUNICATIONS TECHNOLOGY .....	99
4.3. VISION 2030.....	100
4.3.1. VISION 2030 TARGETS.....	101
4.3.2. HOW TO ACHIEVE IT .....	102
4.4. WATER INFRASTRUCTURE AND SERVICE PROVISION.....	103
4.4.1. WATER AVAILABILITY PER DISTRICT .....	103
4.4.2. DEVELOP AND IMPROVE WATER INFRASTRUCTURE .....	107

4.4.3. IMPROVE MANAGEMENT AND MAINTENANCE .....	108
4.5. ENERGY INFRASTRUCTURE AND SERVICES PROVISION .....	110
4.5.1. DEVELOP RENEWABLE ENERGY INFRASTRUCTURE.....	112
4.5.2. ENERGY INFRASTRUCTURE DEVELOPMENT .....	115
3.5.3. INCREASE ENERGY EFFICIENCY (REDUCE DEMAND) .....	116
4.5.3. EDUCATION, TRAINING AND RESEARCH.....	116
4.6. TRANSPORT INFRASTRUCTURE.....	117
4.6.1. DEVELOP (PROVIDE, UPGRADE AND MAINTAIN) TRANSPORT INFRASTRUCTURE.....	117
4.6.2. IMPROVE PUBLIC TRANSPORT AND MOBILITY IN RURAL AREAS .....	117
4.6.3. IMPROVE SPATIAL DEVELOPMENT AND RURAL CONNECTIVITY .....	118
4.7. INFORMATION AND COMMUNICATION TECHNOLOGY INFRASTRUCTURE .....	118
4.7.1. ACCELERATE DEPLOYMENT OF ICT INFRASTRUCTURE AND INCREASE UTILISATION .....	119
4.7.2. BUILD ICT SKILLS CAPACITY .....	121
4.7.3. ENHANCE RURAL ICT ENTERPRISE DEVELOPMENT AND INVOLVE COMMUNITIES OF INTEREST IN ICT STRATEGIC PLANNING .....	122
4.8. ECONOMIC INFRASTRUCTURE IMPLEMENTATION PLAN .....	123
<b>5. AN INTEGRATED AND INCLUSIVE RURAL ECONOMY</b>	
5.1. INTRODUCTION.....	126
5.2. THE CURRENT PERSPECTIVE .....	126
5.2.1. NORTH WEST AGRICULTURE SECTOR PERFORMANCE .....	127
5.2.2. SPATIAL STRUCTURAL CHALLENGES .....	129
5.2.3. LAND ADMINISTRATION, ACCESS AND REFORM .....	129
5.3. VISION 2030 .....	130
5.3.1. HOW TO ACHIEVE IT .....	130
5.4. AGRICULTURAL DEVELOPMENT .....	131
5.4.1. EXPAND COMMERCIAL AGRICULTURE.....	132
5.4.2. SUPPORT SMALL-SCALE FARMING, COOPERATIVES AND COMMUNAL FARMERS .....	133
5.4.3. IMPROVING ON LAND REFORM.....	134
5.5. HUMAN CAPITAL DEVELOPMENT AND BASIC SERVICES .....	135
5.5.1. ENSURE EFFECTIVE HUMAN CAPITAL DEVELOPMENT .....	135
5.5.2. ACCESS TO SERVICES IN RURAL COMMUNITIES, VILLAGES AND SETTLEMENTS .....	136
5.5.3. PROVINCIAL AND HOUSEHOLD FOOD SECURITY .....	136
5.6. SUPPORT FOR NON-AGRICULTURAL ACTIVITIES .....	137
5.6.1. DEVELOP AGRO-PROCESSING AND BENEFICIATION OPPORTUNITIES .....	138
5.6.2. INCREASE MARKET ACCESS AND ENTRY FOR RURAL SMMEs.....	138
5.6.3. INCREASE THE RURAL TOURISM OFFERING .....	139
5.7. AN INTEGRATED AND INCLUSIVE RURAL ECONOMY IMPLEMENTATION PLAN .....	140

**6. HUMAN SETTLEMENT AND SPATIAL TRANSFORMATION**

6.1. INTRODUCTION .....	143
6.2. THE CURRENT PERSPECTIVE .....	143
6.3. VISION 2030 .....	148
6.3.1. HOW TO ACHIEVE IT .....	148
6.4. PLANNING PRINCIPLES AND PRIORITIES FOR SPATIAL RESTRUCTURING .....	149
6.4.1. A COMMON VISION FOR HUMAN SETTLEMENT DEVELOPMENT .....	152
6.4.2. COMPREHENSIVE LAND AUDIT .....	153
6.4.3. BUILD COHESIVE, INTEGRATED AND INCLUSIVE HUMAN SETTLEMENTS .....	154
6.4.4. SPATIAL EQUITY, ECONOMIC COMPETITIVENESS AND ENVIRONMENTAL SUSTAINABILITY IN SPATIAL PLANNING.....	154
6.4.5. PROVINCIAL SPATIAL DEVELOPMENT FRAMEWORK AND RESTRUCTURING STRATEGY .....	155
6.5. REGULATING HUMAN SETTLEMENT PATTERNS .....	157
6.5.1. STRENGTHEN INSTRUMENTS OF LAND USE MANAGEMENT .....	158
6.5.2. DIVERSITY IN HOUSING CHOICE, SPATIAL MIX, FLEXIBILITY AND FINANCE OPTIONS .....	158
6.5.3. ERADICATE INFORMAL SETTLEMENTS .....	161
6.5.4. ENSURE OVERSIGHT AND QUALITY ASSURANCE .....	161
6.6. EFFICIENCY IN THE PLANNING SYSTEM .....	162
6.6.1. AN INTEGRATED APPROACH AND COORDINATION IN SETTLEMENT PLANNING .....	162
6.6.2. STRENGTHEN PROVINCIAL AND MUNICIPAL PLANNING CAPABILITIES AND CAPACITY .....	163
6.7. COMMUNITY INVOLVEMENT IN SPATIAL PLANNING PROCESSES .....	164
6.7.1. ENABLE PARTICIPATION ACROSS ALL SECTORS OF SOCIETY .....	164
6.8. HUMAN SETTLEMENT AND SPATIAL TRANSFORMATION IMPLEMENTATION PLAN .....	165

**7. IMPROVING EDUCATION, TRAINING AND INNOVATION**

7.1. INTRODUCTION.....	168
7.2. THE CURRENT PERSPECTIVE .....	168
7.3. VISION 2030 .....	169
7.3.1. VISION 2030 TARGETS .....	169
7.3.2. HOW TO ACHIEVE IT .....	173
7.4. EARLY CHILDHOOD DEVELOPMENT (ECD).....	174
7.4.1. NUTRITIONAL PROGRAMME FOR MOTHERS AND INFANTS .....	174
7.4.2. ECD TRAINING AND EDUCATION.....	175
7.5. BASIC EDUCATION .....	176
7.5.1. IMPROVE LEARNING OUTCOMES: CURRENT PERSPECTIVE .....	178
7.5.2. AREAS OF INTERVENTION .....	180
7.5.3. ERADICATE INFRASTRUCTURE BACKLOGS .....	182
7.5.4. HUMAN CAPACITY AND TEACHER DEVELOPMENT .....	183
7.5.5. PROPOSALS FOR IMPROVING DISTRICT SUPPORT .....	185

7.5.6. SPORTS, PHYSICAL EDUCATION, ARTS AND CULTURE .....	186
7.5.7. IMPROVE SCHOOL MANAGEMENT .....	187
7.5.8. MUTUAL ACCOUNTABILITY AND COMMUNITY OWNERSHIP .....	188
7.5.9. ENHANCE INFORMATION AND COMMUNICATION TECHNOLOGY (ICT) IN SCHOOLS .....	189
7.5.10. ALIGN, CAPACITATE AND MOTIVATE ALL ROLE-PLAYERS .....	190
7.6. POST-SCHOOL .....	190
7.6.1. THE COMPLETE POST-SCHOOL SYSTEM .....	191
7.6.2. UNIVERSITIES .....	193
7.6.2. COLLEGES .....	196
7.6.3. ADULT EDUCATION.....	196
7.7. RESEARCH AND INNOVATION SYSTEMS.....	197
7.8. IMPROVING EDUCATION, TRAINING AND INNOVATION IMPLEMENTATION PLAN .....	197
<b>8. ENVIRONMENTAL SUSTAINABILITY</b>	
8.1. INTRODUCTION .....	201
8.2. THE CURRENT PERSPECTIVE .....	203
8.3. VISION 2030 .....	205
8.3.1. HOW TO ACHIEVE IT .....	207
8.4. SUSTAIN ECO-SYSTEMS AND USE NATURAL RESOURCES EFFICIENTLY .....	207
8.4.1. STRATEGIC ENVIRONMENTAL PLANNING.....	208
8.4.2. RESEARCH AND KNOWLEDGE GENERATION .....	210
8.4.3. ENERGY EFFICIENCY .....	211
8.4.4. PROVINCIAL WATER CHALLENGE .....	211
8.4.5. CLEAN AIR EMISSIONS.....	213
8.5. BUILDING SUSTAINABLE COMMUNITIES .....	213
8.5.1. ROLE OF LOCAL GOVERNMENT IN BUILDING SUSTAINABLE COMMUNITIES .....	214
8.5.2. URBAN AND RURAL COMMUNITIES .....	215
8.6. RESPONDING TO CLIMATE CHANGE: MITIGATION AND ADAPTATION.....	216
8.7. MANAGING A JUST TRANSITION TO AN ENVIRONMENTALLY SUSTAINABLE, LOW-CARBON ECONOMY .....	218
8.7.1. ENHANCING MANAGEMENT SYSTEMS .....	219
8.7.2. HUMAN CAPITAL DEVELOPMENT .....	220
<b>9. SOCIAL PROTECTION.....</b>	
9.1. INTRODUCTION .....	223
9.2. THE CURRENT PERSPECTIVE .....	223
9.2.1. HUMAN DEVELOPMENT INDEX (HDI) .....	223
9.2.2. POPULATION LIVING IN POVERTY .....	224
9.2.3. DEPENDENCY RATIO .....	225
9.2.4. SUMMARY .....	227



9.3. VISION 2030 .....	227
9.3.1. HOW TO ACHIEVE IT .....	228
9.4. ENSURE DEVELOPMENTAL SOCIAL WELFARE SERVICES .....	229
9.4.1. EFFECTIVE SOCIAL WELFARE SYSTEM .....	231
9.4.2. SKILLS DEFICIT .....	232
9.4.3. EFFICIENCY IN DELIVERY OF SERVICES .....	232
9.5. CREATE HOUSEHOLD FOOD AND NUTRITION SECURITY .....	233
9.6. CREATE LABOUR MARKET INITIATIVES .....	235
<b>10. PROMOTING HEALTH</b>	
10.1. INTRODUCTION .....	238
10.2. THE CURRENT PERSPECTIVE .....	238
10.2.1. ACCESS TO HEALTHCARE .....	238
10.2.2. HUMAN WELL-BEING .....	240
10.2.3. FERTILITY RATES .....	240
10.2.4. MORTALITY .....	240
10.3. VISION 2030 .....	241
10.3.1. VISION 2030 TARGETS .....	241
10.3.2. HOW TO ACHIEVE IT .....	242
10.4. ADDRESS THE SOCIAL DETERMINANTS THAT AFFECT HEALTH AND DISEASE .....	242
10.4.1. ENSURE COLLABORATION ACROSS SECTORS .....	242
10.4.2. PROMOTE HEALTHY LIFESTYLE CHOICES FROM AN EARLY AGE .....	243
10.4.3. IMPLEMENT A COMPREHENSIVE APPROACH TO EARLY LIFE .....	244
10.5. STRENGTHEN THE HEALTH SYSTEM .....	245
10.5.1. STRENGTHENING THE HEALTH CARE SYSTEM AND IMPROVING ITS MANAGEMENT .....	245
10.5.2. IMPROVEMENT OF HEALTH CARE FINANCING AND MANAGEMENT .....	246
10.5.3. WELL-FUNCTIONING AND COMPETITIVE HOSPITALS (HEALTH FACILITIES MANAGEMENT) ..	246
10.5.4. EFFECTIVE AND WELL-MANAGED HEALTH RESEARCH .....	246
10.6. IMPROVE LIFE EXPECTANCY AND PREVENT AND REDUCE THE DISEASE BURDEN .....	247
10.6.1. IMPROVE LIFE EXPECTANCY OF ALL INDIVIDUALS .....	247
10.7. COMBAT HIV AND AIDS AND DECREASE THE BURDEN OF DISEASE FROM TB .....	248
10.7.1. REDUCE THE NUMBER OF HIV/AIDS AND IMPROVE TB OUTCOMES .....	248
10.8. IMPROVE HUMAN RESOURCES WITHIN THE HEALTH SECTOR .....	249
10.8.1. COMMUNITY-BASED HEALTH CARE .....	249
10.8.2. IMPROVEMENT OF HUMAN RESOURCE PLANNING AND DEVELOPMENT .....	249
10.8.3. APPROPRIATELY SKILLED NURSES .....	250
10.8.4. REVIEW MANAGEMENT POSITIONS AND APPOINTMENTS AND STRENGTHEN ACCOUNTABILITY .....	251
10.9. IMPROVING HEALTH IMPLEMENTATION PLAN .....	251

**11. BUILDING SAFER COMMUNITIES**

11.1. INTRODUCTION .....	254
11.2. THE CURRENT PERSPECTIVE .....	254
11.3. VISION 2030 .....	255
11.3.1. HOW TO ACHIEVE IT .....	255
11.4. DEMILITARISE THE POLICE AND IMPROVE PROFESSIONALISM.....	255
11.4.1. EFFECTIVE RECRUITMENT SYSTEM FOR PROFESSIONALISM.....	256
11.4.2. CODE OF CONDUCT .....	256
11.4.3. THE ROLE OF THE POLICE CLEARLY DEFINED.....	257
11.4.4. STRENGTHENING CAPACITY AND TRAINING .....	257
11.5. AN INTEGRATED APPROACH .....	258
11.5.1. HOLISTIC APPROACH TO CRIME AND COORDINATION OF ROLE-PLAYERS.....	258
11.6. EQUAL PROTECTION FOR VULNERABLE GROUPS .....	259
11.6.1. PROTECTION OF CHILDREN .....	260
11.6.2. SAFETY IN SCHOOLS .....	261
11.6.3. PROTECTION OF THE YOUTH .....	262
11.6.4. WOMEN AND GENDER BASED VIOLENCE .....	262
11.6.5. RURAL SAFETY .....	263
11.7. COMMUNITY SAFETY .....	264
11.7.1. THE COMMUNITY IN THE BATTLE AGAINST CRIME .....	264
11.7.2. COMMUNITY SAFETY VOLUNTEER PROGRAMMES .....	265
11.7.3. COMMUNITY POLICE FORUMS (CPF) .....	265
11.7.4. CRIME PREVENTION THROUGH PHYSICAL AND ENVIRONMENTAL DESIGN .....	266
11.8. ROAD SAFETY.....	266

**12. BUILDING A CAPABLE DEVELOPMENTAL STATE**

12.1. INTRODUCTION.....	268
12.2. THE CURRENT PERSPECTIVE .....	268
12.2.1. PROVINCIAL PUBLIC SECTOR STRUCTURES .....	269
12.2.2. PROVINCIAL CHALLENGES .....	272
12.3. VISION 2030 .....	272
12.3.1. HOW TO ACHIEVE IT .....	273
12.4. GOOD GOVERNANCE AND COORDINATION.....	273
12.4.1. STABILISE THE POLITICAL-ADMINISTRATIVE INTERFACE .....	273
12.4.2. STRENGTHEN ACCOUNTABILITY AND OVERSIGHT.....	274
12.4.3. IMPROVE INTERDEPARTMENTAL AND INTERGOVERNMENTAL COORDINATION .....	275
12.5. HUMAN RESOURCE DEVELOPMENT AND MANAGEMENT .....	279
12.5.1. MAKE THE PUBLIC SERVICE A CAREER OF CHOICE .....	280
12.5.2. DEVELOP TECHNICAL AND SPECIALIST PROFESSIONAL SKILLS .....	280

12.6. MAINSTREAMING PUBLIC PARTICIPATION .....	281
12.7. BUILDING A CAPABLE AND DEVELOPMENTAL STATE IMPLEMENTATION PLAN .....	282
<b>13. FIGHTING CORRUPTION</b>	
13.1. INTRODUCTION .....	285
13.2. THE CURRENT PERSPECTIVE .....	285
13.3. VISION 2030 .....	286
13.3.1. HOW TO ACHIEVE IT .....	287
13.4. BUILDING A RESILIENT ANTI-CORRUPTION SYSTEM.....	287
13.4.1. A SOCIETAL APPROACH TO FIGHTING CORRUPTION .....	288
13.5. ACCOUNTABILITY AND TRANSPARENCY .....	289
13.6. FIGHTING CORRUPTION IMPLEMENTATION PLAN .....	290
<b>14. TRANSFORMING SOCIETY AND UNITING THE PROVINCE</b>	
14.1. INTRODUCTION.....	292
14.2. THE CURRENT PERSPECTIVE .....	292
14.2.1. VISION 2030 .....	292
14.2.2. HOW TO ACHIEVE IT .....	292
14.3. FOSTER AND PROMOTE VALUES OF HUMAN DIGNITY .....	293
14.4. OPPORTUNITIES, INCLUSION AND REDRESS .....	294
14.5. ACTIVE CITIZENRY TOWARD A SOCIAL COMPACT .....	295
14.6. PROMOTE SPORTS, ART AND CULTURE .....	297
14.6.1. PROMOTE SPORT IN SCHOOLS AND COMMUNITIES.....	297
14.6.2. SUPPORT FOR ART AND CULTURE .....	298

## LIST OF FIGURES

Figure 2.1: population growth trends, 2000 – 2011 .....	12
Figure 2.2: household size dynamics (1995-2010).....	16
Figure 2.3: age and gender composition, 2012 .....	17
Figure 2.4: age and gender composition and dependency ratio, 2012 .....	18
Figure 2.5: languages spoken in the North West province, 2012 .....	19
Figure 2.6: percentage of population residing in urban areas (2001-2011) .....	21
Figure 2.7: percentage of youth living in households with a per capita income of less than R 650 per month by age group and province, 2011.....	26
Figure 2.8: percentage of youth headed households with a per capita income less than R 650 per month, by age group and province, 2011.....	27
Figure 2.9: percentage of youth that lived in households that had experienced inadequate or severely inadequate access to food by province, 2011.....	27
Figure 2.10: percentage of youth who attended an educational institution by age and gender, in the North West province, 2011.....	28
Figure 2.11: percentage of youth that attended an educational institution by population group and age, in the North West province, 2011.....	29
Figure 2.12: percentages of youth aged 15-34 who are not attending any educational institutions and who are not employed in the North West province, 2011.....	30
Figure 2.13: percentage of population living in poverty, 2010 .....	33
Figure 2.14: HDI for South-Africa and North West province (2001-2010) .....	34
Figure 2.15: number of people living with HIV / AIDS (1996-2010) .....	35
Figure 3.1: regional economic profile, (GVA) 2012 .....	40
Figure 3.2: sector employment profile, 2012 .....	43
Figure 3.3: total formal employment level and GVA (1996 – 2012).....	45
Figure 3.4: unemployment rate, 2013.....	47
Figure 3.3.5: NEA population, 2012 .....	48
Figure 3.6: employment by occupation and gender, 2012.....	48
Figure 3.3.7: Tress Index from 1996 – 2010 .....	49
Figure 3.8: employment scenarios – EPWP contribution by 2030.....	60
Figure 3.9: historic annual growth rates (200-2010) compared to the target annual growth rate (2010 -2030) 69	
Figure 3.10: sectoral contribution, 2010 and 2030.....	70
Figure 3.11: sectoral employment distribution 2010 and 2030 .....	71
Figure 3.12: agricultural performance, 1996 – 2012 .....	72
Figure 3.13: mining sector performance, 1996 - 2012.....	76
Figure 3.14: construction sector performance, 1996 - 2012.....	78
Figure 3.15: provincial manufacturing production.....	79

Figure 3.16: manufacturing sector performance, 1996 - 2012 .....	80
Figure 4.1: access to piped water compared nationally (2011) .....	94
Figure 4.2: access to electricity for lightning compared nationally (2011) .....	96
Figure 4.3: access to solar power for lightning compared nationally (2011).....	98
Figure 5.1: agriculture production in the North West, 1996 – 2012.....	127
Figure 5.2: agricultural employment growth, 1996 - 2012.....	128
Figure 6.1: dwelling types, 2012 .....	144
Figure 6.2: net migration (province of enumeration by previous province of residence) (2011) .....	150
Figure 6.3: percentage of population residing in urban areas (2001-2011).....	151
Figure 7.1: comparison of NSC passes from 2009 to 2012 .....	178
Figure 7.2: comparison of the NSC performance by the type of qualification 2009-2011.....	179
Figure 7.3: number of learners, 2012.....	180
Figure 9.1: HDI for South-Africa and North West province (2001-2010) .....	224
Figure 9.2: percentage of population living in poverty, 2010.....	225
Figure 9.3: age and gender composition and dependency ratio, 2012 .....	226
Figure 9.4: dependency ratios (1996 – 2011).....	227
Figure 10.1: medical aid coverage: 2008-2010 .....	239
Figure 11.1: total number of crimes reported in the North West, 2004 to 2012 .....	254
Figure 13.1: Corruption Perceptions Index 2012.....	255

## LIST OF TABLES

Table 2.1: population size, 2012 .....	12
Table 2.2: population growth scenarios for 2030 .....	14
Table 2.3: household numbers, size and historical growth, 2012.....	15
Table 2.4: child demographics in the North West province and South-Africa (2010) .....	23
Table 2.5: summary of youth demographics in the North West province and South-Africa (2010) .....	24
Table 2.6: percentage of households headed by youth aged 15-24 and 25-34, by province, 2005-2011.....	25
Table 2.7: female headed households in the North West province and South-Africa (2011) .....	31
Table 2.8: demographics of the elderly in the North West province and South-Africa (2011) .....	31
Table 2.9: GINI coefficient, 2011.....	35
Table 3 1: size (total GVA) of each regional economy (R millions) and average annual growth rate.....	40
Table 3 2: average annual change in formal employment levels (1996 – 2012).....	46
Table 3 3: comparative advantage of the North West province, 2011 (production and employment) .....	50
Table 3 4: provincial poverty targets 2030 .....	53
Table 3 5: GINI coefficient target 2030.....	53
Table 3 6: employment targets (million) (2010-2030) .....	54

Table 3 7: employment scenarios – employment outcomes by 2030.....	59
Table 3 8: average annual GVA and growth rate 2030 (2010 R million-Values) .....	69
Table 3 9: sectoral employment targets for 2030.....	71
Table 4 1: provincial water supply and demand balance .....	93
Table 4 2 household access to piped water.....	94
Table 4 3: household access to electricity for lightning .....	96
Table 4 4: economic infrastructure targets 2030.....	101
Table 4 5: renewable energy targets 2030 .....	102
Table 4 6: BPDMD water supply and demand balances (million m <sup>3</sup> /a).....	104
Table 4 7: DKKDM water supply and demand balances (million m <sup>3</sup> /a) .....	104
Table 4 8: NMMDM water supply and demand balances (million m <sup>3</sup> /a) .....	105
Table 4 9: DRSMDM water supply and demand balances (million m <sup>3</sup> /a).....	106
Table 4 10: provincial blue drop performance log, 2012 .....	109
Table 7.1: improving education, training and innovation targets (2030).....	170
Table 7.2: skills requirements per sector.....	172
Table 7.3: sectoral employment targets for 2030 .....	172
Table 7.4: North West province skills requirements (excluding household employment) (2030) .....	172
Table 7.5: total number of learners (public and independent), 2010 – 2012 .....	177
Table 7.6: national senior certificate enrolment (part-time and full-time), 2010 – 2012.....	177
Table 7.7: average literacy and numeracy scores, grade 3, 6 and 9, 2012.....	179
Table 7.8: total number of educators (public and independent), 2010 – 2012 .....	183
Table 7.9: ratios, 2010 – 2012 .....	183
Table 7.10: number of students enrolled (2006 – 2012).....	193
Table 7.11: number of master and PhD degrees awarded (2007-2011) .....	195
Table 9.1: child demographics in the North West province and South-Africa (2010) .....	229
Table 9.2: youth demographics in the North West Province and South-Africa (2010) .....	230
Table 9.3: female headed households in the North West province and South-Africa (2011) .....	230
Table 9.4: demographics of the elderly in the North West province and South-Africa (2010).....	231
Table 9.5: nutritional data of children, the youth and the elderly in the North West province and South-Africa (2010) .....	233
Table 10.1: number of healthcare facilities in the North West Province (2011) .....	239

## LIST OF MAPS

Map 2.1: district municipal demarcation, 2013.....	10
Map 2.2: population distribution, 2011 .....	14
Map 2.3: net migration (province of enumeration by previous province of residence), 2011.....	20

Map 3.1: economic sector distribution, 2012 .....	41
Map 3.2: employment distribution per economic sector, 2011.....	44
Map 3.3: tourism and movement corridors, 2012.....	83
Map 4.1: number of households with access to piped water, 2011 .....	95
Map 4.2: number of households with access to electricity for lightning, 2011 .....	97
Map 4.3: transportation routes, 2012 .....	99
Map 6.1: urban accessibility, 2012 .....	145
Map 6.2: development corridors and functional urban nodes, 2012.....	147
Map 7.1: education profile of the North West province (2011).....	168

## **ABBREVIATIONS**

AQMP	Air Quality Monitoring Programme
ARC	Agriculture Research Council
ARV	Antiretroviral Treatment
BACSA	Business against Crime South-Africa
BANC	Basic Antenatal Care
B-BBEE	Broad Based Black Economic Empowerment
BPDM	Bojanala Platinum District Municipality
CBA	Critical Biodiversity Area
CTED	Crime Prevention through Environmental Design Strategy
CHCS	Community Health Centres
CMA	Catchment Management Authority
CO <sub>2</sub>	Carbon Dioxide
CPF	Community Police Forum
CPT	Co-trimazole Preventative Treatment
CR	Critically Endangered
CTOP	Choice on Termination of Pregnancy
DBE	Department of Education
DBSA	Development Bank of South-Africa
DEDECT	Department of Economic Development, Environment and Tourism
DEDECT	Department of Economic Development, Environment, Conservation and Tourism
DKKDM	Dr Kenneth Kaunda District Municipality
DM	District Municipality



## NORTH-WEST PROVINCIAL DEVELOPMENT PLAN

---

DMR	Department of Mineral Resources
DOE	Department of Energy
DRSMDM	Dr. Ruth Segomotso Mompoti District Municipality
EAP	Economically Active Population
EbA	Ecosystem-based Adaptation (EbA)
ECD	Early Childhood Development
EHTP	Essential Health Technology Package
EIA	Environmental Impact Assessment
EIA	Environmental Impact Assessments
EIP	Environmental Implementation Plans
EMF	Environmental Management Frameworks
EMP	Environmental Management Plan
EN	Endangered
EPWP	Expanded Public Works Programme
ESA	Ecological Support Areas
FDI	Foreign Direct Investment
FET	Further Education and Training Colleges
GDP	Gross Domestic Product
GIS	Geographical Information System
HCT	HIV Counselling and Testing
HDI	Human Development Index
HDSA	Historically Disadvantaged South-Africans
HOD	Head of Department

## NORTH-WEST PROVINCIAL DEVELOPMENT PLAN

---

HPTDG	Health Professional Training Development Grant
ICD	Independent Complaints Directorate
ICSS	Independent Community Satisfaction Survey
ICT	Information and Communication Technology
IDC	Industrial Development Corporation
IDP	Integrated Development Plan
INEP	Integrated National Electrification Programme
IPAP	Industrial Policy Action Plan
IPID	Independent Police Investigative Directorate
IPP	Independent Power Producers
IPT	Isonazid Preventative Therapy
KOSH	Klerksdorp, Orkney, Stilfontein and Hartebeesfontein
KPA	Key Performance Areas
LED	Local Economic Development
LFS	Labour Force Survey
LM	Local Municipality
LT	Least Threatened
LUCIS	Land-use Conflict Identification Strategy
MDG's	Millennium Development Goals
MEC	Members of Executive Council
MIG	Municipal Infrastructure Grants
MPRDA	Mineral Petroleum Resource Development Act
MTSF	Medium-Term Strategic Framework

## **NORTH-WEST PROVINCIAL DEVELOPMENT PLAN**

---

MTSF	Medium Term Strategic Framework
NCS	National Curriculum Statement
NDA	National Development Agency
NEP	National Electrification Programme
NGO	Non-Governmental Organisation
NGP	New Growth Path
NHBRC	National Home Builders Registration Council
NHI	National Health Insurance
NIMART	Nurse Imitate Antiretroviral Treatment
NMMDM	Ngaka Modiri Molema District Municipality
NPO	Non-Profit Organisation
NTSG	National Treasury Service Grant
NWDC	North West Development Corporation
NWHTL	North West House of Traditional Leaders
NWIDIS	North West Provincial Industrial Development and Implementation Strategy
NWMHDP	North West Multi-Year Housing Development Plan
NWP	North West Province
NWPAES	North West Protected Area Expansion Strategy
NWPC	North West Planning Commission
NWPGDS	North West Provincial Growth and Development Strategy
NWU	North West University
NWWSF	North West Water Sector Forum
NYDA	National Youth Development Agency

## NORTH-WEST PROVINCIAL DEVELOPMENT PLAN

---

OECD	Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development
PDP	Provincial Development Plan
PICC	Presidential Infrastructure Coordinating Commission
PMTCT	Prevention of Mother to Child Transmission
PPP	Public Private Partnerships
PSDF	Provincial Spatial Development Framework
RDP	Reconstruction and Development Programme
RE IPP	Renewable Energy Independent Power Producers
RHP	River Health Programme
RSA	Republic of South-Africa
RSA	Republic of South Africa
RSS	Rural Safety Strategy
RW	Rand Water
SANBI	South African National Biodiversity Institute
SANPARKS	South African National Parks
SANS	South African National Standard
SAPVIA	South-African Photovoltaic Industry Association
SASTELA	Southern Africa Solar Thermal and Electricity Association
SDF	Spatial Development Framework
SDI	Spatial Development Initiatives
SEA	Strategic Environmental Assessments
SEDA	Small Enterprise Development Agency
SETA	Sector Education and Training Authority

## NORTH-WEST PROVINCIAL DEVELOPMENT PLAN

---

SGB	School Governing Body
SIP	Strategic Integrated Projects
SLP	Social and Labour Plan
SMME	Small, Medium and Micro-sized Enterprises
SOE	State Owned Enterprise
SPLUMA	Spatial Planning and Land Uses Management Act
UN	United Nations
VU	Vulnerable
WC / WDM	Water conservation and demand management options

## 1. INTRODUCTION

The National Development Plan (NDP) endorsed by Cabinet early in September 2012 emphasises that South-Africa and its future belongs to all of its people, and that it is them who shares the responsibility to make the future work. The primary aim of the NDP is to eliminate poverty and reduce inequality by 2030 through six areas of priority:

- Uniting all South-Africans around a common programme to achieve prosperity and equity
- Promoting active citizenry to strengthen development, democracy and accountability
- Bringing about faster economic growth
- Higher investment and greater labour absorption, focusing on key capabilities of people and the state
- Building a capable and development state
- Encouraging strong leadership throughout society to work together to solve problems

Using the strategic framework provided by the National Development Plan (NDP) as point of departure, the North West Provincial Government, through the Planning Commission of the Office of the Premier, initiated a process of formulating a Provincial Development Plan (PDP) 2030 for the North West province. The objective in formulating such plan is to draw on the guidelines provided in the NDP to create a plan that is specific to the opportunities and challenges of the North West province, and to enable practical implementation of the findings and recommendations thereof.

Each section of this document highlights the key priorities on that specific topic as well as the main objectives, the current challenges particular to the province and the actions required to address the relevant matter. Parallel to the finalisation of this plan is the on-going process of formulating an implementation strategy that will focus on assigning particular roles and responsibilities in the implementation of actions and the achievement of key objectives. Specific targets will be set and projects and programmes will be identified to ensure the realisation of certain milestones, enable monitoring and evaluation of the plan and to encourage economic activity and increase employment. The constant focus throughout the plan and in formulating the implementation strategy is to eradicate poverty and to reduce inequality.

### 1.1 THE CONTEXT

The need for the PDP and the implementation strategy arise from the backdrop of the newly revised National Development Plan endorsed by cabinet in September 2012. The plan provides an undisputedly holistic approach toward development, something which has been absent until now at national level. In order however to create an intergovernmental synergy and to ensure that the objectives of the NDP are implemented, the formulation of both the PDP and the Implementation Strategy is required. The primary objective of the PDP as aligned with the NDP can be concluded to fundamentally entail the eradication of poverty and the alleviation of inequality. These aspects affect every other aspect of development and every



aspect of life for the citizens of both the country and the province.

As both a cause and result of these primary problems, the NDP has identified nine specific and predominant challenges that affect the entire country, including the North West province:

1. Too few people work.
2. The quality of school education for black people is poor.
3. Infrastructure is poorly located, inadequate and under-maintained.
4. Spatial divides hobble inclusive development.
5. The economy is unsustainably resource intensive.
6. The public health system cannot meet demand or sustain quality.
7. Public services are uneven and often of poor quality.
8. Corruption levels are high.
9. Society remains divided.

An additional predominant challenge in the North West province, despite that it is not being exclusively unique to the province, is the administration of land in many rural parts of the province. Large portions of land are under the administration of traditional authorities and communal property associations, where individual ownership is limited and tenure security cannot be obtained. The result is that communal agriculture suffers, growth in small-scale farming is slow, large-scale investment attraction across various economic sectors is hampered severely and the rural economy deteriorates. This particular challenge affects portions of the provincial population that are typically most directly affected by exposure to poverty and inequality, i.e. poor rural communities comprising mainly of vulnerable population groups.

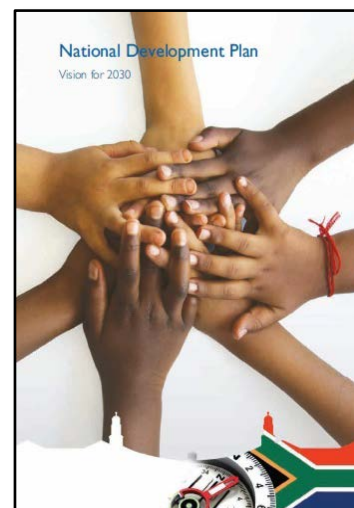
An additional predominant challenge that should therefore be addressed in the North West province is as follows:

#### **11 Land administration under traditional authority limits development**

##### **1.1.1 THE NATIONAL DEVELOPMENT PLAN, 2030**

The National Development Plan provides a vision for South-Africa toward 2030 and outlines a scenario of a better future that continues to build on the successes already achieved since 1994. The vision is built on the notion that South-Africa belongs to all its people and that the future is therefore a collective future. Making it work is everyone's shared responsibility. As such, the North West Provincial Development Plan accepts this vision and subsequently intends to align its objectives accordingly in order to contribute toward achieving a better future for the people of the province as well as the country.

One of the key components of the NDP in both its formulation and its content has been the element of community involvement in order for it to be established as a plan for South-Africa. It essentially comprises a broad strategic framework to guide key choices and actions toward increased quality of life for all. Its success will depend on all South-Africans taking responsibility for the plan, led by the various levels of government (institutional structures), the cabinet and the president.



The NDP sets out its long-term approach in **13 primary themes**, which are as follows:

- Chapter 3 - Economy and Employment
- Chapter 4 - Economic Infrastructure
- Chapter 5 - Environmental Sustainability
- Chapter 6 – An Integrated and Inclusive Rural Economy
- Chapter 7 – Positioning South-Africa in World
- Chapter 8 - Transforming Human Settlement and the National Space Economy
- Chapter 9 - Improving Education, Training and Innovation
- Chapter 10 – Promoting Health
- Chapter 11 - Social Protection
- Chapter 12 - Building Safer Communities
- Chapter 13 - Building a Capable and Developmental State
- Chapter 14 - Fighting Corruption
- Chapter 15 – Transforming Society and Uniting the Country

### 1.1.2 DEVELOPMENT PRIORITY

The approach assumed in the NDP is that progress over the next two decades means doing things differently. Too few tangible benefits have trickled down to the most vulnerable and previously disadvantaged; and the economy has not been able to produce employment-oriented growth. Given the complexity of development, firm choices will have to be made to prioritise the allocation of resources in specific areas to build on competitive advantages, unlock employment potential and to address matters of greatest need. The NDP therefore places priority in the short to medium-term on:

- Raising employment through faster economic growth (Chapter 3 primarily)
- Improving the quality of education, skills development and innovation (Chapter 9 primarily)
- Building the capability of the state to play a developmental, transformative role (Chapter 13 primarily)

In addition to prioritising these elements as part of the developmental approach in the North West province, particular focus will be placed on both the rural economy (due to the predominant rural character of the province) as well as on the upgrading, the provisioning and the maintenance of economic infrastructure as the precondition of overall economic growth and development and for its significant potential to create employment. The province will also prioritise the transformation of human settlements (mainly due to the challenges presented with housing and living conditions in mining communities) and fighting corruption (corruption affects the ability of government to deliver services, discourages investment and prevents business start-ups and business growth). The main development priorities applicable to the North West province therefore are:

- Chapter 3 - Economy and Employment
- Chapter 4 - Economic Infrastructure
- Chapter 5 - An Integrated and Inclusive Rural Economy
- Chapter 6 - Human Settlement and Spatial Transformation
- Chapter 7 - Improving Education, Training and Innovation
- Chapter 10 – Improving Health
- Chapter 12 - Building a Capable and Developmental State
- Chapter 13 - Fighting Corruption



### 1.1.3 THE NEED FOR STRUCTURAL CHANGE

The performance of the North West province, in terms of achieving improved development outcomes and an improved quality of life for its population, has been mixed. Although education levels have improved (based on the number of senior certificates awarded) too few learners progress from primary to secondary school and from secondary school to higher education institutions. The quality of education at every level is also a matter of concern and more needs to be achieved in addressing such a problem. The number of people employed, both in quantity as well as in the percentage of the workforce, has failed to grow despite positive economic growth over the past 16 years, and poverty has remained.

The lack of job opportunities also means that many young people, recent graduates and skilled entrepreneurs are leaving the province in search of better opportunities, placing further strain on growth prospects and poverty reduction.

Despite improvements in access to piped water and electricity, a very large part of the population lives in informal and non-serviced settlements and average household income in the North West remain below the national average. While social grants have provided a safety net for the desperately poor, and for vulnerable groups such as the elderly, inequality have remained very high and large portions of the population still live in poverty. The provincial Human Development Index, which apart from being lower than the national level, has also decreased over the past decade, a time during which the national economy has grown relatively well.

Taking this background into consideration it becomes apparent that structural change is necessary. A change that will see improved socio-economic conditions and quality of life for the poor and the marginalised, better effectiveness in institutional service delivery and governance and increased investment to encourage employment oriented economic growth and development.

Such change toward sustainable development presents tremendous challenges. Important structural changes are needed to the ways societies manage and are managed in terms of their economic, social, institutional, physical and environmental affairs. Strategies for sustainable development are about making and implementing such changes, in a realistic, effective and lasting manner.

Figure 1.1: an approach to change, NDP 2030

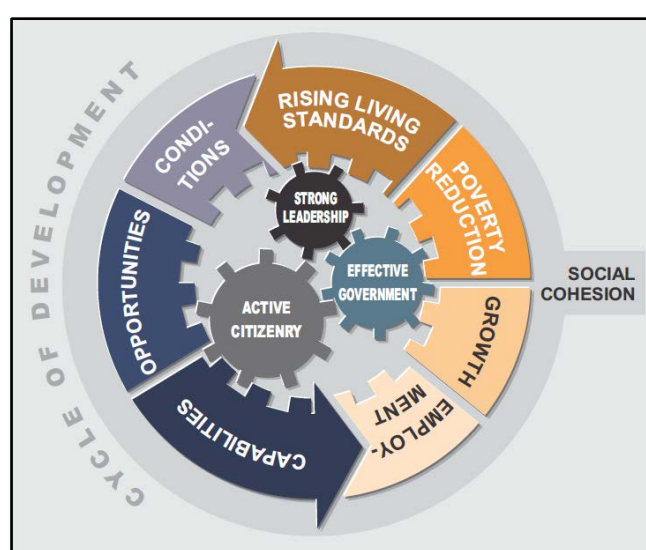
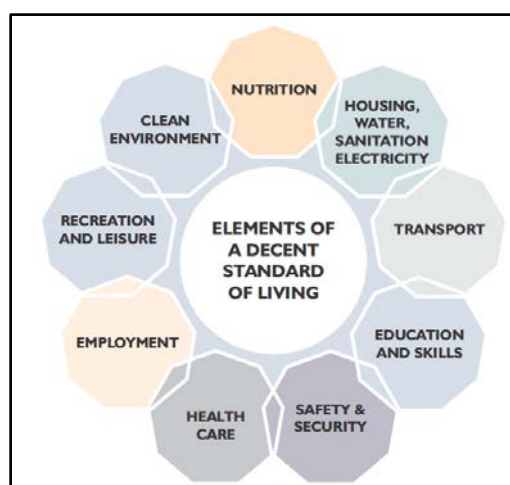


Figure 1.2: elements of a decent standard of living, NDP 2030



Achieving sustainable development will require structural changes and new ways of thinking and working in all dimensions of development, i.e. economic, social, institutional, physical (infrastructure and spatial) and environmental. This will include promoting pro-poor economic growth and reforming fiscal policies which negatively affect the poor or promote environmental damage. In the longer term, regions will have to ensure that their net wealth (including natural, manmade and human capital) remains constant or increases. This will require ensuring that market prices reflect the full social and environmental costs of production and consumption.

Issues of inequity and inequality of access to assets and resources need to be confronted. For example, it may be necessary to reform land tenure policies so as to increase access by disadvantaged and marginalised groups. Equally, it may be important to strengthen social capital and formal safety nets to cope with both external and domestic shocks.

Sustainable development also has important political, institutional and capacity implications. At the national and regional level, it requires cross-sectoral and participatory institutions and integrating mechanisms which can engage governments, civil society and the private sector in developing shared visions, planning and decision making. Governments, corporations and development co-operation agencies will also need to be more open and accountable for their actions. Innovation and investment in actions which promote sustainable development should be encouraged. More generally, economic planning and policy-making will have to become more participatory, prudent and transparent, as well as more long-term-oriented, so as to respect the interests of future generations.

The PDP focused on addressing multiple dimensions of development. These dimensions are informed by a range of sources and will allow for a systematic strategic approach, despite the fact that some themes included in each dimension could potentially be categorised as part of more than one development dimension. This illustrates the integrative nature of the development process. The specific dimensions that will be addressed as well as the main themes included in each are provided in Table 1.1.

Figure 1.3: The dimensions of sustainable development

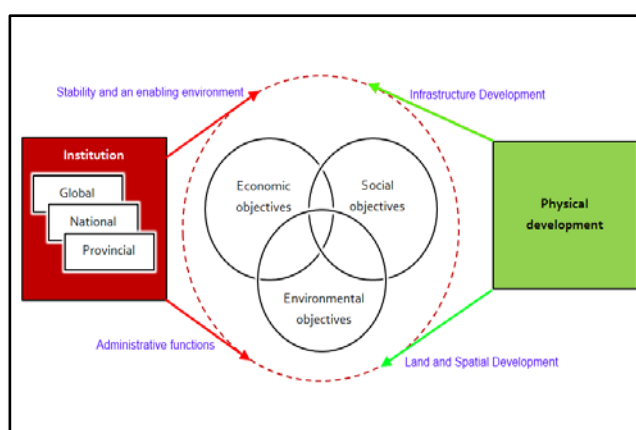


Table 1.1: dimensions of sustainable development

DIMENSION	COMMON THEMES
1. Economic Development	Sector Development; The Rural Economy; Employment and Production Growth; Poverty Alleviation and Investment Attraction.
2. Social Development	Health; Education and Training; Sports, Arts and Culture; Social Protection and Safety; Cohesion, Integration and Vulnerable Groups.
3. Institutional Stability and Development	Capacity and cooperation; Service Delivery; Developmental Policy Making; Innovation; Transparency and Corruption.

DIMENSION	COMMON THEMES
4. Infrastructure Development	Economic infrastructure: Roads and Transport; Energy; Water and Sanitation. Information and Communication Technology (ICT); Housing and Settlements.
5. Land and Spatial Development	Land Administration and Tenure; Location and Access; Communal Space; Integration and Connectivity; Urban Design; Sense of Place; Inclusion.
6. Environmental Sustainability	Low-Carbon; Conservation and Bio-Diversity; Water; Land Rehabilitation; Renewable Energies; Reduce, Re-use and Recycle; Efficiency.

## 1.2. REPORT OUTLINE

The PDP was structured around the key themes included in each development dimension, aiming throughout to address the eight primary challenges applicable to the province in order to eradicate poverty and reduce inequality.

Table 1.2: North West Provincial Development Plan structure

SECTION/THEME	NATIONAL PRIORITY	PROVINCIAL PRIORITY
2. Demographic perspective and trends		
3. Economy and employment	☑	☑
4. Economic infrastructure		☑
5. An integrated and inclusive rural economy		☑
6. Human settlement and spatial transformation		☑
7. Improving education, training and innovation	☑	☑
8. Environmental sustainability		
9. Social protection		
10. Improving health		☑
11. Building safer communities		
12. Building a capable and developmental state		☑
13. Fighting corruption	☑	☑
14. Transforming society and uniting the province		

Table 1.3. provides a summary of the overall targets set out for the PDP.

Table 1.3: overall targets of the Provincial Development Plan

**OVERALL TARGETS OF THE PROVINCIAL DEVELOPMENT PLAN****By 2030:**

- Eliminate income poverty: reduce the percentage of the population living in poverty from 46 per cent to 0 per cent in 2030.
- Reduce inequality: the Gini coefficient should fall from 0.61 to 0.53.
- The targets for poverty reduction and the GINI coefficient compliments the national targets set out for the elimination of poverty and reduction of inequality.
- The unemployment rate should fall from 24 per cent in 2010 to 14 per cent by 2020 and to 6 per cent by 2030. This requires an additional 815 000 jobs. Total employment should rise from 748 000 to 1 563 000.
- The NDP projects that total employment should rise from 13 million to 24 million in South-Africa. 7 per cent of additional jobs that has to be created will be located in the North West province. By 2030 the North West will be responsible for 6.5 per cent of employment in South-Africa.
- The provincial Gross Value Added (GVA) should increase by 2.9 times in real terms. Such growth will require an average annual Gross Value Added (GVA) growth of 5.4 per cent.

**Enabling milestones:**

- Raise per capita income from R 67 700 in 2011 to R 120 000 by 2030.
- The labour force participation rate should increase from 52 per cent to 58 per cent in 2020 and 64 per cent in 2030.
- On average, the dependency ratio (the number of people depending on one wage earner) will decrease from 3.4 to 1.5. A falling dependency ratio will be a central contributor to reducing poverty and inequality.
- Establish a competitive base of infrastructure, human resources and regulatory frameworks.
- Ensure that skilled, technical, professional and managerial posts better reflect the racial,

gender and disability composition of the province.

- Establish effective, safe and affordable public transport.
- Produce sufficient energy to support the industry at competitive prices, ensuring access for poor households, while reducing carbon emissions per unit of power by approximately one-third.
- Ensure that everyone in the province has access to clean running water in their homes.
- Make high-speed broadband internet available to all in the North West province.
- Increase the quality of education so that children have at least two years of pre-school education to ensure that children in grade 3 can read and write.
- Realise a developmental, capable and ethical state that treats citizens with dignity.

**Critical actions:**

- A social compact to reduce poverty and inequality, and raise employment and investment.
- A strategy to address poverty and its impacts by broadening access to employment, improving public transport and raising rural incomes.
- Steps by the state to professionalise public service, strengthen accountability, improve coordination and fight corruption.
- Boost private investment in labour-intensive areas and competitiveness.
- An education accountability chain, with lines of responsibility from state to classroom.
- Ensure that all people have access to clean, potable water and that there is enough water for agriculture and industry, recognising the trade-offs in the use of water.
- New spatial norms and standards – densifying cities, improving transport, locating jobs where people live, upgrading informal settlements and fixing housing market gap





## 2. DEMOGRAPHIC PERSPECTIVE AND TRENDS

### *SALIENT FEATURES*

The provincial population amounts to approximately 3.5 million people and is likely to increase to between 3.9 and 4 million by 2030. This population consist of 1.06 million households, which on average, consist of 3.3 people

The population is dominated by the youth with more than 60 per cent of the population under the age of 34.

Setswana is the predominant language spoken in the province, followed by Afrikaans and Sesotho.

The North West province as a whole has had a positive net migration in recent years. More people are migrating to the province than from the province. Urbanisation toward the larger towns and cities are also very common and municipalities need to improve planning in this regard.

Human development in the province measured according to the human development index that was found to be lower than the national index while the GINI-coefficient remains lower than national levels. The percentage of the provincial population living in poverty conditions was higher than the national average. Based on these development indicators poverty and inequality were concluded to be a reality in the province.



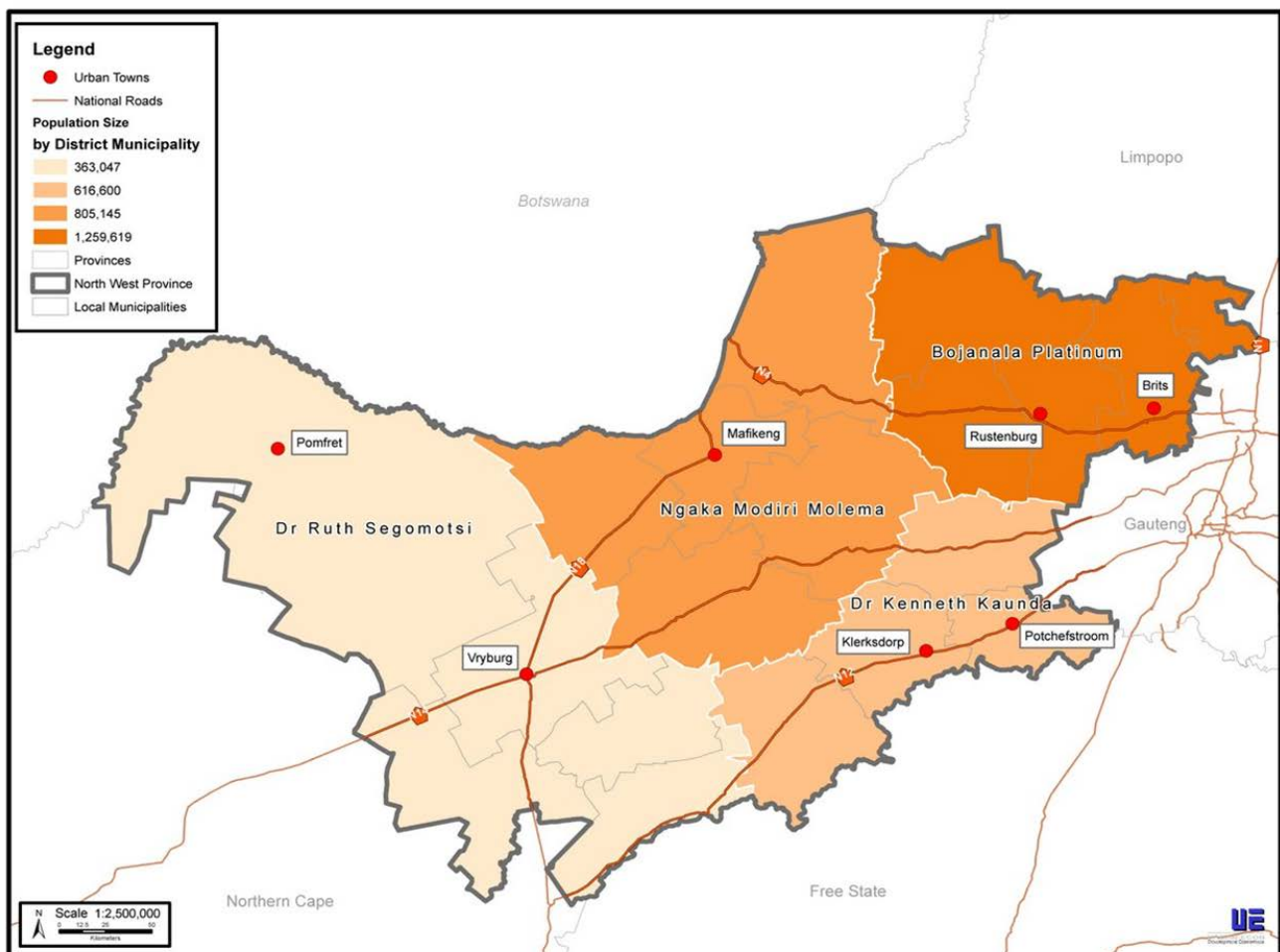
## 2.1. INTRODUCTION

The North West province shares its border with Gauteng (east), Limpopo (north-east), Botswana (north), Free State (south) and the Northern Cape (south west). The capital of the province is Mahikeng. The North West PDP focused primarily on the province by incorporating the characteristics and opportunities of each district municipality and by implication, each local municipality. The province consists of four district municipalities namely:

- Bojanala Platinum District Municipality (BPDM)
- Ngaka Modiri-Molema District Municipality (NMMDM)
- Dr. Ruth Segomotsi Mompati District Municipality (DRSMDM)
- Dr. Kenneth Kaunda District Municipality (DKKDM)

Map 2.1 illustrates the location and scope of each DM and its population, as well as the location of the main urban centres.

**Map 2.1: district municipal demarcation, 2013**



Source: NWPSDF drawn by Urban-Econ, 2012<sup>i</sup>

A comparison among Census 2011 and the previous censuses (1996 and 2001) revealed that the North West province was the most severely affected by demarcation changes on provincial and municipal levels since 2001 (Stats SA, 2012<sup>ii</sup>). The North West province was decreased in size by 11 349 square km from 116 231



square kilometres to 104 882 square kilometres. Most of the decrease was absorbed by the Northern Cape Province. The boundary changes that took place in the province since 2001 are as follows:

- between the Northern Cape and the North West province:
  - ✓ the Ga Segonyana and Phokwane municipalities were cross boundary municipalities between the Northern Cape and the North West in 2001. Both municipalities were fully allocated to the Northern Cape
  - ✓ the Kagisano Municipality (2001) was divided into the Kagisano/Molopo Municipality and the Joe Morolong Municipality, with the former portion now in the North West province and the latter now in the Northern Cape province
  - ✓ Moshaweng Municipality (now part of the Joe Morolong Municipality) was incorporated in full in the Northern Cape province
- Between the North West province and Gauteng:
  - ✓ the Merafong City Municipality (2001) was a cross-boundary local municipality between North West and Gauteng and was transferred to the Gauteng province
  - ✓ the West Rand (DMA) Municipality (2001) was not aligned to the then provincial boundary and therefore was absorbed fully into the Mogale City Municipality
  - ✓ the City of Tshwane Metropolitan Municipality was a cross-boundary municipality between Gauteng and the North West province. The portions adjacent to the Moretele and Madibeng municipalities were allocated to Gauteng in full
- Between the North West province and Limpopo:
  - ✓ Limpopo transferred a portion of the the Bela-Bela Municipality to the North West Moretele Municipality. In turn, the North West lost a portion of the Moretele Municipality to the Bela-Bela Municipality in Limpopo, based on the current provincial boundaries

### 2.2. POPULATION AND GROWTH TRENDS

The North West province has a unique and diverse socio-demographic composition. The PDP aims to incorporate and acknowledge the unique population characteristics of the province into each policy formulation step. This sub-section of the report therefore provides an analysis of the socio-economic character of the provincial population, in



order to enable accurate assumptions, conclusions and recommendations. This will allow for the alignment of the needs of the population with the policy framework aimed at guiding future development. The socio-demographic analysis should be considered in combination with the provincial spatial and economic assessments, in order to provide a comprehensive development perspective (status quo). The success of any development planning depends to a great extent on the quality of analysis of all these elements.

The composition of the population plays a cardinal role in the development of any geographical area. Population growth and trends affects the economic, social and physical development within an area through the provision of and demand for goods and services.





Table 2.1: population size, 2012

LEVEL	Geographical Location	Population (End 2011)	Historical Growth rates			
			1995-2000	2000-2005	2005-2010	1995-2010
NATIONAL	South-Africa	51,769,798	1.7%	1.3%	1.2%	1.4%
PROVINCIAL	North West	3,509,875	1.5%	1.0%	0.9%	1.1%
DISTRICT	BPDM	1,507,492	1.9%	1.3%	1.4%	1.5%
	NMMDM	842,677	1.6%	1.1%	1.2%	1.3%
	DRSMDM	463,774	0.5%	-0.2%	-1.9%	-0.5%
	DKKDM	695,932	1.7%	1.1%	1.4%	1.4%

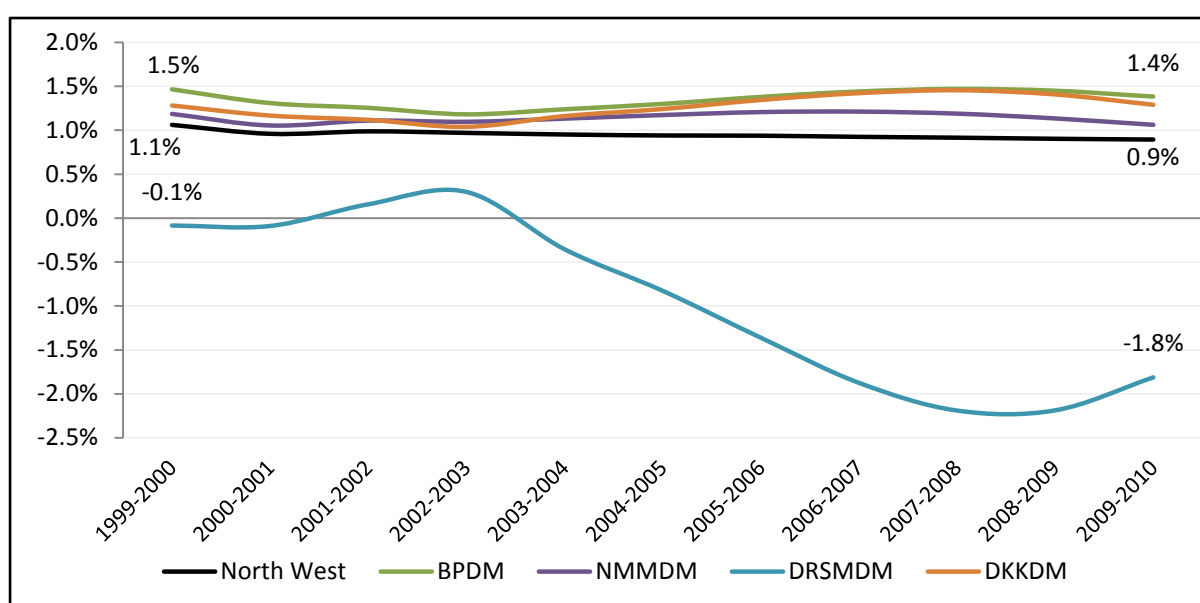
Source: Stats SA, 2012 -2013

Table 2.1 indicates that the population of the North West province amounts to approximately 3.51 million people, of which nearly 50 per cent is located in the BPDM (43%). The NMMDM constitutes 24 per cent of the total population while the DRSMDM and the DKKDM representing 13 per cent and 20 per cent of the population respectively.

The population of the North West province accounted for 7 per cent of the national population by the end of 2011. This is a relatively small percentage of the national population considering there are only nine provinces. The population of South-Africa is concentrated around the metropolitan regions as a result of employment opportunities and the provision of goods, services and infrastructure in these areas

The following figure illustrates the average annual population growth rate between 2000 and 2011 for the province as well as for each DM. In 2001 the provincial population amounted to 3.1 million which increased over the following ten years to 3.5 million. As can be seen from Figure 2.1 all the district municipalities had experienced an increase in the population numbers, apart from the DRSMDM.

Figure 2.1: population growth trends, 2000 – 2011



Source: Stats SA, 2012 -2013



The population growth rate for the North West Province (similar to South-Africa) has decreased slightly over the past ten years. The district municipality growth rates show an increase in the BPDM and the DKKDM between 2004 and 2008. The DRSMDM shows an exceptional decrease between 2003 and 2009 from 0.3 per cent to -2.2 per cent. The decline in the population growth rate is a result of two main factors. The first factor is the demarcation changes to the Kagisano LM in 2006. The changes removed approximately 7,000 individuals from the DRSMDM.

The second factor affecting the population rate decline is the out-migration from the DRSMDM to the rest of South-Africa, especially the metropolitan areas. Out-migration of people is generally associated with a lack of economic growth and the concomitant loss of job opportunities in a region.

### FACTORS AFFECTING POPULATION GROWTH

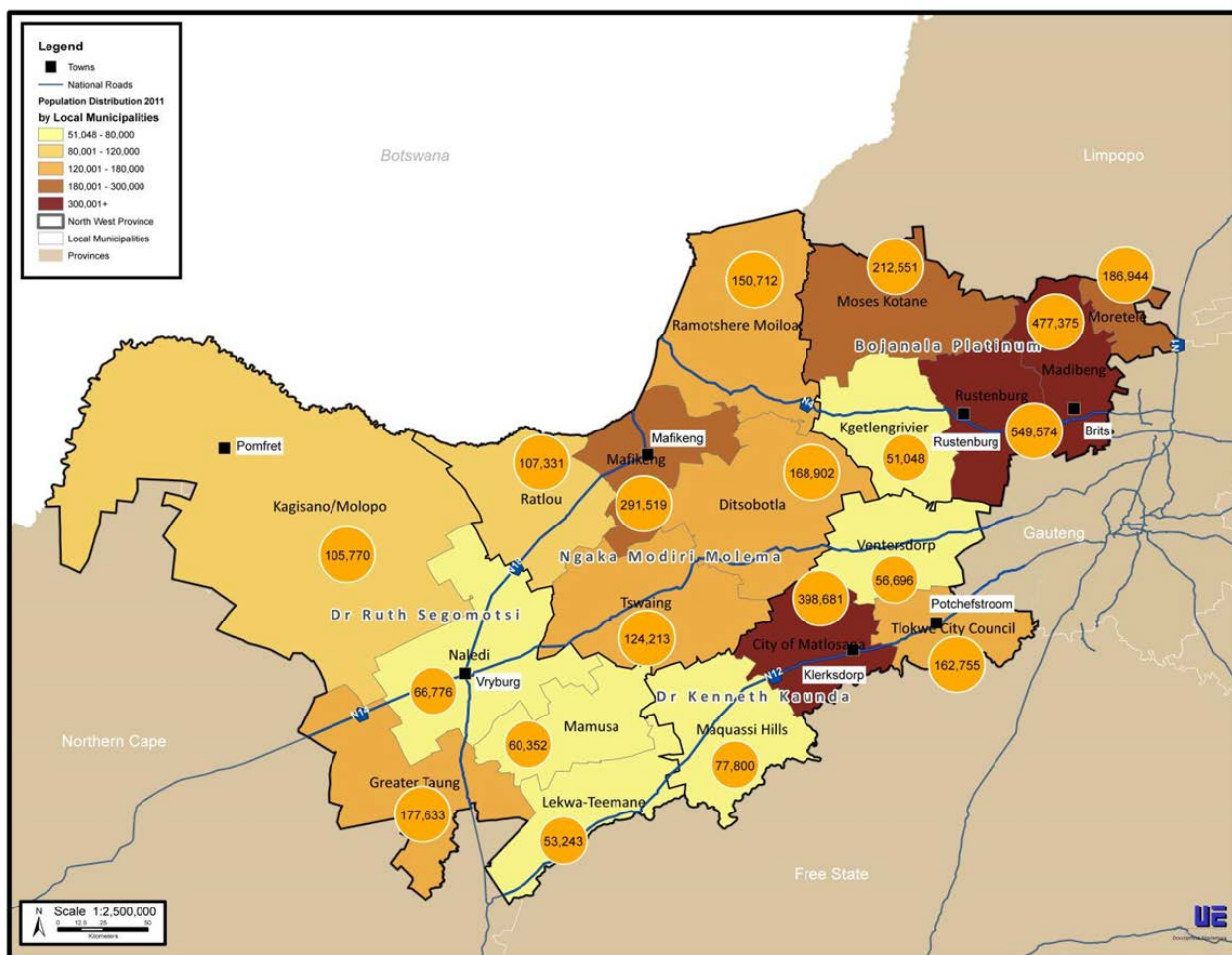
Population growth has two components: natural growth and man-made growth. Natural growth is determined by birth and death rates, while man-made population growth is a function of migration patterns. A variety of factors impact upon birth and death rates, the most common being:

- nutrition
- access to medical care
- sanitation
- access to immunisation
- fertility rates
- age structure of population
- standards of living
- status of women
- use of birth control measures
- HIV/AIDS

Map 2.2 illustrates the population distribution within the North West province for each local municipality.



Map 2.2: population distribution, 2011



Source: Stats SA drawn by Urban Econ, 2012-2013

Taking the population growth rate factors discussed above into consideration a number of scenarios could be created with regard to future population growth. The scenarios are based on growth rate estimates for the North West province guided by the NDP (2012). The main parameters on which the various scenarios are based include fertility rates, provincial migration and life expectancy. The results are illustrated in the table below.

Table 2.2: population growth scenarios for 2030

SCENARIO	ANNUAL GROWTH RATE	TOTAL POPULATION 2030
Scenario 1: Rapid Economic Development	0.58%	3,918,939
Scenario 2: Current Economic Development	0.60%	3,934,828
Scenario 3: Slowing Economic Development	0.60%	3,929,534
Scenario 4: Negative Economic Development	0.69%	4,003,491
Scenario 5: Current Economic Development with Migration Shock	0.81%	4,092,829

Source: Urban-Econ calculations based on Census 2011 data, 2012 -2013

In Table 2.2 it was indicated that the annual provincial growth rate averaged 1.4 per cent from 1995 to 2010 and 1.2 per cent from 2005 to 2010. Therefore, it can be said that the scenarios above allow for conservative



population growth estimations. In scenario one, population growth will be at the lowest rate towards 2030. This will result from decreased fertility rates and increased life expectancy. Scenario five will result in the highest population in 2030 that illustrates the possible effect of migration into the North West province. Migration has demographic, social and economic consequences at the point of origin as well as the point of destination and therefore migration statistics in combination with other growth factors should inform government planning.

### 2.2.1. HOUSEHOLD DYNAMICS

The size of the population and the number of households are key considerations in determining the current and future needs of the North West province population. These needs are utilised in calculating for instance the demand for infrastructural and social services, including water, sanitation, electricity, housing and health care. The North West province is estimated to have **1,062,005 households** and a smaller average household size (3.3) than in the rest of South-Africa (3.6). From Table 2.3 it is evident that the rate at which the number of households increased from 1995 to 2010, has been slowing down, much similar to the trend found in terms of the population growth rate. The increase in household numbers coupled with an increase in disposable income levels could result in greater consumption, which in turn stimulates local production and as a result the local and provincial economies.

**Table 2.3: household numbers, size and historical growth, 2012**

Geographical Location	Household Numbers (2011)	Average Household Size (2011)	Historical Growth Rates			
			1995-2000	2000-2005	2005-2010	1995-2010
South-Africa	14,449,831	3.6	4.0%	2.1%	1.0%	2.4%
North West	1,062,005	3.3	5.4%	2.4%	0.6%	2.8%
BPDM	501,696	3.0	5.7%	2.5%	1.2%	3.1%
NMMDM	226,997	3.7	5.0%	1.9%	0.3%	2.4%
DRSMDM	125,260	3.7	3.8%	1.8%	-0.7%	1.6%
DKKDM	208,052	3.3	5.9%	2.7%	0.8%	3.1%

Source: Stats SA, 2012 -2013

Besides the population increase, the main factors that affect household size includes, the change in age structure and incidence rate, or the likelihood of people of a certain age to start new households. The significant difference between the rate of household growth and population growth, though, is usually attributed to the change in age structure. It has also been observed (Table 2.3) that over the years the average household size of certain areas has decreased. This decrease is usually quite significant in the more urbanised areas, such as the DKKDM.

In highly urbanised areas, among others, the age structure and education levels differ from less developed areas which reflect directly in the average household size trends of the urbanised areas. The smaller average household size in the DKKDM and the BPDM will place increased pressure on authorities for the provision of infrastructure and social services. In the NMMDM and the DRSMDM the demand for infrastructure and social services will be proportionally lower than the rest of the province.

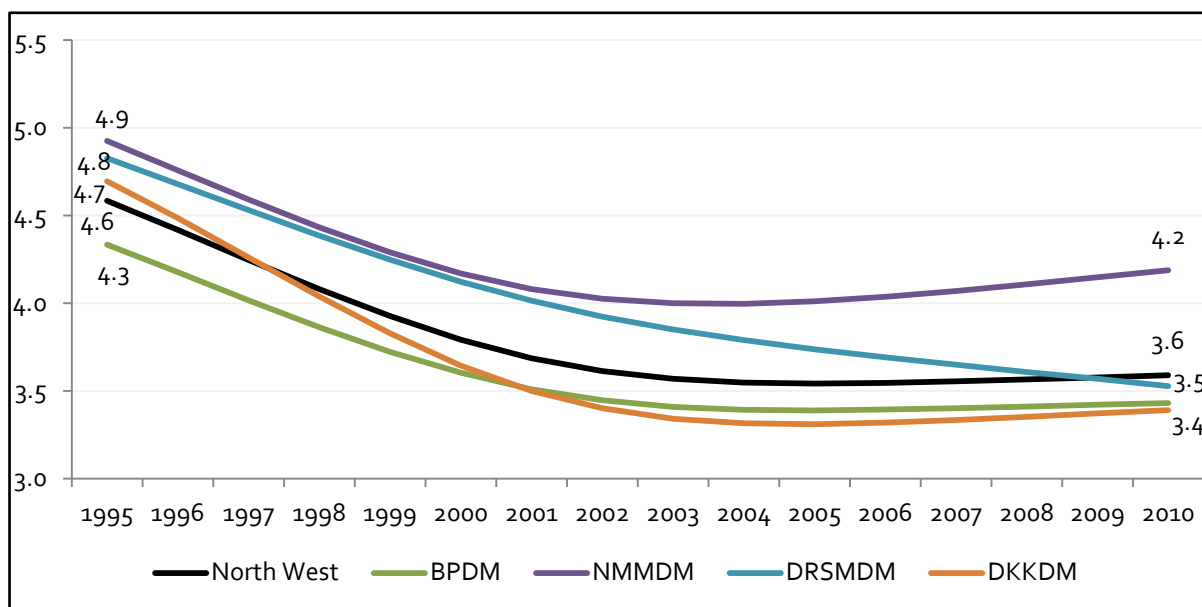
A continued increase in household numbers coupled with the increase in disposable income levels would likely result in greater consumption, which in turn stimulates local production and as a result the local and provincial economies.



Unemployment will have a bigger impact in the NMMDM and the DRSMDM as a result of the larger household sizes evident in these municipalities.

Figure 2.2 illustrates the household sizes on a provincial and district level from 1995 to 2010.

**Figure 2.2: household size dynamics (1995-2010)**



Source: Stats SA, 2012 -2013

### 2.2.2. POPULATION STRUCTURE

The age and gender composition of a population can have a considerable impact on demographic and socio-economic conditions, both present and future. A population pyramid graphically displays the age and gender composition of a population by showing numbers or proportions of males and females in each age group; the pyramid provides a clear picture of a population's characteristics. The sum total of all the age-gender groups in the pyramid equals 100 per cent of the population.

#### IMPLICATION

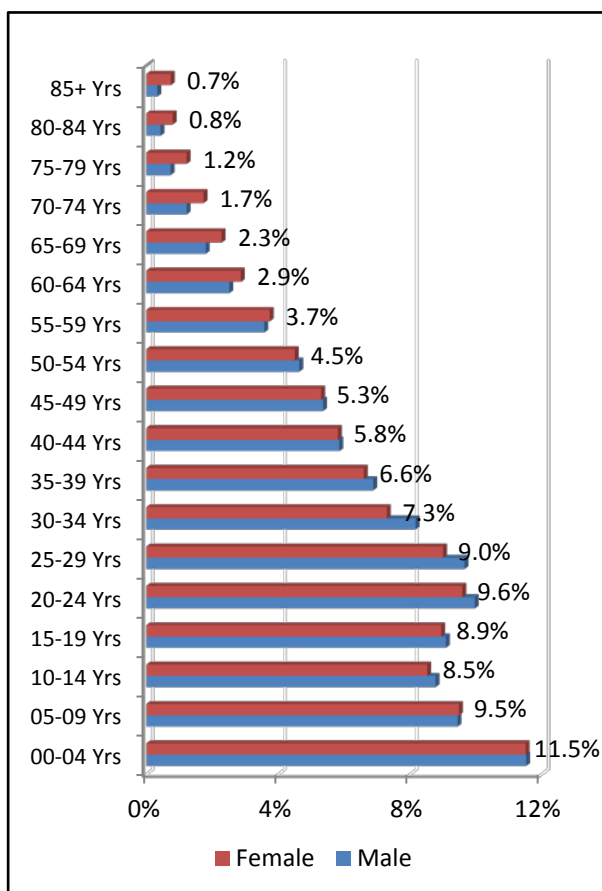
Demographic characteristics have a direct influence on the socio-economic conditions in an area and should be taken into account for future planning. Aspects that are directly affected include for instance the number of hospitals and clinics, educational facilities, services infrastructure and housing and civil institutions.

From the preceding paragraphs it is evident that the growth rate of the population as well as the number of households within the North West province has been slowing down. An important contributor to this trend is the out-migration of people in search of better economic and employment opportunities. Therefore employment and similar development initiatives needs to focus on employment creation for the low-income groups as well as aiming to retain skilled labour force and thus focusing on the creation of employment that meets the needs of the skilled labourers as well.

The population pyramid for the North West province in 2011 is presented in Figure 2.3. The population pyramid is an expanding population graph displaying high birth rates, falling death rates in the middle age groups and a slightly longer than usual life expectancy.



Figure 2.3: age and gender composition, 2012



Source: Stats SA, 2012 -2013

According to the South-African Health Review (SAHR) for 2011 the life expectancy for females are higher than for males in the North West province. The average life expectancy for females is 67.7 years while the average male lives 61.5 years. The female and male life expectancy in the province is higher than the national average of 61.7 years and 55.2 years respectively. The higher life expectancy among females can clearly be observed in the population pyramid for the province.

From the age of 40 years upwards a bigger portion of each age group consists of females than males. There are a higher percentage of males aged between 15 to 34 years as a result of male workers migrating to the province to work on the mines.

The North West province further has a large number of inhabitants in the younger age groups, suggesting an expansive profile.

### 2.2.3. DEPENDENCY RATIO

Another development indicator derivable from the population structure is the dependency ratio in the province.

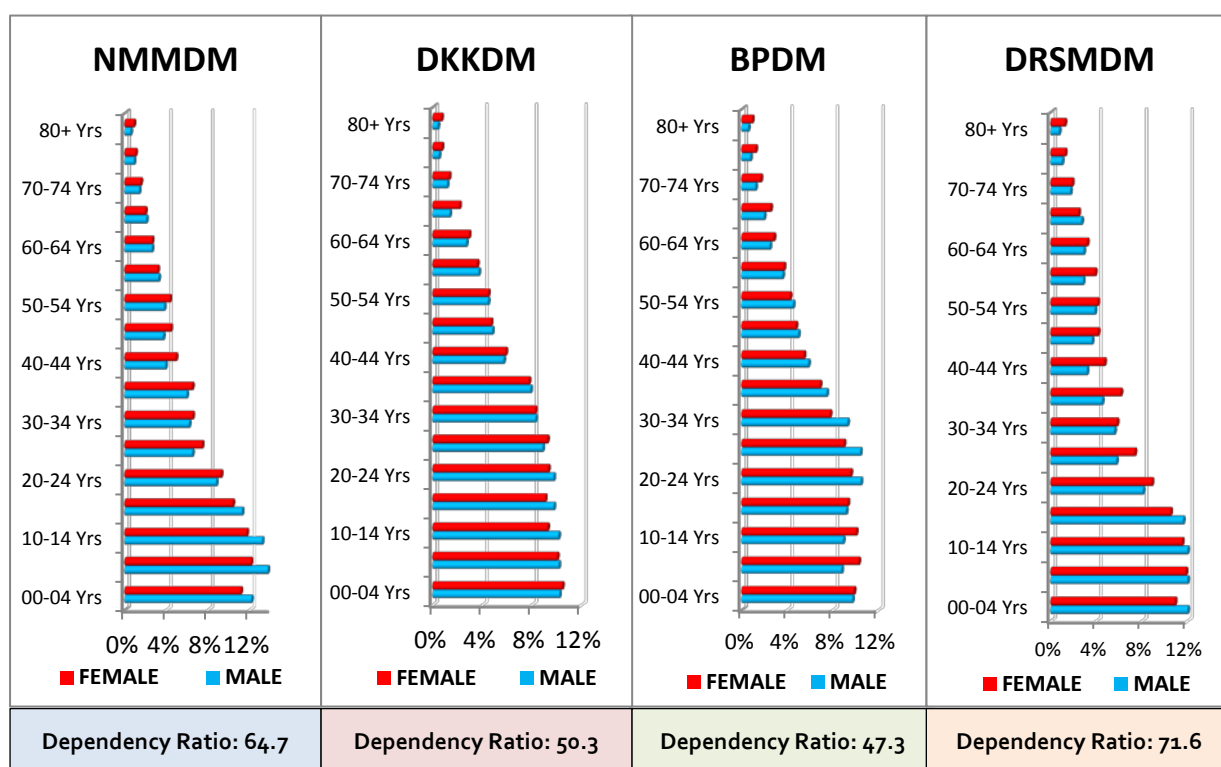
The dependency ratio is made up by the number of people every 100 persons in the economically active age group (15-64) will have to cater for. In 2011 every 100 persons in the economically active years (15- 64) were expected to cater for 57.8 people in the North West province.

Figure 2.4 provides an overview of the dependency ration in each DM as well as the age and gender structure of each region.

Life expectancy in the North West province is higher than the national average. The female population in North West is bigger than the male population especially in the older age groups.



Figure 2.4: age and gender composition and dependency ratio, 2012



Source: Stats SA, 2012 -2013

It is evident that the population composition differs between the district municipalities of the North West province. A high dependency ratio is evident in the NMMDM (64.7) and DRSMMDM (71.6). The high dependency ratios are reflected in the age and gender composition of the municipalities. A large section of the NMMDM and DRSMMDM population is aged between 0 - 14 years. There is a steep decline in population numbers from the age of 20 years and above, especially between the ages of 20 and 54 years. There are also considerably fewer males than females present within these age groups. This is an indication of a lack of employment opportunities within these two DMs. Male workers typically migrate to other areas in search of employment opportunities.

There are more males in the BPDM and DKKDM in the economically active age group (15–65 years) than females, mainly due to the presence of migrant workers from other regions; in contrast, the NMMDM and DRSMMDM have a higher female-male ratio in this age group, reflecting the absence of males. These males are ostensibly migrant workers present in other provinces or other DMs. These two observations also have a direct bearing on the dependency ratio, meaning the number of persons supported by every economically active person.



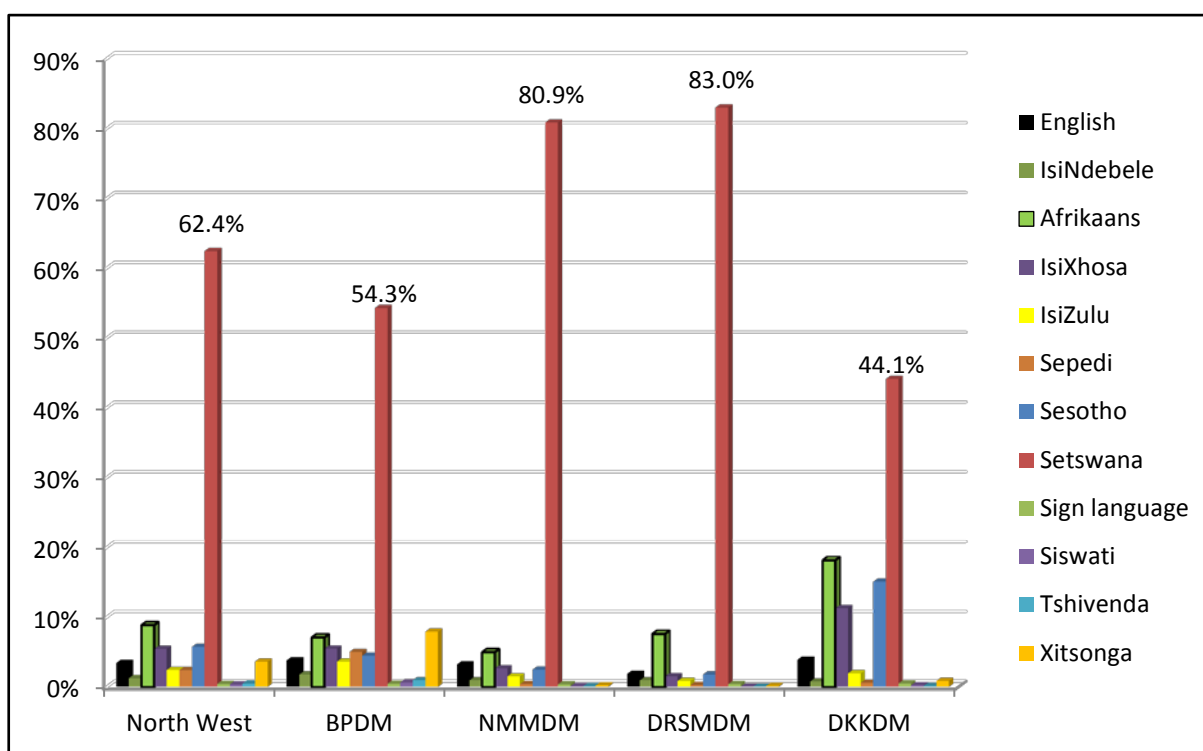


### 2.2.4. LANGUAGE

An additional consideration into the socio-demographic character of the province is its language structure. The NDP identifies language as an important influential factor, shaping the society through education and social cohesion.

It can be concluded from Figure 2.5 that Setswana is the most widely spoken language in the province followed by Afrikaans and IsiXhosa. Afrikaans features most prominently in the DKKDM in which the main campus of the North West University is located.

Figure 2.5: languages spoken in the North West province, 2012



Source: Stats SA, 2012 -2013

Setswana features the strongest in the more rural DMs of the province (NMMDM and DRSDM), while IsiXhosa features strongly in the BPDM and the DKKDM where many migrant workers from the Eastern Cape work in the mining industry.

### IMPLICATION

While each home language of the North West province must be cherished and protected, English proficiency should be promoted. A transition to introduce English as the 'language of learning and teaching' should be promoted. Competence in English will expose the North West population to a wide range of possible opportunities and increase the probability of the population improving its current social, physical and economic situation.

Those in the North West for whom an African language is not a mother tongue should be encouraged to develop at least a conversational competency in one of these languages. The focus in the North West should be on Setswana since it is the dominant African language in the province.



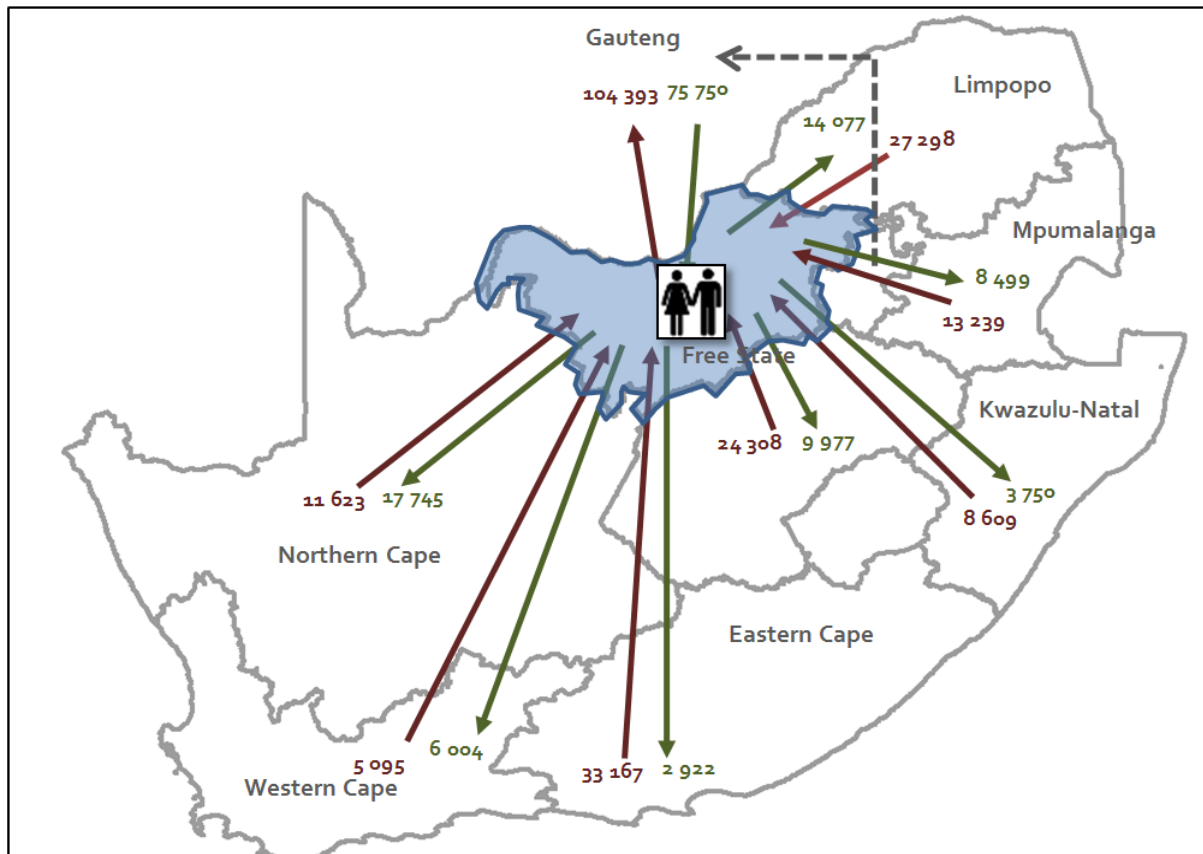


## 2.2.5. MIGRATION

Migration in the past has been due to a variety of causes including wars, lack of employment opportunities in areas of origin, political conflicts and natural disasters. Current migration in South-Africa is predominantly economically motivated.

Map 2.3 illustrates the migration patterns in and out of the North West province based on Census 2011 data.

**Map 2.3:** net migration (province of enumeration by previous province of residence), 2011



Source: Stats SA, 2012 -2013

The North West province has had an overall inflow of 199,089 people compared to an overall outflow of 167,367. The single largest number of people moving into the North West province originates from the Gauteng province (75,750). Apart from the Gauteng province, the North West province attracts migrants from the Eastern Cape, Limpopo and Free State provinces. The Gauteng province attracted the most migrants from the North West province with 104,393 migrants. Other popular destinations for migrants from the North West province are Limpopo and the Northern Cape.

The North West province as a whole has had a positive net migration in recent years. According to the 2011 Census, 31,722 more people migrated to the North West province than from the province.

A study conducted on the settlement and migration patterns of the North West province (EO Udjo, CJ van Aardt, AN Moshoeu. 2007) revealed the following to be the main characteristics of migrants to the North West province:

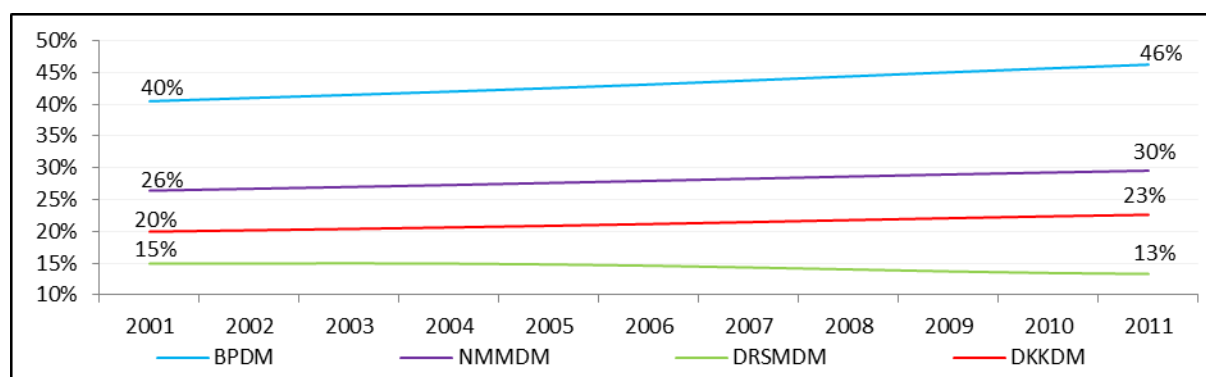


- Migrants into the North West province tend to be dominated by persons aged 20-49 with the majority concentrated in the age group, 25-34
- Proportion of migrants with a university degree is very low, constituting only 3 per cent of the migrants as of 2007. Thus, the majority of the migrants (about 91 %) into the North West province are persons with tertiary qualifications lower than a certificate or diploma
- The majority of migrants (52.7%) in 2007 were single; and predominantly male (55%)
- The out-migrants from the province were found to be mostly highly skilled and economically active in the formal sector.

Migration has demographic, social and economic consequences at the point of origin as well as the point of destination and therefore migration statistics should inform government planning. Unfortunately, poor understanding of migration and settlement patterns and a dearth of data regarding where, who and why people are moving to and from the North West province has the potential to hamper optimal development and service delivery planning and implementation.

Additional to migration to and from the North West province, migration within the province also plays a large role in the demographic composition of the region. It is particularly urbanisation which influences population patterns on local level within the province. Urbanisation entails migration patterns from rural areas to urban built up areas. Urbanisation results in among others an increased demand for land, services and goods in urban areas placing pressure on local authorities to meet these growing demands. The figure below illustrates how the provincial population has become increasingly concentrated in the urbanised areas of the province.

**Figure 2.6:** percentage of population residing in urban areas (2001-2011)



Source: Stats SA, 2012 -2013

The process of urbanisation is likely to continue and intensify the pressure on the urban environment and authorities in these areas.

### IMPLICATION

The migration reality in the North West province includes negative impacts such as an increased development burden, a loss of highly skilled, medium to high income and entrepreneurial out-migrants and the gain of numerous lower skilled, low-income, non-entrepreneurial in-migrants (Udjo, van Aardt & Moshoeu, 2007<sup>iii</sup>). Positive impacts include the consumption expenditure multipliers on aggregate demand and employee remuneration brought about by the in-migrants who entered the province. These positive effects will be reliant on the socio-economic profile of the in-migrants compared to those migrating from the province.



These impacts have the following key implications on development in the North West province:

- The first and foremost implication of migration is that the province loses a large share of its human capital investment made through education and training. The loss of human capital could have been highly beneficial in terms of economic growth, entrepreneurship and innovation in the province.
- An extra developmental burden is created for the province due to the fact that migrants entering the province are less skilled and poorer than those leaving the province.
- A further economic implication of migration is that prosperous people leaving the province constitute a different type of consumer than poorer migrants entering the province. A significant loss of high-end consumers has a strong impact on aggregate demand, which in turn has implications for GVA growth in the province.
- The provincial tax base is also affected by the out-migration of skilled people. Through out-migration there is a decrease in the tax base and the availability of funds to render the services government are obliged to. This is especially a challenge on municipal level.
- A final economic implication is that existing economies of scale for a number of products and services in the province are negatively impacted on, while new economies of scale are brought about. With a larger pool of skilled people leaving the province, non-food services and product economies of scale are negatively impacted on due to less people being able to afford vehicles, furniture, appliances, hotels, restaurants, etc. A greater demand for basic products is being created by less skilled, less affluent migrants entering the province.

As indicated above, Gauteng is the main receiving province of migrants from the North West province. The Gauteng province surpasses the North West province in a number of key development indicators and is therefore a more attractive option to people seeking employment opportunities and improved living conditions. The creation and **stimulation of economic opportunities** within the province should be made priority to increase the attractiveness of the province in order to retain its population, especially young entrepreneurs and individuals with specialised skills who can contribute to the economy of the province. This will replace the current negative leverage effect resulting from highly skilled residents leaving the province to be replaced by lower skilled individuals.

Regarding urbanisation, there is a demand for the provision of bulk services (including housing and formal tenure) in and around the major urban areas of the North West province, particularly in areas with high urbanisation rates such as Rustenburg, Brits, Klerksdorp and Potchefstroom. In many instances the poor (often unemployed) is forced to settle in unsafe, unhealthy and often dangerous environments. Therefore the delivery of these services should also be made a priority within the province to ensure that the province can retain its population and workforce, and also ensure equal access, especially for those people living in unsafe and unhealthy environments.

### 2.3. VULNERABLE GROUPS

The vulnerable groups within a society include children, the youth, women and the elderly. Special provision and planning has to be made to accommodate and protect these groups within a society. This section provides a brief overview of the social profile of the respectable groups in the North West province.



### 2.3.1. CHILDREN

The vast majority of children in South-Africa live in poverty and are faced with considerable inequalities that continue to inhibit their access to better quality of life, enhanced educational levels, improved health outcomes and access to opportunities. Children are defined by the Constitution of the Republic of South-Africa as 'individuals under the age of 18 years'. Based on this definition, 36.8 per cent of the total North West population can be considered as children. Approximately 6.9 per cent of the children living in South-Africa are located in the North West province. The majority of children in the North West province are black African (93.9%). The rest of the provincial child population comprises of 1.8 per cent coloured, 0.1 per cent Indian or Asian and 4.1 per cent white children. The table below provides an overview of the demographics and sociological composition of the child population in the North West province.

**Table 2.4:** child demographics in the North West province and South-Africa (2010)

PARAMETER	NORTH WEST	SOUTH-AFRICA
% who are orphaned (both parents have died)	4.7%	4.7%
% living with both parents	29.3%	32.6%
% living in child-headed households	0.4%	0.5%
% living in poverty conditions	69.3%	65.1%
% living without employed adult	36.6%	35.1%
% living in household that reported hunger	16.9%	12.9%

Source: Stats SA social profile of vulnerable groups in South Africa, 2012<sup>iv</sup>

It can be concluded from the table above that orphans of which both parents have died represents 4.7 per cent of the child population in the North West province. Only 29.3 per cent of children living in the North West province constantly live with both their biological parents. Black African children are least likely to live with both their parents, while Indian children are most likely to do so. These demographic patterns are quite common in most African cultures where an expanded view of parenthood and the raising of children exist. Uncles and aunts are often represented as mother or father figures and having children raised by grandparents are very common.

Less than 1 per cent of households in the North West province are headed by (or consist of only) individuals younger than 18 years. Children are affected by poverty in the North West province. More than two thirds of children living in the North West province (69.3%) live in poverty conditions. These provincial patterns show a close resemblance to the distribution of children living in households where one or more adult is employed indicating the relationship between income poverty and employment. Children living in households without any employed adults are more vulnerable to hunger than children living in households that contain at least one employed adult.

### 2.3.2. YOUTH

The youth forms a vital component in the drive towards the development of any region. The youth represents new entrants into the country's labour force and serve as the basis for future demographic growth. The youth can therefore be either a major source of provincial development, or serious social conflict. The role of the youth in the North West province will depend on the success with which they are incorporated into the labour market and other social structures. A number of different definitions for the youth are being used globally. The United Nations defines the youth as people between the age of 14 and 24, while the Black African Youth Charter defines youth as those between the age of 15 and 34 (Stats SA, 2012). The National Youth Policy



2009-2014 on the other hand describes young people as men and women falling within the age group of 14 and 35 years. The majority of the information on the social profiling of the youth were obtained and interpreted from Stats South-Africa, which represented information on the youth aged between 15 and 34 years, therefore this definition is used. The population composition of the youth in the North West province is very similar to the child composition. The youth population comprises of 93.6 per cent black Africans, 1.4 per cent coloured, 0.3 per cent Indian or Asian and 4.8 per cent white people. The table below summarises the key characteristics in terms of the youth within the North West province.

**Table 2.5: summary of youth demographics in the North West province and South-Africa (2010)**

	AGE	NORTH WEST	SOUTH-AFRICA
% households headed by youth	15-24	4.0%	6.3%
	25-34	13.3%	20.8%
% living in poverty conditions	15-24	63.3%	60.2%
	25-34	44.9%	45.8%
% living in households with inadequate access to food	15-24	44.0%	27.3%
	25-34	33.0%	23.4%

Source: Stats SA social profile of vulnerable groups in South Africa, 2012 -2013

It is evident from the different age categories that the youth are not homogeneous. Household members are often more vulnerable to poverty and unemployment when living in households in which young members are forced to take on responsibility for themselves and their siblings as a result of the death or absence of both their parents. Households headed by younger individuals are more likely to be single or single-generation households than those headed by older individuals; these households are also more likely to contain other non-related members. Households headed by younger individuals are also more likely to have experienced hunger than households headed by older individuals. The following paragraphs provide a more in-depth discussion of the different demographic indicators identified in Table 2.5

## *a. Households headed by youth*

The spread of HIV/Aids, civil strife and other fatal diseases (i.e. tuberculosis) has led to a number of youth headed households in South-Africa, especially in the rural areas. In youth headed households, children are forced to drop out of school to care for younger siblings or sick parents in the households. In most cases, the youth needs to manage the household with little or no resources, especially in terms of access to food. South-Africa's household structure or typologies have changed since the advent of the HIV/Aids epidemic. This epidemic has restructured how households are maintained. The National Youth Policy 2009-2014, , states that the youth in youth headed households (probably the younger households) are often forced to take on responsibility for themselves and their siblings as a result of the death or absence of their parents and that they are therefore more vulnerable to abuse, exploitation and abandoning school.

According to Stats SA the percentage of households headed by youth, aged between 15-24 years, amounted to an average of approximately 6.6 per cent between 2005 and 2011, whilst the households headed by youth aged between 25 to 34 years, decreased slightly from 22.0 per cent in 2005 to 20.8 per cent in 2011. These figures, irrespective of their stability and/or decline, indicate a significant number of young people now heading households in South-Africa.

The percentage of households headed by youth aged between 15 and 24 within the North West province amounted to 4.0 per cent in 2011, which was far less than that of the other provinces, with the Western Cape being an exception. Although the percentage of youth headed households in the North West increased from 2010 to 2011, the average decline (6.8%) over the period of 2005 to 2011 was higher than any of the other



provinces and much higher than that of the country. While the trend in terms of older youth headed households (25-34) was similar across most provinces, the largest percentage was noted in Gauteng (23.7%) and the lowest percentage in the North West (13.3%), in 2011.

**Table 2.6:** percentage of households headed by youth aged 15-24 and 25-34, by province, 2005-2011

Province	2005	2006	2007	2008	2009	2010	2011	Growth Rate (2005-2011)
15-24 Years								
<b>North West</b>	<b>6.1</b>	<b>4.6</b>	<b>5.6</b>	<b>4.4</b>	<b>3.8</b>	<b>3.9</b>	<b>4.0</b>	<b>-6.8</b>
Western Cape	3.2	4.1	5.1	5.1	4.2	4.1	3.7	2.4
Eastern Cape	7.6	8.9	8.0	7.4	5.7	7.3	7.5	-0.2
Northern Cape	6.0	5.0	4.8	4.3	5.5	5.8	4.8	-3.7
Free State	8.8	8.4	7.9	7.2	6.7	7.2	6.8	-4.2
KwaZulu-Natal	7.8	7.9	7.4	6.3	5.5	6.8	6.8	-2.3
Gauteng	5.5	5.9	6.3	6.0	5.2	5.7	5.0	-1.6
Mpumalanga	8.3	8.5	8.6	7.4	7.7	9.1	7.8	-1.0
Limpopo	10.6	10.1	10.8	10.9	10.1	10.8	11.1	0.8
<b>South-Africa</b>	<b>6.9</b>	<b>7.1</b>	<b>7.2</b>	<b>6.6</b>	<b>5.9</b>	<b>6.6</b>	<b>6.3</b>	<b>-1.5</b>
25-34 Years								
<b>North West</b>	<b>16.8</b>	<b>17.2</b>	<b>15.2</b>	<b>15.5</b>	<b>15.2</b>	<b>14.2</b>	<b>13.3</b>	<b>-3.8</b>
Western Cape	24.2	22.7	21.1	20.5	20.8	20.4	20.4	-2.8
Eastern Cape	17.5	16.2	17.1	18.1	20.2	18.6	18.6	1.0
Northern Cape	19.9	20.5	20.3	20.9	19.4	19.2	20.2	0.2
Free State	20.5	20.5	20.5	21.1	21.3	20.5	20.8	0.2
KwaZulu-Natal	20.7	20.7	21.3	22.5	23.3	22.0	22.2	1.2
Gauteng	27.6	26.7	25.4	24.8	24.8	23.6	23.7	-2.5
Mpumalanga	22.5	22.1	21.8	22.8	22.4	20.7	21.9	-0.4
Limpopo	18.5	19.0	18.2	18.1	19.0	18.4	17.7	-0.7
<b>South-Africa</b>	<b>22.0</b>	<b>21.5</b>	<b>21.0</b>	<b>21.3</b>	<b>21.8</b>	<b>20.7</b>	<b>20.8</b>	<b>-0.9</b>

Source: Stats SA social profile of vulnerable groups in South Africa, 2012 -2013

From Table 2.6 it is clear that between 2005 and 2011 (in both age groups) the percentages remained relatively stable, and even decreased in a number of cases. Given the high prevalence of HIV/Aids in the country, it can be expected that a significant proportion of the youth will be heading households as both parents of the children may die. However the stability/decrease of the past few years may be due to an uptake in antiretroviral (ARV) treatment, with the effect of fewer households losing parents.

In the North West province the percentage of HIV and AIDS related deaths have decreased between 2008 and 2011 in the North West province from 42.9 per cent to 37.2 per cent. This could possibly also explain the overall decrease in youth headed households (for both age categories) within the North West.

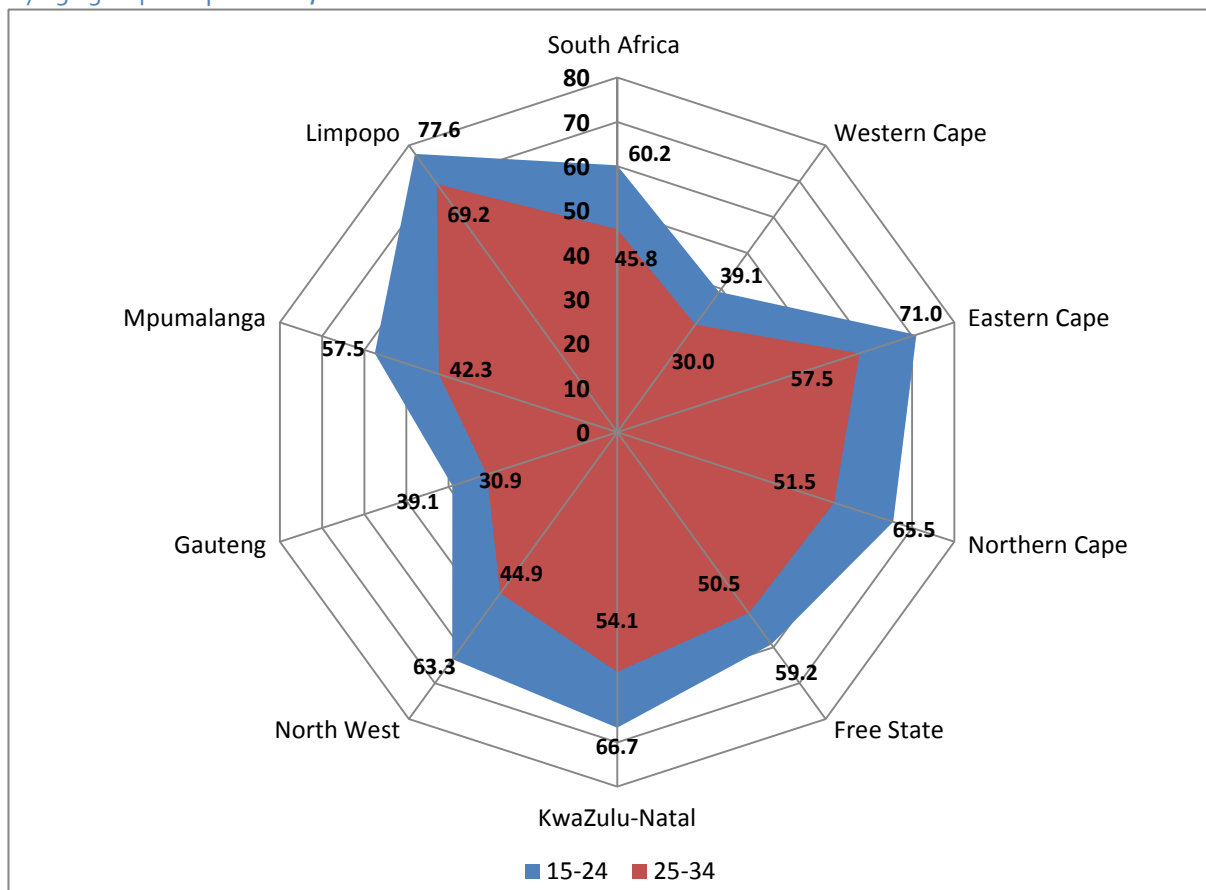
## b. *Youth living in poverty conditions*

Household income is a proxy indicator of poverty. Figure 2.7 shows the percentage of youth living in households with a per capita income of less than R650 per month. The figure illustrates that the youth aged 15 to 24 were consistently more likely to live in low-income households than the youth in the older age category across all provinces. In 2011, 60.2 per cent of South-African youth aged between 15-24 years lived in



low-income households compared to 45.8 per cent of youth in the older age group. The North West province had a larger percentage (63.3%) of youth aged between 15 and 24 living in poverty conditions, than that of the country, and some of the other provinces.

**Figure 2.7:** percentage of youth living in households with a per capita income of less than R 650 per month by age group and province, 2011



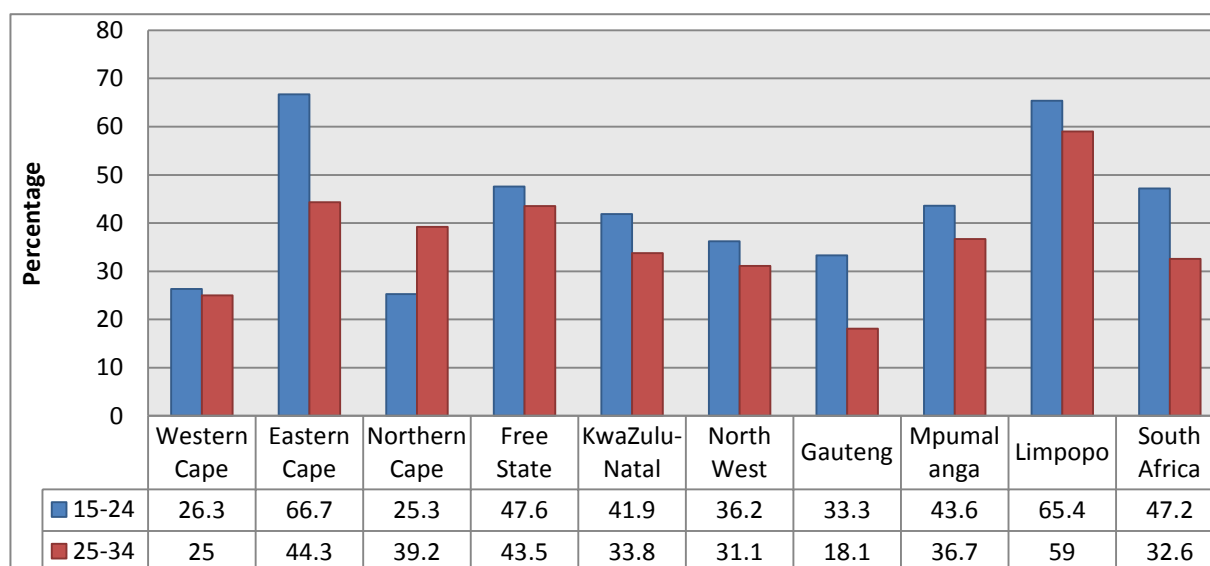
Source: Stats SA social profile of vulnerable groups in South Africa, 2012 -2013

Figure 2.7 shows that all households headed by youth aged 15 to 24, were more likely to have a per capita income of less than R 650 per month than households headed by older youth. Compared to the other provinces and the country, the North West province has a fairly lower percentage of youth headed households living in poverty conditions. Although the percentage is somewhat lower in comparison to other provinces, it remains an issue to address in compiling and implementing policies and strategies for the North West, to ensure that the youth have better access to resources, as the youth are generally not targeted by South-Africa's social welfare system. While child recipients of the child support and other targeted grants will progressively remain eligible to receive such grants until the age of 18 years, youth in the age group 18 to 34 years can only benefit directly from disability grants, if they are disabled, and indirectly from the various grants if they are caregivers.





**Figure 2.8:** percentage of youth headed households with a per capita income less than R 650 per month, by age group and province, 2011

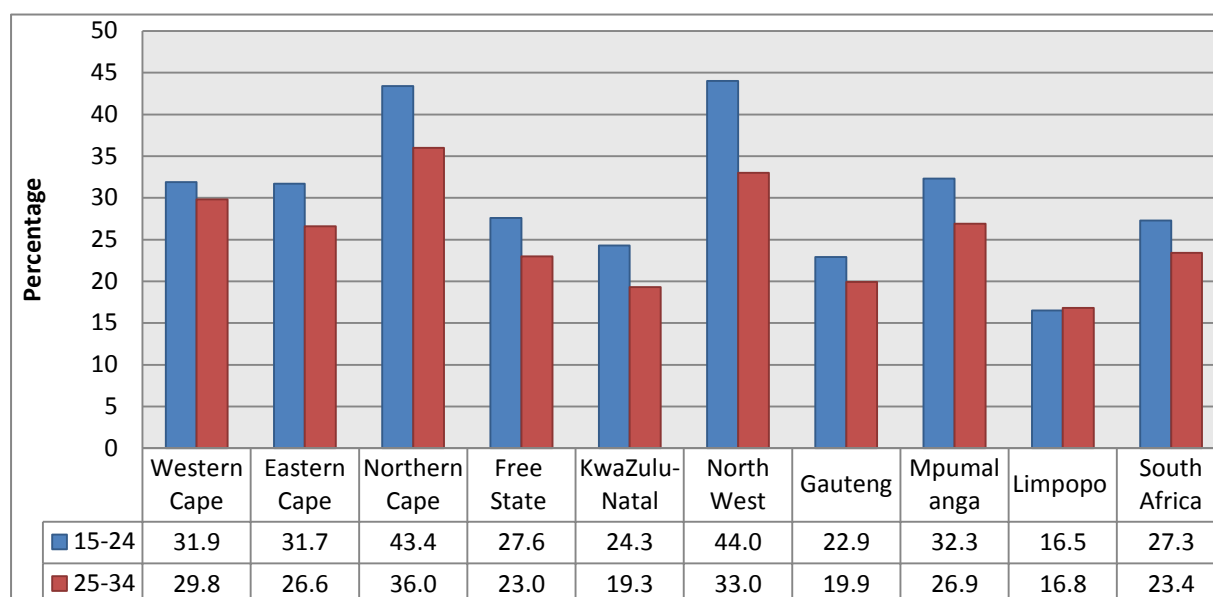


Source: Stats SA social profile of vulnerable groups in South Africa, 2012 -2013

*c. Vulnerability to hunger and access to food*

Access to food is essential to human well-being and development. Households are very sensitive to livelihood shocks and low-income households with a large percentage of dependants remain particularly vulnerable. Households headed by youth aged between 15 and 24 were more likely to experience inadequate or severely inadequate access to food than households in the age group of 25 to 34, across all provinces, except Limpopo. It is evident from Figure 2.9 that a very large percentage of the youth (in both age categories) experienced inadequate access to food in the North West province, compared to the other provinces, and nationally.

**Figure 2.9:** percentage of youth that lived in households that had experienced inadequate or severely inadequate access to food by province, 2011



Source: Stats SA social profile of vulnerable groups in South Africa, 2012 -2013

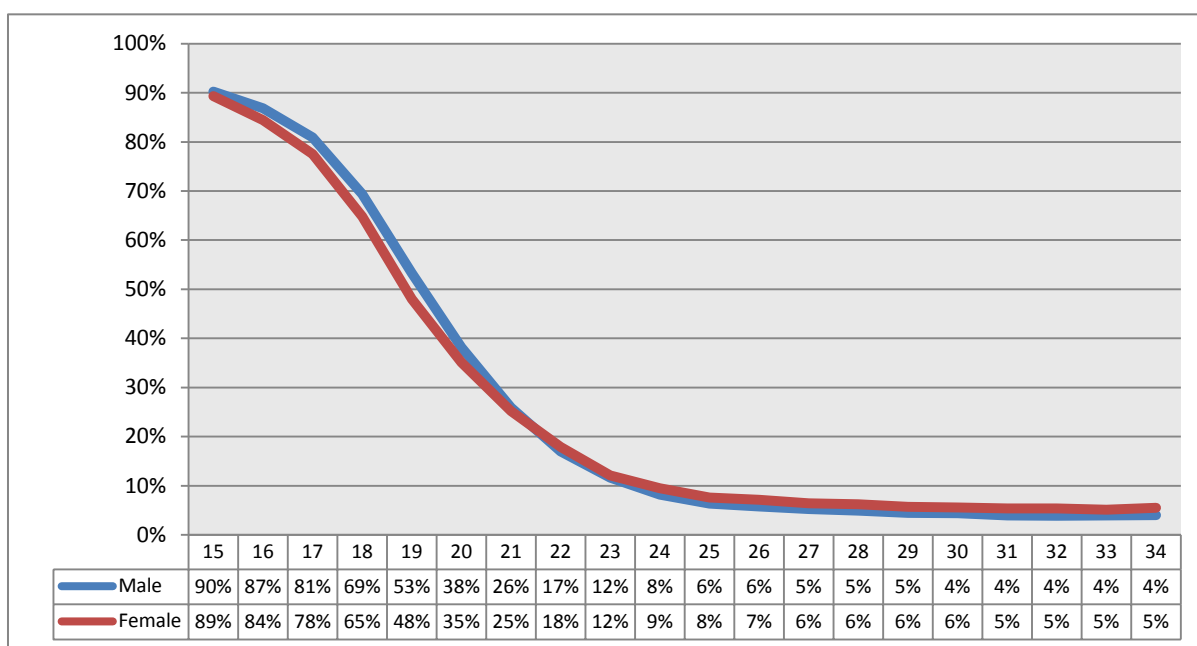
*d. Education*





The percentage of youth aged 15 to 34 that attended an educational institution during 2011 is presented in Figure 2.10. Although more than 80 per cent of individuals aged between 15 and 17 attended an educational institution, educational attendance decreased rapidly beyond this age. After the age of 17, the percentage of youth that attended an educational institution declined to approximately 12 per cent by age 23, and even lower beyond that. Between the ages of 15 and 21, it was evident that female attendance was somewhat lower than that of males attending educational institutions. However from the age of 21 upwards, it can be noted that female school attendance was higher than that of the males. The change in gender parity at high school may indicate that fewer male than female learners are progressing to the FET phase or that male learners are more likely to drop out of high school for other reasons.

**Figure 2.10:** percentage of youth who attended an educational institution by age and gender, in the North West province, 2011

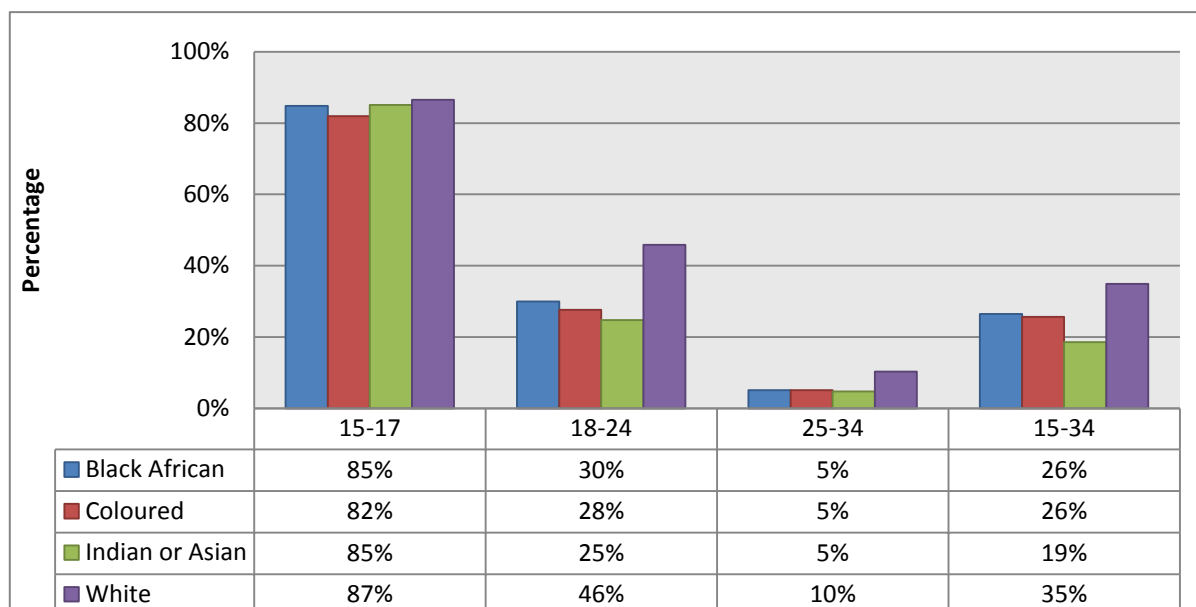


Source: Stats SA social profile of vulnerable groups in South Africa, 2012 -2013

The percentage of youth that attended an educational institution in terms of population groups across three age cohorts (15-17, 18-24 and 25-34) is presented in Figure 2.3.4. From the figure it is evident that the trend remained similar throughout most of the population groups, in terms of school attendance. However the white youth aged between 18 and 24, showed a much higher percentage of school attendance than that of the other population groups, which could reflect in the attendance of tertiary educational institutions (higher education). Although the black African population group also has a fairly high percentage of school attendance between the ages of 18 to 24, it does not necessarily reflect their progression to higher education, as it does for the White and Indian/Asian youth. This observation is confirmed by Figure 2.11 in which the relatively low black African participation rate in higher education compared to that of the White and Indian/Asian population is presented. From the figure it is clear that a much larger percentage of black African and, to a lesser extent, coloured youth remained in school after the age of 18 compared to their Indian/Asian and White counterparts who subsequently moved into higher education. Whereas 76 per cent of black Africans in the age category 18 to 24 still attended school in 2011, only 61 per cent of the Coloured, 30 per cent of the Indian/Asian and 32 per cent of the White population attended school. By contrast, 55 per cent of the Indian/Asian youth (18 to 24) and 53 per cent of the White youth were attending higher education in 2011, compared to the mere 20 per cent of the Coloured youth and 11 per cent of the black African youth.



**Figure 2.11:** percentage of youth that attended an educational institution by population group and age, in the North West province, 2011



Source: Stats SA social profile of vulnerable groups in South Africa, 2012 -2013

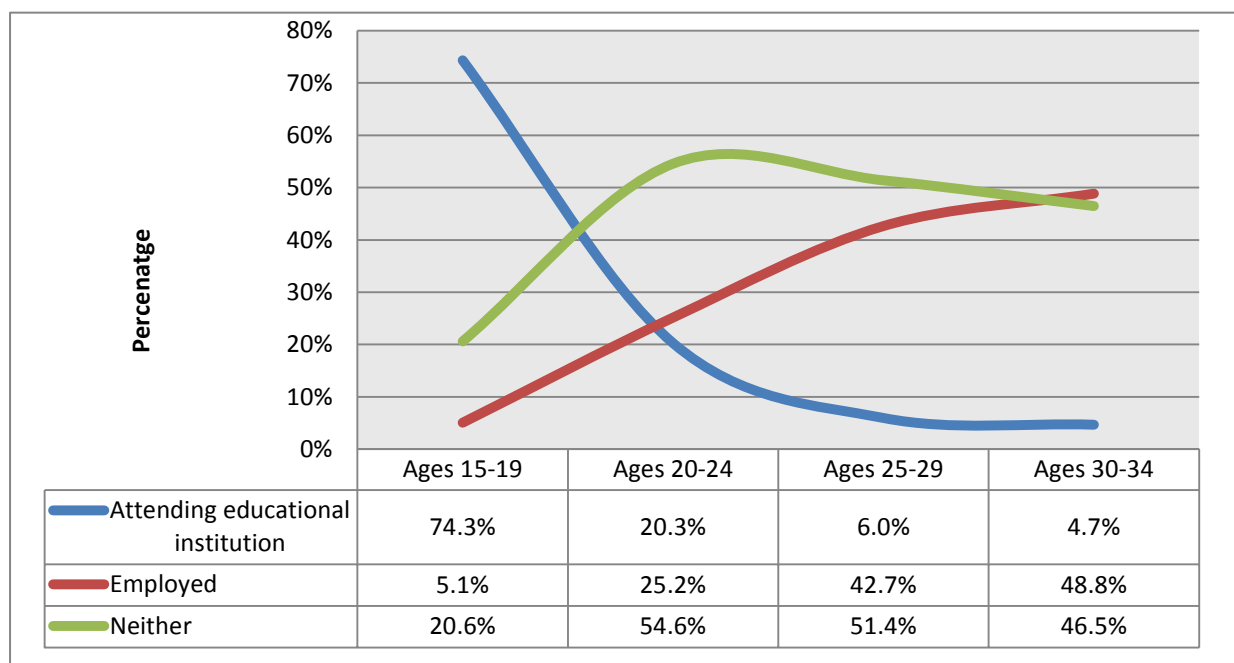
It can be seen in Figure 2.11 that the highest attendance to an educational institution was in the age group of 15 to 17 years old. In all the age groups the highest attendance was by white learners (35%) followed by black learners (26%) and coloured learners (26%).

The National Youth Policy, 2009, describes that individuals who are neither employed nor studying as probable premature dropouts who are largely unskilled and unable to access economic opportunities due to their lack of adequate qualifications or skills, often including basic literacy and numeracy skills. The youth policy argues that individuals falling into this category should be provided with focussed support to facilitate improved economic participation and socialisation. The analysis excludes individuals who are employed or still attending some educational institution, but includes individuals who are not economically active as at least some of these could be classified as discouraged job-seekers.

Figure 2.12 indicates the percentage of youth in the age group 15 to 34 in the North West province, who was attending an educational institution; those that was employed, and those that neither attended any educational institution and who was also not working. While the percentage of youth that attended any educational institution declined steadily after the age of 19, the percentage of the youth who was not employed or enrolled in some type of tertiary institution increased until it eventually seemed to peak at the age of 24. In terms of the 20 to 24 age group, 54 per cent of the youth was neither attending school nor working, while a further 25.2 per cent was employed and 20.3 per cent enrolled in some type of tertiary education. From the age of 25 and up it is evident that the number of the employed youth started to increase, whereas the number of youth that was not attending school nor working started to decrease slightly, whereas school attendance decreased dramatically to reach a point where only 4.7 per cent of the youth aged between 30 and 34 was attending an educational institution.



**Figure 2.12:** percentages of youth aged 15-34 who are not attending any educational institutions and who are not employed in the North West province, 2011



Source: Stats SA social profile of vulnerable groups in South Africa, 2012 -2013

## IMPLICATION

### Children

A large percentage of children in the North West province do not live with their biological parents. Risks such as physical, emotional and sexual abuse of children increase as a result of the physical distance between biological parents and their children. Public information and education campaigns, stressing the importance of the active involvement of parents and or caregivers in the education and development of their children could assist in mitigating the potential negative impact that this may have on child development and well-being. Even though child-headed households make up a very small percentage of all households in the North West province, great efforts have to be made to decrease the vulnerability of these households.

### Youth

Households headed by youth aged 15 to 24 are significantly more vulnerable to hunger, and are more likely to suffer from poor living conditions, low income and unemployment. Realising full and productive employment for all young people should be a priority in the North West province. Youth employment and development could lead to the eradication of poverty and inequality. Also, the youth are not supported by the social safety nets that are available to children and to older persons. There exist a need to target youth in social development programmes, social protection and social welfare services.

## 2.3.3. WOMEN

The Constitution of South-Africa (Act 108 of 1996) provides for the equality of men and women, as a fundamental part of its human rights approach. Gender refers to the social system, which governs the relations between men and women. Empowerment of women refers to actions to overcome structural inequalities that have previously placed them in a disadvantaged position. Goals through which



empowerment can be achieved include achieving universal primary education, promoting gender equality reducing infant and child mortality, and improving maternal health. Financial constraints and poor academic performance are often cited as the reason for why individuals do not continue with education after completing secondary school. Ways have to be found to mediate and fund further education and training for individuals who cannot afford it. Education will empower females who are or has been subject to gender inequality with the opportunity to improve themselves and their socio economic position. The table below illustrates some demographics regarding female headed households in the North West province.

**Table 2.7: female headed households in the North West province and South-Africa (2011)**

	NORTH WEST	SOUTH-AFRICA
% households headed by a female	33.3%	27.5%
% of female headed households with a per capita income of less than R 650 per month	61.1%	63.9%
% of male headed households with a per capita income of less than R 650 per month	33.7%	31.7%

Source: Stats SA social profile of vulnerable groups in South Africa, 2012 -2013

In 2011 nearly a third (33.3%) of all households in the North West province was female headed. This is lower than the national average of 37.5 per cent of all households being female headed. A larger portion of the female headed households than the male headed households in the North West province has a per capita income of less than R 650 per month. More than half of the female headed households (61.1%) live in poverty conditions compared to 33.7 per cent of the male population in the North West. As a result female headed households are more likely to and rely more heavily on social grants (child support and old age) than male headed households.

## 2.3.4. ELDERLY

The current generation of the elderly in South-Africa was particularly burdened by the apartheid government system. Adequate education, employment and socio-economic opportunities were not provided to a large portion of the elderly during their younger years. Without the means to break free from the bondage of poverty, the majority of older people were unable to provide for their old age through secure retirement benefits. The table below provides an overview of a few demographics and sociological composition of the elderly population in the North West province.

**Table 2.8: demographics of the elderly in the North West province and South-Africa (2011)**

	NORTH WEST	SOUTH-AFRICA
% households headed by older persons	23.1%	20.6%
% living in poverty conditions	49.4%	45.0%
% living in household that reported hunger	10.9%	12.6%

Source: Stats SA social profile of vulnerable groups in South Africa, 2012 -2013

It can be concluded from the table above that the percentage of households headed by older persons are 23.1 per cent in the North West province. Slightly less than one-quarter of all persons in South-Africa live in a household headed by a person aged 60 years and older. Approximately 49.4 per cent of the elderly in the North West live in households where poverty conditions prevail, compared to 45 per cent in South-Africa as a whole.



The elderly in South-Africa is very dependent on grants. In 2011, 66.9 per cent of older persons received some form of government grant compared to only 28 per cent of persons in the general population. Older persons are however (likely due to the success of the old age grant) less prone to be vulnerable to hunger than the population as a whole.

### DEMOGRAPHIC DIVIDEND

The Demographic Dividend is the accelerated economic growth that may result from a decline in fertility and mortality rates, as well as the subsequent change in the age structure of the population.

"Having a relatively young population can be advantageous, provided the majority of working age-individuals are gainfully employed. A large workforce with fewer children to support creates a window of opportunity to increase economic output and invest in technology, education and skills to create the wealth needed to cope with the future aging of the population. Some economists call this window of opportunity the "demographic dividend" (or "bonus"). The window eventually closes when the workforce ages and there are relatively fewer workers to support increasing numbers of older people, but the dividend can last for several decades" (NDP, 2012<sup>v</sup>).

In light of the definition in terms of the demographic dividend as contained in the NDP, the following paragraphs will highlight the key trend mentioned in the definition.

#### Population Growth

The North West province's population growth rate has been slowing down as indicated earlier in this section.

#### Fertility Rates

Compared to the national averages the North West province has a slightly higher fertility rate with three children per woman. Fertility rates in the North West province are the highest in the more rural municipalities, and the lowest in the more urbanised, implying that rural populations continue to grow despite significant rural-urban migration. The rural growth will result in a higher demand for services in areas, where it is often more challenging and costly to deliver such services.

Health care, education, old-age security, women's empowerment, economic aspirations and urbanisation are all factors which will contribute to reducing fertility rates in the Province.

#### Mortality

The average life expectancy in the North West province (2012) is nearly 52 years with an expectancy of 53.2 years for females and 50.4 years for males (North West Department of Health, 2012<sup>vi</sup>). The infant mortality rate has shown a decline since 2008 from 32.4 to 30.1 deaths per 1,000 births in 2011. It is projected to decrease even more to 28 deaths per 1,000 births in 2015. The North West mortality rate is below the national mortality rate of 33.2 in 2011. The under five years mortality rate shows a similar decreasing pattern but with a higher number of deaths. The number of deaths under five years per 1,000 births was 43.7 in 2011. The percentage of HIV and AIDS related deaths have decreased between 2008 and 2011 in the North West province from 42.9 per cent to 37.2 per cent. It is projected to decrease even more to 36.4 per cent in 2015

#### Conclusion

The fact that the North West population growth rate has been slowing down, together with an overall decreasing fertility rate and mortality rate, indicates that there is a larger youth and working age population and proportionally a smaller elderly population in the province. However this does not indicate that the province has a demographic dividend. The challenge is to provide the working-age population with equal employment opportunities in order for them to increase their per capita as well as their standard of living



which will also relate to increases in economic growth within the province.

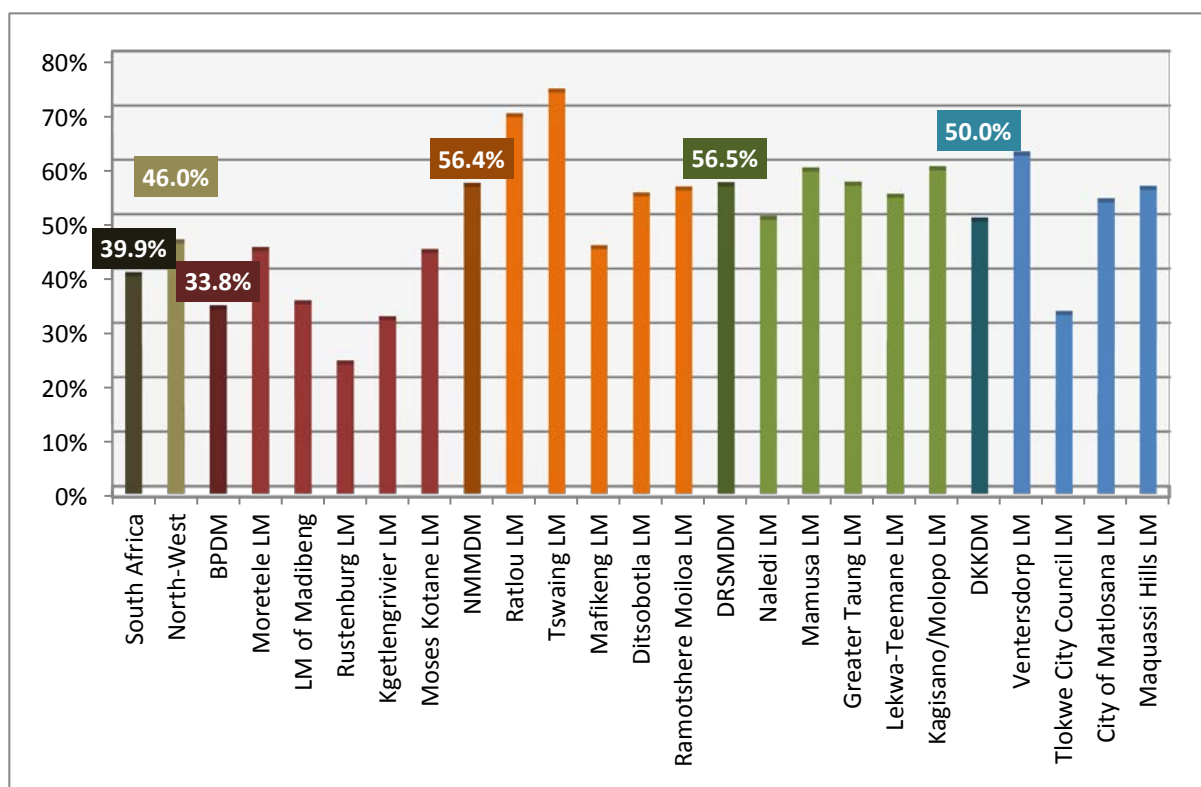
## 2.4. DEVELOPMENT INDICATORS

South-Africa is among the richest countries in Africa but has significant levels of poverty and very likely the highest levels of inequality. The socio economic reality within the North West province is typical to the rest of South-Africa. The challenges that poverty and inequality brings forward are a threat to social cohesion as well as to the socio-economic well-being of the province since many communities live in poor and unstable conditions.

### 2.4.1. POPULATION LIVING IN POVERTY

Eradicating poverty in the North West province will require a clear indication of the existing poverty levels. The North West province has a diverse character ranging from the rural area in the west to the urbanised area in the east. Since the eradicating of poverty is one of the main objectives of the PDP, this section of the plan provides an overview of the population living in poverty on a national, provincial, district and local level. Figure 2.13 provides the percentage of each population living in poverty on national, provincial and local level.

Figure 2.13: percentage of population living in poverty, 2010



Source: Urban-Econ calculations based on Global Insight data, 2013<sup>vii</sup>

The following can be concluded from the figures above:

- The North West province has a higher percentage of people living in poverty (46%) than the national average (39.9%).



- The DRSMDM (56.5%) has the highest percentage of people living in poverty followed by the NMMDM (56.4%).

It becomes apparent that poverty levels increase towards the west of the North West province. These areas are less urbanised than the eastern sections where mining plays a dominant role. The DRSMDM and NMMDM are rural and rely on agriculture, manufacturing and various tertiary activities for their existence. They are also the two DM's with the lowest contribution towards the provincial GVA as discussed in Chapter 3. The BPDM boast with the strongest provincial economy followed by the DKKDM. These characteristics reflect the prevalence of poverty in the province. Areas with lower contributions towards the provincial economy have higher poverty levels. It can be concluded that the North West province face challenges regarding poverty levels. This challenge will be considered as a matter of urgency throughout the PDP.

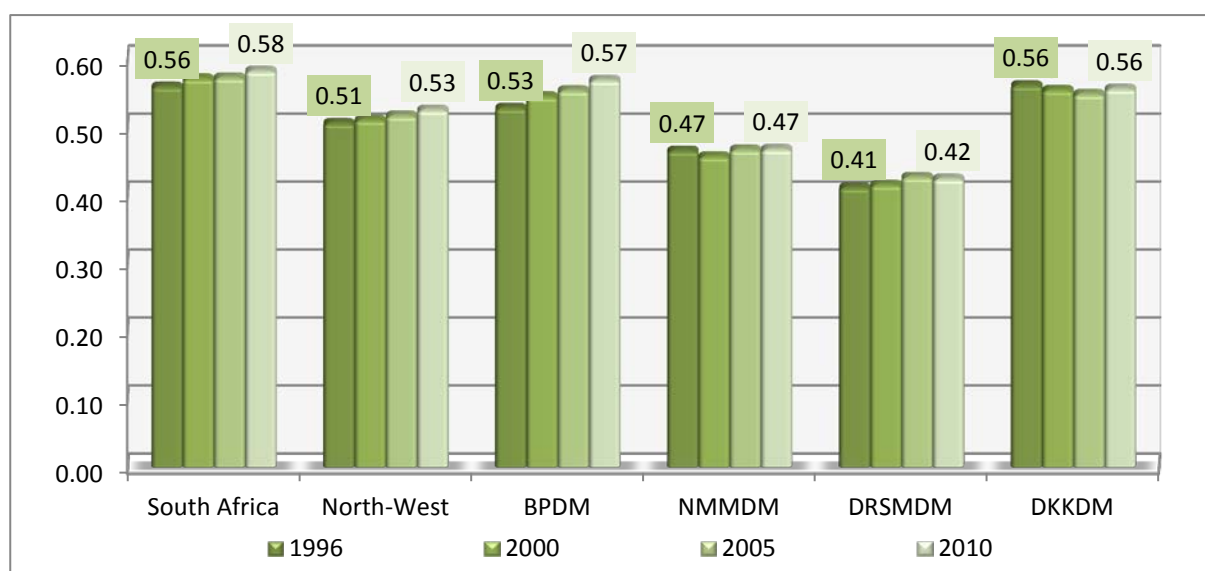
The HDI can assume a maximum value of one, indicating a high level of human development, and a minimum value of zero.

### 2.4.2. HUMAN DEVELOPMENT INDEX (HDI)

The Human Development Index (HDI) is a composite, relative index which attempts to quantify the extent of human development of a community. It is based on measures of life expectancy, literacy and income. It is thus seen as a measure of people's ability to live long and healthy lives, to communicate, to participate in the life of the community and to have sufficient resources to make a decent living.

According to the United Nations (UN) Human Development Report (2011), South-Africa is considered to have a medium HDI while countries like Canada, the Netherlands and Sweden have very high HDI scores. The HDI of the North West province definitely reflects the average HDI of South-Africa and is accordingly illustrated in Figure 2.14

Figure 2.14: HDI for South-Africa and North West province (2001-2010)



Source: Global Insight, 2013

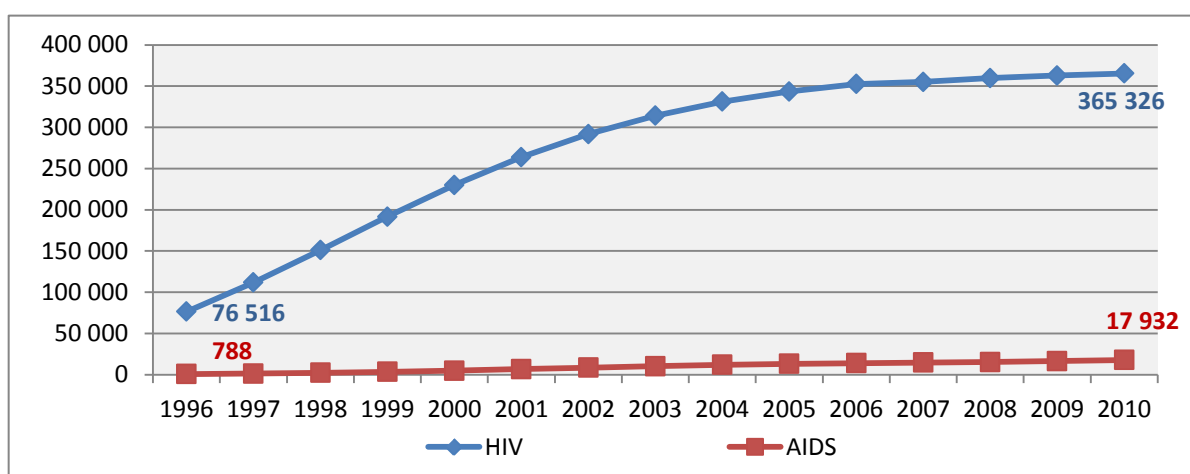
The HDI within the North West province can be considered to be medium and have been increasing since 1996. Interventions to improve life expectancy, literacy and income in the province will all contribute to a



higher provincial HDI and as a result, people's ability to live a long and healthy life, to communicate, to participate in the life of the community and to have sufficient resources to make a decent living.

A concerning factor is that the increase in the provincial HDI between 1996 and 2010 was mainly due to the increase in the BPDM. The HDI in the rest of the province has increased a little to none over the last fifteen years. The HIV / AIDS pandemic play a big role in the HDI of the province since it considerably decreases life expectancy. The figure below illustrated how the number of people living with HIV / AIDS in the North West province has increased since 1996.

**Figure 2.15: number of people living with HIV / AIDS (1996-2010)**



Source: Global Insight, 2013

Even though economic growth is necessary to reduce poverty it does not necessarily always translate into poverty reduction and neither does it translate into reduced inequality. This is largely due to the existing unequal distribution of resources in the province and the imbalanced access to opportunities. Government policy intervention that focuses on alleviating inequality is therefore necessary to address social imbalances.

### 2.4.3. GINI COEFFICIENT

The GINI coefficient measures the extent to which the distribution of income or consumption expenditure among individuals or households within an economy deviates from a perfectly equal distribution. The coefficient varies between zero, which reflects complete equality and one, which indicates complete inequality (one person has all the income or consumption, all others have none). The table below illustrates the GINI coefficient for South-Africa and the North West province.

**Table 2.9: GINI coefficient, 2011**

	South-Africa	North West
GINI Coefficient	0.63	0.61

Source: Global Insight, 2013

It can be concluded from Table 2.9 that South-Africa's GINI coefficient currently amounts to 0.63. The GINI coefficient for South-Africa is one of the highest in the world along with, Lesotho (0.63), Sierra Leone (0.62), Central African Republic (0.61) and Brazil (0.58). The GINI coefficient for the North West province is measured slightly lower than the national coefficient at 0.61.





### IMPLICATION

The NDP aims to reduce inequality in South-Africa by 2030 through decreasing the national GINI coefficient. Considering the current GINI- coefficient in the North West province a target of 0.53 is set out for the year 2030.



### NOTES

---

<sup>i</sup> North West Provincial Government. 2008. North West Spatial Development Framework.

<sup>ii</sup> Statistics South Africa. 2012. Census 2011 Results. <http://beta2.statssa.gov.za/> Date of Access: December, 2012.

<sup>iii</sup> Udjo, E.O., van Aardt, C.J., & Moshoeu, A.N. 2007. Settlement and Migration Patterns in the North West Province.

<sup>iv</sup> Statistics South Africa. 2012. Social profile of vulnerable groups in South Africa 2002–2011 <https://www.statssa.gov.za/Publications/Report-03-19-00/Report-03-19-002002.pdf>

<sup>v</sup> National Planning Commission. 2012. National Development Plan. <http://www.npconline.co.za/pebble.asp?relid=25> Date of Access: August, 2012.

<sup>vi</sup> North West Department of Health. 2012. Five Year Strategig Plan 2012 – 2017.

<sup>vii</sup> HIS Global Insight. 2013. <http://www.ihsglobalinsight.co.za/> Date of Access: January, 2013.



### 3. ECONOMY AND EMPLOYMENT

---

#### KEY POINTS

- ⇒ The provincial economy needs to become more productive, more competitive and more diversified
- ⇒ Skills development and training in practices in high demand from industry are an important element of allowing employment oriented economic growth. Continued learning, research and development and technological innovation, to increase levels of production and competitiveness will be equally important
- ⇒ Creating an enabling environment in terms of physical and institutional factors is critical to attract and retain investment in the province and to allow for efficiency in the economy
- ⇒ In order to achieve employment and economic growth it will be necessary to prioritise certain economic sectors that will lead the overall economy in building on its competitive advantages and diversifying its structure

### 3.1. INTRODUCTION

As one of the priorities in developing the North West province and raising the standard of living among the population, it is critical to increase employment and economic growth. This will mean that the provincial economy needs to become more productive, more competitive and more diversified. In order to achieve these objectives however, it is necessary to raise levels of local and foreign investment, develop practical skills and to provide the necessary institutional support to industries with a regional competitive advantage (agriculture and mining) to achieve faster growth in employment and production levels. Economic development and employment creation in the North West province are the obligation of both the public and private sector.

In the North West province, eight priority areas were identified as key to future development. This chapter focuses on 'Economy and Employment' as one of the key focus areas of the province.

### 3.2. THE CURRENT PERSPECTIVE

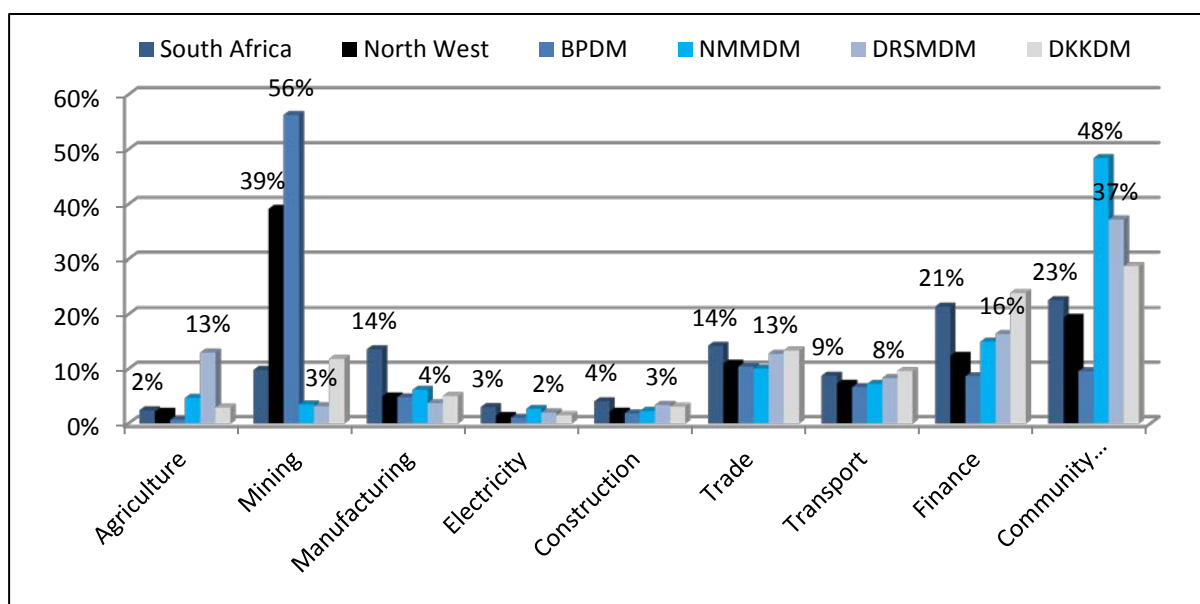
#### 3.1.1 GROSS VALUE ADDED (GVA)

The North West economy accounts for 6.01 per cent of the South African economy (in terms of the total current Rand (R) value of goods and services produced in the province measured in Gross Value Added). The structure of the economy, measured by the contribution of each economic sector to the total value of goods and services produced, is dominated by the tertiary sector, which contributes approximately 60 per cent to total GVA.

Its primary sector, in particular the mining sector, also plays a crucial role in the economy. Mining contributes more than a quarter (39%) to the total provincial economy influenced largely by the significant mining activity in the BPDM and the DKKDM. As a result the provincial economy is somewhat dependent on the demand for metals and minerals from foreign economies and the subsequent fluctuation in commodity prices. The second largest economic sector in the North West province is the community services sector (19%) followed by the business and finance sector (12%) and trade sector (11%). The following figure presents an overview of the current structure of the provincial economy, including that of each district municipality.



Figure 3.1: regional economic profile, (GVA) 2012



Source: Stats SA data (2013\*) and IHS Global Insight data (2013#)

Table 3.1 illustrates the size of each of the regional economies as well as the average annual growth rate each has been experiencing since 1996.

Table 3-1: size (total GVA) of each regional economy (R millions) and average annual growth rate

Area	GVA 2012	Average Annual Growth Rate (1996 – 2012)
SA	R 2 871 510	3.5%
North West	R 172 700	2.9%
BPDM	R 112 110	4.0%
NMMDM	R 23 480	2.9%
DRSDM	R 8 035	2.6%
DKKDM	R 29 070	0.3%

Source: Urban-Econ calculations based on Stats SA data (2013) and IHS Global Insight data (2013)

It can be concluded from the table above that the annual average growth rate in the North West province (2.9%) is lower than the national growth rate (3.5%). Growth in the BPDM (4%) has contributed the most to the provincial growth rate. Based on the average annual growth rate it is estimated that the GVA of the North West province will increase to R 3 844 423 in 2015.

### ECONOMIC DIVERSIFICATION

The North West province has the potential to benefit and increase spin-off's in the agriculture and mining sectors (Office of the Premier North West province, 2012<sup>1</sup>). Similar to these value-chain opportunities is the reality that the province will always grapple with in that both sectors are fiercely competitive at the global market scale and by nature; highly volatile. The focus should therefore be on encouraging diversification of the economic base, especially in industries such as renewable energy, construction, value adding, high level services and specific sub-sectors of the manufacturing industry due to its potential support for local and regional (African) agriculture and infrastructure development. Indications are that the energy sector (in the stream of renewable energy) could hold the key for the future growth of

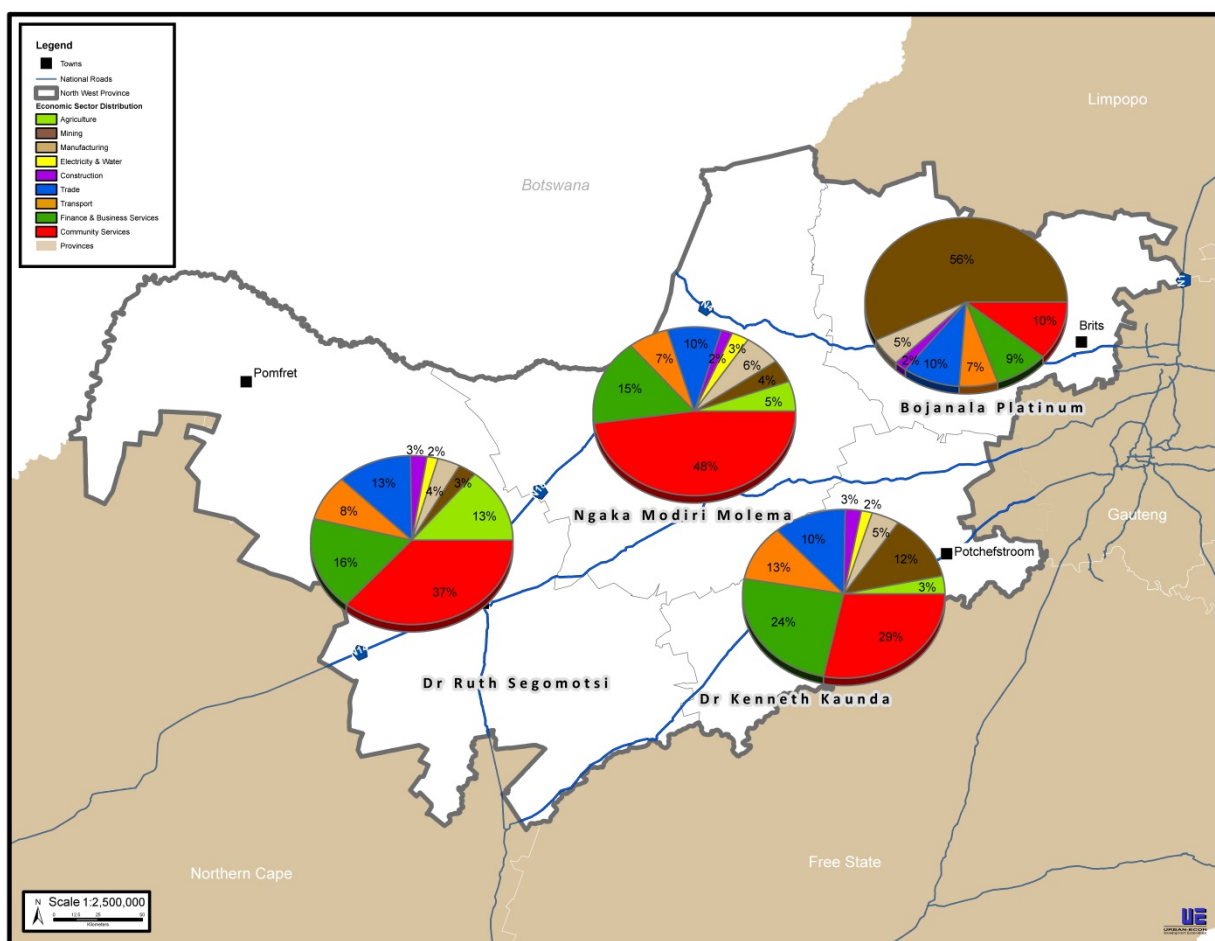


the province.

A strong, growing, sustainable economy is the goal of the North West province. A sustainable economy enhances a population's standard of living by creating wealth and jobs, encouraging the development of new knowledge and technology, and helping to ensure a stable political climate. Economic diversity, implying that economic production is derived from a range of profitable sectors, has long been accepted as essential for sustainability. Therefore, economic diversification can reduce volatility in the North West province and improve efficiency and performance.

Map 3.1 geographically indicates the employment distribution in terms of each sector within each district municipality.

Map 3.1: economic sector distribution, 2012



Source: Stats SA data (2013) and HIS Global Insight drawn up by Urban-Econ, 2013

### 3.1.2 EMPLOYMENT

Employment and employment growth are important considerations when assessing the scope of regional economies. The sector employment profile, which indicates the sectoral employment as a percentage of total employment, provides an additional understanding of the structure of the provincial and district municipal economies. Comparing the sector employment profile of a regional economy to its economic (GVA) profile provides a good indication of the capacity of each economic sector to sustain decent jobs. This further illustrates the significance of that type of economic activity to the local population.



## DECENT WORK

In his inaugural State of Nation Address in June 2009, President Jacob Zuma<sup>2</sup> stated: “*The creation of decent work will be at the centre of our economic policies and will influence our investment attraction and job creation initiatives. In line with our undertakings, we have to forge ahead to promote a more inclusive economy*”.

Decent work sums up the aspirations of people in their working lives. It is based on the understanding that work is a source of personal dignity, family stability, peace in the community, democracies that deliver for people, and economic growth that expands opportunities for productive jobs and enterprise development. Promoting Social Dialogue. According to the International Labour Organisation (2011<sup>3</sup>) decent work is based on four strategic objectives, with gender equality as a crosscutting objective. The North West Provincial Government has made a commitment to place the creation of decent work and sustainable livelihoods at the centre of its policies and programmes. The provincial government has committed themselves to creating jobs according to the following four objectives:

- **Creating jobs** – an economy that generates opportunities for investment, entrepreneurship, skills development, job creation and sustainable livelihoods.
- **Guaranteeing rights at work** – to obtain recognition and respect for the rights of workers. All workers, and in particular disadvantaged or poor workers, need representation, participation, and laws that work for their interests.
- **Extending social protection** – to promote both inclusion and productivity by ensuring that women and men enjoy working conditions that are safe, allow adequate free time and rest, take into account family and social values, provide for adequate compensation in case of lost or reduced income and permit access to adequate healthcare.
- **Promoting social dialogue** – involving strong and independent workers’ and employers’ organisations is central to increasing productivity, avoiding disputes at work, and building cohesive societies.

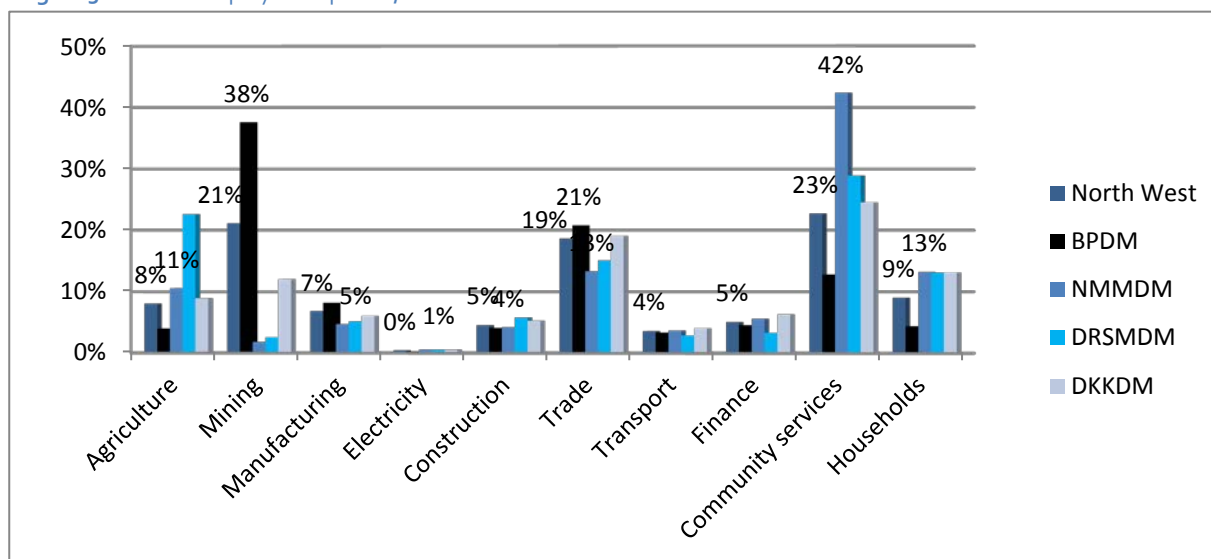
With respect to “decent work”, the NDP says that this should be achieved in the long term consequent upon an expanding economy with rising skills levels, while in the earlier phase of the plan emphasis will have to be placed on mass access to jobs while maintaining standards where decent jobs already exist. The PDP will follow a similar approach.

The following figure illustrates the sector employment profile of the provincial economy, according to each district municipality.





Figure 3.2: sector employment profile, 2012



Source: Urban-Econ calculations based on Stats SA data (2013) and IHS Global Insight data (2013)

The distribution of the provincial workforce is as follows:

BPDM – 49%  
 DKKDM – 24%  
 NMMDM – 19%  
 DRSMDM – 8%

Provincial population distribution:

BPDM – 40%  
 DKKDM – 20%  
 NMMDM – 26%  
 DRSMDM – 14%

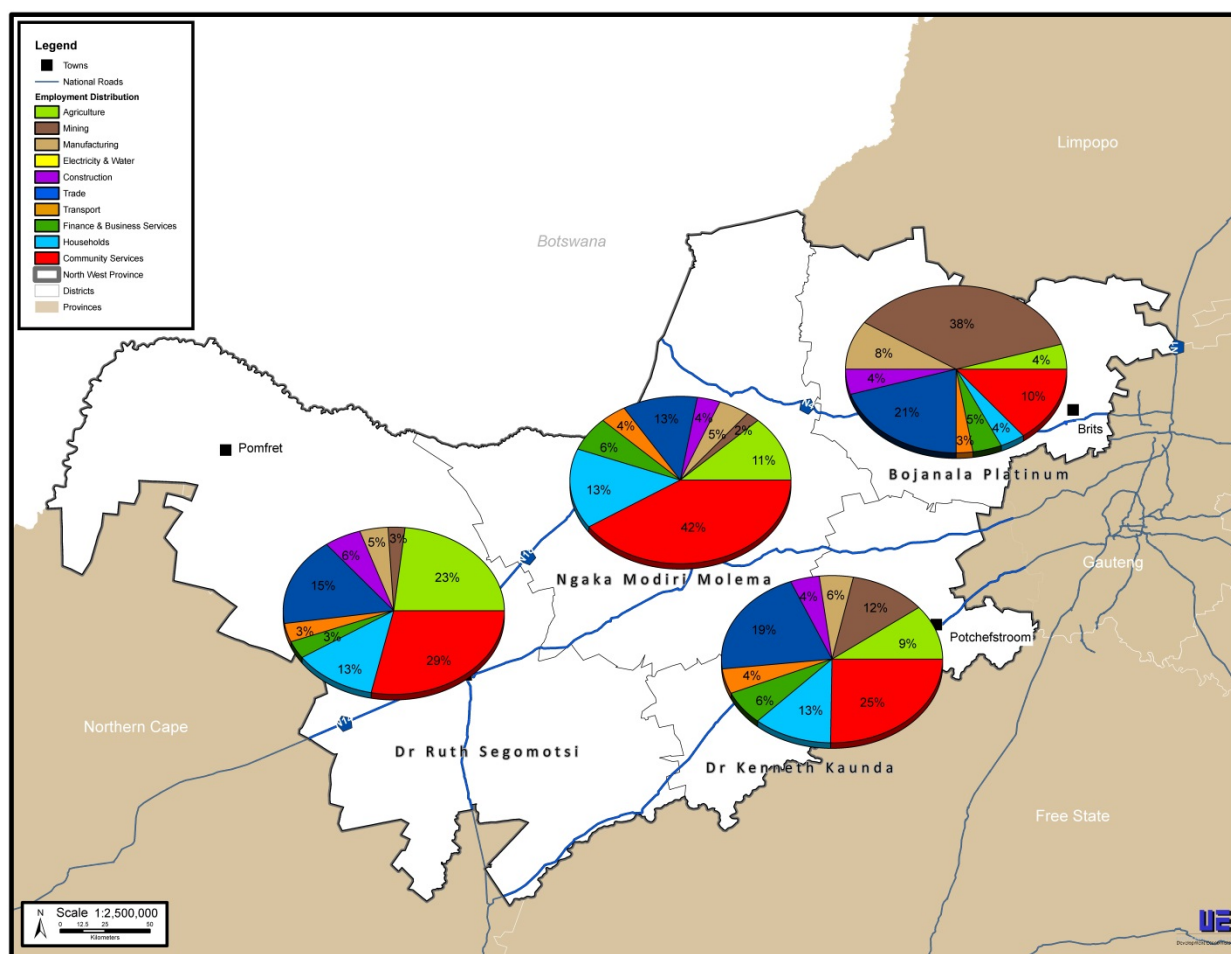
It can be concluded from the figure above that the community services sector in the North West province employs the most people in the North West province (23%). Community services employment is especially high in the NMMDM (42%) where the Province's capital city of Mahikeng is located. Importantly, the mining sector was responsible for 21% of employment in 2012. Other sectors that employ a significant number of workers include the retail, trade and tourism sector (19%), domestic employment (9%) and agriculture (8%).

Map 3.2 illustrates the employment distribution per economic sector in the North West province.





Map 3.2: employment distribution per economic sector, 2011



Source: Urban-Econ calculations based on Stats SA data (2013) and Global Insight Data, 2013

### EMPLOYMENT IN THE MINING SECTOR

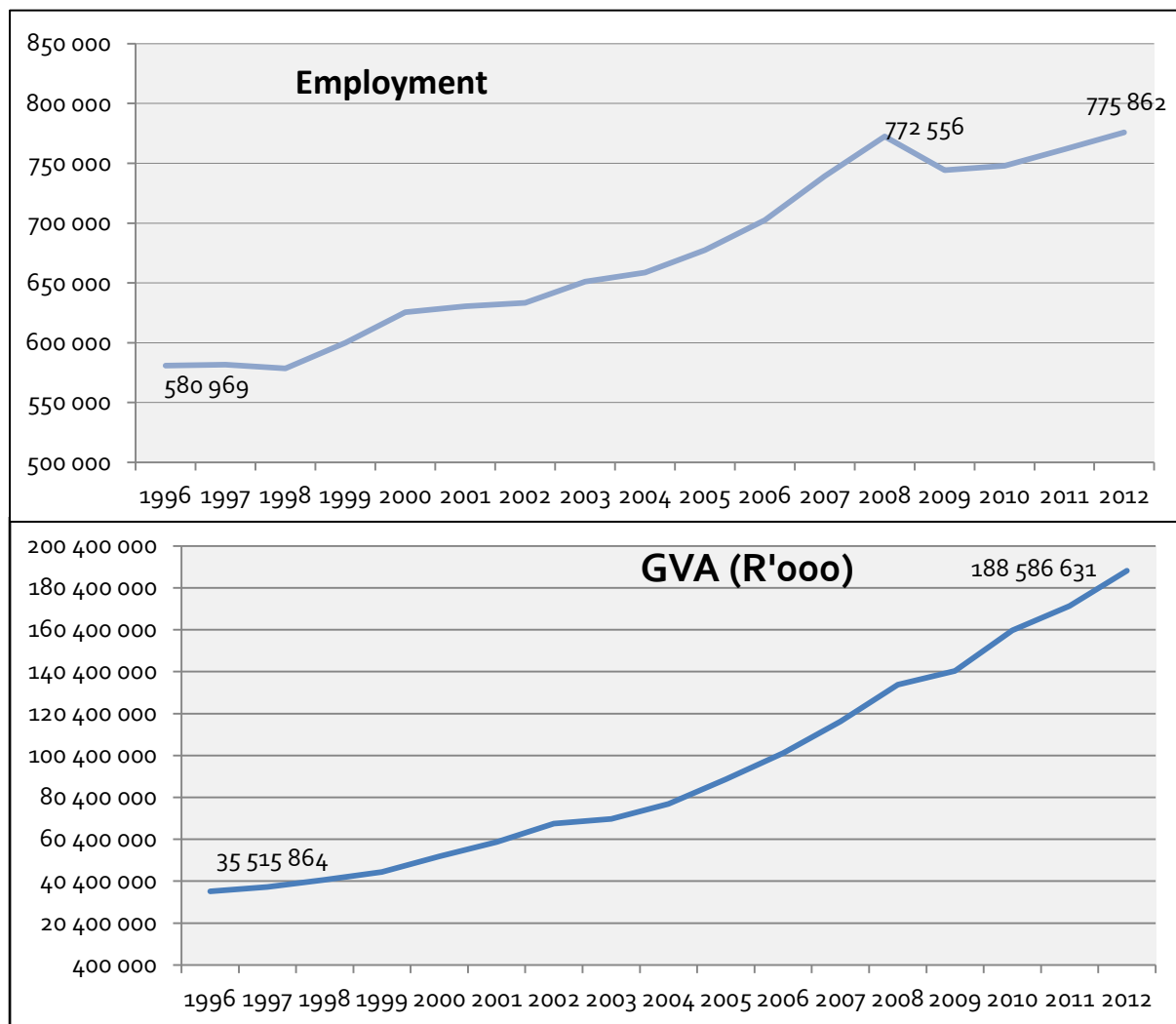
The employment structure in the North West province is currently defined to a considerable extent by the mining sector. As discussed previously, an over dependency on the sector affects the volatility and sustainability of the provincial economy and employment.

In the foreseeable future, mining will still be a large job creator in the province. Over the long-term the future of employment within the mining sector cannot be predicted with certainty. The mining sector is less sustainable than sectors such as agriculture and renewable energy since it depends on exhaustible resources. Other factors include limited capacity of the mining sector to continually increase production in the long-term (an aspect that is likely to be affected by higher input/operating cost, limited availability of resources in the long-term, potentially new technologies affecting the utility and therefore the value of industrial-applied metals such as platinum) and unrest in the mining sector. The role of the PDP in this regard is of great importance to guide the provincial economic development over the following 17 years towards being established as a strong growing sustainable economy.

The overall employment level, measured by the total number of people that are formally employed, has increased by an average of 1.3 per cent per annum since 1996. This has been a result of the resource boom and includes largely employment growth in the mining sector. Figure 3.3 illustrates the manner in which employment levels have changed since 1996.



Figure 3.3: total formal employment level and GVA (1996 – 2012)



Source: Urban-Econ calculations based on Stats SA data (2013) and IHS Global Insight data (2013)

From this figure one can clearly see the overall growth in employment over the past 16 years. The North West economy employs more workers now than it did in 1996. The growth in employment until 2008 was similar to the growth in GVA experienced during this time. After the financial crisis of 2008, both employment and GVA experienced a decrease in growth rates. GVA only experienced a slight decrease from which it recovered by 2010. Employment decreased from 772 556 in 2008 to 750 000 in 2009 and is still recovering up to this date.

Assessing the change in employment levels of individual sectors within the same regional economies allow for an even more insightful understanding of some of the salient features of employment in the province. The following table therefore presents an indication of the average annual change in total (formal) employment per sector, between 1996 and 2012.



Table 3-2: average annual change in formal employment levels (1996 – 2012)

	North West	BPDM	NMMDM	DRSMDM	DKKDM	Change in numbers
Agriculture	-1.28%	-2.18%	-0.99%	-1.45%	-0.44%	-15 381
Mining	0.93%	4.92%	2.95%	4.94%	-6.71%	18 547
Manufacturing	-0.62%	0.11%	-2.91%	-1.86%	-0.34%	-3 613
Electricity	-0.89%	-1.55%	-0.83%	-1.53%	0.10%	-527
Construction	2.65%	4.18%	0.26%	0.51%	3.04%	6 486
Trade	2.74%	3.99%	-0.04%	0.38%	2.83%	29 842
Transport	-0.43%	0.77%	-2.56%	-2.40%	0.15%	-1 746
Finance	3.99%	5.97%	1.54%	1.89%	4.34%	17 671
Community Services	3.28%	2.37%	3.63%	2.79%	4.07%	64 447
Households	0.99%	0.03%	1.13%	0.88%	1.65%	9 492
<b>Total</b>						<b>125 217</b>

Source: Urban-Econ calculations based on Stats SA data (2013) and IHS Global Insight data (2013)

From Table 3.2 it is possible to conclude that the sector in which the biggest increase in total employment occurred is the community services sector, followed by the trade sector and the mining sector. The finance and business sector experienced the fastest rate of increase in employment (3.99%), while the agriculture (-1.28%) and electricity (-0.89%) sectors experienced the fastest rate of decline. Overall it can be concluded that 125 217 more formal jobs exist in the province in 2012 than in 1996.

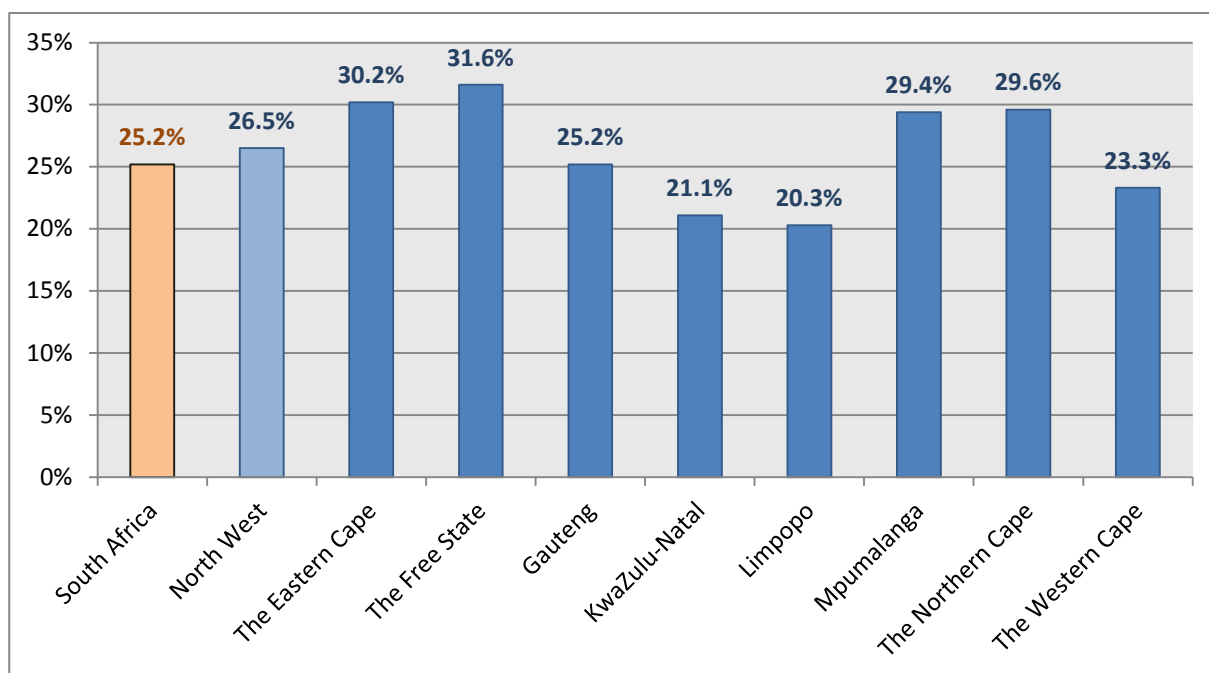
The largest share of job-losses occurred in the agricultural sector. This sector shed approximately 15 381 jobs in 16 years, implying an approximate loss of 960 jobs per year. This contraction has occurred despite an increase in agricultural production. There are several issues, which contribute to the job losses in the agricultural sector. Firstly, agriculture has become increasingly mechanised and less labour intensive. Secondly, training in the agricultural sector has failed to keep pace with the level of mechanisation. Finally, uncertainty caused by land reform miscommunication, labour unrest and mistrust between workers and land owners places pressure on employment sustainability.

It is important to acknowledge the impact of the global financial crisis on the North West economy, which resulted in the loss of approximately 4 572 jobs between 2008 and 2010. Despite the encouraging addition of 1 284 jobs since 2010, similar to the increase in jobs during 2004 to 2008, the rate of increase is still slow compared to production and population growth and far too slow to rid the province of poverty and to meaningfully reduce inequality.

The figure below provides the unemployment rates for the North West province compared to the rest of South Africa.



Figure 3.4: unemployment rate, 2013

Source: Labour Force Survey 1<sup>st</sup> Quarter (2013)

It can be seen in Figure 3.4 that the unemployment rate in the North West province was higher than the national employment rate. The North West province had the fifth lowest employment rate in the first quarter of 2013 compared to the other provinces.

#### DEFINITION OF UNEMPLOYMENT

According to Statistics SA, in order for a person to be considered unemployed, the following criteria has to be met:

- ✓ the person did not work during the last seven days;
- ✓ the person wants to work and is available to start working in the following two weeks; and
- ✓ the person has taken active steps to look for work or start a business in the preceding four week.

The official unemployment rate is calculated as the percentage of the economically active population, which is unemployed according to the above definition. As far as the definition of unemployment is concerned, there is a difference of opinion as to whether or not a person who desires work but who makes no effort to find work should be classified as unemployed (South African Reserve Bank, 2012<sup>4</sup>). According to the strict definition only those people who take active steps to find employment, but fail to do so, are regarded as unemployed. The expanded definition on the other hand, includes everyone who desires employment, irrespective of whether or not they actively tried to obtain a job.

Statistics SA, the agency responsible for estimating unemployment in South Africa, uses both definitions, but currently the strict definition is regarded as the official one. In 1999, for example, the South African unemployment rate was 23,3% according to the strict (official) definition and 36,2% according to the expanded definition. Irrespective of the definition used the unemployment rate is central to reducing inequality and to eliminate poverty in South Africa and in the North West province.

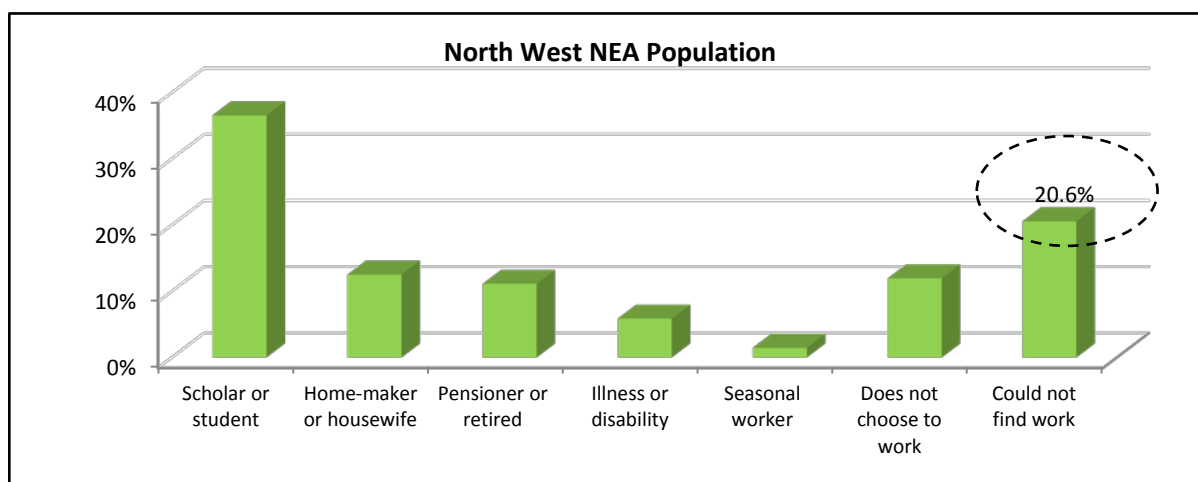
According to the definition described above, Stats SA releases the Labour Force Survey (LFS) on a quarterly basis. The LFS is a quarterly household survey specifically designed to measure the dynamics of



employment and unemployment in South Africa, including the informal sector as well as small-scale subsistence farmers. The targets for unemployment set out in the PDP were based on the LFS and official definition of unemployment as defined by Stats SA.

The NEA population consist of the categories illustrated in Figure 3.5. Most individuals that are included in the working age but who are not currently economically active are students or scholars. However, an alarming portion (20.6%) of the provincial NEA population is economically inactive due to not being able to find employment. In other words, these individuals want to work but have become so discouraged that they have not been looking for a job for more than four weeks.

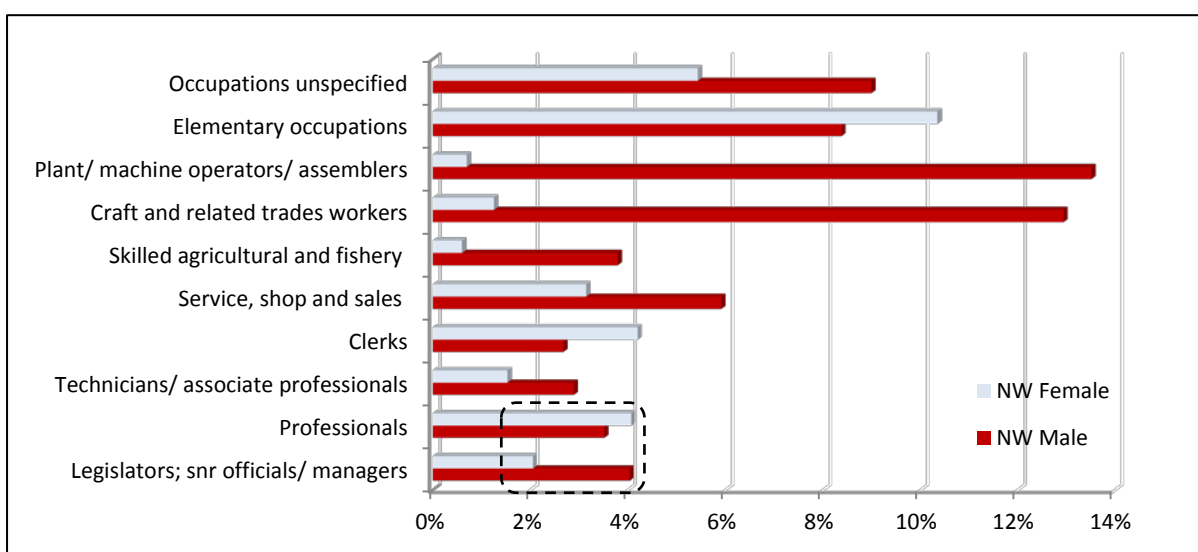
Figure 3.3.5: NEA population, 2012



Source: Stats SA, 2012

The types of employment occupations in which the labour force is involved are illustrated in the following figure. This figure also provides the distribution of occupations according to gender.

Figure 3.6: employment by occupation and gender, 2012



Source: Stats SA, 2012

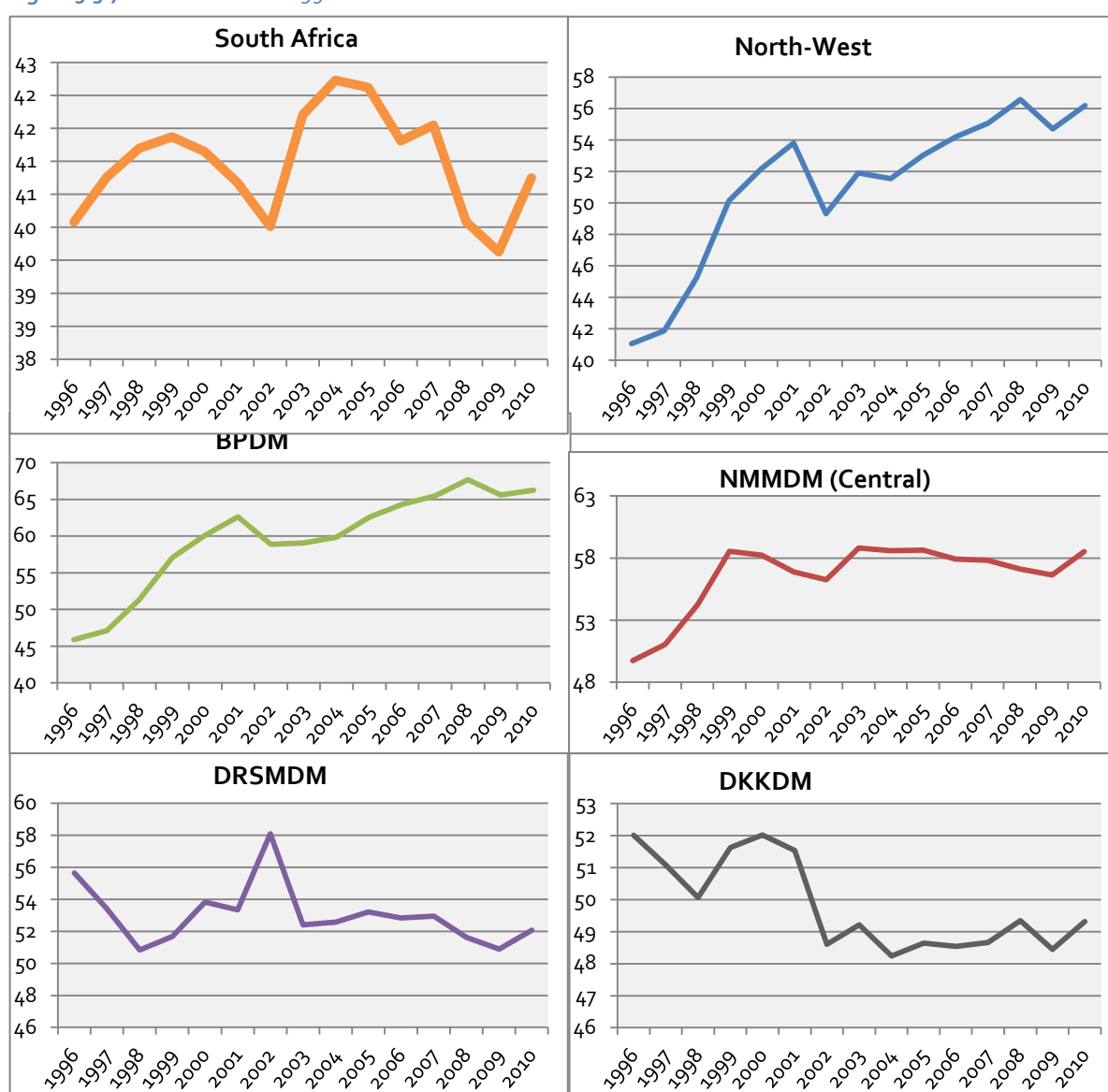


Salient features highlighted by Figure 3.6 include that more women are employed in elementary occupations, which for instance include occupations such as domestic work, cleaners and subsistence agriculture. Also, in the North West Province women are more commonly employed as clerks and professionals and less likely to become legislators, senior officials or senior managers. In fact the North West province has more female professionals than male professionals (roughly 4,000) but approximately 15,000 more male legislators, senior officials or senior management employees. Also, two thirds of all employees in the province are men.

### 3.1.2. LEVEL OF CONCENTRATION

A tress index indicates the level of concentration or diversification in the economic activities of an area. An index of zero represents a totally diversified economy, while a number closer to 100 indicates a high level of concentration. The figure below illustrates the tress index for South Africa, the North West province and DM's from 1996 to 2010.

Figure 3.3-7: Tress Index from 1996 – 2010



Source: Global Insight, 2013



The tress index for the North West province was 56.19 in 2010 indicating a relative high level of concentration in the economy of the province. The economy of South Africa has a higher degree of diversification with an index of 40.8. In 1996 the North West province had a more diversified economy but over the last 16 years it has become more concentrated as illustrated above. The change in the economic structure could be explained by the dominance of mining in the province. The current level of concentration increases the vulnerability to changes that might influence the provincial economy.

The most diversified economy can be found in the DKKDM (49.32) followed by the DRSMDM (52.08). The BPDM (66.25) has a more concentrated character due to the mining activities in the municipality and the NMMDM (58.53) as a result of the community services sector. Future planning must therefore focus on diversifying the NMMDM and BPDM while continuing the trend towards increased diversification in the DRSMDM and DKKDM.

### 3.1.3. COMPARATIVE ADVANTAGE

The comparative advantage of a region indicates a more competitive production function for an economic activity in a specific economy than in the aggregate (national) economy. The analysis therefore determines whether the provincial economy produces goods and or services (in a specific sector) more efficiently than the national economy.

The following table indicates the location quotient of the North West province as compared to the national economy.

**Table 3-3: comparative advantage of the North West province, 2011 (production and employment)**

SECTOR	PRODUCTION (GVA)			EMPLOYMENT		
	2011	*ROC	IMPLICATION	2011	*ROC	IMPLICATION
<b>Agriculture</b>	1.18	83%	High & Increasing	0.69	-25%	Low & Decreasing
<b>Mining</b>	4.34	24%	High & Increasing	5.96	79%	High & Increasing
<b>Manufacturing</b>	0.44	21%	Low & Increasing	0.63	-8%	Low & Decreasing
<b>Utilities</b>	0.50	7%	Low & Increasing	0.62	19%	Low & Increasing
<b>Construction</b>	0.73	-1%	Medium & Decreasing	0.71	15%	Medium & Increasing
<b>Trade</b>	0.82	-6%	Medium & Decreasing	0.82	-12%	Medium & Decreasing
<b>Transport</b>	0.91	6%	Medium & Increasing	0.46	-35%	Low & Decreasing
<b>Finance</b>	0.71	-4%	Medium & Decreasing	0.60	22%	Low & Increasing
<b>Personal</b>	1.49	17%	High & Increasing	0.87	-22%	Medium & Decreasing
<b>Government</b>	0.91	17%	Medium & Increasing	0.90	-26%	Medium & Decreasing

Source: \*ROC – Rate of change between 1995 and 2011

In terms of the comparative analysis of the provincial economy to that of the country illustrated in Table 3.3, the following conclusions around **proportional production** can be drawn:

- The agriculture sector, the mining sector and the personal and community services sector play a more significant role in the province than in the country.
- The significance of the finance and business and the retail and trade sectors have decreased since 1995.
- Production in manufacturing and construction (due to the potential of these sectors to support agriculture and mining and create spin-offs) needs to be stimulated.



In terms of the comparative analysis of the provincial economy to that of the country illustrated in Table 4.6 the following conclusions regarding **proportional employment** can be drawn:

- Owing to the significance of mining employment in the province, no other sector employs proportionally more workers than at a national level.
- Policies or interventions are necessary that would encourage employment especially in agriculture, agri-industry, mining related manufacturing and business and financial services.

The comparative advantage assessment identifies sectors that warrant attention for targeting efforts by the public sector through economic development policy. This assessment however is indicative only and other factors such as the absolute size of the sector, the employment capacity of the sector, the performance of specific industries or activities in a sector, the potential linkages with other sectors and other characteristics need to also be taken into account.

#### THE RESOURCE CURSE AND THE DIFFERENT FACETS OF MINING – "DUTCH DISEASE"

In economics, the Dutch disease is the apparent relationship between the increase in exploitation of natural resources and a decline in the manufacturing sector (or agriculture) (Corden, 1984<sup>5</sup>). The mechanism is that an increase in revenues from natural resources (or inflows of foreign aid) will make the currency of a nation stronger compared to that of other nations. An increase in the exchange rate will result in exports from the country becoming more expensive for other countries to buy, making the manufacturing sector less competitive. While it most often refers to natural resource discovery, it can also refer to "any development that results in a large inflow of foreign currency, including a sharp surge in natural resource prices, foreign assistance, and foreign direct investment.

An exchange rate linked to commodity prices, rather than the sophistication of a nation's exports, is a major challenge. In addition to volatility, the exchange rate can become overvalued in periods where commodity prices rise, putting a brake on non-commodity exports. Activities that are not traded benefit, such as retail, banking, telephony and housing construction.

A key challenge for the North West province is to avoid the Dutch disease and similar resource curse. Both refers to the paradox that economies with an abundance of natural resources, specifically non-renewable resources like minerals, tend to have slower economic growth and worse development outcomes. This occurs for many different reasons, including a decline in the competitiveness of other economic sectors due to an over-valuation of the exchange rate as resource prices increase and an under-investment in human capital and productivity growth.

According to the NDP (2012<sup>6</sup>) difficulties arise when the abundance of resources start decreasing and goods producers are left weakened. Some firms have adapted to this cycle by producing for local or export markets depending on domestic market conditions and the exchange rate. This enables survival, but is not conducive to long-term planning and expansion. Higher commodity prices buffer the economy and create the appearance of growth, leading governments and companies to become complacent and under-invest in people and productivity growth.

Concerns about the impact of the Dutch disease should not be confused with an essential commitment to expanding minerals production and exports. The Dutch disease or resource curse will be addressed partly through stimulating forward and backward linkages to expand industrial and services capabilities. Mining companies can play an immense role in stimulating these linkages. Amongst others, the Social and Labour





Plans (SLP's) of mining companies must be aimed at uplifting the communities surrounding the mines. SLP's should be developed and implemented affectively and without any disregard. Such implementation will equip mining communities with improved skills, infrastructure and / or opportunities for future generations outside of the mining sector.

Solutions for the Dutch disease go beyond interventions from mining companies. The diversification and stimulation of the provincial economy as discussed in this chapter will assist in relieving the dependency on the mining sector. If these pitfalls are consciously avoided, and if the mineral endowments are used to facilitate long-term capabilities, these resources can serve as a springboard for a new wave of industrialisation and services for domestic use and exports.

### 3.2. VISION 2030

The national vision (2030) assumes the growth of the economy and increase in employment levels as one of its first priorities in approaching efforts to eradicate poverty and reduce inequality.

*During the following two decades the North West provincial economy will diversify, increase productivity and attract investment. Decisive action that leads to an expansion in municipal infrastructure and services, improved education systems, and increased access to capital for new and expanding firms will provide the basis for growth and development in the province. The substantial commitment to reducing the costs of production and living will bear fruit and the province will become a more attractive investment destination. The decrease in production and cost of living stimulates local production and industries that support the agricultural and mining sectors expand. The province will play a greater role in promoting regional supply chains that underpin agricultural, mining and industrial production in the region. The vision for economic development and employment in the North West province requires the commitment of all sectors of society to contribute to the efforts required to meet common objectives.*

The key sectors through which the province will expand its economy were identified as the following:

- agriculture
- mining
- specific manufacturing sub-sectors (focusing on the value chain of agriculture, mining, construction and tourism sectors)
- renewable energy supplier industry
- construction and infrastructure (including renewable energy infrastructure)
- tourism (including arts and culture)
- overarching strategic priorities: Small, Medium and Micro-sized Enterprises (SMME) development and financial sector inclusion and development

#### 3.2.1. VISION 2030 PROJECTIONS

The NDP states that the percentage of the national population living in poverty must be reduced to zero by 2030. The North West province will also aim to eliminate income inequality by 2030 to realise the target set out for South Africa as a whole. It can therefore be said that the primary aim of the PDP is to eliminate poverty and reduce inequality by 2030 through the various priority areas identified in the document. Targets for poverty elimination in the North West province is set out in Table 3.4



Table 3-4: provincial poverty targets 2030

KEY PERFORMANCE INDICATORS (KPI's)	2010	TARGETS AND TIME FRAMES			
		2015	2020	2025	2030
% of children living in poverty conditions	69.3%	52%	35%	17%	0%
% of the youth aged between 15 and 24 living in poverty conditions	63.3%	47%	32%	16%	0%
% of the youth aged between 25 and 34 living in poverty conditions	44.9%	34%	22%	11%	0%
% of the elderly living in poverty conditions	49.4%	37%	25%	12%	0%
Percentage of the total population living in poverty	46.0%	35%	23%	12%	0%

Source: Stats SA, 2013

It can be concluded from the table above that 46 per cent of the population of the North West province was living in poverty conditions in 2010. This percentage must be brought down to zero per cent by 2030.

The GINI coefficient measures the extent to which the distribution of income or consumption expenditure among individuals or households within an economy deviates from a perfectly equal distribution. The coefficient varies between zero, which reflects complete equality and one, which indicates complete inequality (one person has all the income or consumption, all others have none). The table below illustrates the GINI coefficient targets set out for the North West province.

Table 3-5: GINI coefficient target 2030

KEY PERFORMANCE INDICATORS (KPI's)	CURRENT	TARGETS AND TIME FRAMES			
		2015	2020	2025	2030
GINI Coefficient	0.61	0.59	0.57	0.55	0.53

Source: Stats SA data (2013) and Global Insight, 2013

It can be concluded from Table 3.5 that the GINI coefficient of the North West province currently amounts to 0.61. The GINI coefficient for the province can be compared to some of the highest in the world along with, Lesotho (0.63); Sierra Leone (0.62); the Central African Republic (0.61); and Brazil (0.58). The GINI coefficient of the province must be improved from 0.61 in 2010 to 0.53 in 2030.

The NDP aims to reduce inequality in South-Africa by 2030 through decreasing the national GINI coefficient from 0.69 to 0.6. Considering the current GINI coefficient in the North West province a target of 0.53 is set out for the year 2030.

The North West province must enter a 20-year phase of development focused principally on the economic advancement of the poorest South Africans. The PDP provides a detailed and holistic approach to the task; covering education, infrastructure, rural development, health care and social protection, among other issues. But most critically, to eliminate poverty, the province has to raise employment. This can happen only if the economy grows faster and in ways that attract the historically disadvantaged. This chapter identifies ways to ensure the accelerated growth for all and provides sectoral growth targets in section. Table 3.6 provides the overarching employment target for the North West province.



Table 3-6: employment targets (million) (2010-2030)

Indicator (Millions)	2010	2015	2020	2030
Non-Working Age Population	1.24	1.26	1.30	1.38
Working-Age Population (15-65)	2.02	2.19	2.28	2.60
Labour Force Participation Rate	49%	54%	58%	64%
Labour Force	1.00	1.18	1.32	1.66
Unemployment Rate	25.1%	20.0%	14.0%	6.0%
Employment	0.75	0.95	1.14	1.56
Net New Employment Needed	-	0.20	0.19	0.43
Dependency Ratio	3.4	2.6	2.1	1.5

Source: Urban-Econ calculations based on Global Insight Data (2013), Stats SA (2013) and the NDP (2012)

Based on Table 3.6 it is estimated that the total provincial labour force would increase from approximately 1 million in 2010 to an estimated 1.66 million by 2014. Moreover, the estimated number of employed and unemployed people (comprising the economically active population) based on 2012 Stats SA and Global Insight figures was 0.75 million and 0.25 million respectively. These figures imply that a total of approximately 815 000 new employment opportunities will have to be created during the period from 2010 to 2030. This figure also assumes that all people that were employed by 2010 (including provincial residents employed outside the NW province) would remain employed over the entire lifespan of the PDP. Under these conditions it can be said that the labour force participation rate should increase from 49 per cent in 2010 and 64 per cent in 2030.

On average, the dependency ratio (the number of people depending on one wage earner) will decrease from 3.4 in 2010 to 1.5 in 2030. A falling dependency ratio will be a central contributor to reducing poverty and inequality.

The NDP projects that total employment should rise from 13 million to 24 million in South-Africa. 7 per cent of additional jobs that has to be created will be located in the North West province. By 2030 the North West will be responsible for 6.5 per cent of employment in South-Africa.

### 3.2.2. HOW TO ACHIEVE IT

In order to achieve this vision there are various aspects that need to be in place from the perspective of both the public and the private sector. An enabling environment (both physically and socio-politically) for example, needs to be supplied through collaborations between the private and public sector in order for greater confidence, increased investment and productivity and increased employment to become a reality.

Certain key considerations are required to ensure that the economic scenario provided by the national vision becomes a reality in the North West province. These include:

- encouraging employment oriented growth
- skills development, training and innovation
- creating an enabling environment
- sector specific strategies



- improving the developmental capability of the public sector

### WATER, ECONOMIC GROWTH AND EMPLOYMENT

The availability of water will be a determining factor in any future development in the North West province. It is important that water should be central to economic growth and development decisions taking place in the province. This will ensure that any resolutions taken, which rely on the steady supply of water, sufficiently consider the availability of water. Water can only support growth and development in the province without compromising the sustainability thereof, and only if, water is at the nucleus of planning and decision-making.

Although water planning is discussed in Chapter 4, the North West Water Provision and Management Plan were integrated into all relevant sections of the PDP (Department of Water Affairs, 2008<sup>7</sup>).

## 3.3. ENCOURAGING EMPLOYMENT ORIENTED GROWTH

The economic growth that has occurred over the past two decades has been accompanied by limited employment growth. This is also one of the primary causes of widespread poverty and extensive inequality. In order to reverse this trend the North West province will need better educational outcomes and skills development, a healthier population, improved physical infrastructure, a comprehensive social safety net, improved support for new and emerging businesses, a more capable state and much less corruption.

In order to encourage employment oriented growth, a number of key objectives has been identified:

- promote labour absorbing industries
- create an environment for sustainable employment and investment attraction (see section 3)
- promote competitiveness
- strengthen capacity in the public sector to implement economic policy

These key objectives are explained in greater detail below.

### 3.3.1. PROMOTING LABOUR ABSORBING INDUSTRIES

Mining remains by far the largest employer in the province, while manufacturing in both South Africa and in the North West province is becoming a proportionally smaller employer. Having contributed 9.5 per cent to total provincial employment in 1995 manufacturing currently contributes only 6.9 per cent. This is due to a lack of local competitiveness and investment attraction as a result of factors such as a high cost structure (primarily basic services and labour), poor infrastructure and limited skills capacity. A similar phenomenon occurred in the agriculture sector where the contribution to total employment decreased from 14.8 per cent in 1995 to its current level of just 4.0 per cent, a particular concern considering the high employment multiplier of the sector. The sector has a large multiplier effect due to its many forward and backward linkages with other sectors of the economy, which means that for every one job created in agriculture, a comparatively high number of additional jobs will transpire throughout the remainder of the economy. Employment in the business and finance sector increased its share from 4.1 per cent in 1995 to 9.6 per cent currently while the mining sector increased from 16.8 per cent to 28.8 per cent.

A number of sectors are prioritised for their potential to encourage or drive growth and or for their ability to create employment within the provincial context. The sectors identified include:



- agriculture
- mining
- construction and infrastructure
- renewable energy
- specific manufacturing sub-sectors (focusing on the value chain of the agriculture, mining, construction and tourism sectors)
- tourism (including arts and culture)
- overarching strategic priorities: SMME development and financial sector inclusion and development

Each of the identified sectors is discussed in greater detail further in the chapter. Stimulating growth in the sectors above will play a major role in boosting the provincial economy and employment, with the objective to have small and medium-sized firms being the main employment creators.

Government, in partnership with the private sector, must develop the capability to identify labour absorbing industries to nurture and support; develop sensible instruments to support those industries; and implement them competently. The private sector will be able to assist government in identifying areas where a sufficient demand exist for a product or service. Examples include housing construction, retail, personal services such as hairdressing or cleaning, small-scale agricultural and business services such as office cleaning or repair.

To make these activities more labour absorbing, the following should be made priority:

- the stimulation of demand for these goods and services
- adequate support for small firms
- access to credit

It has to be noted that the challenge is that the productivity of some of these activities is lower than the rest of the economy, and can have the effect of dampening potential growth.

#### RAISING THE RATE OF INVESTMENT

A labour-absorbing growth path will rely on improved infrastructure and network services that support traditional industries, such as mining and agriculture, and newer dynamic industries and associated linkages. Investments that improve efficiency and reduce the cost of transport and communication to other productive sectors have the potential to enhance competitiveness in a way that boosts labour, rather than displacing it.

Rising fixed-capital formation does not guarantee growth or employment. It will only have this effect if output, and output per worker (or labour productivity), rises. This in turn implies falling employment per unit of output (Barro, 1991<sup>8</sup>). Output must therefore rise fast enough to promote net employment growth. Fast-rising employment will depend on the expansion of highly labour-intensive, domestically oriented activities. This will require considerable investment in human capital throughout the North West province.

Rising rates of investment will be sourced from:

1. Higher levels of public-sector fixed capital formation, especially in the earlier years, with an emphasis on infrastructure that promotes efficiency and reduces costs.
2. Private investment stimulated by expanding consumer markets, rising profitability, natural resources endowments and leveraging the country's position on the continent. It will be attracted by improved



conditions created as a result of policy certainty, infrastructure delivery, efficiency of public services and the quality of labour.

3. Foreign investment, which will have to play a significant role in a context of curbed savings. These investments lead to rising output, incomes and employment growth. Savings will rise through the foreign investment. Over time, a larger share of investment should be funded domestically, but this will depend on how well resources are used in the short-term to raise productivity, incomes and employment.

### 3.3.1.1. SMALL AND EXPANDING FIRMS (SMME DEVELOPMENT)

Small and medium sized firms have been identified as some of the main employment creators in the future development of the North West province. In the past, efforts to assist the sector have had limited success due to the lack of robust data on particularly the ability of the sector to assist in employment. Additional to the potential of job creation there are other advantages to broadening the base of new and expanding firms. According to the NDP (2012) these advantages include:

- Reduced levels of economic concentration
- Higher levels of competition
- Increased opportunities for BBBEE

The advantages are subject to numerous challenges including distortions created by apartheid in ownership and access to land, capital and skills deficiencies; widespread crime and a policy environment that traditionally favours concentration and large corporations. Economies of scale in both production and distribution favour large firms above SMMEs. Large firms are able to sell their products at lower prices that suppliers cannot match.

Small-scale agriculture, micro-enterprises and artisanship must be promoted across the North West province. These activities have the potential to be shock absorbers for extreme poverty and platforms for self-employment, with the potential to serve as rungs on the ladder of economic advancement.

The actions required for the SMME sector is twofold: to create a more enabling environment for small enterprises to grow, expand their operations and employ more people; and secondly to create the conditions under which SMMEs can flourish and more entrepreneurs can enter the market. Interventions to support both these outcomes will be mutually reinforcing for the sector. Entrepreneurs with the highest potential are those who have previously successfully started businesses. This group of entrepreneurs is a great target market for an incentive system. Another group requiring focus on is those entrepreneurs who have failed before. They find it difficult to start businesses again as credit access obstacles. This group of entrepreneurs still hold potential and policy approaches should include 'out of the box' methods to include them.

#### ACTIONS:

- Increase public and private procurement (See following section).
- Increase business support to SMMEs from the private and public sectors to allow for market entry and expansion combined with increased access to finance through engagements with Development Finance Institutions.
- Stimulate access to established supply chains and facilitate buyer– supplier relations.
- Build research capacity to address the scarcity of data currently available on small businesses.
- Scale-up public communication on available opportunities.
- Establish small-business support services accessible to the whole province. Consolidate and strengthen existing small-business support services.



- Create incentive system for existing entrepreneurs. Consider methods to re-enter entrepreneurs, who has failed in the past but still show potential, into the sector.
- Address the skills gaps. Provide training for school leavers and unemployed youth with a focus on skills development. Amongst others establish programmes run by well-trained ex-entrepreneurs who have first-hand experience of the sector (See Chapter 7).

### 3.3.1.2. PUBLIC AND PRIVATE PROCUREMENT

As discussed in the previous section, small and expanding enterprises will become more prominent, and generate the majority of new jobs created. They will also contribute to changing apartheid legacy patterns of business ownership. One of the main stimulants to these enterprises will be public and private procurement within the province. Public and private procurement will stimulate demand for SMMEs and improve access to opportunities in a highly concentrated environment. Care should be taken in efforts to stimulate local procurement. These efforts should not reinforce higher costs for the public sector and businesses because this will undermine growth and job creation.

#### PROCUREMENT POLICY FRAMEWORK

Two recent policy efforts will form an important foundation for promoting procurement, the Preferential Procurement Policy Framework Act (Act No. 5 of 2000) and the Revised Preferential Procurement Regulations (National Treasury, 2011<sup>9</sup>) constitute an important step in stimulating local production through public-sector procurement. A Local Procurement Accord, negotiated through the Department of Economic Development and social partners, commits both the private and the public sectors to targets in respect of the localisation of procurement.

#### ACTIONS

- Continue to implement the Preferential Procurement Policy Framework Act (2000) and the Revised Preferential Procurement Regulations (2011) together with the Local Procurement Accord to promote stronger buyer–supplier relations and deeper localisation.
- Create human settlements and services conducive to small and medium enterprise expansion.
- Make public procurement opportunities more accessible to small businesses, streamline tender processes, improve transparency and eliminate corruption.

### 3.3.1.3. EXPANDED PUBLIC WORKS PROGRAMME

The problem of unemployment and underemployment in both the North West province and the rest of South Africa have become too big to be solved by market based solutions over the next 17 years. Public employment programmes are thus an essential element of any employment strategy. These employment schemes must complement social-delivery programmes in the province to strengthen community reach.

Low productivity, non-market services such as expanded public works projects in government construction, care, self-help projects and survivalist activities are generally called public employment schemes. The public employment schemes currently in operation in South Africa are the Expanded Public Works Programme (EPWP) I & II.

Regarding public works programmes employment in the North West province could be subject to three possible scenarios. These scenarios are derived from the NDP (2012).





### SCENARIO 1: BASELINE

In Scenario 1 the North West province continues along the current development path without any major improvements to the policy environment and with poor provincial economic conditions. The province will be able to meet some of its infrastructure commitments nevertheless the rate of investment in the economy will not significantly improve. More people are absorbed into the economy, but the unemployment rate does not decline at the desired rate. Given the objective to create 815 000 jobs by 2030, there would be a shortfall of 361 000 employment opportunities. The deficit would have to be met through public-works job opportunities.



### SCENARIO 2: IMPROVED GROWTH RATE

In Scenario 2 the global environment has improved and as a result the performance of infrastructure programmes. There is an improved growth rate in the province and more people are employed. In this instance, about 174 000 public-works job opportunities will have to be created by 2030.

### SCENARIO 3: A DIVERSIFIED DYNAMIC ECONOMY

Scenario 3 represents the ideal employment scenario for the North West province. In this scenario, provincial planning resulted in an economy with more substantial investments in municipal infrastructure, services, and educational systems as well as towards capital for new and expanding firms. Sufficient partnerships have been developed and established with the private sector and investment is made in research and development. The provincial economy has expanded through the growth targets set out for the province.

In Scenario 3, steps to promote community-based house building with innovative local inputs will help expand housing, supplier industries and related job creation. These actions improve well-being, although the majority of jobs created are still in low skills services, families are able to achieve a decent standard of living. The collapse in production and living costs stimulates local production. Through the strategies set out throughout the PDP, Scenario 3 could become a reality. In Scenario 3 the need for an Expanded Public Works Programme (EPWP) employment opportunities would be in the region of 28 000.

The table below provides the employment scenarios of the North West province. The EPWP employment figures were made on the NDP (2012) scenario projections. Each scenario represents EPWP as a sector to illustrate the contribution thereof towards reaching the goal of 1 563 000 employment opportunities by 2030.

**Table 3-7: employment scenarios – employment outcomes by 2030**

Sector	Scenario 1	Scenario 2	Scenario 3
Agriculture	104 379	120 667	133 290
Mining	167 261	193 362	213 590
Manufacturing	137 230	158 644	175 240
Electricity	13 101	15 145	16 729
Construction	69 632	80 498	88 919



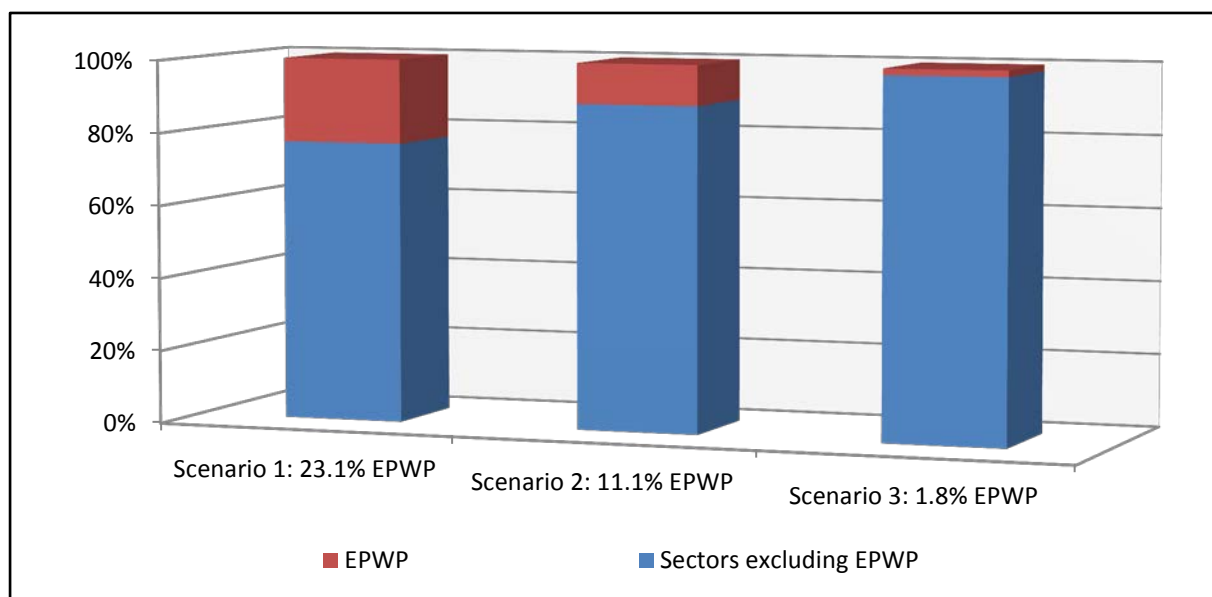


Sector	Scenario 1	Scenario 2	Scenario 3
Trade	205 923	238 056	262 960
Transport	52 601	60 809	67 171
Finance	86 296	99 762	110 199
Community Services	273 466	316 140	349 212
Households	92 280	106 680	117 840
<b>TOTAL without EPWP</b>	<b>1 202 169</b>	<b>1 389 764</b>	<b>1 535 150</b>
<b>Unemployment rate without EPWP</b>	<b>27.7%</b>	<b>16.4%</b>	<b>7.7%</b>
EPWP Jobs	361 120	173 525	28 139
<b>TOTAL</b>	<b>1 563 000</b>	<b>1 563 000</b>	<b>1 563 000</b>
<b>Unemployment rate with EPWP</b>	<b>6%</b>	<b>6%</b>	<b>6%</b>
<b>EPWP % of total employment</b>	<b>23.1%</b>	<b>11.1%</b>	<b>1.8%</b>

Source: Urban-Econ calculations based on Global Insight Data (2013), Stats SA (2012-2013) and the NDP (2012)

Based on Table 3.7 the figure below illustrates the percentage contribution of EPWP employment opportunities for each scenario.

Figure 3.8: employment scenarios – EPWP contribution by 2030



Source: Urban-Econ calculations based on Global Insight Data (2013) and the NDP (2012)

It can be concluded that Scenario 3 represents the ideal employment scenario since the reliance on public works programmes will be the least to create 1 563 000 jobs by 2030. In the absence of public works programmes, the unemployment target set out for the North West province (6%) would not be achievable. In Scenario 1 the unemployment rate will be as high as 27.7 per cent by 2030 while Scenario 3 will miss the target by 1.7 per cent at 7.7 per cent.

#### ACTIONS:

- Incorporate and implement public employment programmes throughout the North West province.
- Align public employment schemes with provincial social development programmes.



### 3.3.1.4. RURAL ECONOMIES

The North West province faces a considerable challenge of stimulating economic growth and employment creation in the rural areas of the province. This will be discussed in greater detail in Chapter 5. The main objectives regarding rural economies entails the stimulation of small-scale agriculture; tourism (including the creative and cultural industry); and mining investments and related spin-offs. Public-sector procurement must also be leveraged to stimulate local activity in the rural areas. Much will depend on strengthening local institutions, the flow of infrastructure funding, equitable social service provision, and addressing land tenure reform.

### 3.3.1.5. THE CONTRIBUTION OF MINING IN LOCAL DEVELOPMENT

The Social and Labour Plans (SLP's) of mining companies are aimed at uplifting the communities surrounding mines. SLP's should be developed and implemented effectively and without any disregard. Such implementation will equip mining communities with improved skills, infrastructure and / or opportunities for future generations outside of the mining sector. It has been argued by the Bench Mark Foundation (2011<sup>10</sup>) that the benefits of mining are not reaching the workers or the surrounding communities. Lack of employment opportunities for local youth, foul living conditions, unemployment and growing inequalities are some of the challenges mining communities are faced with.

Noting the high levels of unemployment in general and youth unemployment in particular, mining companies must give preference to the training and employment of people from local communities. Mining companies are currently employing large numbers of migrant workers. The need further exists to establish a training centre / mining college in the BPDM. Training and skills development should not be based on only mining activities but should provide miners with training in other sectors such as construction. This will enable miners to sustain their livelihoods outside of the mining sector if the need should arise. Mining workers are generally low-skilled and employment opportunities outside of the mining sector are few. The role of businesses should also be considered in this regard. Local businesses could benefit from the proposed training facilities. Mining companies, local businesses and government should collaborate to increase the availability of apprenticeships, graduate traineeships, bursaries and scholarships across the mining sector.

While acknowledging there are numerous challenges resulting from mining operations, there also exist opportunities for enterprise development, job creation and poverty alleviation that could be tackled in a sustainable manner involving marginalised communities.

#### SOCIAL AND LABOUR PLANS (SLP'S)

In order to address local socio-economic developmental imbalances, in addition to various public sector strategies and plans that already exist, each mining operation in South Africa is required to adopt and implement a Social and Labour Plan (SLP). The SLP is a product of the Mineral and Petroleum Resources Development Act (MPRDA), Act 28 of 2002. The key objective of an SLP, in combination with some principles of the Broad-Based Socio-Economic Empowerment Charter for the South African Mining Industry (often referred to simply as the Mining Charter) is to facilitate socio-economic development in areas in which mining activity takes place, as well as in the area from where a mine sources the majority of its workforce. A SLP consist of three main programmes (with sub-components) that are implemented throughout the entire lifespan of the mine although it is updated every five years. The three main programmes required to be addressed by each mining company through its SLP are as follows:

1. **A human resource development programme which includes the following:**
  - skills development plan
  - career path plan



- mentorship plan
- internship and bursary plan
- employment equity plan

2. **A local-economic development programme which must include:**

- social and economic background information
- key economic activities
- impact of the operation on the area
- infrastructure and poverty eradication/**community development** projects that the mine would support in line with the IDP of the area in which the mine operates and the major sending areas
- measures to address housing and living conditions of the employees of the mines
- measures to address nutrition of mine employees
- a procurement progression plan and its implementation for Historically Disadvantaged South African (HDSA) companies in terms of capital goods, services and consumable

3. **A management of downscaling and retrenchment (end of the lifespan of the mine) programme:**

- establishment of future forum
- mechanisms to save jobs and avoid job losses and a decline in employment
- mechanisms to provide alternative solutions and procedures for creating job security where job losses cannot be avoided
- mechanisms to ameliorate the social and economic impact on individuals, regions and economies where retrenchment or closure of the operation is certain

## ACTIONS

- Mining companies must give preference to the training and employment of people from local communities.
- Improve the SLP process of delivering human resources and economic development by mines in communities, by defining the roles of stakeholders more clearly.
- Collaboration between government and mining corporations to ensure developmental planning in local governments (IDP's, LED's and SDF's) and SLP's complement each other.
- Increase local procurement from mining companies.
- Create human settlements and services for mining communities conducive to small and medium enterprise expansion.
- Conduct beneficiation feasibility studies on selected metals/minerals mined in the province, in line with the Beneficiation Strategy for the Minerals Industry of South Africa.
- Establish a training centre / mining college in the BPDM focusing on among others literacy training and skills development in alternative sectors.
- Create cooperation's between mining companies, local businesses and government to increase the availability of apprenticeships, graduate traineeships, bursaries and scholarships for mine workers as part of their training programmes.
- Lobby for a review of the mining charter, SLP's and the implementation thereof to refine the way the mining industry operates and meet social, labour and equity targets.
- Investigate the negative impacts of employing large numbers of sub-contracted labour.
- Investigate the conditions under which communities near mining operations live, in particular the informal communities that form around mines.
- Hold regular workshops on key issues affecting the people within the mining sector.



- Launch campaigns on specific problems that mining communities are faced with such as informing employees on HIV/AIDS prevention and treatment and Xenophobia.
- Embark on targeted community driven social and infrastructure development projects.
- Launch a regular newsletter to keep the local communities informed on key issues, campaigns and projects.
- Utilise the media to inform the rest of the world on the reality within the mining sector and attract support for campaigns and or projects launched to address specific problems.
- Mining corporations should make their sustainability reports available to the public in all the local languages. The media could once again be utilised to this extent.
- Civil society organisations in the North West province should set up a strategic fund, which will support the organisational, legal and political work of poor communities adversely affected by mining. This fund must be contributed to independently by all mining corporations on a proportional basis, depending on their size and number of operations. The funds are to be managed by an independent agreed third party to assist communities in expertise, and that capacitates communities to engage over Environmental Impact Assessment, SLPs and community development.
- Advocate for corporations to initiate a structured forum to meet with representative community organisations which include civil society organisations and other interest groups.

### 3.3.2. PROMOTING COMPETITIVENESS

Most jobs available in the province are in the low to semi-skilled workforce and in the primary sector of the economy. Economic growth in the North West economy, especially in the manufacturing industry, has been mediocre as a result of inter alia, a lack of competitiveness. Isolation and apartheid have been the main causes of skewed economic growth in the past. These factors have resulted in major sectors of the economy developing in an uncompetitive manner, leading to a high cost structure. In a number of sectors, public and private monopolies have used their market dominance to charge high prices. Added to these factors, poor services by municipalities and utilities to businesses raise costs significantly, especially in the rural areas. These factors increase the cost of doing business and do not motivate competitiveness. Research and development, innovation and continued learning, which enable advances in competitiveness, are further attributes that are non-accessible to the poor especially rural communities.

#### ACTIONS:

- Lobby for regulatory and competition law reform.
- Sufficient infrastructure investment and service delivery in especially rural areas to lower the cost of doing business.
- Create partnerships with the private sector and universities to assist SMMEs through knowledge sharing.
- Increase access to information (and distribution thereof) from specific research councils, such as the Agriculture Research Council (ARC).
- Focus on industries with an existing competitive advantage in key value chains.
- Address the skills gap, with a focus on vocational and technical training and technological skills.

### 3.4. DEVELOPMENT, TRAINING AND INNOVATION

Skills development and training form a key component of an efficient economy and enable increases in productivity, competitiveness and employment. The focus should be on facilitating skills development in vocational areas that are in high demand from industry and in technology related fields such as IT and science. Included under the umbrella of skills development are aspects such as continued learning, research and development and technological innovation; in order to specifically increase levels of employment and



employability. Although education, training and skills development are discussed more thoroughly in Chapter 7 of this report, some key considerations in terms of the role of human capital in growing the economy are highlighted below.

- improving relevant skills and human capital formation
- establish a post-school system that caters for a wide range of industry specific needs
- improve the utilisation of research and innovation

All interventions and actions proposed in this section of the report should be aligned to *the comprehensive skills strategy* proposed in Chapter 7. This strategy allows for the alignment of skills development with economic growth sectors and clusters from a private and public perspective.

### 3.4.1. IMPROVING RELEVANT SKILLS AND HUMAN CAPITAL FORMATION

A large number of recent secondary school graduates are unemployed and many are deprived of knowledge, experience and information required for becoming entrepreneurs. Although the high rate of youth unemployment is partly a result of limited employment opportunities, it is also a result of shortages in the necessary skills to become involved in business and the industry. Too few graduates have a sufficient capacity for mathematics (not math literacy), accounting and science. These challenges are exaggerated by SETAs that are in many cases underperforming. The SETAs remain the most valuable source of reliable training data regarding skills development in the province and without this data, no success in establishing and quantifying skills development by the private and public sector will ever be possible.

#### ACTIONS:

- Provide training for school leavers with specific focus on vocational and technical training.
- Establish programmes managed by ex-entrepreneurs who have experience in business management.
- Provide incentives to private sector to implement mentoring and internship programmes.
- Provide entrepreneurial training in secondary schools.
- Encourage focussing on either academic or technical streams during high school.
- Encourage and promote the benefit of mathematics (not maths literacy), science, technology and accounting.
- Improve the delivery of human resource development programmes contained in Social and Labour Plans.
- Implement the *comprehensive skills strategy* proposed in Chapter 7 and improve linkages between SETAs and the post-school education system and industry.

### 3.4.2. ESTABLISH A POST-SCHOOL SYSTEM THAT CATERS FOR A WIDE RANGE OF INDUSTRY SPECIFIC NEEDS

The post-school system is not well enough designed to meet the skills development needs of the youth or the economy. Few non-university institutions, especially Further Education and Training (FET) colleges, are internationally competitive due to infrastructure, capacity and funding shortages. Few opportunities exist for college students to acquire practical experience as part of course requirements and too few quality educators are available to teach at post-school level.

#### ACTIONS:

- Develop and support a system for providing a diverse range of further education and training initiatives by both the public and private sector.
- Strengthen existing institutions focussing on colleges and technical schools.
- Expand the college sector by addressing quality in teaching and learning.



- Improve the capacity of FET institutions and expand their geographical reach to include rural areas.
- Ensure better relationships between post school education facilities and the industry (implement the *comprehensive skills strategy* proposed in Chapter 7).
- Improve the adult basic education offering in terms of quality, regulation and monitoring.
- Establish Community Education and Training Centres in partnership with the Department of Higher Education and Training.
- Encourage universities to offer short courses to train post-school educators.
- Insure implementation through on-going monitoring and evaluation, amongst other measures.

### 3.4.3. IMPROVE THE UTILISATION OF RESEARCH AND INNOVATION

One university in the province dominates the provincial research arena and continued partnership and cooperation between the state and the university is critical. The research mandate in technical colleges is under-utilised, and such facilities should be encouraged and supported to expand in such an area. Research should be utilised to create opportunities for new industrial firms to enter new dynamic product segments with an identified comparative advantage. Research and innovation must also be utilised to improve the competitiveness of existing established firms through the implementation of new technologies and methods.

#### ACTIONS:

- Increase support for post-graduate studies.
- Improve partnerships between research institutions and industry.
- Innovation and research in agriculture and mining value chains, renewable energies and resource management, financial accessibility to lower income markets and technology in manufacturing is crucial in the North West province (NWU to provide information such as student dissertations to industry).
- Strengthen non-university research institutions and increase access to research funding.
- Focus on research and development in existing areas of competitive advantage, where markets are set to grow. These include high-value agriculture, mining inputs and downstream processing, innovation to meet environmental and energy efficiency objectives, and financial services.

### 3.5. CREATING AN ENABLING ENVIRONMENT

An enabling environment refers to both the physical and the institutional realm that allows and encourages economic growth and employment creation. The physical environment referred to in this instance includes elements such as roads, energy and water infrastructure that allows for businesses to operate efficiently. The institutional environment relates to for instance elements such as the macro-economic platform and the policy environment that regulates market conduct, economic transformation and labour practises. One of the key outcomes of a good enabling environment is an increase in local and foreign investors.

Investment in the North West province will initially be achieved through state spending on infrastructure. This will entail the provision of new infrastructure and the maintenance of the existing infrastructure.

The focus needs to be on infrastructure that promotes efficiency in the economy and reduces costs for businesses and for individuals. Private-sector investment can be stimulated and attracted by creating policy certainty in and ensuring that all policies address the need for companies to be competitive.

Thus, raising the rate of investment will require measures to reduce business costs and uncertainty while enhancing profitability and public sector commitment to capital investments and maintenance.



### 3.5.1. REDUCE POLICY UNCERTAINTY

Land management in most parts of rural North West impacts negatively on investment potential since much of it is under the administration of traditional authorities. This means that when land is allocated it is done without security of tenure and typically on a communal basis, creating a great disincentive for investment, especially long-term investments in projects, businesses or agriculture. Land management is complex and there are varied issues involved. One of the most pressing issues additional to the challenges regarding land administration is that an in-depth audit of state land that is required. A great portion of the state land cannot be accounted for both in the former Western Transvaal and Bophuthatswana.

Also, in both the agriculture and the mining sector in the North West, which collectively contributes a third of total employment in the province, labour relations and sustainability of jobs remain a matter of concern. A balance between employment creation (often implying a more flexible labour market) and labour protection needs to be achieved in order to ensure sustainable employment and employment growth. The labour laws of South Africa are often described as inflexible and it is recommended that the provincial government lobbies for a review of the existing labour laws on national level. A flexible labour market will attract greater investment and prove more sustainable for employment creation over the long-term.

Land administration in traditional authorities is currently governed by the Traditional Leadership and Governance Framework Amendment Act of 2003. This act provides formal recognition to traditional authorities and highlights the essential feature of self-administration of land assigned by the community, via the action of traditional leadership, to each of its members to meet his or her needs. This means that a traditional authority, through its council (leadership), acts as the custodian of all the land that forms part of that traditional authority. Although processes exist to formally allocate land for projects or investment purposes, it is typically complex and time consuming.

#### ACTIONS:

- Provincial government should lobby for a review of the existing labour laws on national level to create a more flexible labour market.
- Improve processes of rights applications (water, mining, etc.).
- Maintain the employment equity focus, and prioritise hiring young people and offering internships and mentoring programmes.
- Conduct an in-depth audit of state land required for development and formulates measures, which can assist in identifying the land.
- Enable security of tenure in traditional areas.
- Simplify the process of allocating land for projects and investments in traditional areas.
- Increase involvement of the private sector in policy formulation.
- Ensure policy certainty through more effective dialogue with private sector. Business and labour should adopt a strategic approach to negotiations and building trust between themselves.

### 3.5.2. LOWERING THE COST OF LIVING FOR THE POOR

Many communities in the North West have very high costs of living, of which transport, food and energy costs are often the largest and predominantly dictate expenditure patterns. These high costs of living prevent the poor from becoming involved in the economy, whether through education, effectively searching for work or establishing a self-operated enterprise. This is largely a result of historic spatial divides that has caused poor communities to be located farthest from opportunities and markets. The cost of food in rural areas is also often higher due to higher transport cost and lack of competition in some areas. The poor are very often





trapped in a cycle of poverty (all their income is spent on surviving and little is spent to unlock opportunity) out of which it is difficult to escape.

**ACTIONS:**

- Improve local and provincial government cooperation in establishing and maintaining services infrastructure.
- Improve road infrastructure, especially provincial roads.
- Establish subsidised public transport initiatives on key routes.
- Encourage retail and trade cooperatives.
- Promote small-scale agriculture.
- Invest in renewable energy solutions for rural communities.

**3.5.3. IMPROVE INFRASTRUCTURE PROVISION AND SERVICE DELIVERY**

As indicated in Section 3.4.2, permanent and reliable access to water remains a challenge in many communities in the province, often leading to households having to incur additional costs. This factor, combined with the poor quality of many of the regional and secondary roads, reduce the potential of rural communities to start businesses and to become economically active. The quality of roads, in fact, impacts the entire economy through inefficient movement of goods and services (including emergency services), increased cost in vehicle depreciation, potential investors choosing alternative investment destinations, domestic tourists choosing to avoid certain roads and thus certain areas, etc. The establishment of infrastructure and the delivery of associated services need to be improved at provincial, district and local government level. Some of the key challenges include a lack of capacity at local government, especially rural municipalities, poor coordination between spheres of government and various departments, fast urbanisation in some areas leading to pressure on existing infrastructure and the dispersed nature of the rural areas driving up the cost of infrastructure and services delivery.

Energy provision is another concern in some areas, especially since the mining sector consumes a great share of the available electricity. The energy sector however, in terms of specifically renewable energy technology, holds great potential for long-term economic growth, especially if focus is placed on investing in the value chain of the industry and linking manufacturing activity with construction. Although access to telecommunications (mobile phones especially) has increased significantly over the past decade, access to fixed line internet remains limited in the North West province and rural communities have very little opportunity to become exposed to such technology.

The actions required in terms of infrastructure provisions and service delivery is provided in both section 4 and section 12, dealing with the provision of infrastructure and the capacity of the state respectively.

**3.5.4. STRENGTHENING CAPACITY IN THE PUBLIC SECTOR TO IMPLEMENT ECONOMIC POLICY**

Economic and development policies have no purpose unless they are implemented successfully. There must be a change in mind-set across all sectors of society – public, private and civil society – and increased focus on implementation and real change. Policy implementation in government is located in a complex and integrated set of responsibilities divided across various departments. Effective collaboration and communication between departments on implementing priorities are often lacking and stronger leadership or guidance is required. The relationship between the public and private sector can be described as poor. Trust needs to be established between the private and public sector to ensure their commitment towards the implementation of a policy. Development agencies play an important role in the implementation of policies throughout the province.





**ACTIONS:**

- Increase social dialogue between public and private sector and ensure clarity on policy matters and objectives.
- Identify and remove major constraint in policy implementation which hinder investment and production in key sectors. These constraints include the following:
  - ✓ improve urban planning approval processes
  - ✓ improve water, minerals and environmental licensing processes
- Improve accountability and professionalism in the public sector.
- Increasingly establish Public Private Partnerships (PPPs).
- Ensure greater collaboration between provincial and municipal governments.
- Create a database of existing development agencies in the province and the role of each agency. Develop a monitoring system to ensure all agencies make a valued contribution towards the implementation of policies. Development agencies will include amongst others the following:
  - ✓ Small Enterprise Development Agency (SEDA)
  - ✓ Industrial Development Corporation (IDC)
  - ✓ National Youth Development Agency (NYDA)
  - ✓ National Development Agency (NDA)
  - ✓ North West Development Corporation (NWDC)

**3.6. SECTOR SPECIFIC STRATEGIES**

In order to achieve employment and economic growth it will be necessary to prioritise certain economic sectors that will lead the overall economy in building on their competitive advantages and diversifying their structure. The two economic sectors in the North West with a comparative advantage (in relation to the rest of South Africa) include the agriculture and the mining sectors. Prioritising certain sectors does not imply that growth in other sectors are not equally important, in fact, some sectors are merely not prioritised due to their proven potential for growth and employment creation without institutional support. These industries often include services such as retail, trade, personal services and transport (excluding public transport to some extent).

Prioritised sectors are identified as such for their potential to encourage or drive growth and or for their ability to create employment. The sectors identified include:

- agriculture
- mining
- specific manufacturing sub-sectors (focusing on the value chain of the agriculture, mining, construction and tourism sectors)
- renewable energy
- construction and infrastructure
- tourism (including arts and culture)
- overarching strategic priorities: SMME development and financial sector inclusion and development

Table 3.8 provides the sectorial Gross Value Added (GVA) growth targets for the North West province towards 2030



Table 3-8: average annual GVA and growth rate 2030 (2010 R million-Values) <sup>1</sup>

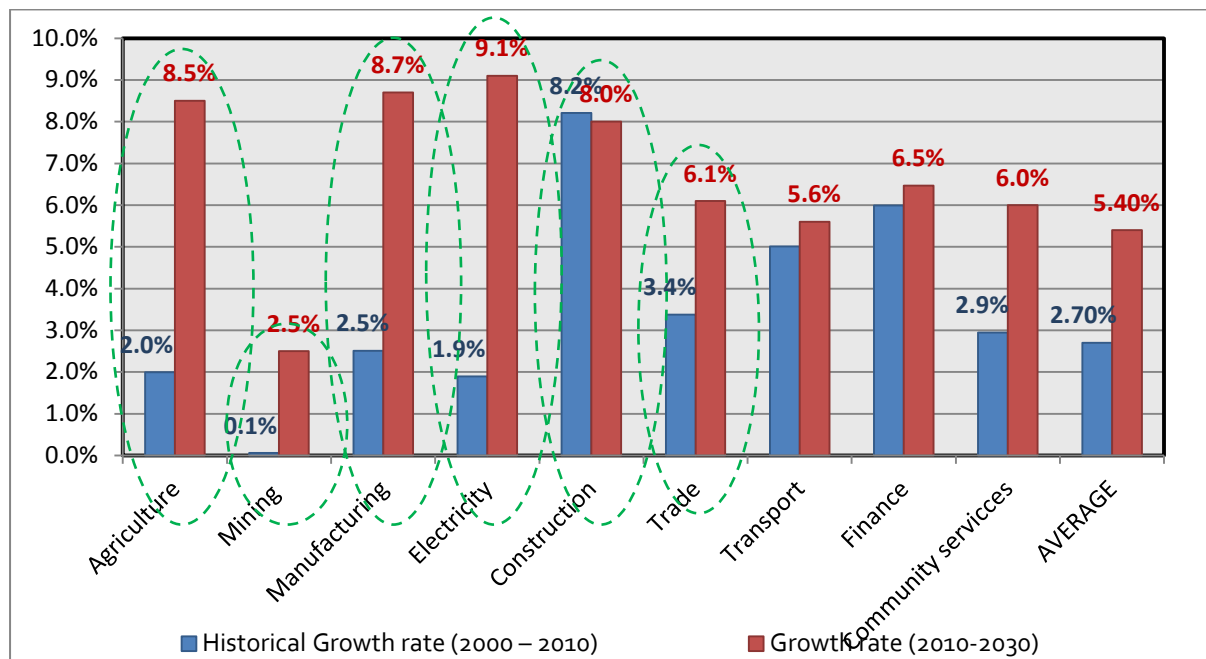
Sector	Historical Annual Average Growth Rate (2000 – 2010)	2010	Target Average Annual Growth Rate (2010 – 2030)	2030
Agriculture	2.0%	R 3.39	8.5%	R 17.31
Mining	0.1%	R 54.97	2.5%	R 90.08
Manufacturing	2.5%	R 7.18	8.7%	R 38.07
Electricity	1.9%	R 2.12	9.1%	R 12.09
Construction	8.2%	R 3.46	8.0%	R 16.12
Trade	3.4%	R 15.81	6.1%	R 51.67
Transport	5.0%	R 10.79	5.6%	R 32.07
Finance	6.0%	R 19.47	6.5%	R 68.23
Community Services	2.9%	R 28.55	6.0%	R 91.57
<b>TOTAL / AVERAGE</b>	<b>2.7%</b>	<b>R 145.73</b>	<b>5.40%</b>	<b>R 417.22</b>

Source: Urban-Econ calculations based on Global Insight Data (2013), Stats SA (2013) and the NDP (2012)

From the table above it can be concluded that the provincial GVA should increase by 2.9 times in real terms, requiring an average annual GVA growth of 5.4 per cent over this period. The sectors that will experience high growth rates are agriculture, manufacturing, electricity and construction. The projected growth rates will result in a more diversified provincial economy.

Figure 3.9 compares the historic growth rates (200-2010) to the target growth rate (2010 -2030) set out for each sector.

Figure 3.9: historic annual growth rates (200-2010) compared to the target annual growth rate (2010 -2030)



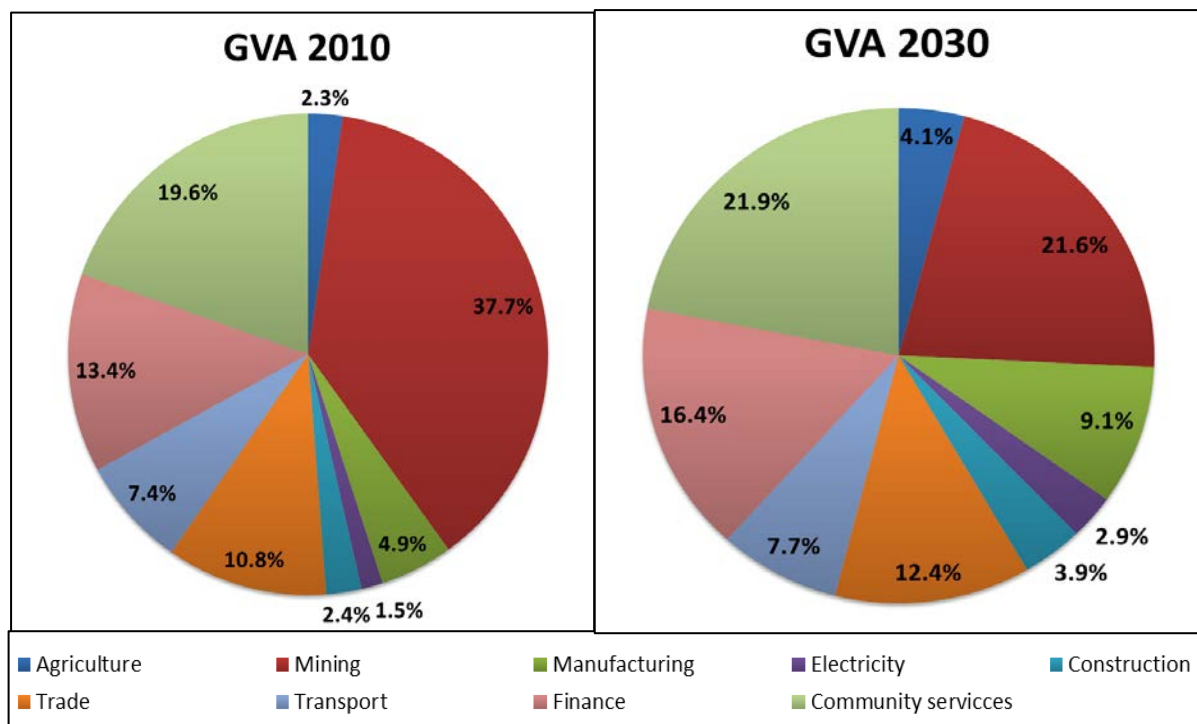
Source: Urban-Econ calculations based on Global Insight Data (2013), Stats SA (2013) and the NDP (2012)

<sup>1</sup> Tourism is located within the Trade, Transport and Finance sectors.  
SMME development is located across all sectors.



It can be concluded from Figure 3.9 that the priority sectors, agriculture, mining, manufacturing, electricity, and trade will have to be accompanied with high growth rates relative to their historic growth rates to reach the desired level of diversification in the provincial economy. Since the construction sectors have experienced a high growth rate since 2000 (8.2%) the target growth rate for 2030 will be slightly less (8%). Figure 3.10 illustrates the composition of the provincial economy in 2010 and the new composition that will result from the target growth rates.

Figure 3.10: sectoral contribution, 2010 and 2030



Source: Urban-Econ calculations based on Global Insight Data (2013), Stats SA (2013) and the NDP (2012)

It becomes evident from Figure 3.10 and Table 3.9 that although mining will be experiencing a below average growth rate over the following 17 years, it will remain one of the largest contributors towards the provincial GVA. Community services including the public sector will be the largest GVA contributor followed by the mining sector, financing sector and trade sector. The agricultural sector, electricity sector and construction sector will all be subject to high growth rates over the next 18 years. The high growth rates will increase their proportional contribution to the provincial GVA and assist in the diversification of the economy.

The proposals in this plan are aimed at creating roughly 815 000 additional jobs from 2010 to 2030, thus reducing the rate of unemployment to approximately 6 per cent by 2030. This should be attained in line with the sectoral GVA growth rates for 2030. The table below shows the employment targets for each sector of the provincial economy.



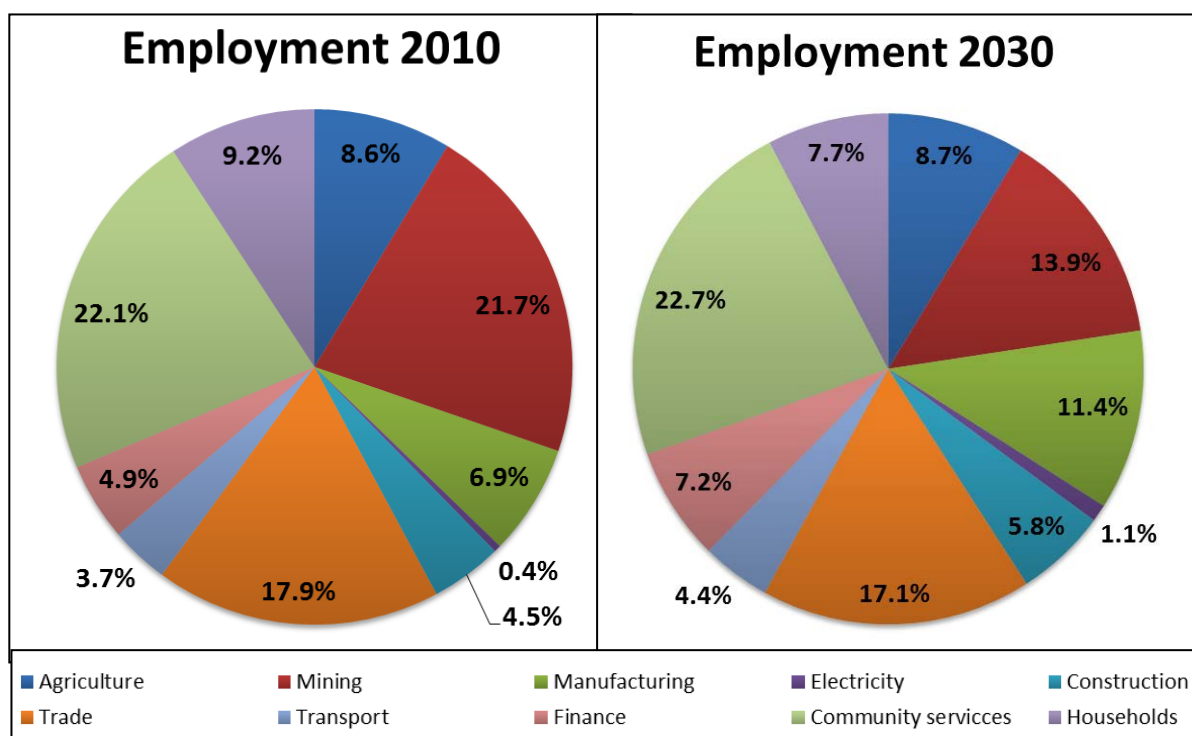
Table 3-9: sectoral employment targets for 2030<sup>2</sup>

Sector	2010	2015	2020	2025	2030	Additional Jobs (2010-2030)
Agriculture	64 000	75 000	93 000	114 000	136 000	71 000
Mining	162 000	170 000	184 000	201 000	218 000	55 000
Manufacturing	52 000	71 000	103 000	140 000	178 000	127 000
Electricity	3 000	5 000	9 000	13 000	17 000	14 000
Construction	34 000	42 000	56 000	73 000	91 000	57 000
Trade	134 000	154 000	188 000	228 000	268 000	134 000
Transport	27 000	34 000	44 000	56 000	68 000	41 000
Finance	37 000	48 000	67 000	90 000	112 000	76 000
Community	166 000	194 000	242 000	299 000	355 000	189 000
Households	69 000	77 000	89 000	105 000	120 000	51 000
<b>TOTAL</b>	<b>748 000</b>	<b>870 000</b>	<b>1 075 000</b>	<b>1 319 000</b>	<b>1 563 000</b>	<b>815 000</b>

Source: Urban-Econ calculations based on Global Insight Data (2013), Stats SA (2013) and the NDP (2012)

Although there is a direct correlation between GVA, production and employment, the labour multiplier of each sector differ from the next. Based on the sectoral growth rates provided in Table 3.9, the employment contribution of each provincial sector is illustrated in Figure 3.11

Figure 3.11: sectoral employment distribution 2010 and 2030



Source: Urban-Econ calculations based on Global Insight Data (2013), Stats SA (2013) and the NDP (2012)

<sup>2</sup> Tourism is located within the Trade, Transport and Finance sectors.  
SMME development is located across all sectors.



It can be seen that employment through economic growth will result in the community services sector contributing the most towards the provincial employment profile of 2030. Community services include public sector employment. Employment in the mining sector will decrease considerably over the next 17 years from 21.7 per cent of total employment in the province to 13.9 per cent. Trade and households will experience a slight decrease in employment from 2010 to 2030. In all the remaining sectors there will be an increase in employment towards 2030. The expansion in the electricity sectors will result from renewable energy production in the province. New technology and innovative ideas will be crucial towards realising the targets set out for employment in the province.

### 3.6.1. AGRICULTURE

The North West is considered to be an important contributor to the South African food basket with an estimated area of 4,672,800 ha (equivalent to 43.9%) of the province categorised as 'arable' land. It has three relatively distinct climatic regions, which allow a wide variety of agricultural activity. The drier western region is home to considerable beef/cattle farming as well as game farming and hunting. The central and southern parts of the province tend to be dominated by maize and wheat farming, but also include some cash crops. The eastern and north-eastern region on the other hand receives a fair quantity of rainfall and therefore accommodates the cultivation of a variety of crops.

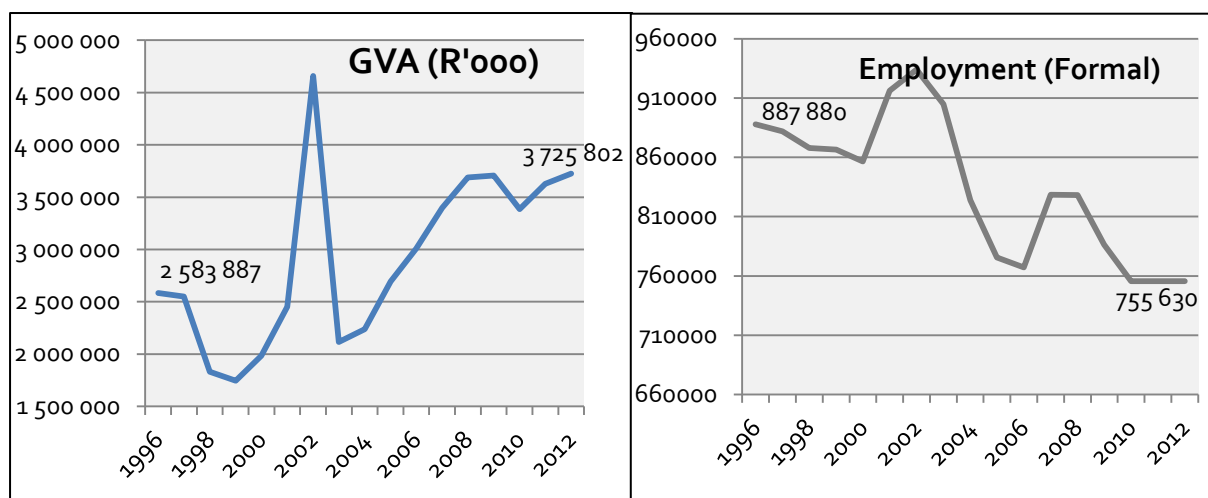


Despite the limited contribution of the sector to total provincial GVA (2.2%) it plays a crucial role in rural employment and income, export earnings and the development of support industries in other economic sectors in the province. The main agricultural products in the province include:

- maize; cattle; wheat; game; vegetables; sunflower; groundnuts

The following figures present the annual growth of production (GVA) as well as the annual growth of employment in the agricultural sector of the provincial economy.

Figure 3.12: agricultural performance, 1996 – 2012



Source: Stats SA (2013) and IHS Global Insight, 2013



The following can be concluded from the figure above:

- Production growth in the agricultural sector, albeit being relatively cyclical, has been strong over the past ten years averaging approximately 4.3 per cent per annum.
- This sector performed well during the recent global recession.
- Employment has decreased in this sector over the past sixteen years.
- 15 381 fewer people are currently employed than in 1996.
- Despite this decline in agricultural employment, the sector has the potential to add significantly to overall employment with many forward and backward linkages to other economic sectors. Labour intensive agricultural products and processes, which show growth potential, should therefore be prioritised.

Despite its potential to create jobs throughout the economy, the agricultural sector in the province has shed more than 15 000 jobs since 1996. Agriculture has become increasingly mechanised. Mechanisation requires certain skills of which training in the sector did not keep pace. A lack of skills development is one of the main challenges for employment in the agriculture sector. Very importantly however the sector still plays a significant role in the provincial economy, especially due to its significance in providing a source of income and therefore a livelihood to rural communities, where alternative jobs or sources of income are often difficult to secure.

The main growth targets for agriculture in the province are the following:

- 136 000 direct jobs must be sustained through the agriculture, agro-processing and related sectors by 2030. This will require 71 000 additional jobs to be created.
- Maintain a positive trade balance for primary and processed agricultural products.
- Agriculture must maintain an average growth rate of 8.5% between now and 2030. Against this growth rate, the GVA contribution of the sector will increase from R 3.39 million to R 17.31 million in 2030 (2010 R-values).
- The sectoral GVA contribution of agriculture will expand from 2.3% in 2010 to 4.1% in 2030.

Water scarcity (if not properly managed) and continued unsuccessful land reform also poses a potential risk to production growth and employment expansion in the sector. Also, traditional land administration and the lack of access to security of tenure are stifling agricultural expansion and successful small-scale farming in rural communities and communal areas.

It can be concluded that resources in agriculture are not being used sensibly, which requires urgent attention because this sector is one of the few remaining goods producers with strong direct and indirect economic and employment links to the rural poor. Without major policy improvements, the agriculture sector could continue to shed employment, mostly due to land consolidation and technical change.

#### AGRICULTURE AND THE AVAILABILITY OF WATER

The agricultural sector presents great challenges regarding the availability and use of water. The sector needs to expand to be able to offer more employment opportunities besides developing its economic potential. Limited water resources require more effective and equitable use of available downstream irrigation. Reference is made to a phrase “white revolution” (the use of plastic tunnels) which makes agricultural inputs more efficient and therefore creates more jobs and production using the same quantities



of water and land. For instance, in the North West province water efficiency measures implemented in Vaalharts enabled water for increased irrigation in Taung. The National Planning Commission has used this as an example to emphasise the possibility of expanding irrigation even as there is less water available for agriculture. (North West Office of the Premier, 2012)

#### ACTIONS:

- Enable the provision of tenure security to existing and prospective farmers on communal land. Farmers will only invest in these areas if they believe that their income streams from agriculture are secure. Tenure security will further secure incomes for existing farmers, for new entrants into agriculture, and for the investment required to raise incomes.
- Improve market linkages, support (including training, education and extension services) and access to finance for small-scale farmers on communal land and for beneficiaries of land reform.
- Ensure technology advances by means of expanded agricultural research. Growth in agricultural production has always been fuelled by technology. The returns to investment in agricultural research and development are high.
- Prioritise investment in irrigation infrastructure, including water storage, distribution and reticulation, as well as in water-saving technology. Develop (further) irrigation infrastructure in Taung.
- Create comprehensive support packages in the agriculture sector to ensure that new potential entrants can also access the market. Preferential procurement mechanisms should be a key part of support packages for farmers.
- Increase demand for vegetables among local communities. Introduce policy measures to increase intake of fruits and vegetables, to accompany strategies to increase vegetable and fruit production.
- Prioritise support to specific labour-intensive agricultural industries.
- Simplify the export certificate application process.
- Refine the land reform model based on the NDP-proposed model.

#### 3.6.2. MINING

Mining is the driving force behind the North West economy, contributing more than a quarter to provincial GVA and employing 21 per cent of the working population. As such the sector should be sensibly supported and investment retention and promotion should be made priority. Platinum Group Metals (PGM) is typically the most important mineral group in the province but significant granite, chromite and gold reserves are also mined. The province produces 64 per cent of South Africa's platinum, 46 per cent of its dimension stone and granite, 32 per cent of its chromite and 25 per cent of its gold.

The vast majority of the gold that is mined in the province is found in the DKKDM between Carletonville and Klerksdorp. Other minerals or metals mined in the North West include fluorspar, vanadium, rhodium, uranium, copper, limestone, slate, phosphate, manganese, coal, cement, nickel and diamonds. An integral part of the provincial development strategy is to go beyond mining and to link the sector with up and downstream manufacturing industries. This area holds considerable potential for expansion and development, especially among the mining supplier and services industries.





Another important aspect of the mining sector is the potential it has to benefit local communities through the Social and Labour Plan (SLP) initiative, that each mine is obligated to have in place in order to conduct legal mining operations. As discussed previously, these plans aim to address human resource development and socio-economic development in local communities and have tremendous potential to alleviate poverty and human capital development if they are monitored rigorously and implemented successfully. Opportunities for further enhancement still remain in this area, especially in terms of local enterprise development and local procurement of goods and services.

The mining sector currently places pressure on available economic infrastructure (mainly water and electricity) and on the environment, and as such, the regulatory framework and rights/licensing processes slow down some of the potential mining expansion activity in the province. Environmental Management Plans (EMP's) provides guidance for managing the construction, operation and decommissioning of the mining activities in the province to ensure the least possible damage to the receiving environments.

#### MINING AND THE AVAILABILITY OF WATER

Mining has a two part relationship with water since it requires water, and impacts on water. Mining utilises water for production and is a major contributor to water quality problems. The large consumption of water by the mining industry is exacerbated by the fact that the activities mostly occur in the water scarce parts of the province, compelling mines to use water as efficiently as possible. The mines contributes greatly towards GDP and job creation, but the province needs to ensure that water is used efficiently and that upon mine closure the environment is left intact and that water resources are protected for future use. Waste water from Gauteng augments the Crocodile River and is feeding the platinum industry. Waste water flows are very important. Water from the Zambezi River would be very expensive. Re-use of acid mine drainage is far cheaper. It is critical to work with all role-players to manage and optimise mutual dependencies and benefits (Office of the Premier North West province, 2012).

Labour relations in the industry are generally poor and more needs to be done to ensure that mining companies deliver more effectively on their socio-economic development mandate without jeopardising investment retention in the sector. In managing such processes the various stakeholders, i.e. local government, traditional authorities, labour unions, mining companies and the Department of Mineral Resources (potentially also the provincial Departments of Education and Human Settlements) need to strengthen cooperation and develop clearer roles and responsibilities.

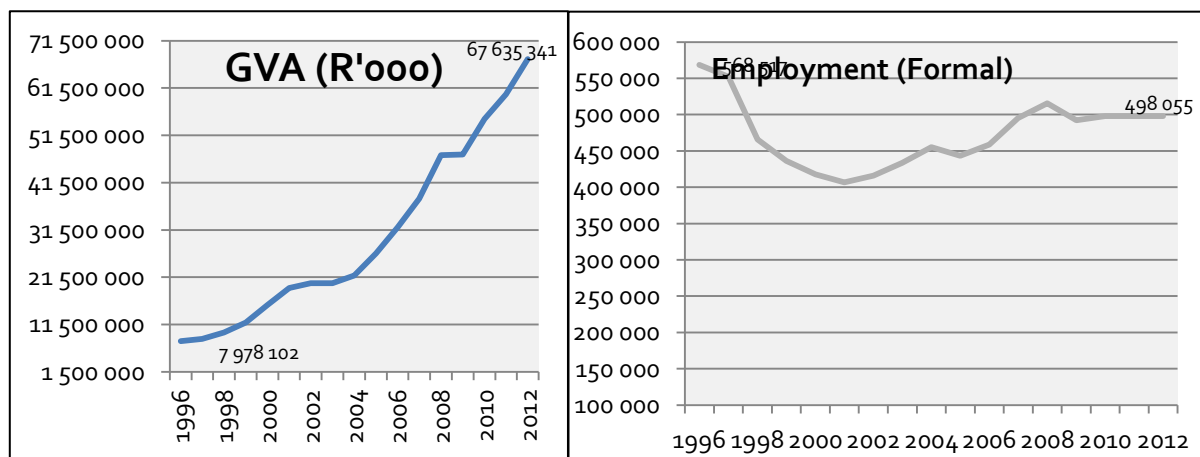
Mining licenses are often approved based on wrongful criteria. The implementation of amongst others, SLP's and EMP's lacks the attention it requires due to a shortage of monitoring and coordination resources. The North West province must discuss the option of a provincial 'watchdog' with the Department of Mineral Resources. This regulatory body will oversee the implementation of the different mining plans.

The following figures present the annual growth of production (GVA) as well as the annual growth of employment in the mining sector of the North West provincial economy.





Figure 3.13: mining sector performance, 1996 - 2012



Source: Stats SA (2013) and IHS Global Insight, 2013

The following can be concluded from Figure 3.13:

- The BPDM is responsible for 84 per cent of mining activity (in value) while the DKKDM is responsible for 14 per cent. The other two DMs are each responsible for approximately 1 per cent of mining production.
- The mining sector experienced a slight decline in production levels between 2007 and 2009/2010, but recovery is underway.
- Employment has increased on average by 2.9 per cent per year over the past fifteen years and continues to grow.
- Total employment increased by 18 550 between 1996 and 2012, the third largest increase of the economic sectors in the province.

The main growth targets for mining in the province are the following:

- Mining must create 55 000 additional jobs by 2030 to sustain 218 000 direct jobs which will represent 13.9 per cent of the total provincial employment.
- Mining must maintain an average growth rate of 2.5 per cent between now and 2030. Against this growth rate, the GVA contribution of the sector will increase from R 54.97 million to R 90.08 million in 2030 (2010 R-values).
- The sectoral GVA contribution of mining will be reduced from 37.7 per cent in 2010 to 21.6 per cent in 2030.

#### ACTIONS:

- Downstream production (beneficiation) can raise the value of exports and should therefore be promoted. However, due in part to the capital and cost intensive nature of beneficiation, more potential for employment creation exist in backward linkages such as equipment and chemicals manufacturing and engineering/construction and other services. Since mining companies are obligated (by the mining charter and SLP requirements) to not only procure local products and services, but to also facilitate local enterprise development, supplier industries and services should be prioritised.
- The North West province must discuss the option of a provincial 'watchdog' with the Department of Mineral Resources. This regulatory body will oversee the implementation of the different mining plans such as SLP's.



- Conduct beneficiation feasibility studies on selected metals/minerals mined in the province, in line with the Beneficiation Strategy for the Minerals Industry of South Africa. A feasibility study is required for each mineral in which the province holds a comparative advantage.
- Encourage and support focused research to enable improved extraction methods, better energy and water efficiency, and better use of metals/minerals in new energy systems and machinery.
- Improve the SLP process of delivering human resource and economic development by mines in communities through defining the roles of stakeholders more clearly.
- Increase local procurement.

### CROSS-CUTTING CONSTRAINTS TO BENEFICIATION

Although beneficiation holds substantial potential for economic growth and job creation, it is important to recognise certain challenges to expand beneficiation activity in the province (Department of Mineral Resources, 2011<sup>11</sup>):

- Limited access to raw material for local beneficiation (most mining companies have long-term fixed contracts with buyers and proximity to minerals do not (in most cases) constitute much of an advantage since international prices vary little).
- Infrastructure (shortages of critical infrastructure such as rail, water, ports and electricity supply have a material impact on sustaining current beneficiation initiatives and a major threat to future prospects of growth in mineral value addition. The bulk of early-stage beneficiation programs require large and uninterrupted supply of energy).
- Research and development.
- Skills for expediting local beneficiation.
- Access to international markets for beneficiated products.

Additionally, final stages of most mineral beneficiation processes mainly comprise activities classified in the manufacturing sector and mining companies are not specialised (or interested) to conduct such activities. This part of the beneficiation process also faces a range of challenges in South Africa such as labour costs and labour productivity (competing with China and India), craftsmanship and the specific skills that are required for jewelry fabrication, access to markets etc.

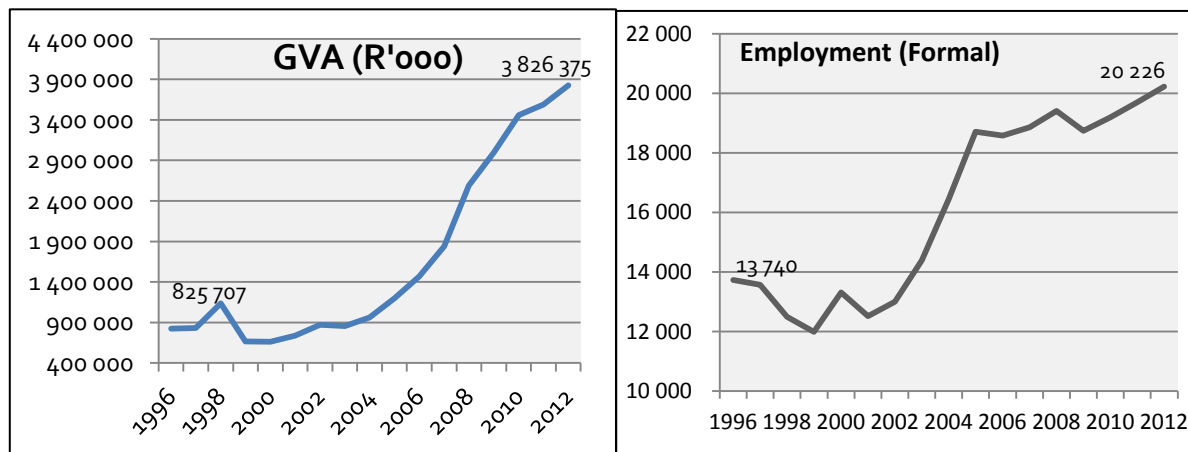
### 3.6.3. CONSTRUCTION AND INFRASTRUCTURE

The construction sector has been the fastest growing economic sector in the North West economy over the past ten years (as a ten year annual average). This is very likely due to a combination of public stimulus (Expanded Public Works Programme, the Spatial Development Initiatives and the 2010 World Cup infrastructure investment), property and infrastructure development in the fast growing mining towns such as Rustenburg, the city of Matlosana (Klerksdorp) and Brits and investment in infrastructure by mining companies. Despite strong growth, large backlogs in services infrastructure remain, especially in rural areas and marginalised communities. Water provision is typically the primary concern in rural areas, while lack of affordable housing, sanitation and reliable electricity in semi-urban, urban peripheries and informal townships also remain a cause for concern.



Coordination between government departments and different spheres of government and the inability of various state entities to spend its infrastructure budget is delaying the delivery thereof and is affecting the poor most detrimentally. There is also often a lack of technical expertise, such as engineers at municipalities in especially rural areas (Section 3.4.2). The following figure present the annual growth of production (GVA) as well as the annual growth of employment in the construction sector of the North West provincial economy.

Figure 3.14: construction sector performance, 1996 - 2012



Source: Stats SA (2013) and IHS Global Insight, 2013

- Despite a slowdown in growth since 2009, the sector has grown at an annual average of 5.8 per cent over the past ten years.
- The construction sector currently contributes 2.2 per cent to the total provincial economy.
- Employment has increased on average by 2.65 per cent per year over the past sixteen years with the highest increases from 2004 onwards.
- Total employment increased by 6 484 between 1996 and 2012.

The main growth targets for the construction sector in the province are the following:

- 91 000 direct jobs must be created through the construction sector by 2030 of which 57 000 will be new employment opportunities.
- The construction sector must sustain an average annual growth rate of 8 per cent between now and 2030. Against this growth rate, the GVA contribution of the sector will increase from R 3.46 million to R 16.12 million in 2030 (2010 R-values).
- The sectoral GVA contribution of the construction sector will increase from 2.4 per cent in 2010 to 3.9 per cent in 2030.

Although the road network in North West is well developed and includes several key highways (the N4, the N12, the N14 and the N18) the quality of many roads is deteriorating and wide scale investment is required to improve conditions. The rail system in the province services the mining industry primarily, and improvements to this system are necessary to decrease the pressure on the road network and to establish alternatives for public transport.

Infrastructure investment is crucially important because it creates jobs for low-skilled people, encourages private investment, lowers the cost of doing business, promotes spatial inclusivity, and has strong backward linkages to supplier industries. Infrastructure is thus a re-occurring theme throughout the PDP.



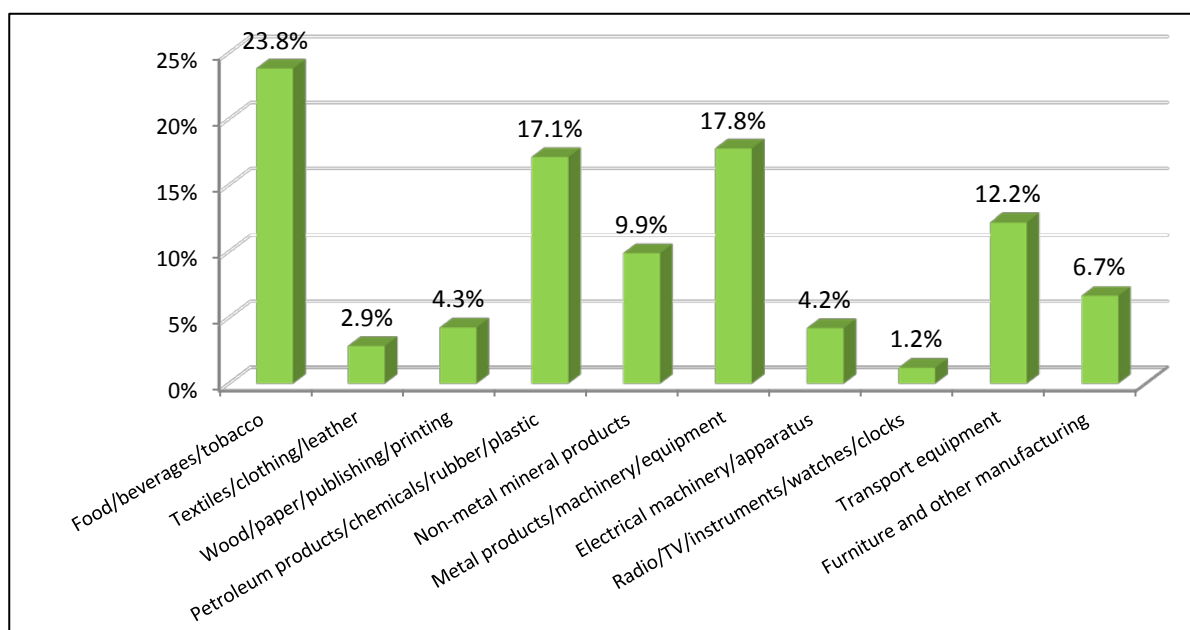
**ACTIONS:**

- Improve the capacity of state departments and local government in terms of specifically project management, long-term planning and monitoring and evaluation.
- Increase support to supplier industries and small-scale construction firms (existing and emerging).
- All infrastructure planning must recognise the need for significant expenditure on maintenance.
- Allocate the responsibility of maintenance more clearly when infrastructure is provided by mines through SLP programmes.
- Create feasible conditions for numerous, smaller scale, regionally dispersed projects to address backlogs, which are more accessible to smaller firms and new entrants.
- Promote more sustainable and energy efficient building techniques to reduce the demand on electricity over the long-term. Encourage more independent power producers and promote the use of solar power.
- Encourage and support local manufacturing of inputs to the construction industry and increasingly to the renewable industries sector.
- Expand public funding for alternative types of low-income housing that would generate more demand directly and in supplier industries. Focus on more energy-efficient buildings and building techniques to reduce demands on electricity supply in the longer term. Home insulation and the installation of solar water heaters are labour-intensive activities that have strong backward linkages to supplier industries.

**3.6.4. SPECIFIC MANUFACTURING SUB-SECTORS**

Owing to the well-established primary sector of the provincial economy (agriculture and mining) and the proximity to the Gauteng province, North West has a healthy supply of raw materials and input products at hand for its manufacturing sector. As a result of the linkage with Gauteng the majority of the provincial manufacturing activity (51%) takes place in the eastern part of the province, in the Bojanala Platinum DM. The remainder of manufacturing takes place mainly in the DKKDM (26%) and the NMMDM (18%) with only a very limited industry in the DRSMDM (4%). The largest manufacturing centres include Rustenburg, Brits, Potchefstroom, Klerksdorp, Mahikeng and Lichtenburg.

Figure 3.15: provincial manufacturing production



Source: Stats SA, 2012

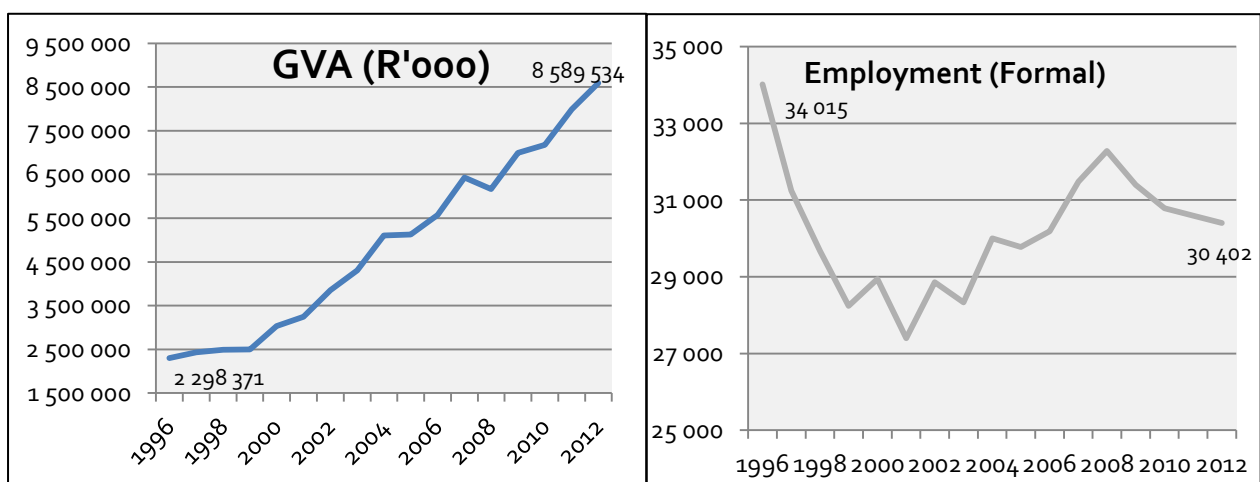


The main industries in this sector include the transport, food and beverage, fertiliser rubber and plastic, metal products, machinery and equipment, and petro-chemical products. The growth and diversity of this sector is being actively encouraged by most development agencies in the province due to the abundance of raw material and consumer markets and the attempted move away from over-dependence on natural resources. Based on alignment with the New Growth Path, IPAP 2 as well as the growth potential of each sub-sector in terms of production and employment, focus should be placed on the development of the following manufacturing sub-sectors:

- Food, beverage and value adding (beef, goat and poultry processing, and value chain development of maize, wheat, oilseeds and vegetables)
- transport equipment
- metal products, machinery and equipment
- fuel and petroleum products, chemicals, rubber and plastic products
- textiles, clothing and leather goods
- renewable energy supplier industries

The following figures present the annual growth of production (GVA) as well as the annual growth of employment in the manufacturing sector of the North West provincial economy.

Figure 3.16: manufacturing sector performance, 1996 - 2012



Source: Stats SA (2013) and IHS Global Insight, 2013

The following can be concluded from Figure 3.16:

- Manufacturing production grew by an average of 2.9 per cent per annum over the past ten years.
- Production levels reached its peak during 2008, with the current recovery struggling to gain momentum.
- Employment have fluctuated over the last sixteen years with formal employment decreasing slightly from 34 015 to 30 402.



The main growth targets for mining in the province are the following:

- The manufacturing sector must create 127 000 new employment opportunities to sustain 178 000 direct jobs by 2030 which will represent 22.7 per cent of the total provincial employment.
- The manufacturing sector must maintain an average growth rate of 8.7 per cent between now and 2030. Against this growth rate, the GVA contribution of the sector will increase from R 7.18 million to R 38.07 million in 2030 (2010 R-values).
- The sectoral GVA contribution of the sector will increase from 19.6 per cent in 2010 to 21.9 per cent in 2030.

#### ACTIONS:

- Identify large sub-sector specific value chain projects (clusters) for public support. Within these value chains should be smaller project opportunities, which would be more attractive for potential investors, since such business opportunities forms part of a larger, public supported value chain.
- Provide quality infrastructure in support of these large value chain clusters.
- Public support should consist of partnerships between various departments in provincial government, district and local government, private sector (such as mining companies) and development agencies.
- A pilot project should be launched and the benefits thereof promoted to stimulate uptake in subsequent phases.
- Leveraging public and private procurement to promote localisation and industrial diversification
- Intensifying research and development support for product development, innovation and commercialisation.

Note: key requirements for growth in the manufacturing sector, such as an enabling policy and infrastructural environment and the application of research, innovation and technology, are discussed in greater detail in other sub-sectors of this plan.

#### 3.6.4.1. RENEWABLE ENERGY

The renewable energy sector is located in the 'green economy'. The green economy is defined in the United Nations Environmental Programme (United Nations, 2013<sup>12</sup>) as '*a system of economic activities related to the production, distribution and consumption of goods and services that result in improved human well-being over the long-term, while not exposing future generations to significant environmental risks and ecological scarcities*'. Shifting to a low carbon green economy will result in a more sustainable economic growth and development path. The renewable energy sector also has the potential to assist in the diversification of the provincial economy. The green economy must be approached as a new and upcoming sector.

The job creation potential of the renewable energy industry lays not so much in the operation and maintenance of such facilities, but rather in the manufacturing of such technologies. The number of jobs as a function of units of energy produced is much higher compared to conventional energy technologies. The manufacturing of renewable technologies is more labour-intensive than conventional energy technologies and requires an appreciable labour force to manufacture. The North West province needs to create an environment for the manufacturing of renewable energy technologies. If this goal is not viable, job creation will be limited to the implementation, maintenance and operation of renewable energy technologies. To make local manufacturing viable, significant demand for renewable energy will be required.



All renewable energy planning should refer to the Renewable Energy Strategy for the North West Province (2012<sup>13</sup>)

#### ACTIONS:

- Create an environment for the manufacturing of renewable energy technologies.
- Promote renewable energy throughout the province. Create among others awareness campaigns on the advantages of renewable energy to increase demand.
- Promote localisation and local manufacture of renewable energy components through the establishing of minimum and maximum targets for local content.
- The province must outline skill sets that are proven to be required in terms of programmes, pro-active research into what skills are necessary and immediate skills in terms of training must be done. Universities and FET colleges need to respond to the needs of the province, particularly in the areas of energy.
- Establish a Centre of Excellence in Renewable Energy to position the province as a leader in this area.
- Utilise the North West University with respect to Nuclear Technologies skills development.
- Emphasise undertaking of maths and science at all education level.

#### 3.6.5. TOURISM

Tourism is not defined as an independent sector of the economy since the activities in that sector are located within the Trade, Transport and Finance sectors. As such, the potential for growth and employment in the sector is often overlooked and underestimated. Due to such cross-sectoral involvement the sector has significant multiplier ratios, implying that investment in tourism has a large impact throughout the entire economy. The tourism industry and the creative economy sector are labour intensive, and stimulate the growth of small businesses.



The North West province sector assessment study ranks accommodation (SIC 64) as the sector with the seventh highest potential based on its alignment with policies, its size in terms of production and employment, its market and growth potential, its ability to link with other sectors of the economy and its ability to stimulate exports. Its ranking is likely to have been higher if other activities in the tourism sector were included in the analysis. It is therefore safe to conclude on the economic growth and employment potential offered by tourism development to the province. Greater support to the tourism sector and the provincial tourism authority will also enable the province to compete better for the significant domestic market outside Gauteng and expose the arts and culture industry of the North West province to a much larger market.

#### RESOURCE CRITICAL REGIONS: TOURISM, MINING AND LAND CLAIMS

Resource critical regions refer to regions with competition between development and environment, or between competing environmental land uses (NDP, 2012). In the North West province, one category of the resource critical regions represents the competing interests between high valued mineral resources (platinum belt) the environment, tourism or land claims. These prioritised areas should be clearly mapped and recognised as 'resource critical regions' as defined in the NDP to ensure appropriate focus and



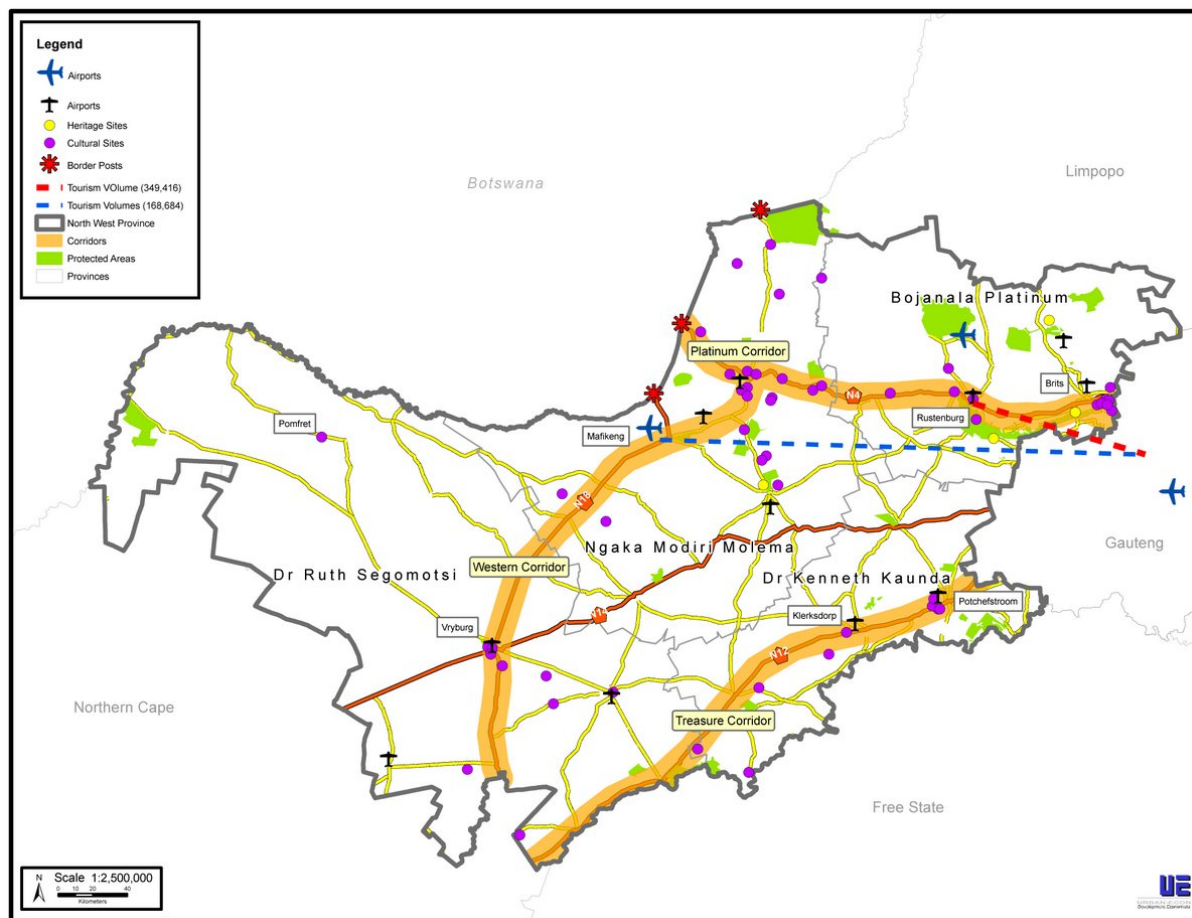


attention. Each resource critical region should have a provincial and local spatial land-use plan to achieve sustainability and accommodate the competing land uses.

The outcome of these planning processes will be that a formal agreement should be reached among competing parties and other stakeholders, including relevant spheres of government, on the best optimisation model for a resource critical region. These agreements must become a 'spatial contract' binding on all spheres of government and relevant role-players.

The map below combines the location of the main tourism activities in the North West province with the primary provincial movement corridors.

Map 3.3: tourism and movement corridors, 2012



Source: NWPSDF drawn by Urban-Econ, 2012<sup>14</sup>

Tourism also has the potential to fit well in rural areas, since it is often not dependent on a local consumer base and has the potential to attract investment into a region. Existing attractions in the province in this sub-sector include:

- the entertainment complex at Sun City
- the Pilanesberg and Madikwe Nature Reserves
- Cradle of Humankind and Taung Heritage Site
- Vredefort Dome
- Birding routes (Molopo, Borakalalo, etc.)





- Magaliesberg area and Crocodile River catchment initiatives
- the national Highveld Park situated west of Tlokwe

Key challenges to the sector include the lack of accessibility by foreign markets and poor road infrastructure that negatively impacts rural tourism and domestic (short stay) tourism originating from Gauteng. Limited diversity in tourism product offering (only four five star hotels in the North West) and the relatively mediocre service standard of the local tourism industry also affect both the perception and the performance of the sector in the North West. A large skills gap exists in the province with regard to tourism and hospitality and training providers are limited and expensive, often limiting the potential of rural communities to become involved.

#### TOURISM AND THE AVAILABILITY OF WATER

Tourism and recreation depend on water quality. Protection of water quality as well as adequate quantity is critical for tourism and conservation, which is very important to the economy.

#### ACTION:

- Update the North West Provincial Tourism Master Plan.
- Invest in or create partnership with the private sector to improve tourism product development.
- Increase the availability of resources for marketing.
- Increase the availability of resources for public driven skills development.
- Improve strategic supporting infrastructure, (especially provincial roads) focusing on the most prominent tourism routes.
- Conduct market research and allow for better distribution of information.
- Create a television channel illustrating all tourism establishments and showcasing all the product offerings of the North West province.
- Increase efforts to exploit the short-stay domestic market originating from Gauteng.
- Build on the established bio-diversity, heritage and cultural diversity, enabling local arts and culture to be showcased.
- Improve tourism and hospitality service standards by offering more, higher quality short courses through FET facilities.
- Promote the cultural and creative industries (including performance arts) and encourage procurement of local art.
- Develop certain key tourism routes and expand the art and culture offering in these areas.
- Exploit the lucrative business tourism market by establishing the province as a conference and business destination.
- Prioritise community benefit in established tourism nodes where communities have substantiated land claims.
- Ensure the establishment of co-management arrangements, skills training and internships and promote cooperation between communities and provincial parks (especially in areas where land claims apply).
- Promote the value of arts, culture and the creative industries in schools.

#### 3.6.6. SMME DEVELOPMENT AND FINANCIAL ACCESSIBILITY

Despite a very well developed formal financial services sector in South Africa, access to financial services by the poor, emerging SMMEs, prospective entrepreneurs and most of the rural population remains a challenge. This lack of financial services (including credit, seed capital, insurance and savings) hinder the potential of this



segment of the market to start businesses, expand businesses and earn greater incomes and to increase productivity. In rural areas where land is often administrated by traditional authorities, tenure security is unavailable, making access to finance increasingly difficult. Enterprise loans represent a very small part of total market credit (consumer lending dominates the market) despite successful business models such as that of Small Enterprise Foundation (SEF) proving the potential in this market.

Small and micro enterprises are concentrated mainly in the trade and retail sector and to a slightly lesser extent the business services, manufacturing and tourism industries. Most small-scale businesses are survivalists and lack the capacity to expand. This lack of capacity is defined by a lack of finance, but also entrepreneurial and business skills that prevent poor communities from becoming economically active and establish businesses. Too few SMMEs that offer business services are established in rural areas due to a lack of skills in IT, communication and financial and business management principles. The lack of growth in successful cooperatives are reducing competitiveness in trade and agricultural sectors, while business support services (including incubators and services offered by business chambers) for entrepreneurs and business start-ups are insufficient, especially in rural areas and in the agricultural sector.



#### ACTIONS:

- Broaden access to financial services for lower income markets and for the rural population, especially focussing on enterprise lending.
- Ensure greater partnership with mining companies in delivering on their mandate of enterprise development in communities.
- Investigate the potential of creating a consolidated mining enterprise development fund (thereby sourcing out enterprise development away from mining companies who have often been unsuccessful in encouraging local enterprise development).
- Ensure that established (successful) development finance institutions broaden their scope to increase extension of services to emerging SMMEs.
- Establish a micro-finance institution in the province or provide support to the Women's Development Business, Marang Financial Services or SEF to expand its scope in North West (support could be provided through funding, marketing support and through offering facilities).
- Increase the availability of small business support services (business incubators and business chambers), with particular focus on the agricultural sector and the establishment of cooperatives.
- Create a composite designed booklet, detailing all the different institutions, which can be approached for various categories of financial assistance. Government information centres must be established in rural and urban areas, which can disseminate this kind of information. This kind of information can also be extensively advertised through amongst others television, social media, printing press and radio.
- Distribute information in rural areas more effectively by utilising ICT (especially cell phone services).
- Ensure the availability of information on existing SMMEs to allow for improved local procurement by the public sector, mining companies and farmers.



- Increase public and private preferential procurement in favour of local SMMEs.
- Address the skills shortage and encourage an entrepreneurial culture during school years and after Grade 12.
- Improve FET colleges with a focus on high-technology skills and entrepreneurial short courses.

### 3.7. IMPROVING THE DEVELOPMENTAL CAPABILITY OF THE PUBLIC AND PRIVATE SECTOR AS EQUAL PARTNERS

The public sector plays a very important role in providing the necessary services and infrastructure, regulating markets, addressing market failures, as a consumer and in providing leadership to economic development. The North West province must develop a firm and consistent view on the role of the state in the economy. The realisation of the economic and employment objectives of the Vision 2030 requires long-term commitments by all sectors of society, including the private sector. Policy certainty is therefore essential.

#### LOCAL ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT (LED)

Considering the still high levels of poverty, great importance must be given to fostering growth in rural economies, and particularly a type of growth, which creates jobs and reduces poverty. For this reason Local Economic Development (LED) strategies are embedded in the IDP process, and promotion of LED is seen as a key element of the work of local governments. Partnership between private and public sectors (especially local farmers), NGOs and the community is critical in ensuring successful LED initiatives.

The Constitution of the Republic of South Africa (No. 108 of 1996) states that "*a municipality must structure and manage its administration, and budgeting and planning processes to give priority to the basic needs of the community, and to promote the social and economic development of the community.*" The White Paper on Local Government obligates local government to pursue this development through its core functions and the IDP. Its role is to provide an enabling environment, rather than being responsible for economic growth and job creation. While it is theoretically possible for municipalities to play a major role in economic development, there are serious capacity and funding constraints.

Greater municipal support is therefore needed for development initiatives in terms of particularly facilitation, publicity and infrastructure development. Improved recognition and encouragement is needed for the development and facilitation role of NGOs, such as in promoting market access as well as in business support, providing a link with an entrepreneurial culture and systems, which local governments are not naturally involved in.

#### 3.7.1. IMPROVING THE RELATIONSHIP BETWEEN THE PUBLIC AND PRIVATE SECTOR

Some elements of policy uncertainty tend to surface periodically among role-players in for instance the mining and agricultural sectors, which have the potential to influence investment attraction and retention. In reducing uncertainty it is important to involve the private sector and industry specific support organisations in policy formation and development. The objectives and rationale as well as potential impact of policies need to be clearly communicated with parties affected and support needs to be provided where potential negative impacts are expected. A lack of trust often exists between the private sector, the public sector and among labour movements. The lack of trust between government and business and in turn, between these and the labour movement, is a stumbling block towards faster economic development. Due to the lack of strategic engagement among the social partners, no effective partnership exists. This problem is especially acute at regional and local level. Topics that could be addressed to some extent by greater involvement in IDP processes, LED strategy formulation and implementation and improved service delivery.



Too few Public Private Partnerships (PPPs) have been implemented in the North West province, despite the potential this mechanism offers to both the public and the private sector. South Africa arguably boasts a very comprehensive legal framework, whereby the national and provincial government are regulated by the Public Finance Management Act (Act No. 1 of 1999) and Treasury Regulation 16 (National Treasury, 2003) (issued in terms of the PFMA), and Municipal PPPs are governed by the Municipal Finance Management Act (Act No. 56 of 2003) and the Municipal Systems Act (Act No. 32 of 2000). A dedicated Public Private Partnership Unit (PPP Unit) has been established within the National Treasury, and is tasked with overseeing PPPs in South Africa.

In some municipal sectors, the option of considering a PPP is seen as possibly creating distrust in the municipality's own ability to provide the basic services required by the community they serve. Implementing PPPs at municipal level are also challenging due to the complexity of the process and in having to satisfy the requirements of two acts, which is often perceived to be a difficult task.

#### ACTIONS:

- The public sector must involve the private sector in policy formation and in integrated development processes and local economic development strategies.
- Policy implications and the manner of implementation need to be effectively communicated and understood (both by private and public sector).
- Industry specific organisations, especially those representing the key provincial industries such as mining and agriculture, as well as higher education institutions must be accepted by the public sector as partners in policy design and implementation.
- The private sector needs to respond and facilitate the realisation of economic development objectives.
- Improve the trust between the public and private sector. The PDP should serve as a basis for developing a broad social compact among critical role-players and society at large. This should also find expression at local and regional levels, with greater engagement between businesses and provincial and local government, as well as trade unions and other sections of civil society.
- Any direct state involvement in productive sectors should be informed by the "balance of evidence" in relation to stimulating economic growth and competitiveness, creating jobs and reducing inequality, as well as availability and optimal deployment of public resources.
- Provincial government must play a greater role than local government (especially rural municipalities) in establishing PPPs to ensure an increase in the delivery of infrastructure.

"This is what PPPs are about. The public gets better, more cost-effective services; the private sector gets new business opportunities. Both are in the interests of the nation." – Trevor Manuel

### 3.7.2. PRIVATE SECTOR CAPABILITIES

As mentioned in the introductory to this section, the realisation of the economic and employment objectives of the Vision 2030 requires long-term commitments by all sectors of society, including the private sector. Sustainable development in the province demands equal commitment from both the private and public sector. Both sectors have a responsibility towards developing the province in a sustainable manner as equal partners in a developmental state. There exists interdependence among businesses, which affects investment promotion in the North West province. The capabilities of the private sector in development planning can thus be described as crucial.

The North West province has a history of economic development skewed by isolation and apartheid. These factors have resulted in major sectors of the economy developing in an uncompetitive manner, leading to a



high cost structure. In a number of sectors, public and private monopolies have used their market dominance to charge high prices. This is especially damaging when these sectors provide critical inputs into the production process such as electricity or steel. Added to these factors, poor services by municipalities and utilities to businesses raise costs meaningfully.

Private employers will have to commit to higher rates of investment and labour absorption, and equitable sharing of the benefits of higher growth and productivity. There should be commitment to achieving the provincial growth objectives agreed upon, within guidelines that are jointly developed.

#### ACTIONS:

- The private sector must embrace entrepreneurship, innovation and an equitable sharing of the fruits of prosperity.
- Motivate entrepreneurs to be vibrant and seize opportunities when and where they arise, and to adapt themselves to the continuous process of technological change.
- Lower the cost of doing business in the province through among others infrastructure investments, stimulated competition and improving the quality of public and private services available.
- Private employers must commit to higher rates of investment and labour absorption, and equitable sharing of the benefits of higher growth and productivity.
- Establish commitment towards achieving the provincial growth objectives agreed upon, within guidelines that are jointly developed.

### 3.7.3. IMPROVE INSTITUTIONAL COORDINATION

A lack of coordination between provincial departments and local government slows down the implementation of programmes and the delivery of infrastructure and services. In the past, LED programmes experienced mixed results, thus failing in most instances to achieve expectations.

The relationship between District Municipalities (DMs) and Local Municipalities (LMs) is often challenging and roles and responsibilities between the two types of municipalities are sometimes not clearly understood. In many areas of the province, due especially to its rural nature, service delivery functions are divided between DM's and LM's, which cause power struggles, lack of responsibility and accountability and in the end, ineffective service delivery to communities. These different spheres even result in competing for available funds in some instances.

Between provincial government and local government there are also often challenges. These challenges include for instance the alignment of functions in settlement development, economic development, land reform and agriculture and infrastructure development. Municipalities are for instance essentially responsible for water, roads, sanitation, electricity and environmental health, while significant functions, such as agriculture, provincial roads, primary health care, education and social development are managed by provincial departments.

#### LAND ALLOCATION IN TRADITIONAL AUTHORITIES

The position of traditional authorities with specific regard to land tenure and land allocation in communal areas has, since 1994, been controversial and ill-defined. In 2004 however, the Communal Land Rights Act (Act No. 11 of 2004) was introduced providing a framework designed to enable formal land ownership according to legal security of tenure within the jurisdiction of traditional authorities. The act was however widely criticised and by May 2010 the Constitutional Court ruled the act to be unconstitutional in its entirety. The court found that there was inadequate consultation with communities and provincial structures prior to the adoption of the Act. The Act was therefore rejected and is not currently in effect.



Land administration in traditional authorities is currently governed by the Traditional Leadership and Governance Framework Amendment Act (Act No. 23 of 2009). This Act provides formal recognition to traditional authorities and highlights the essential feature of self-administration of land assigned by the community, via the action of traditional leadership, to each of its members to meet his or her needs. This means that a traditional authority, through its council (leadership), acts as the custodian of all the land that forms part of that traditional authority. The following process is accordingly required to implement a project/business on land currently belonging to a traditional authority:

- The first step is to submit the project proposal to the Provincial Department of Rural Development and Land Reform (DRDLR) inclusive of a description of the land/site in question.
- The DRDLR will then investigate the current ownership specifications of that parcel of land and confirm the appropriate traditional authority that has jurisdiction in that area. The DRDLR will also need to ensure that no unsettled land claim is applicable to that portion of land.
- Once the appropriate traditional authority has been confirmed it is necessary to obtain a community resolution also known as a letter of consent from the traditional council. Such document is only provided once community participation/consultation workshops have been held and the majority of the community have agreed or responded favourably to the proposed project and/or land use. This resolution would serve as contract between the traditional council and the prospective land owner/occupier. Letters of consent is often incorrectly referred to, or perceived as a permission/'permit to occupy' (PTO). A PTO used to be the means through which the apartheid government regulated land in homelands through the Black Administration Act (Act No. 38 of 1927). This Act defined a Permit to Occupy as *"permission in writing granted or deemed to have been granted in the prescribed form to any person to occupy a specified area of trust land for a specific purpose"*.
- The following step would require a prospecting landowner/occupier to submit the resolution (letter of consent) to the Department of Rural Development and Land Reform (DRDLR) to accompany the already submitted project proposal. The provincial department then has the responsibility to apply to the minister of Rural Development and Land Reform for approval of either a long-term lease or the total disposal of land from the traditional authority. The total disposal of land (transfer of ownership away from the traditional authority) is however unlikely and long-term leases have become the preferred method. Long-term leases are usually awarded for a period of 20 to 30 years with 50 years being the maximum period. Both a long-term lease and the disposal of land are subject to the following:
  - i. The land must be measured by a formally qualified land surveyor and drafted into a Surveyor General (SG) diagram in order to illustrate dimensions and layout of the specific property as well as any road, or servitudes registered on the property.
  - ii. A surveyor-general then approves the diagram implying that a formal land parcel has been established.
  - iii. An objective market-related land evaluation is then done to guide the rental rate (usually in R/Hectare) of the land, or the value of the entire parcel if total disposal is an option.
  - iv. A rental contract is then established in the case of a long-term lease while a standard purchase of the property, combined with registration at the applicable deeds office, would occur if total disposal of land takes place.

The four steps provided above take place once approval is granted by the Minister of Rural Development and Land Reform.



**ACTIONS:**

- The performance of economic service departments needs to be measured on the basis of aspects such as investment facilitation, building partnerships and programme/project implementation.
- Create a clear system of hierarchy in the delivery of each function of the public sector, for instance, the department of human settlements (provincial level) needs to play a greater role in organising the integrated effort by all the state departments and institutions in delivering sustainable, well located human settlements.
- Ensure coordination between departments and local government according to the hierarchy that is provided to each state function.
- Ensure greater cooperation between local government and traditional authorities.
- Improve the land allocation process in traditional areas and enable tenure security in these areas.

### **3.8. ECONOMY AND EMPLOYMENT IMPLEMENTATION PLAN**

The economy and employment implementation plan has been developed to support the strategic objective set out in this chapter. The role and responsibilities of various stakeholders and potential funding sources have been identified in the implementation plan.

The following key programmes have been identified in the economy and employment implementation plan (Refer to Annexure 1):

- Employment through Economic Growth
- Public and Private Procurement
- Mining Collaboration Strategy / Planning
- Construction and Infrastructure Sector Promotion and Support
- Value Chain Identification and Support
- Renewable Energy Centre of Excellence
- Renewable Energy Manufacturing
- Tourism Development





## NOTES

- \* Statistics South Africa (2012 - 2013) Labour Force Survey: <http://www.statssa.gov.za>
- # HIS Global Insight. 2013. <http://www.ihsglobalinsight.co.za/> Date of Access: January, 2013.
- <sup>1</sup> North West Province Office of the Premier. 2012. Report on Growth and Development Colloquium: Strategies to Unlock the Economic Potential of the North West Province.
- <sup>2</sup> President Jacob Zuma. 2009. State of Nation Address <http://www.info.gov.za/speeches/2009/09060310551001.htm> Date of Access: November, 2012.
- <sup>3</sup> International Labour Organisation. 2011. Decent work agenda <http://www.ilo.org/global/about-the-ilo/decent-work-agenda/lang--en/index.htm> Date of Access: November, 2012.
- <sup>4</sup> South African Reserve Bank. 2012. Unemployment. <http://www2.resbank.co.za/internet/Glossary.nsf/0/9028e9be02366d342256b43002f51f5?OpenDocument> Date of Access: November, 2012.
- <sup>5</sup> Corden, W.M. 1984. Booming sector and Dutch disease economics: Survey and consolidation. Oxford University Press.
- <sup>6</sup> National Planning Commission. 2012. National Development Plan. <http://www.npconline.co.za/pebble.asp?relid=25> Date of Access: August, 2012.
- <sup>7</sup> Department of Water Affairs. 2008. North West Water Provision and Management Plan.
- <sup>8</sup> Barro, R.J. 1991. Economic Growth in a Cross Section of Countries. The Quarterly Journal of Economics.
- <sup>9</sup> National Treasury. 2011. Revised Preferential Procurement Regulations.
- <sup>10</sup> Bench Mark Foundation. 2011 Rustenburg Community Report.
- <sup>11</sup> Department of Mineral Resources. 2011. A beneficiation strategy for the minerals industry of South Africa. <http://www.info.gov.za/view/DownloadFileAction?id=147564> Date of Access: November, 2012.
- <sup>12</sup> United Nations. 2013. United Nations Environmental Programme <http://www.unep.org/> Date of Access: November, 2012.
- <sup>13</sup> Department of Economic Development, Environment, Conservation and Tourism. 2012. Renewable Energy Strategy for the North West Province.
- <sup>14</sup> North West Provincial Government. 2008. North West Spatial Development Framework.







## 4. ECONOMIC INFRASTRUCTURE

### KEY POINTS

- ⇒ Water is central to provincial growth and development with a particular focus on efficiency of use (and re-use) as well as on efficient management of existing resources. A central part of the approach should be directed to the maintenance of existing infrastructure
- ⇒ Renewable energies, especially solar and waste/biomass to energy initiatives will play an increasingly important role in the following two decades and will contribute a much greater share of provincial energy consumption
- ⇒ Accelerated investments in roads and rail infrastructure will facilitate further development of mining, agriculture and tourism opportunities and open up value adding and manufacturing opportunities in the North West Province
- ⇒ ICT will underpin the development of a dynamic and connected information society and a vibrant knowledge economy that is more inclusive and prosperous

#### 4.1. INTRODUCTION

Infrastructure is a critical and urgent developmental priority to the predominantly rural North Province. Infrastructure lies at the heart of the stimulatory fiscal package of the South African government and is pivotal for the New Growth Path. Economic Infrastructure represents not only one of the key focus areas but also the fundament for the PDP as identified in the *Report on Growth and Development Colloquium: Economic Infrastructure for Growth and Development Colloquium: Strategies To Unlock the Economic Potential of The North West (2012)*.

Particular focus was placed on the provisioning and the maintenance of economic infrastructure as the precondition of overall economic growth and development, and for its significant potential to create employment.

Economic infrastructure refers to the physical structures that are in place to allow for the provision of services such as electricity, water and sanitation, telecommunications and transport. Theoretically infrastructure is critical to an economy since it enables the movement of goods, services and information and therefore allows for trade, production and investment attraction. The benefits of infrastructure development to an economy and to the poor are widely documented with research suggesting that an increase in the capital stock of infrastructure result to both an increase in economic growth and an increase in total factor productivity. Infrastructure development has also been identified by the New Growth Path as the first job driver due to its potential to create employment and the role it plays in providing a basis for further economic growth and increased efficiency and competitiveness. Economic development and employment creation in the North West province are the obligation of both the public sector and private sector.

A 1 per cent increase in the stock of infrastructure is typically associated with a 1 per cent increase in Gross Domestic Product (World Development Report, 1994)

The Presidential Infrastructure Coordinating Commission (PICC) adopted the National Infrastructure Plan that is intended to transform the economic landscape of South-Africa, create a significant number of new jobs, and strengthen the delivery of basic services to the population (PICC, 2012<sup>1</sup>). The infrastructure plan arranges 645 projects identified into 18 Strategic Integrated Projects (SIPs). Each SIP comprises of a large number of specific infrastructure components and programmes. The North West Province is covered specifically by SIP 4:

- SIP 4: The acceleration of identified investments in roads, rail, bulk water and water treatment and transmission infrastructure will result in reliable supply, meet basic social needs and facilitate the further development of mining, agricultural activities and tourism opportunities and open up beneficiation opportunities in the North West province.

As a result of the invaluable contribution of infrastructure to an economy, the undisputed relevance it has as a key prerequisite to economic growth and the specific challenges with infrastructure provision in the North West (as identified by the National Infrastructure Plan), this sector was identified as one of the priority focus areas for development in the short to medium-term. It has to be noted that planning tools utilised by government such as the SIPs might not be relevant in the long-term since the timeframe of the PDP exceeds that of the majority of planning policies. The NDP will be reviewed and updated on a five-year basis to ensure that the plan address and include relevant infrastructure policies and planning approaches.



## 4.2. THE CURRENT PERSPECTIVE

### 4.2.1. WATER

The availability of water will be a determining factor in any future development in the North West province. It is important that water should be central to economic growth and development decisions taking place in the province. This will ensure that any resolutions taken, which rely on the steady supply of water, sufficiently consider the availability of water. Water can only support growth and development in the province without compromising the sustainability thereof, and only if, water is at the nucleus of planning and decision-making.

The sub-sections on water has been aligned to the *Growth and Development Colloquium: Economic Infrastructure for Growth and Development Colloquium: Strategies to Unlock the Economic Potential of The North West (Office of the Premier North West province, 2012<sup>ii</sup>)* and the *North West Water Provision and Management Plan (Department of Water Affairs, 2008<sup>iii</sup>)*.

Access to water and the availability of water illustrates two components of water delivery. Access to piped water is used to indicate the level of the water service delivery infrastructure whereas the second component has to do with the availability of water as a natural resource due to supply and demand for water in the province. Water scarcities in the province will affect the available water through the water service delivery infrastructure but will not affect access to the infrastructure itself.

#### 4.2.1.1. WATER AVAILABILITY

The North West is a water scarce province and water shortages are likely to occur by 2020 (based on current growth in consumption and demand) in many parts of the province, especially in the western and north western parts (DRSMDM and NMMDM), if intervention measures aren't put in place. Water infrastructure is ageing and proper management and maintenance, especially in some of the rural municipalities remain lacking. Most water treatment plants that play an important role in enabling water re-use are operating above their capacity levels. The two economic sectors with a competitive advantage in the North West province, mining and agriculture, are both water intensive and pose risks to water quality and conservation. The following table provides a summary of the water supply and demand situation assessment conducted by the Department of Water Affairs (2008).

**Table 4-1: provincial water supply and demand balance**

	2008	2010	2015	2020	2025	2030
<b>WATER SUPPLY</b>						
Surface Water Supply	510.55	510.55	510.55	510.55	510.55	510.55
Groundwater	283.83	283.83	283.83	283.83	283.83	283.83
Transfers and Return Flow	53.1	54.74	60.55	66.16	74.88	79.85
Total Available Water	847.48	849.12	854.93	860.54	869.26	874.23
<b>WATER DEMAND</b>						
Domestic Sector	186	193.85	210.99	229.07	246.86	266.09
Mining and Industrial	78.08	83.23	98.02	114.18	130.83	147.17
Irrigation Agriculture	519.66	522.89	531.18	539.78	548.71	557.98
Total Water Requirements	783.74	799.98	840.2	883.01	926.4	971.24
<b>Supply Demand Balance</b>	63.74	49.14	14.73	-22.47	-57.14	-97.01

Source: DWA, 2012

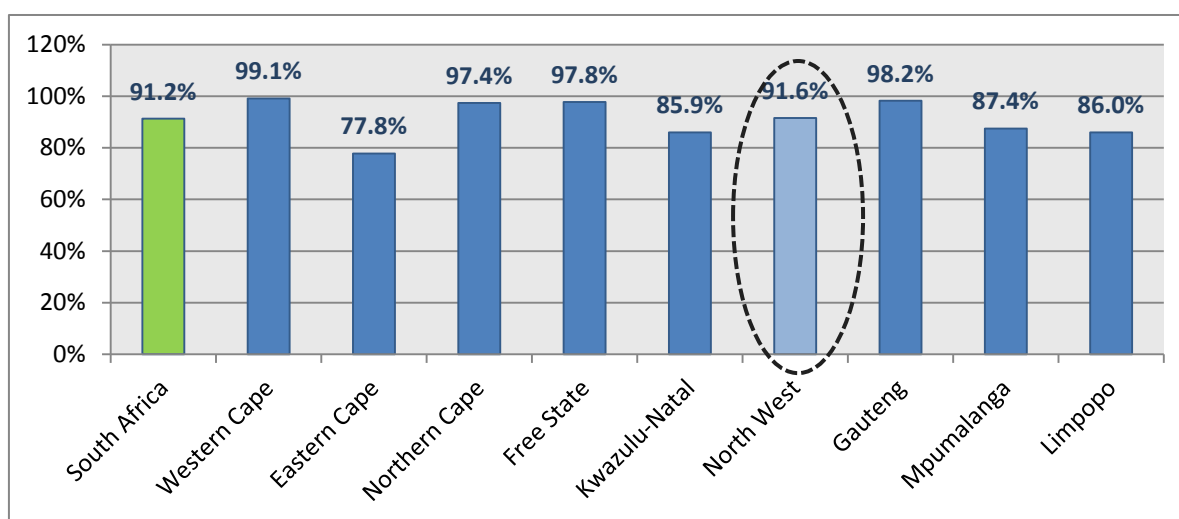


Despite the current surplus supply in the province indicated in Table 4.1, some areas currently face inadequate water supply, with demand for water already outstripping the supply thereof. Section 4.4.1 provides a breakdown of the water shortages in each of the North West DM's with interventions as proposed in the *North West Water Provision and Management Plan (Department of Water Affairs, 2008)*.

#### 4.2.1.2. ACCESS TO WATER

Access to water includes any form of piped water, as well as access to piped water from a borehole or well. Figure 4.1 illustrates the portion of the provincial population with access to piped water compared to the rest of South-Africa.

Figure 4.1: access to piped water compared nationally (2011)



Source: Stats SA, 2012

It can be seen from Figure 4.1 that 91.6 per cent of the provincial population has access to piped water compared to 91.2 per cent of the national population. The Western Cape, Northern Cape, Free State and Gauteng have a higher percentage of the population with access to piped water.

In terms of household water utilisation and access, the following table presents the situation in the province as well as the manner in which the situation has changed over the past decade.

Despite positive improvements since 2001, some areas in the province still struggle with water infrastructure delivery and compares poorly to the national and provincial averages. A significant portion of the household population of the NMMDM for instance does not have sufficient access to water infrastructure or services. This problem is much more pronounced in rural areas and in isolated villages and settlements where reliability of water provision is an additional problem, often despite the availability of water infrastructure (water pipes).

Table 4-2 household access to piped water

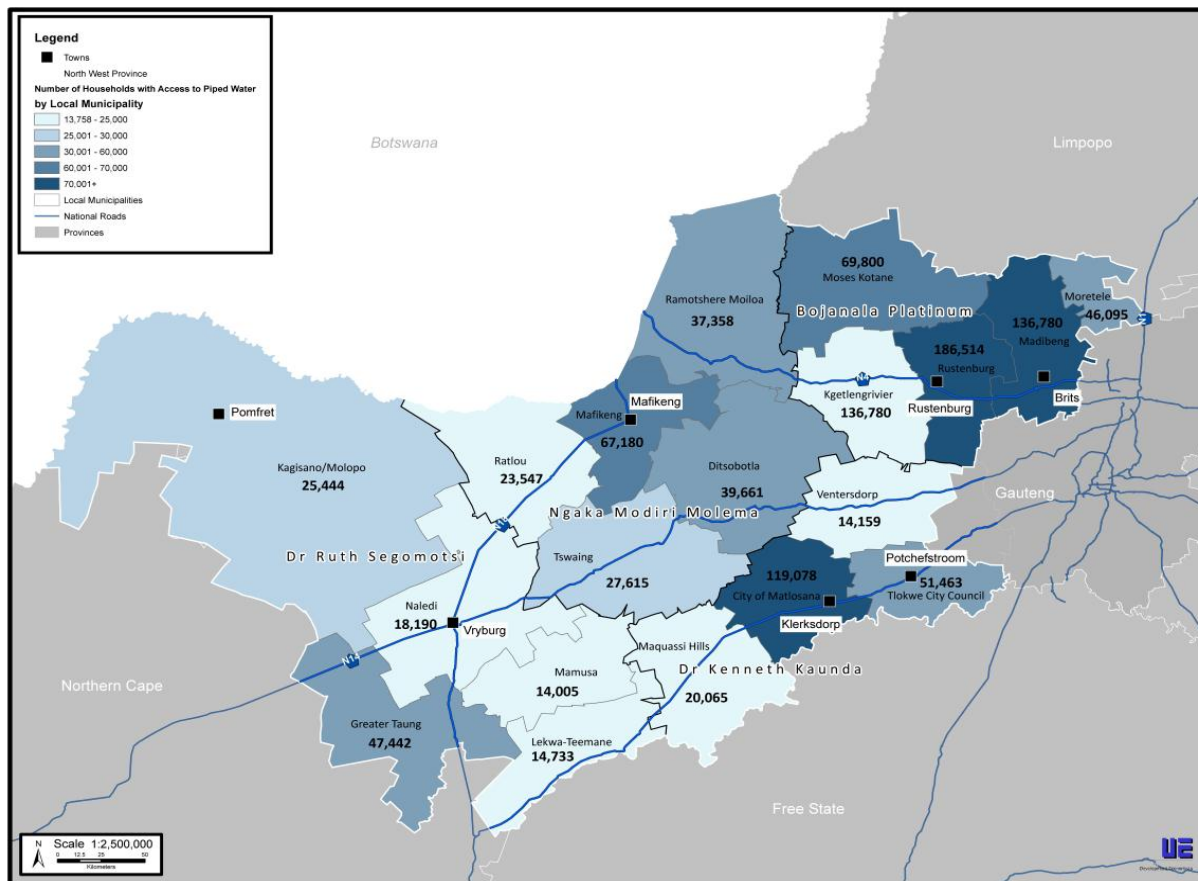
	2001		2011	
	Access to water	Other	Access to water	Other
SOUTH-AFRICA	85%	15%	91%	9%
NORTH WEST	88%	12%	92%	8%
BPDM	84%	16%	90%	10%
NMMDM	78%	22%	86%	14%
DRSMDM	88%	12%	96%	4%
DKKDM	98%	2%	98%	2%

Source: Stats SA, 2012



Map 4.1 illustrates the number of households with access to piped water within the local municipalities.

Map 4.1: number of households with access to piped water, 2011



Source: Stats SA drawn by Urban-Econ, 2012

Contrary to what the data suggests water provision remains a significant problem in the rural parts of the North West province. Many households confirm that they have access to pipe connections, either in or close to their yard, but water provision is irregular and water is often unavailable for extended periods of time. This is a problem that transcends any other in the short-term and prohibits any form of development in these areas.

#### 4.2.2. ENERGY

Energy is undisputedly considered as an economic enabler and due to the critical role it plays in socio-economic development it forms part of the Millennium Development Goals (RSA, 2010<sup>iv</sup>). Although the province has made significant progress in distributing electricity, much more needs to be achieved, both in provision and distribution, but also in reliability and sustainability.

Rural electrification is a great challenge in the North West province. Addressing the energy services of the rural poor is essential for achieving the Millennium Development Goals and sustainable development. The absence of bulk infrastructure, especially in rural areas, has put a strain on the implementation of the Integrated National Electrification Programme (INEP) (Department of Energy, 2011). Renewable energy sources have the potential to be introduced in smaller units that can function in a more decentralised way.

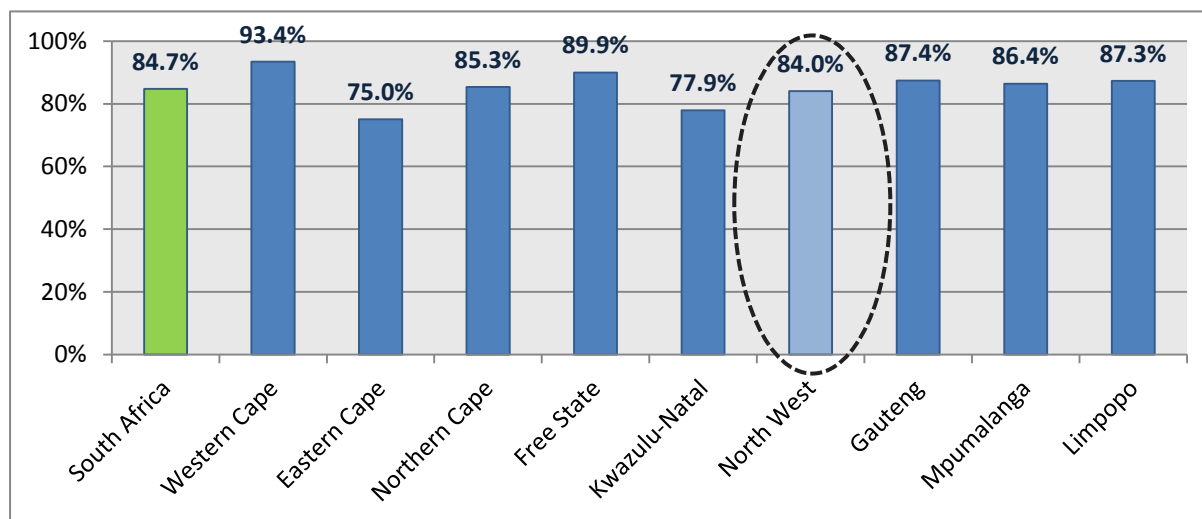




The option of developing local grids where general grid access is a challenge, especially in outlying rural communities, should be further investigated.

The sub-sections on energy have been aligned to the objective of the *Growth and Development Colloquium: Economic Infrastructure for Growth and Development Colloquium: Strategies to Unlock the Economic Potential of The North West* (Office of the Premier North West province, 2011). Figure 4.2 illustrates the portion of the provincial population with access to electricity for lightning compared to the rest of South-Africa.

Figure 4.2: access to electricity for lightning compared nationally (2011)



Source: Stats SA, 2012<sup>v</sup>

The percentage of the provincial population (84%) with access to electricity for lightning is lower than the national average (84.7%). The North West province has the third lowest portion of its population with electricity for lightning. Only the Eastern Cape and Kwazulu-Natal have smaller population percentages with electricity available for lightning.

Table 4-3: household access to electricity for lightning

	2001	2011
SOUTH-AFRICA	70%	85%
NORTH WEST	74%	84%
BPDM	74%	84%
NMMDM	71%	80%
DRSMDM	60%	82%
DKKDM	80%	89%

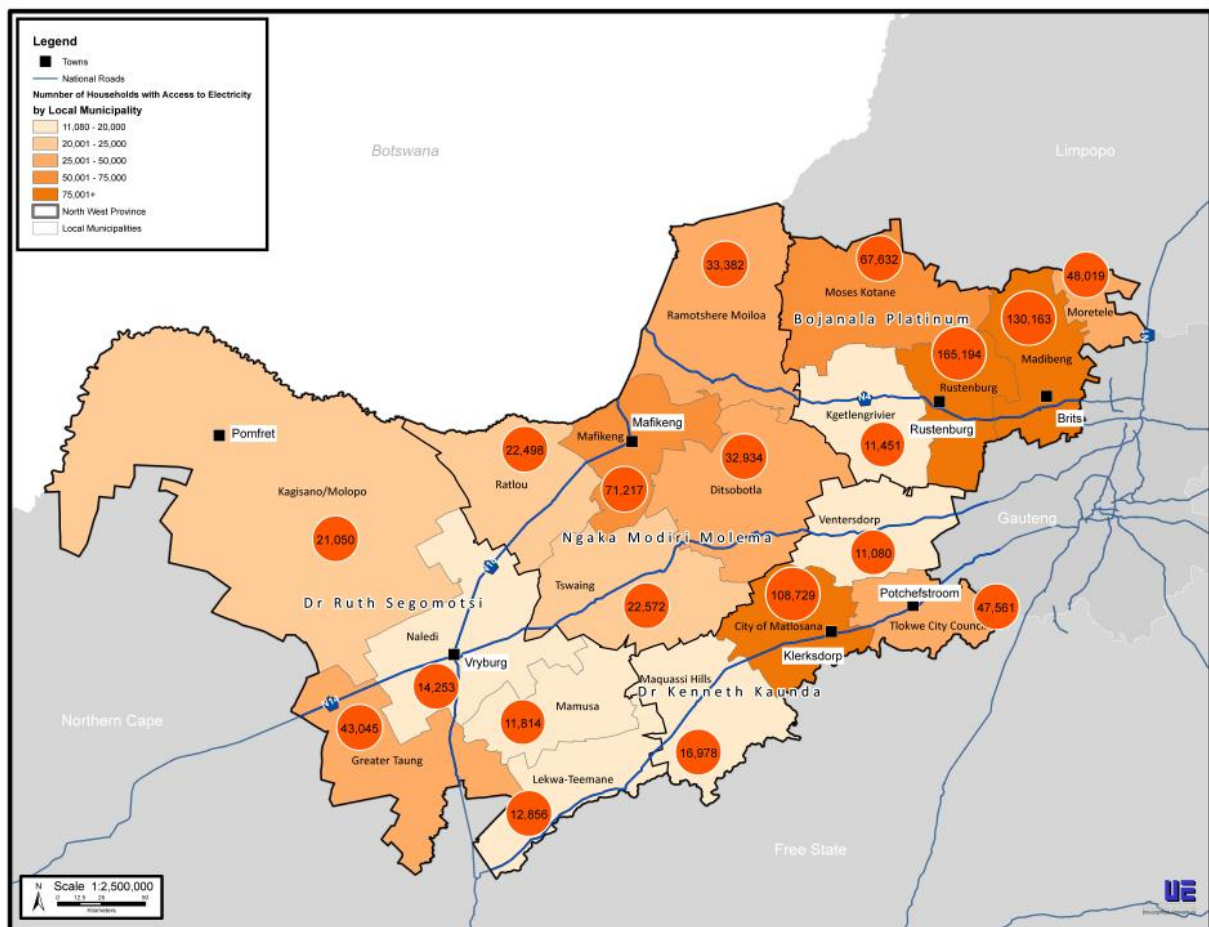
Source: Stats SA, 2012

Approximately 16 per cent of the provincial population does not have access to electricity for lightning, a challenge that is of particular concern in rural areas, where large numbers of households are dependent on paraffin and candles for lightning. Table 4.3 illustrates that access to electricity throughout the province has increased since 2001. Although the improvement is encouraging, the margin of improvement has been smaller than the remainder of South-Africa.

Map 4.2 illustrates the number of households with access to electricity for lightning within the local municipalities.



Map 4.2: number of households with access to electricity for lightning, 2011



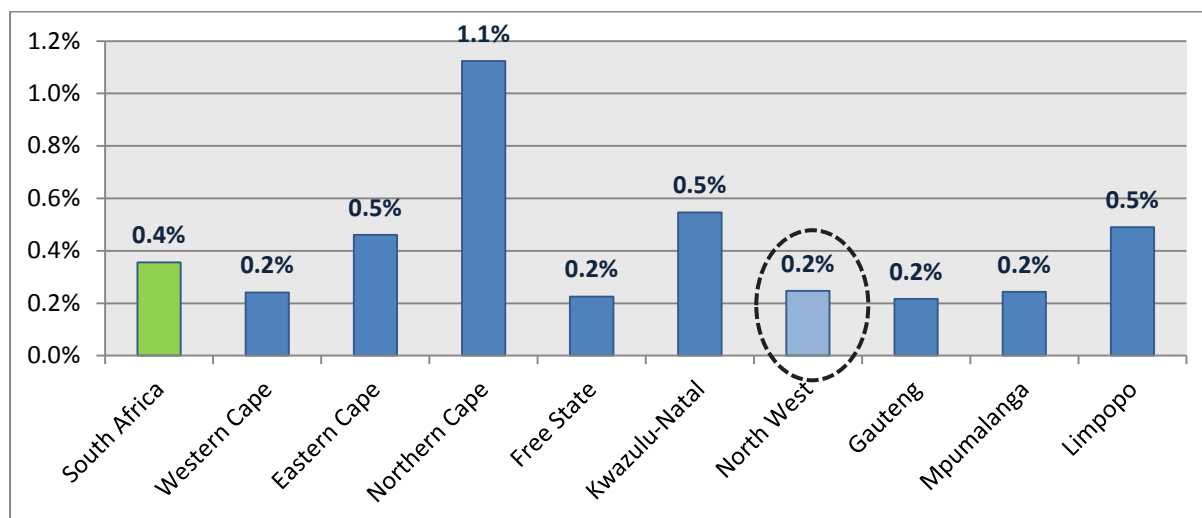
Source: Stats SA drawn by Urban-Econ, 2012

In the North West province, similar to the rest of South-Africa, energy supply is dominated by non-renewable sources and pollution, environmental degradation and climate change remain concerns. The focus in the North West province over the following two decades will therefore be to extend availability of electricity to rural excluded populations and to expand its renewable energy infrastructure and value chain. This sector offers economic growth and employment potential building on one of the key natural physical advantages of the province – its solar exposure.

Figure 4.3 illustrates the portion of the provincial population with access to solar power for lightning compared to the rest of South-Africa.



Figure 4.3: access to solar power for lightning compared nationally (2011)



Source: Stats SA, 2012

It becomes evident from Figure 4.3 that only 0.2 per cent of the provincial population has access to solar power for lightning. The Northern Cape has the highest portion of its population with access to solar power (1.1%). The North West province shares a similar solar energy potential than the Northern Cape.

The mining sector in the North West, the largest contributor to regional GVA and the largest provincial employer, is also the largest consumer of energy, responsible for approximately 63 per cent of total provincial electricity consumption. At the same time, approximately 16 per cent of provincial households lack any form of electricity access, the fifth largest provincial backlog in South-Africa. Overall consumption of electricity is expected to increase over the following 18 years, despite a slight expected slowdown in mining sector consumption. Current energy pressure (on existing electricity grid) is the most severe in the Bojanala Platinum District Municipality, while bulk infrastructure remains a challenge in rural areas.

#### 4.2.3. TRANSPORT

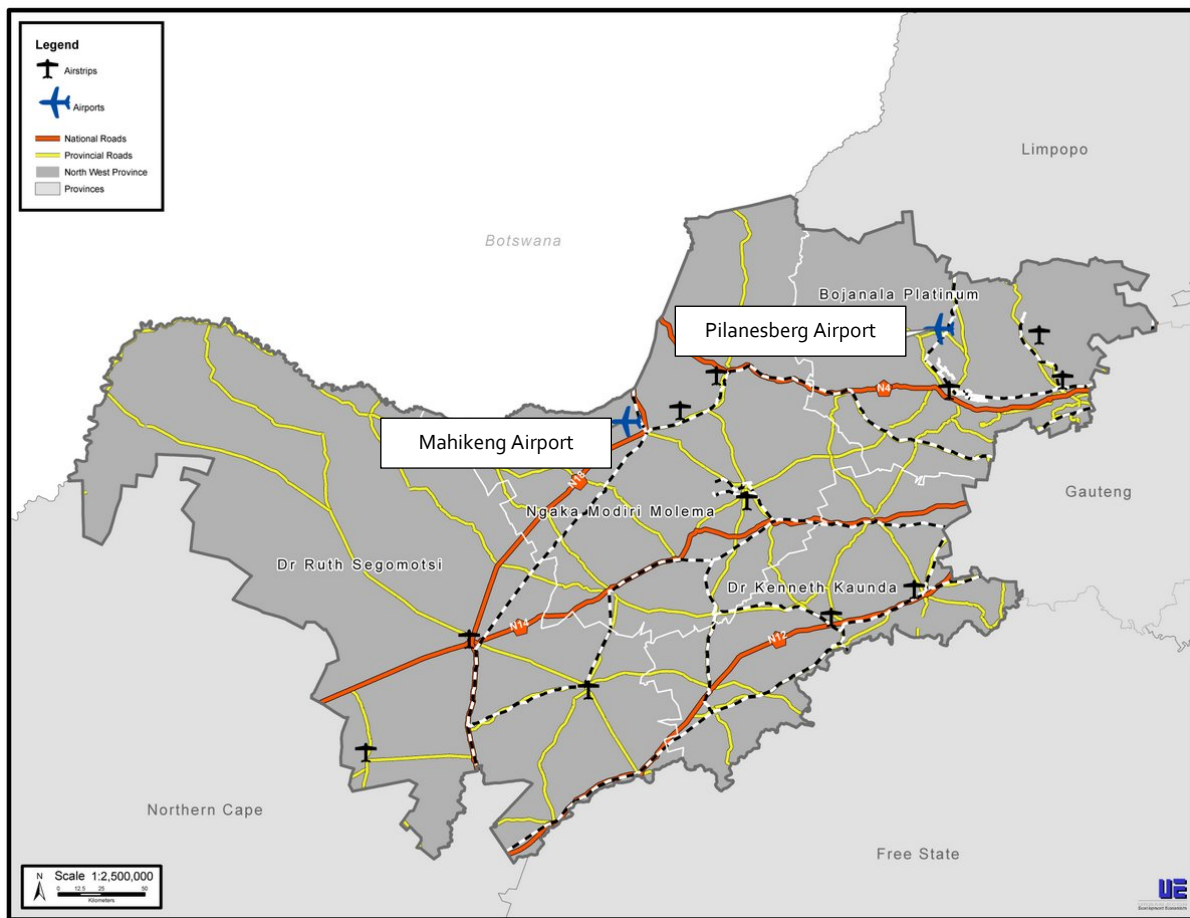
Investment in transport infrastructure offers significant growth potential to the provincial economy. Not only could many jobs be created in the construction and maintenance phases of infrastructure development, improved transport infrastructure also offers potential for growth in the overall economy. This overall benefit materialises through enabling businesses and individuals to operate more efficiently across the geographic landscape, in terms of making individual (business and personal) travel faster, more cost effectively and more reliable, as well as the productivity benefits of making freight flows faster, more cost effectively and more reliable. A lack of infrastructure quality or capacity must be viewed as a burden not just to the transport system, but also to overall productivity and regional economic growth.

Railway and road coverage are mostly established in the eastern and southern regions with, among others, four national routes (highways) traversing through these regions. The national routes have formed the foundation for future infrastructure and spatial development in the North West province. The key transport systems in the North West province are illustrated in Map 4.3.





Map 4.3: transportation routes, 2012



Source: NWPSDF drawn by Urban-Econ, 2012

The infrastructure of provincial roads is in a poor state of repair and rail networks are under-developed, especially considering that two of the largest industries in the province, mining and agriculture, requires the transportation of significant quantities of goods and raw material. The lack of rail utilisation and a sufficient rail network, places increased pressure on the existing road infrastructure and especially on provincial roads.

Airports in the North West province were established at Mafikeng and at Pilanesberg, primarily for the movement of passengers to and from the provincial capital city and to support the tourism initiatives in the Sun City and the Pilanesberg areas. Air strips for light aircraft are also available near Potchefstroom, Krugersdorp, Ventersdorp, Rustenburg, Lichtenburg, and Vryburg.

The only cargo movements at present are those associated with passenger transport, although freight handling facilities are available at both airports. The under-utilisation of the freight potential of the airport represents a lost opportunity for the provincial economy that merits some attention from the authorities.

#### 4.2.4. INFORMATION AND COMMUNICATIONS TECHNOLOGY

A large share of the North West province lives in rural areas where access to Information and Communication Technologies (ICT) is often challenging. Although the reach of radio and cell phone technology is well established, internet access and related technologies remain very limited. Addressing this aspect is very important due to the potential it offers in terms of basic service delivery in rural areas and socio-economic development amongst rural populations. Basic services such as education and health care, specifically, could benefit greatly from the increased utilisation of ICT.



Schools in rural areas could for instance use ICTs to improve the quality of the education process, access material that enhances classroom activity, teacher training, education administration, and possibly even facilitating research. ICT could also assist in health care through monitoring the outbreak of diseases, on-line self-administered (remote) consultations, diagnosis, and treatment and support activities aimed at improving hygiene and other health related behaviours in rural areas.



ICT could also support the public sector in delivering quality services, enhance efficiency and strengthen communication channels between government, business, and society at large. Rural populations could also acquire greater access to both information as well as a mechanism by which they can participate more effectively in the democratic process. This would encourage accountability in the public sector and improve performance and can also empower the youth through appropriate skills development and improved opportunities to become employed.

Access to information and information technologies plays a critical role in economic development and in the potential of rural populations to access markets and become economically involved. Through the use of e-commerce platforms, rural small enterprises would be in the position to extend their market reach. Moreover, the internet can be an effective tool that enables local enterprises to obtain more information about markets and arrange direct marketing that would by-pass some of the intermediaries. Also, the internet can allow producers to reach global markets at reduced transaction costs.

#### 4.3. VISION 2030

By 2030 the province will have an energy sector, comprising of a large share of renewable sources, which promotes economic growth and development through adequate investment in energy infrastructure. The sector should provide reliable and efficient energy services at competitive rates and ensure social equity through expanded access to energy at affordable tariffs and through targeted, sustainable subsidies for needy households. Environmental sustainability through efforts to reduce pollution and mitigate the effects of climate change will form a cornerstone of the approach to energy provision.

Effective management of water and the services derived from it will support a strong economy and a healthy environment. The development of the province will reflect an understanding of available water resources and effective water planning that cuts across different economic sectors and spheres of government. All main urban and industrial centres will have a reliable water supply to meet their needs, while increasingly efficient agricultural water use will support productive rural communities. Water will be recognised as the foundation of socio-economic development, reinforcing the importance of its protection.



Investments in the transport sector will bridge geographic distances affordably, reliably and safely so that everyone can access previously inaccessible economic opportunities, social spaces and services. Improved quality of roads will allow more effective transport of goods from points of production to where they are consumed, which will in turn facilitate regional and international trade. Achievements will be made in ensuring a low-carbon economy by offering transport alternatives that minimise environmental harm.



ICT will underpin the development of a dynamic and connected information society and a vibrant knowledge economy that is more inclusive and more competitive.

The vision for economic development and employment in the North West province requires the commitment of all sectors of society to contribute to the efforts required to meet common objectives. The PDP is a partnership document to be owned by the state together with other social partners. These would include the state, businesses, Non-Governmental Organisation (NGO's), as well as circular and faith based organisations. This is one of the key defining features of a progressive developmental state.

#### 4.3.1. VISION 2030 TARGETS

In order to realise the vision set out for infrastructure development in 2030 a number of key targets had to be developed. Firstly the delivery target for basic water services is to provide a piped source of treated water within a 200 meter distance from each household. The Census 2011 results provide three categories of piped water:

- piped water inside dwelling
- piped water inside yard
- piped water from access point outside yard

Households without any access to refuse removal services were used to determine waste delivery targets towards 2030. The proportion of households without electricity for lightning purposes as indicated in the Census 2011 results has been utilised to calculate the potential backlog relating to electricity provision. Lastly the delivery target for sanitation is to provide all households with at least a ventilated improved pit latrine or higher standard of service.

Table 4.4 shows the economic infrastructure targets for the North West province

**Table 4-4: economic infrastructure targets 2030**

KEY PERFORMANCE INDICATORS (KPI's)	CURRENT (Census, 2011)	TARGETS AND TIME FRAMES			
		2015	2020	2025	2030
Number of households with access to piped water	92%	94%	96%	98%	100%
Household access to electricity	84%	87%	90%	93%	95% with non-grid options available for the rest
No refuse removal	6.4%	4%	2%	0%	0%
Households without sufficient sanitation	8.1%	6%	2%	0%	0%

Source: Stats SA 2012

From the table above and the PDP strategy the main overarching targets for economic infrastructure can be described as the following:

- Ensure that all people have access to clean, potable water and that there is enough water for agriculture and industry, recognising the trade-offs in the use of water.
- Manage water demand.
- Irradiate backlogs and provide adequate access to services for the whole provincial population by 2030.
- Ensure affordable widely available broadband services to everyone in the province.



- Acceleration of investments in road, rail, bulk water, water treatment and transmission infrastructure (SIP 4).

Regarding renewable energy the Renewable Energy Strategy for the North West Province (2012) identifies a number of key targets as provided below.

**Table 4-5: renewable energy targets 2030**

KEY PERFORMANCE INDICATORS (KPI's)	TARGETS AND TIME FRAMES		
	2015	2025	2030
Renewable energy consumption (electricity only)	15%	30%	37%
Carbon dioxide emissions reduction (against 2000 levels)	15%	30%	35%
Solar water heaters installations	15%	50%	67%
Clean Cook stove roll-out	12 500 units	125 000 units	500 000

Source: Department of Economic Development, Environment, Conservation and Tourism (2012)

The following renewable energy targets from Table 4.5 are set for the North West province:

- Increase renewable energy consumption to 37% by 2030.
- By 2030 67% of households should have a solar water heater installed.

#### 4.3.2. HOW TO ACHIEVE IT

In order to achieve this vision the state in partnership with other social partners will have to ensure effective delivery and implementation of projects, improve the administrative and management capacity and make firm decisions in prioritisation of options. The North West province has identified three priority economic enablers (Office of the Premier North West province, 2012). The three priority areas are:

- ✓ water
- ✓ energy
- ✓ economic infrastructure

Certain key considerations are required to ensure that the economic scenario provided by the national vision becomes a reality in the North West province and therefor the following chapter was also included as possible enablers:

- ✓ transport
- ✓ Information and Communications Technology (ICT)

To achieve the vision set out above the focus was to unpack the significance of infrastructure to promote growth and development and further explore infrastructure development for job creation as discussed in Chapter 3.

It has to be noted that the PDP as a strategic document is providing guidelines on the holistic development of the North West province towards 2030. Economic infrastructure encompasses various highly technical subjects. It is therefore important to note that further technical inputs from experts will have to be acquired by the concerned role-players upon the implementation of each proposed strategic guideline.



#### 4.4. WATER INFRASTRUCTURE AND SERVICE PROVISION

The North West is a water scarce province, the Vaal River (lower Vaal) in the south provides for much of the irrigation in the southern parts, while the Crocodile and Groot Marico rivers supply some of the eastern and central parts respectively. Many communities depend on ground water for consumption and irrigation purposes. Both mining and agriculture activity uses significant quantities of water and therefore the resources have to be imported from other basin areas. Several water utility companies such as Rand Water, Sedibeng Water, Magalies Water, Midvaal Water and Botshelo Water serve the province.

The point of departure that needs to be recognised is that water is central to provincial growth and development and that water security and water quality is the overall objective. The quality of water is equally important to the quantity of water and the focus would likely be on establishing infrastructure that will allow for re-use of water to efficiently meet the needs of all consumers in the long-term.

The NDP (2012) proposes the establishment of a national Water-Resources Infrastructure Agency. Large investments in regional systems could be undertaken by the proposed agency, The Department of Water Affairs, should continue to lead the planning process, reviewing these programmes every five years to ensure coordination with other long-term economic and infrastructure plans. The North West province should give consideration to the establishment of a provincial Water-Resources Infrastructure Agency based on similar principals than the national agency.

##### 4.4.1. WATER AVAILABILITY PER DISTRICT

It is acknowledged that water is a scarce and valuable resource, which is both a social and economic resource supporting all facets of human life. It is important that the province in its planning should consider its current usage and future demand/need, especially given its pressure point. Current usage of water per region is as follows:

- In the eastern and central region water is significantly used for agriculture (irrigation and rain fed agriculture).
- In the western part of the province water is mainly used for cattle and game farming.
- In the eastern region (Madibeng and the Rustenburg complex up to the Thabazimbi region) water is mainly used for platinum and chrome mining.
- In the southern region water is used primarily for gold mining.
- In the northern region (areas bordering with Botswana) water is mainly used for tourism.



This section of the PDP provides a breakdown of the water shortages in each of the North West DM's with interventions as proposed in the *North West Water Provision and Management Plan (Department of Water Affairs, 2008)*. The five broad water reconciliation options, which were used as the basis to meet current and future water needs at DM level, are the following:

- development of the WC/WDM interventions measures
- augmentation from local water supplies
- augmentation based on non-convention methods (treated effluent reuse; water recycling and rainwater harvesting)
- water transfers from other supply areas
- water reallocation between and across sectors



It is necessary to ensure the implementation of the Water Provisioning and Management Plan. The Provincial Water Plan should form the baseline document for any development planning in the North West province.

#### 4.4.1.1. BOJANALA PLATINUM DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY

The BPDM is currently not experiencing seasonal shortages, but is likely to experience intermittent water supplies and severe water shortages after 2015 if no intervention measures are put in place. Table 4.6 illustrates the projected water balance for the BPDM.

**Table 4-6: BPDM water supply and demand balances (million m<sup>3</sup>/a)**

	2008	2010	2015	2020	2025	2030
<i>Total available water</i>	439.36	440.82	446.44	451.81	460.66	465.26
<i>Total Water requirements</i>	47.94	416.13	437.40	460.61	485.04	510.25
Supply demand balance	31.43	24.70	9.03	-8.80	-24.38	-44.99

Source: DWA, 2012

The district is also experiencing significant growth in water requirements driven by growth in mining activities and population growth. Currently the district has surplus water supplies however in the medium to long-term the water resources may not be sufficient to meet the growing demands. There are infrastructure challenges regarding water supply to the mines and to meet the growing demand of cities like Rustenburg.

#### ACTIONS:

- Water conservation and demand management (WC/WDM) options for the domestic sector of the BPDM entails the following:
  - implement water loss control measures such as pressure management and leakage control programmes
  - implement consumer reduction measures such as reviewed water tariffs and education / awareness campaigns
- The following initiatives to improve conveyance efficiency in agriculture must be considered:
  - undertake irrigation water budgets to determine where and how losses are taking place
  - review the pricing of water for irrigation agriculture
- Target water recycling should be as high as 50 %. Mines in the Rustenburg / Brits complex as well as other non-potable water users can be encouraged to utilise treated effluent for the purpose of production. Promote rainwater harvesting per capita consumption.
- Supply Side Management Options:
  - development of regional scheme from Hartbeespoort for industrial grade water
  - upgrading of the Vaalkop Bulk Water Supply Scheme
  - increase the capacity of the Rand Water (RW) bulk system
  - develop a regional bulk water supply scheme for the Klipvoor Dam situated in the Apies River system

#### 4.4.1.2. DR KENNETH KAUNDA DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY

The table below illustrates the water supply and demand balances for the DKKDM.





Table 4-7: DKKDM water supply and demand balances (million m<sup>3</sup>/a)

	2008	2010	2015	2020	2025	2030
Total Available Water	244.50	244.50	244.50	244.50	244.50	244.50
Total Water Requirements	196.67	200.98	213.50	227.11	239.97	253.56
Supply Demand Balance	47.83	43.52	31.00	17.39	4.53	-9.06

Source: DWA, 2012

It can be observed from the table above that the DKDDM is currently not experiencing seasonal shortages, but is likely to experience intermittent water supplies and severe water shortages after 2025 if no intervention measures are put in place.

**ACTION:**

- Water conservation and demand management (WC/WDM) options for the domestic sector of the BPDMM entails the following:
  - Implement water loss control measures such as pressure management and leakage control programmes
  - implement consumer reduction measures such as reviewed water tariffs and education / awareness campaigns
  - refurbish and renewal of existing water supply infrastructure , which has reached its lifecycle
- The following initiatives to improve conveyance efficiency in agriculture must be considered:
  - undertake irrigation water budgets to determine where and how losses are taking place
  - review the pricing of water for irrigation agriculture
- Target water recycling should be as high as 50 per cent. The mines in the DM as well as other non-potable water users can be encouraged to utilise treated effluent for the purpose of production. .
- Promote rainwater harvesting per capita consumption.
- Development of bulk water supply from mine water – in the medium to long-term the DKKDM can develop a water supply scheme from the groundwater currently being pumped into the Koekemoer River, to supply any future developments that may take place in the DM and / or DM's of the province.

**4.4.1.3. NGAKA MODIRI MOLEMA DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY**

The NMMDM is already experiencing shortages due to infrastructure capacity constraints, and likely to experience intermittent water supplies and increasing severe water shortages if no intervention measures are put in place. The district has a water supply deficit which going to increase as demand grows. The total water shortfall by 2030 is estimated at 68.31 mega litres. The table below highlights the total water availability balance over time.

Table 4-8: NMMDM water supply and demand balances (million m<sup>3</sup>/a)

	2008	2010	2015	2020	2025	2030
Total available water	153.8	154.36	155.6	156.94	158.28	159.74
Total Water requirements	186.48	188.38	192.75	197.25	201.79	206.68
Supply demand balance	-32.68	-34.02	-37.15	-40.31	-43.51	-46.94

Source: DWA, 2012



**ACTIONS:**

- Water conservation and demand management (WC/WDM) options for the domestic sector of the BPDM entails the following:
  - Undertake water balance assessment and audits to determine where and how water is currently lost
  - Implement water loss control measures such as pressure management and leakage control programmes
  - Implement consumer reduction measures such as reviewed water tariffs and education / awareness campaigns
  - Refurbish and renewal of existing water supply infrastructure , which has reached its lifecycle
- The following initiatives to improve conveyance efficiency in agriculture must be considered:
  - undertake irrigation water budgets to determine where and how losses are taking place
  - review the pricing of water for irrigation agriculture
- Curtail unlawful water usage.
- To insure water use in the NMMDM remains within the sustainable limits of the catchment, it is recommended that compulsory licensing be implemented.
- Encourage water trading within a framework that will not have negative impacts on the development of the province.
- Promote rainwater harvesting per capita consumption.
- Supply Side Management Options:
  - upgrade of Setumo Dam bulk water supply
  - source water from the existing Disabeng Dam downstream of the Setumo Dam
  - investigate construction of the Setlagole Dam in the Setlagole River to meet current and future water requirements in the southern areas of the Ratlou LM
  - bulk water transfer from Midvaal Water Company

**4.4.1.4. DR RUTH SEGOMOTSI MOMPATI DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY**

It can be seen from Table 4.9 that the DRSMMDM have a similar water reality than the NMMDM. The DM is currently experiencing shortages due to infrastructure capacity constraints, and likely to experience intermittent water supplies and increasing severe water shortages if no intervention measures are put in place.

**Table 4-9: DRSMMDM water supply and demand balances (million m<sup>3</sup>/a)**

	2008	2010	2015	2020	2025	2030
<i>Total Available Water</i>	72.81	72.81	72.81	72.81	72.81	72.81
<i>Total Water Requirements</i>	79.89	81.49	83.98	86.72	89.23	91.82
<i>Supply Demand Balance</i>	-7.08	-8.68	-11.17	-13.91	-16.42	-19.01

Source: DWA, 2012

**ACTIONS:**

- Water conservation and demand management (WC/WDM) options for the domestic sector of the BPDM entails the following:
  - undertake water balance assessment and audits to determine where and how water is currently lost
  - implement water loss control measures such as pressure management and leakage control programmes





- implement consumer reduction measures such as reviewed water tariffs and education / awareness campaigns
- refurbish and renew existing water supply infrastructure
- The following initiatives to improve conveyance efficiency in agriculture must be considered:
  - undertake irrigation water budgets to determine where and how losses are occurring
  - review the pricing of water for irrigation agriculture
- Promote rainwater harvesting per capita consumption despite limited potential. Potential to implement programmes exist in towns such as Mafikeng, which will also have the benefit of reducing storm water problems.
- Groundwater management plan is essential to ensure effective use of the local groundwater sources. Conjunctive use of groundwater and surface water has been identified in the NMMDM and DRSMDM.
- Supply Side Management Options:
  - Development of storage on Setlagole River (Require mining development to take place for it to be viable)
  - In the Taung area utilise Taung Dam for domestic purposes
  - Develop additional supplies from the Vaal River system for the southern portion of the DRSMDM
  - Extend Midvaal Water into the southern areas of the DRSMDM

#### 4.4.2. DEVELOP AND IMPROVE WATER INFRASTRUCTURE

Water infrastructure in much of the North West province is ageing and many water treatment plants are operating at very high capacity levels. The province depends on water that is shared with many other provinces and even countries and the scope for new water provisioning infrastructure is small. The majority of the water that is used in the North West originates from Lesotho and Gauteng, and is shared between the Limpopo and Gauteng provinces as well as Mozambique, Botswana, Zimbabwe and Namibia, and as such is already highly contested. This means that the focus should be on managing water quality and efficiency and on providing and maintaining infrastructure that allows for water re-use.

Challenges regarding water infrastructure impacts on growth across the North West province. Challenges include the following:

- aging water infrastructure with limited scope for new infrastructure to provide water
- expensive inter-basin water transfers
- poor regulation compliance and enforcement
- lack of technical skills and human resources

All regions need to proactively develop intervention strategies to deal with the imminent water challenges in their respective areas. In 2012 the water service delivery backlog for the North West province was the following:

- water: 20,464 households
- sanitation: 250,000 households

This removal of the provincial water service delivery backlog must be viewed as a matter of urgency.

#### BLUE DROP CLASSIFICATION

The Department of Water Affairs (DWA) initiated the Blue Drop Classification programme in 2008 with the



objective of ensuring the improvement of tap water quality by means of compliance monitoring. The programme is an incentive-based water quality regulation strategy through which municipal service providers are certified if they meet certain requirements. The requirements include compliance with water quality standards, a water safety and security plan and drinking water asset management. A final score of at least 95 percent is required for a Blue Drop award to be awarded.

According to the Department of Water Affairs (2010<sup>vi</sup>) the North West province had a Blue Drop score of 66.01 per cent in 2010. There are an increasing number of municipalities in the North West, which are embracing the Blue Drop Concept that promotes proactive drinking water quality management. Many of the systems in the North West (especially the rural villages) failed to benefit from this paradigm shift due to various degrees of capacity shortcomings. The only municipalities that have so far attained the Blue Drop Status in the North West province are Rustenburg LM, Tlokwe LM and the City of Matlosana LM.

Public sector involvement in water provision does not exclude the private sector and consumer sector. All three sectors have a responsibility in sustainable water provision in the province. If the involvement of either the public, private or community sector should increase, the roles and responsibilities of the remaining two sectors will remain. Water infrastructure and service provision in the North West province requires the commitment of all sectors of society. All stakeholders should depart their commitments from the position that water is central to economic growth and development.

#### ACTIONS:

- Prioritise water infrastructure spending in systems that will enable and improve on the reuse of water.
- Investigate alternative sanitation systems such as the option of recycling bio-waste to meet water demands, promote water safety and conservation more efficiently through water-less toilets.
- Increase the efficiency of maintenance and the upgrading of existing infrastructure such as reservoirs, pumping stations, weirs, and tube wells.
- Include the Blue Drop and Green Drop Key Performance Areas (KPA's) for senior management to ensure buy-in and compliance to the delivery of quality water services.
- Improve infrastructure planning, project management and infrastructure finance capacity of relevant state institutions.
- Extend the provision of water to rural communities in the short-term where water provision remains a problem.
- Accelerate the role of communities and businesses in the provision of infrastructure, services and conservation of water.
- The Provincial Water Provision and Management Plan should form the baseline document for any development planning in the North West province.

#### 4.4.3. IMPROVE MANAGEMENT AND MAINTENANCE

Effective water management is central to all provincial development challenges and opportunities, and impacts on people, agriculture, mining, conservation (fauna and flora), tourism and recreation. Water quality varies greatly throughout the province with some municipalities performing well, but other more rural municipalities struggle to achieve targets and objectives set in place by the Blue Drop classification programme. Institutional capacity at local government and necessary water management skills remains limited, hampering the ability to address backlogs and improve maintenance of water infrastructure. Another



key challenge is the lack of reliable and common data, which increases the complexity of water management and planning.

Currently there are 26 Irrigation Boards, 11 Water Services Authorities and five Water Boards involved in providing bulk potable water to municipalities in the North West province (North West Office of the Premier, 2012<sup>vii</sup>). The five water boards include Rand Water, Botshelo Water, Sedibeng Water, Magalies Water and Midvaal Company and they provide potable water to the province in partnership with the 11 water services authorities. In March 2012, nine Catchment Management Authorities (CMA's) were established. The CMA's will play a critical role in managing the country's water resources, including facilitating stakeholder input into the management of water resources. The current institutional framework for water provision in the North West province has been described as excessive and lack integration between the concerned authorities. The North West province has to implement a vigorous governance system that will ensure effective and efficient water coordination and management. The province should review the institutional framework thus reducing and streamlining the number of Irrigation Boards, Water Services Authorities and Water Boards into fewer more efficient structures.

Water provision is a function of the national and the local government. This raises challenges for the provincial government when for instance: municipalities fail in providing communities with quality sustainable water. The need exists to establish the province as an effective sector regulator to monitor among others the implementation of the Water Provisioning and Management Plan for the North West province. Suitable provincial sector structures must be established to allow for increased oversight by provincial government on both political and administrative levels.

Table 4-10: provincial blue drop performance log, 2012

Water Services Authority	Provincial Blue Drop Log Position	Blue- Drop Score 2010	Blue- Drop Score 2011	Blue- Drop Score 2013
Tlokwe	1	98.45	96.87	95.11
Matlosana	2	95.35	95.38	59.60
Rustenberg	3	91.55	93.24	95.10
Maquassi Hills	4	75.11	56.75	64.90
Moses Kotane	5	68.59	31.51	48.90
Moretele	6	59.72	33.08	0.00
Madiberg	7	57.93	36.72	4.00
Ventersdorp	8	55.60	34.99	19.00
Dr Ruth Segomotsi	9	52.94	64.16	17.50
Kgelengrivier	10	48.25	24.67	29.40
Ngaka Modiri Molema	11	40.72	0.66	31.40

Source: DWA, 2012

#### ACTIONS:

- The focus should shift to using water efficiently and reducing demand. Promote demand management through water conservation strategies. Intensify efforts to nurture behavioural changes that reflect an appreciation of water and a combined effort to conserve.
- Build strong water institutions and partnerships between municipalities, boards, agricultural regions, university and mines. Integrate the efforts of all stakeholders involved.



- Build capacity at municipal level to enable maintenance of infrastructure and address job creation (thus tackling service delivery protests which are mainly about water). Engage with the NWU and technical colleges to develop training programmes that will fill the skills' capacity gaps. Artisan students from such colleges could be used for maintenance and routine jobs in municipalities. Conduct skills audits in municipalities to ascertain available and required capacity.
- Provide training and employment for rural community members in maintenance of infrastructure.
- Reduce and streamline the number of Irrigation Boards, Water Services Authorities and Water Boards into fewer more efficient structures in the province. Capacitate water authorities to deliver quality, sustainable services and to attend to their respective catchment areas.
- Department of Water Affairs to come up with a concept that will outline the role of a province in the water sector. It is proposed that the province is established as an effective sector regulator to allow for increased oversight by provincial government on both political and administrative levels. Further increase requires technical and associated skills to support sector initiatives.
- Senior politicians, such as the Member of the Executive Council (MEC) for the local government must become a provincial champion for water issues (incl. Blue or Green Drop) to provide political weight needed.
- The Water Services Forum should become an advisory committee to the premier on water issues to address capacity, water loss, management and overarching governance aspects.
- Address backlogs and maintenance through developing maintenance plans in municipalities and provide budgets for funding them.

The budgetary framework for water should take an integrated approach. A mechanism to integrate planning processes and funding allocations for water needs to be developed to consolidate funds in one central fund. The fund will focus on key programs and projects for which different funding agencies such as the DBSA can be approached for assistance.

A consolidated fund will further address the challenge of different budgeting cycles between the province and municipalities. In addition a more effective use of the planning-budgetary cycle and systems should be encouraged to gear and position municipalities to roll-out projects as and when the Municipal Infrastructure Grants (MIG) is made available. MIG funds should be made available on time for municipalities.

#### 4.5. ENERGY INFRASTRUCTURE AND SERVICES PROVISION

Renewable energies, especially solar and waste/biomass to energy initiatives will play an increasingly important role in the following two decades and will contribute a much greater share of provincial energy consumption. Linkages to the renewable energy sector will include manufacturing of input materials, specialised services and increased construction and infrastructure development. Research in nuclear technologies will position the province as a key competitor in providing such energy once further feasibility thereof has been determined.

The sector has traditionally been driven by government and private sector participation has been limited. However, with the advent of Independent Power Producers (IPP) and the potential offered by renewable energy, the sector has the potential to expand considerably. A significant part of the expansion potential in the North West is expected to originate from solar energy (especially in the western parts of the province) and from waste to-energy initiatives.



### NATIONAL ENERGY DEPENDENCY

According to Eskom (2012<sup>viii</sup>) coal is internationally the most widely used fuel, accounting for approximately 36 per cent of the world's electricity production. Of the 224 million tons of marketable coal produced annually in South-Africa, 25 per cent is exported to meet the international energy demand. This makes South Africa the fifth largest coal producing country in the world and the third largest exporting country.

Locally, about 77 per cent of our country's primary energy needs are provided by coal. This is unlikely to change significantly in the next decade, due to the relative lack of suitable alternatives to coal as an energy source. South-Africa's coal reserves are estimated at 53 billion tons, and with the present production rate there should be almost 200 years of coal supply left. The national transport system is 93 per cent dependent on a single source of primary energy i.e. crude oil which is an external source of energy. The national power generation sector is 45 per cent dependent on coal. Oil and coal, are non-renewable energy sources and in their application and use generate substantial quantities of CO<sub>2</sub> adding to the already heavy load of carbon emissions in the country. South-Africa's high degree of dependency on oil, as an external resource and coal with its relative ease of availability within the country makes coal an important cost effective element in the short to medium-term. It can thus be said that coal usage would address the current critical shortages in energy supply and feed the expansionary needs of the economy, hence contributing towards job creation.

Unfortunately a dependency on coal and or oil over the short to medium-term could prove to be a rather costly investment over the long-term due to the rising cost of climate change mitigation measures. South-Africa has signed the Kyoto Agreement and is committed to reduce its carbon emissions per capita by 34 per cent by 2020 and 42 per cent by 2025. The target of a reduction in carbon emissions by 34 per cent per capita may become too steep a commitment made if coal and or should be utilised to feed economic and employment growth over the short to medium-term. The Integrated Resource Plan (IRP) as approved by Cabinet in 2010 attempts to address these challenges in a balanced way through providing for substantial resource allocations into the renewable energy sector (Department of Energy, 2011<sup>ix</sup>).

Similarly to water provision, the provision of energy is a function of national and local government. Provincial government is often left powerless regarding regulating and ensuring the provision of energy. The need exists to establish the province as an effective sector regulator to monitor among others the implementation of the Renewable Energy Strategy and Implementation Plan for the North West province. Suitable provincial sector structures must be established to allow for increased oversight by provincial government on both political and administrative levels.

There exists a need for an overall Integrated Provincial Energy Plan. This plan would clarify the concurrent mix of all the energy requirements and energy sources to be utilised to satisfy specifically provincial energy needs. Renewable energy sources would only be one important aspect of the plan.

The province faces a number of infrastructural deficits that need to be addressed as a prerequisite in order for it to fully utilise its potential for a mix of renewable and non-renewable low-carbon emission energy options and ensure electrification of all households in the province as well as support economic growth and job creation. These deficits include the following:



- Limited Energy Supply (quantity and quality) to the province especially in the BPDM, which is the mining hub of the province.
- After Limpopo, the Eastern Cape, Gauteng and Kwa-Zulu Natal, the North West Province has the highest household electrification backlog in terms of un-electrified households.
- The absence of bulk infrastructure, especially in rural areas, has put a strain on the implementation of the Integrated National Electrification Programme (INEP).
- Lack of electrical grid access (an interconnected network for delivering electricity from suppliers to consumers) in the North West Province.

The sub-sections on energy were aligned to the *Growth and Development Colloquium: Economic Infrastructure for Growth and Development Colloquium: Strategies to Unlock the Economic Potential of The North West (Office of the Premier North West province, 2012)*. All renewable energy planning should refer to the Renewable Energy Strategy for the North West Province (2012).

#### 4.5.1. DEVELOP RENEWABLE ENERGY INFRASTRUCTURE

The provincial potential as a destination for solar power is often overlooked. The North West province shares a similar solar energy potential than the Northern Cape. The mining industry consumes the majority of electricity in the province, placing pressure on the grid (especially in the eastern parts of the province) during peak periods and rural areas remain underserved. The vast majority of electricity consumed in the North West province is generated by methods that are unsustainable in the long-term. In order to move toward a more responsible manner of electricity consumption, the North West province needs to generate an increasing amount of energy locally. This energy needs to be generated by means of renewable sources, which are often more capital intensive, but offers better prospects for long-term sustainability, economic growth and employment creation and environmental responsibility and compliance. Renewable sources that offer limited potential include hydro and wind (excluding small-scale wind pumps) while high potential sources include solar, waste-to-energy and waste heat recovery.



The options for renewable sources for energy generation are presented below:

##### 4.5.1.1. SOLAR POWER

The North West Province definitely has a competitive advantage over many of the other provinces when it comes to renewable energy projects that focus on solar energy. Only the Northern Cape has slightly more potential. The greatest potential for solar energy is in the western part of the province (more land availability and higher solar insulation), but a lack of a mainline transmission grid will limit large-scale concentrated solar power projects that aim to feed in-to the electricity transmission grid. It is important to look at non-grid options and options that could support the development of local independent grid applications for use by local communities as mentioned above. The Renewable Energy Strategy for the North West Province (DEDECT, 2012<sup>x</sup>) identified two solar power options for the province, Solar Water Heaters and Solar Photovoltaic Technologies.



### A. Solar Water Heaters

The application of domestic solar water heaters has the greatest benefit with consideration of the energy return per unit cost with little environmental detriment or changes in land use. Solar Water Heating is applicable to all sectors within the North West province.

#### ACTIONS:

- Identify a suitable entity or subsidiary organisation directly linked to the NWPG that will take the responsibility to drive the opportunities linked to solar water heaters with a centralised vision and continuity in resources within the local municipalities.
- Conduct a market study to quantify the potential for solar water heaters uptake within local municipalities and identify challenges.
- Engage with the Department of Energy (DOE) and Eskom to obtain achievable allocations for the installations of solar water heaters throughout the province.
- Assign enforceable targets towards each of the local municipalities with realistic deadlines.
- Assign roles and responsibilities towards achieving these targets within each local municipality, coupled with mandatory progress reporting requirements.
- Facilitate the implementation of pilot phases within the municipalities.
- Develop practical mandatory training that should be delivered on an annual basis.
- Provide centralised technical and non-technical support.
- Explore partnerships and existing funding mechanisms with local development agencies and private sector investors to establish viable and attractive means of making solar water heater technologies accessible to low-income housing and poor communities.

### B. Solar Photovoltaic Technologies

An increase in the uptake of renewable energy power generation from solar photovoltaic plants has been seen throughout South-Africa. This can primarily be attributed to the Renewable Energy Independent Power Producers (RE IPP) programme that has an overall target of 3,725 MW that needs to be generated from renewable energy resources. Under this programme an allocation of 1,450 MW has been made towards solar photovoltaic systems. The use of solar energy is ultimately one of the most readily accessible renewable energy resources in the North West province. The province has a high average daily solar radiation. Even though the majority of solar photovoltaic projects under the current RE IPP programme are targeting the Northern Cape due to its preferable levels of solar irradiation, the North West province has levels of solar irradiation that is between 5 per cent and 11 per cent lower than the optimal locations in the Northern Cape. Solar photovoltaic consequently forms one of the key areas that the North West province needs to focus on.

#### ACTIONS:

- Identify a suitable entity or subsidiary organisation that will take the responsibility to drive the opportunities associated with solar photovoltaic projects under the RE IPP.
- The North West province has substantial land area available that could potentially be utilised for solar photovoltaic plant applications. The North West province should consequently initiate a project as part of the implementation plan that will identify suitable portions of land, which complies with the following requirements:
  - Suitable and proven measured levels of solar irradiation
  - Long-term lease or option agreements possible
  - Good grid infrastructure in close proximity
  - Suitable connection point into the electricity grid
  - Low impact on agriculture and environment





- Suitable access to and around site for effective execution
- In close proximity to communities that could benefit from local economic development and job creation
- Solar photovoltaic projects should be driven by the NWPG and its subsidiaries such as Invest North West, possibly in conjunction with technical expertise from the South-African Photovoltaic Industry Association (Sapvia), Southern Africa Solar Thermal and Electricity Association (SASTELA) and the IDC. Cooperation with the North West House of Traditional Leaders (NWHTL) should also be explored.

#### 4.5.1.2. BIOMASS AND BIOGAS POTENTIAL

Waste-to-energy initiatives include the use of agricultural and municipal solid waste (sewage) to generate methane-rich biogas. This practise has an energy potential in the province similar to that of a small coal power station. Electricity is typically produced through either combustion to electricity or through biomass-to-liquid (Fischer-Tropsch) technology. Energy from bio-gas is appropriate for households, agriculture, SMMEs, municipalities, industry and mining, the latter being responsible for more than 60 per cent of the provincial electricity consumption.

#### 4.5.1.3. WIND POWER

The North West Province has limited and localised wind power potential. Wind power is most applicable in the agriculture and SMME sectors. Wind power is feasible for some parts of the province where average wind speeds are greater than four meters per second.

Wind pumps are also an attractive option to enable irrigation of crops, which is often necessary for many parts of the North West that receive little rainfall, but this may increase soil degradation through salinisation. The pumping of water can enable the storage of the wind power potential energy that can be recovered through hydro-electric processes, thereby increasing the capacity factor of the renewable energy supply.

#### 4.5.1.4. ENERGY EFFICIENCY AND RENEWABLE ENERGY: OBSTACLES

It can be concluded from the identified renewable energy sources that solar power has the most potential followed by biomass and biogas. By introducing renewable together with energy conservation and efficiency strategies there are certain obstacles to be overcome. These obstacles relate to current infrastructure limitations, methods of costing of energy options, institutional and other issues.

Some of the challenges involve the following:

- Awareness and support (misinformation and poor information regarding what is feasible currently or in the future).
- Reduction in energy demand not consistent with a power-producer business strategy and economic development.
- High initial capital expenditure of renewable energy technologies and new grid infrastructure as opposed to coal power stations.
- Lack of accounting for externalities (i.e. environmental and social benefits of energy efficiency and renewable energy).
- Lack of grid access and limited opportunities for independent power producers (IPP) to feed into the grid.

Despite the challenges identified, the North West province needs to plan and provide for the utilisation of its potential energy resources to ensure a reliable and sustainable energy supply to its citizens and in doing so allowing the economy to grow and create jobs.





**ACTIONS:**

- Initiate pilot projects in new locally untested technologies (Fischer-Tropsch and/or BeauTi-fuel technologies).
- Investigate the potential of establishing a North West Centre of Excellence to establish the province as a leader in renewable energies. Manufacturing capacity needs to be developed within the province to support the new opportunities in renewable energies. New opportunities should not only be at PhD level but also at technical level including the production of local content.
- Establish partnership with development agencies to promote and attract investment across the entire industry (manufacturing of upstream inputs and the establishment of SMMEs in provision of services):
  - ✓ Proposed / planned projects in the energy sector must be linked to the Green Fund for inter alia solar, and waste management
  - ✓ Explore partnerships with interested global partners such as Norway, Independent Power Producers (at Tipping Point) Department of Energy, COP 17– listing of partners who want to support provincial development as part of a platform to unlock blockages in development
- Extend the contract agreement period with local municipalities to extend for periods longer than four years.
- Improve market access for independent power producers / SMMEs.
- Involve mining companies (through their SLP programmes) in the delivery of renewable energy solutions in rural areas.
- Develop the renewable energy sector as a new and upcoming sector in the provincial economy (See Chapter 3).

**4.5.2. ENERGY INFRASTRUCTURE DEVELOPMENT**

To address the need for an integrated provincial energy provision, conventional power generation plants with modern technology to reduce carbon emissions, as well as plants for the generation of electricity using renewable sources of energy such as solar energy need to be provided for and funded. This is currently being implemented in context of the Integrated Resource Plan. North West must find ways of increasing its participation in such programmes. The Renewable Energy Strategy for North West province will provide critical guidance to investors in that regard.

Grid access needs to be enhanced since it is concentrated in some areas of the province but leaves out others. Renewable energy options should also investigate the possibility of creating localised independent grids that could serve adjacent communities. This is also being investigated in context of the renewable energy strategy for the province.

**ACTIONS:**

- Complete and implement the Integrated Resource Plan for the North West province. This plan would clarify the concurrent mix of all the energy requirements and energy sources to be utilised to satisfy specifically provincial energy needs. An examination of renewable energy sources would one important aspect of such a plan.

**ENERGY AND THE AVAILABILITY OF WATER**

The economic activities regarding coal mining in Lephalale are necessitating the availability of water, which needs to be transferred from Gauteng and other areas to Lephalale to sustain the economic activity in that area. This requires waste water flows to be purified before being released into water basins and streams to



reach Limpopo. This situation is impacting on the North West Province in the sense that there is an increased risk of water pollution of dams and rivers that can impact negatively of provincial water sources and need to be addressed carefully. These issues will have to be incorporated into the Integrated Resource Plan for the North West province (North West Office of the Premier, 2012).

### 3.5.3. INCREASE ENERGY EFFICIENCY (REDUCE DEMAND)

The manufacturing and mining industries are extremely energy intensive and despite the slight expected reduction in the mining sector energy consumption over the following two decades, it will be necessary to promote electricity efficiency in these sectors. Household electricity consumption, on the other hand, is expected to rise significantly over the next two decades, an aspect that needs to be managed through improving energy conservation and efficiency. Awareness campaigns that inform individuals and households on the benefit of conservation provide a possible solution in this regard. Transportation is another key area in which improvement is essential. The current transport system relies almost exclusively on non-renewable energy sources (fossil fuels), and contributes significantly to air pollution by means of CO<sub>2</sub> emissions, despite available alternatives.



#### ACTIONS:

- Emphasise the importance of the energy hierarchy, suggesting that energy conservation and energy efficiency is top priority.
- Awareness campaigns promoting efficient energy use should permeate all areas of society. A key aspect is information dissemination / communication to all levels (including private citizen).
- Prioritise building techniques that support energy conservation.
- Encourage the mining industry to develop waste heat recovery systems and to implement renewable energy (electric and solar) transport solutions.

### 4.5.3. EDUCATION, TRAINING AND RESEARCH

Skills in the application, implementation and distribution of renewable energies are typically somewhat scarce due to the modern nature of technology as well as the practical science and technology gap in the curriculum of many secondary and post-secondary facilities. In order for the North West economy to develop the entire renewable energy sector (manufacturing, construction and services provision) it is essential to develop the necessary practical skills in combination with extensive and on-going research.

#### ACTIONS:

- Establish the North West province, in partnership with the North West University as a Centre of Excellence in Renewable Energy and Nuclear Research.
- Identify a research development champion (for example a professor) and prioritise skills in the renewable energy sector.
- Investigate the potential of nuclear energy generation in the province.
- The NWU is identified as the key driver of short, medium and long term interventions, skills training and research on energy.
- FET colleges and technical schools will need to address the skills shortage in this sector and offer the relevant technological skills required throughout the entire industry.



- Skills training and education in the manufacturing of input materials need to be developed locally to intercept the growth in the industry in the long-term. Government must outline and identifies required skills.

#### 4.6. TRANSPORT INFRASTRUCTURE

Creating an enabling environment of which transportation infrastructure forms a major part, is critical to attract and retain investment in the province and to allow for efficiency in the economy. The North West province is positioned well to take advantage of linkages of other regional economic hubs in and around South-Africa. The good international accessibility to Botswana (as well as Zimbabwe) and Namibia, and strong linkages with Gauteng, provides the province with many opportunities in transport and logistics. A rail link connecting Mahikeng with Cape Town is also established, and the City of Matlosana is fast becoming a prominent provincial inter-nodal transportation hub. In 2008<sup>xi</sup>, the Department of Finance conducted research on the discontinued or limited rail services in the province. Amongst others, the study found that sufficient interest has been shown to investigate the establishment of a regional railway maintenance workshop and redistribution hub in the province. Botswana Rail showed eagerness to participate in regional rail activities as it could promote the use and viability of their rail services.

Accelerated investments in roads and rail infrastructure will facilitate further development of mining, agriculture and tourism opportunities and open up value adding and manufacturing opportunities in the North West province. The North West province already has a significant transport industry due to the large agricultural, mining, manufacturing and trade sectors in the region. To capitalise on this, investment must be encouraged in areas with high economic growth potential, building on the comparative advantages in the provincial economy while at the same time encouraging integration and access to markets. Transport systems must also become more environmentally sustainable.

##### 4.6.1. DEVELOP (PROVIDE, UPGRADE AND MAINTAIN) TRANSPORT INFRASTRUCTURE

The North West province has experienced fast growth in the passenger transport industry while the majority of freight is now also transported by road. The impact of transport on road infrastructure has resulted in an excessive road maintenance backlog with an estimated 70 per cent of roads in the province currently in poor condition. Response time to maintenance is slow due to poor management and/or lack of human resources in government institutions. Rail transport remains a government monopoly and limited growth in coverage has occurred in the North West province despite the large demand for freight transportation. Rail bottlenecks are expected in some parts of the province before 2030 and rail infrastructure upgrade requirements are common. Public transport facilities such as for instance passenger transport inter modal facilities are also lacking.

##### ACTIONS:

- Establish an inter-modal facility at Rustenburg, Potchefstroom and the City of Matlosana.
- Facilitate the preparation of Rural Transport Plans with emphasis on non-motorised transport.
- Improve the road infrastructure on strategic provincial roads.
- Revive and upgrade the existing airports.
- Address skills shortages in the Department of Public Works, and in local government to enable improved project management, maintenance and implementation.
- Expand and establish Centralised Traffic Control (CTC) to allow higher traffic volumes.
- Implement the recommendations for provincial rail as set out in the 'Research on the discontinued or limited rail services in the North West Province' (2008).



#### 4.6.2. IMPROVE PUBLIC TRANSPORT AND MOBILITY IN RURAL AREAS

The public transport sector in the North West province is currently dominated by the minibus-taxi industry. Other alternatives such as busses (25%) and trains (less than 5%) account for less than 30 per cent of the provincial public sector industry. Although multiple inter-city bus routes service key routes between prominent towns/cities, more needs to be done to connect rural communities with urban nodes. This should however be done in an environmentally sustainable manner, initiating the transition towards a more sustainable and non-dependent transport system.

##### ACTIONS:

- Implement bus routes between Rustenburg and Gauteng, along the R510 and the R511 as well as between Ventersdorp and the Gauteng province.
- Facilitate the provision of subsidies to public transport operators and establish PPPs in this sector.
- Investigate the possibility of establishing a high-speed rail connection between Gauteng and Rustenburg and Gauteng and the City of Matlosana.
- Provide bus routes on the R53 (Free State to Ventersdorp), the R30 (Rustenburg to the City of Matlosana to the Free State), the N14 (Ventersdorp to Gauteng to the Northern Cape), the R52 (Mahikeng to the N14), an along the R510 and the R511.
- Reduce the carbon footprint of public transport and increase rural mobility by investing in electric bicycles / carts.
- Implement the recommendations for provincial rail as set out in the 'Research on the discontinued or limited rail services in the North West Province' (2008).

#### 4.6.3. IMPROVE SPATIAL DEVELOPMENT AND RURAL CONNECTIVITY

Settlements in much of rural North West are dispersed and far from urban nodes. This causes great challenges in provision of services and economic infrastructure. However, while it is necessary to allow and even encourage sustainable urbanisation and densification processes, it is also necessary to find solutions in the provision of service related infrastructure to rural communities. Many rural populations have limited access to economic markets and poorly maintained secondary roads aggravate movement of people, goods and services. Poor rural communities spend a large share of their income on transport, hampering their ability to be or become productive. These challenges to movement also places great strain on accessibility to healthcare and education, aspects which are fundamental in the socio-economic development of rural communities (this aspect is further discussed in section 6 of the plan)

##### ACTIONS:

- Improve transport planning capacity in state institutions.
- Involve the private sector in implementing water and energy related infrastructure solutions in rural areas.
- Provide training to local residents in the maintenance of infrastructure.
- Empower local communities to upgrade and maintain certain key transport routes.

#### 4.7. INFORMATION AND COMMUNICATION TECHNOLOGY INFRASTRUCTURE

The development of Information and Communication Technology (ICT) in the North West province will requires a policy concept, which seeks to foster shared values and common ICT approaches, integrate technology and promote data sharing, make North West provincial government information secure, transparent and accessible, and develop enterprise applications with standard interfaces.



The lack of appropriate broadband internet access in most of rural North West, as a critical precursor of economic productivity, prevents rural manufacturing growth, business start-ups and business innovation and prevents the overall development of the rural economy. The lack of ICT also impacts on healthcare and education and leaves the marginalised at a distinct disadvantage.

Although most households have access to radio, print media and or cellphones, internet access and modern ICT accessibility remains a challenge. Community radio and local newspapers remain popular means of information dissemination. Development within this sector is motivated by the importance of communication in the modern global economy. Internet service provision is extremely limited in rural areas and will need to be improved in order to create an enabling environment for businesses and skills development. Technologies such as wireless high speed internet and Wi-Fi services must be made available in strategic locations to make access to information possible for the rural community thereby enabling economic participation and human capital development.

According to the North West Province Information Technology Strategic Plan (North West Provincial Government, 2011<sup>xii</sup>) the vision for such technologies in the province are the following:

*"The vision for Information Technology at the North West provincial government is an environment that integrates technology into the fabric of the organisation and provides all of North West provincial government constituents with the information, tools, and services they need, when and where they need them, to accomplish their goals".*

#### 4.7.1. ACCELERATE DEPLOYMENT OF ICT INFRASTRUCTURE AND INCREASE UTILISATION

Development of the local economy in rural South-Africa, including North West province is severely compromised by the lack of infrastructure, services and industry knowledge. These are challenges in rural areas that need to be overcome if a very large portion of the population of North West is to become increasingly involved in the economy and develop socio-economically. ICT has become a vital part of education and learning, training and business development around the world. Rural communities and schools stand a greater risk of falling behind in terms of academic performance and exposure to information and new technologies, if appropriate measures are not implemented in these areas. Many rural schools presently do not have computers and/or teachers that are computer literate and even fewer have internet connectivity.



The perception of the North West Provincial Government need to change from one of being overcome by ICT challenges to a province organised to leverage ICT to meet the provincial challenges. International experience cautions ICT strategic planning, whether in the public or private sector, will achieve nothing where ICT governance is weak or absent.

Over the past years, ICT in the North West province has not been guided by a strategic planning process to evolve and meet the challenges of delivering quality services to the provincial communities.

According to the Information Technology Strategic Plan (North West Provincial Government, 2011) the key component of this strategic planning process should be based on the recognition and understanding of people, processes and technology as well as citizens needs captured through a variety of feedback mechanisms. Amongst others, the lack of internet connectivity is a key obstacle to several promising health applications that could potentially be implemented in rural areas, including tele-medicine and other real-time diagnostic support and training initiatives. Lack of connectivity complicates more basic efforts to collect and



analyse health information. The proposed feedback mechanisms could be used to overcome such obstacles. The feedback system should be used to gain insight into the needs of all relevant role-players. Based on the needs of citizens and other role-players such as government departments, new services can be identified and improvements made to existing services. Furthermore, in this process the province should be compared to peer organisations, both nationally and internationally, while being aligned to industry trends, as well as, national priorities and goals. All of these factors should be routinely evaluated and aligned with the priorities and goals of the North West provincial government.

#### ACTIONS:

- Expand the provincial telecommunications network to provide all citizens with a service entry point for provincial e-government services, access to public data such as geospatial data and property data, and provide the education community and local and national governments with access to most services available through the internet.
- The province must work with the private sector to promote expanded geographical coverage of its network, including interfaces to private-sector network segments where appropriate.
- Establish a crucial ICT governance system according to King III, CoBIT5 or ISO/IEC 38500 frameworks for the North West provincial government to deal with institutional arrangements.
- Institutional arrangements must include an IT Governance Committee at executive level and the identification of a driver/leader of ICT in the entire North West provincial government jurisdiction.
- Conduct an annual ICT Strategic Plan technology services survey to determine the satisfaction of stakeholders and identify desirable new technology services.
- Survey feedback should be incorporated into the annual budget request process.
- The North West Information Strategic Plan should be evaluated and updated annually, allowing the opportunity to review and adjust to changing conditions.
- Strategic provincial ICT planning must allow for the following:
  - increase the roll out of tele-centres/digital hubs- which provides basic access to ICT services to rural communities
  - intensifying the roll out of one-stop integrated community centres, providing relevant and appropriate services to rural communities that include internet access
  - set up child-ICT centres with the aim of building a base for future ICT users in support of an Early Childhood Development Programme
  - ensure ICT connectivity in rural schools, libraries and health facilities by means of partnerships between the Department of Sports, Arts and Culture, Department of Public Works, Department of Education and Department of Health
- Develop spatial data infrastructure in the form of a Geographical Information System (GIS) Warehouse to enhance information management. The system will serve as a repository for storing all planning related information.

#### 3.7.1.1. LEVERAGE OPPORTUNITY TO TRANSMIT DATA THROUGH EXISTING ELECTRICAL GRID

The Information Technology Strategic Plan (North West Provincial Government, 2011) for the North West province indicates the relevant authorities must consider leveraging an opportunity of transmitting its data through the existing electrical grid (i.e. Broadband over Power Lines - BPL). Such a transmission could make internet available at reasonable lower costs while reaching the majority of the province.

The North West provincial government should make a strong case for the transmission of data through the existing electrical grid in an effort to overcome territorial conflicts between role-players such as the national Department of Communication (SoE's) and the Department of Public Enterprises (Eskom and Transnet). The proposed intervention represents the immediate, most accessible, viable, and cost-effective solution to meet current broadband demands in the province.





**ACTIONS:**

- Establish a strong case for broadband using power line transmission through the existing electrical grid to overcome territorial conflicts between role-players such as the national Department of Communication (SoE's) and the Department of Public Enterprises (Eskom and Transnet).
- The provincial ICT champion with authority prescribed through IT governance according to King III, CoBIT5, and ISO/IEC 38500 must:
  - conduct an assessment to define minimum levels of service, and develop a list of potential users of the network service
  - develop a conceptual design describing the opportunities and impact of an expanded network
  - work with the private sector (especially ESKOM) to expand the telecommunications network
- Departments and SoE's (provincial and municipal) must:
  - identify opportunities to improve delivery of public services over a network that meets minimum standards throughout the state
  - expand citizen access to public non-confidential data that has economic value

**3.7.1.2. PROTECT INDIVIDUAL PRIVACY AND THE PRIVACY OF INFORMATION CONTAINED WITHIN IT SYSTEMS**

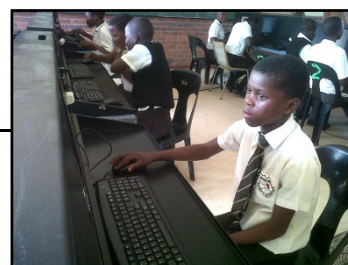
For the North West province to protect privacy within the ICT system, the province needs to adopt an ICT security framework (for example ISO/IEC 27002) (North West Provincial Government, 2011). The province possesses significant volumes of personal and confidential information. The risk of disclosure or inappropriate use of that information makes privacy protection a paramount concern. The province's legal obligation to protect the confidential information about its citizens and businesses must be balanced against the public's legal right-to-know, as guaranteed in the South-African Constitution. A primary obligation of the province's IT community is the protection of confidential data from accidental disclosure, theft, and destruction. An enterprise-wide approach is needed to fund and implement major security projects. The ICT security implementation plan will focus on ICT components such as networks, servers, applications, and the main data centre.

**ACTIONS:**

- Implement province-wide security policies, standards, and identification tools to help eliminate structural vulnerabilities from the state's IT architecture and system.
- Conduct a rigorous administrative review and evaluation of state IT security and recovery program.
- Develop a province wide security risk mitigation plan after analysing available operational recovery readiness information and IT security risks throughout the stat.

**4.7.2. BUILD ICT SKILLS CAPACITY**

Many rural communities in the North West province remain impoverished because they have no access to basic infrastructure essential for economic growth and development. As a consequence recent graduates are leaving rural areas in pursuit of employment opportunity in larger cities. This contributes to the lack of human resources able to support and utilise ICT in rural areas. This often means that where there is physical access to ICT, many people do not have the technical skills needed to benefit from them. Many schools in rural areas lack teachers with appropriate technical skills and experience in key subjects like computer literacy and internet usage. This results in most rural schools not being able to offer computer courses, resulting in rural scholars not being adequately prepared for tertiary studies where computers and internet knowledge is vital. This makes the gap between rural scholars and their urban counterparts much greater when competing



for tertiary positions. Another challenge is poor English-literacy in rural areas, where the majority of rural inhabitants only read and understand their local languages while the internet is dominated by English-language content.

Another obstacle in government is the lack of ICT skills in the public sector. The availability of appropriate skills is central for successful e-government implementation. E-Government requires hybrid human capacities in terms of technological, commercial and management skills. Technical skills for installation, maintenance, designing and implementation of ICT infrastructure, as well as skills for using and managing online processes, functions and customers, are necessary.

#### ACTIONS:

- Develop and implement ICT capacity programmes for health professionals in underserved areas.
- Develop and implement e-literacy programmes for rural communities, targeting the youth and the unemployed.
- Equip rural women with skills to promote adult computer functional literacy.
- Set up community ICT classrooms to encourage skills development within the communities.
- Develop and implement an e-Cadre programme to support ICT deployment and usage in rural municipalities.
- Built technology capacity within government particularly service delivery departments to enable e-government service provision.
- Implement a Workforce Development Plan to recruit and retain a skilled and properly staffed ICT workforce.

#### 4.7.3. ENHANCE RURAL ICT ENTERPRISE DEVELOPMENT AND INVOLVE COMMUNITIES OF INTEREST IN ICT STRATEGIC PLANNING

In most rural areas there is a general lack of entrepreneurial acumen and the majority of small enterprises in the rural areas tend to fail in the conceptualisation stage, often as a result of their limited exposure to trends in the market. The lack of ICT infrastructure in rural communities deprive rural SMMEs the opportunity to use ICTs for marketing, financial services, access to business information and even in-house training. ICT usage, when combined with continued education and training in business skills, can create opportunities for SMMEs to enter the market. This has the potential to create a rural economy where SMMEs play a much greater role in growing a more diversified economy and increasing employment opportunities in rural areas for skilled individuals.

In both rural and urban areas it is crucial to involve communities of interest in ICT strategic planning. Such involvement from communities of interest will support and enable the ICT system, ensure the delivery of quality services and improves performance. Communities of interest include the following broad categories:

- ✓ departments (provincial and municipalities)
- ✓ SOEs (provincial and municipalities)
- ✓ human resource managers
- ✓ minimum information security standards managers
- ✓ monitoring and evaluation
- ✓ employee health and wellness managers
- ✓ anti-corruption

#### ACTIONS

- Develop and implement practical rural entrepreneurship capacity building programmes.





- Raise awareness of business support services (funding and mentoring) available to rural entrepreneurs.
- Increase the competitiveness of rural enterprises by encouraging the use of ICTs for effective management of their enterprises.
- Establish incubation hubs in key rural nodes to support the sustainability of rural enterprises and assist with procuring funding and promote innovation.
- Establish rural small enterprise databases for private and public procurement processes.
- Increase support to well established business chambers and encourage the utilisation of ICT and the provision of related training.
- Involve all communities of interest in ICT strategic planning.

#### **4.8. ECONOMIC INFRASTRUCTURE IMPLEMENTATION PLAN**

The implementation plan for economic infrastructure has been developed to support the strategic objective set out in this chapter. The following key programmes have been identified for the implementation of the human settlement and spatial transformation strategy (Refer to Annexure 1):

- Water Infrastructure, Management and Service Provision
- Bojanala Platinum District Municipality Water Provision
- Dr Kenneth Kaunda District Municipality Water Provision
- Ngaka Modiri Molema District Municipality Water Provision
- Dr Ruth Segomotsi Mompati District Municipality Water Provision
- Infrastructure and Basic Service Delivery
- Renewable Energy
- Overall Energy Infrastructure Development and Management
- Develop (Provide, Upgrade and Maintain) Transport Infrastructure
- Accelerate Deployment of ICT Infrastructure and Increase Utilisation



---

## NOTES

<sup>i</sup> Presidential Infrastructure Coordinating Commission. 2012. A summary of the South African National Infrastructure Plan.

<sup>ii</sup> North West Province Office of the Premier. 2012. Report on Growth and Development Colloquium: Strategies to Unlock the Economic Potential of the North West Province.

<sup>iii</sup> Department of Water Affairs (DWA). 2008. North West Water Provision and Management Plan.

<sup>iv</sup> RSA. 2010. Millennium Development Goals.

<sup>v</sup> Statistics South Africa. 2012. Census 2011 Results. <http://beta2.statssa.gov.za/> Date of Access: December, 2012.

<sup>vi</sup> Department of Water Affairs. 2010. Blue Drop Report, 2010: South African Drinking Water Quality Management Performance. <http://www.dwaf.gov.za/Documents/blueDrop.pdf> Date of Access: December, 2012.

<sup>vii</sup> North West Province Office of the Premier. 2012. Report on Growth and Development Colloquium: Strategies to Unlock the Economic Potential of the North West Province.

<sup>viii</sup> Available at: <http://www.eskom.co.za/live/index.php>

<sup>ix</sup> Department of Energy. 2011. Integrated Resource Plan (IRP) [http://www.energy.gov.za/IRP/irp%20files/IRP2010\\_2030\\_Final\\_Report\\_20110325.pdf](http://www.energy.gov.za/IRP/irp%20files/IRP2010_2030_Final_Report_20110325.pdf) Date of Access: November, 2012.

<sup>x</sup> Department of Economic Development, Environment, Conservation and Tourism. 2012. Renewable Energy Strategy for the North West Province.


<sup>xi</sup> North West Provincial Government. 2008. Research on the discontinued or limited rail services in the North West Province.

<sup>xii</sup> North West Provincial Government. 2011. North West Province Information Technology Strategic Plan.



## 5. AN INTEGRATED AND INCLUSIVE RURAL ECONOMY

### KEY POINTS

- 
- ⇒ Agricultural production needs to be expanded with emphasis on well supported small-scale farming, communal farmers, commercial farmers and cooperatives.
  - ⇒ Human capital development (education and healthcare) and access to basic services plays a very important role in rural communities and should be considered priority. Analyse consumption patterns to inform projects to be initiated
  - ⇒ In urban nodes in regions that undergo land reform and agricultural expansion it will be necessary to focus attention on the following:
    - Encourage and prioritise the rapid resolution of land claims.
    - Integration land reform activities with sustainable agricultural development initiatives.
    - Comprehensive agriculture support.
    - Encouragement of small enterprise development through focusing on skills development access to finance and land and small business support, especially for female farmers and entrepreneurs.
  - ⇒ Under-development in areas under traditional administration must be confronted through agricultural development, improved land management and administration, infrastructure provision and targeted support to rural women.
  - ⇒ It is critical to develop linkages with the mining and agricultural sectors in manufacturing (agro-processing, input products and beneficiation) and services and to develop the tourism industry to unlock the potential of the arts and culture industries in rural communities. Mentoring in these industries sufficiently financed.
  - ⇒ Develop the tourism industry to unlock the potential of the arts and culture industries in rural communities.

## **5.1. INTRODUCTION**

As an element of the overall approach towards development in the North West province during the next 17 years, ensuring an integrated, inclusive and vibrant rural economy will be a key consideration. Achieving an integrated, inclusive and vibrant rural economy will however depend greatly on achieving the short-term priorities of the NDP, which are to grow the overall economy, ensure improved educational and skills development outcomes and improve the developmental capacity of the state and its ability to deliver services effectively and improve infrastructure. A key challenge in rural communities is marginalisation of the poor, and addressing this requires improvements in access to land, water, public services (education, skills and health); and improved rural infrastructure.

The development of an integrated and inclusive rural economy has been identified as one of the priority areas towards future development in the North West province. The province has a rural character and therefore rural development needs to be prioritised. The chapter addresses ways in which greater opportunities can be created so that rural communities can play an active role in the provincial development.

Rural economies require greater social and economic opportunities to overcome pertinent challenges and to unlock the potential of its population.

## **5.2. THE CURRENT PERSPECTIVE**

Rural areas are commonly defined as sparsely populated areas in which the majority of people around the small towns, villages and settlements in these areas farm or depend on natural resources. Rural areas also include the large settlements in former homelands, created by the apartheid removals, which depend for their survival on migratory labour and remittances.

The primary types of rural areas outside of small towns in these areas are categorised by commercial farming and or communal areas. Commercial farming areas cover much of the province, characterised by large farms interspersed with small towns. The majority of the rural population in these areas comprise of current or ex-farmworkers and their families. Significant urbanisation into the small towns in these areas has taken place due to inward migration of ex-farmworkers, often reinforced by the expectation of employment opportunities and the provision of services such as RDP housing. Communal areas on the other hand are predominantly former homelands and include displaced semi-urban settlements with a very limited economic base. Many people in these areas depend on remittances, social security (grants), pensions, and subsistence farming, with land often the basis for livelihood survival. Despite the economic challenges, these communal areas are often seen as safe places, with lower costs, and a different and more caring social system.

Approximately 60 per cent of the North West province can be classified as rural (depending slightly on the definition applied) meaning that it is the province in South-Africa with the third highest proportional rural population.

Despite agriculture remaining the key economic driver in rural areas dominated by commercial farming, it is contributing little to the economy in communal areas, despite the potential it offers for local socio-economic development. The development of small scale and communal farmers are critical in these areas but limited progress has so-far been achieved. It was hoped that land reform would stimulate this industry but there is little evidence to suggest that the transfer of land is having a significant impact in terms of the creation of an industry of small-scale or communal farmers and generation of wealth in rural areas. Despite international examples of production growth in agriculture benefitting the poor more than production growth in non-agricultural sectors, this outcome is not being realised in the North West province. While agriculture is the backbone of the rural economy in the North West province, elevating small-scale farmers from subsistence



operation to commercial farmers are yet to take agriculture as a business enterprise not a subsistence operation. The sector must have a clear model of farmer support which explicitly outlines how programmes are tailor made to graduate small-scale farmers into commercial business.

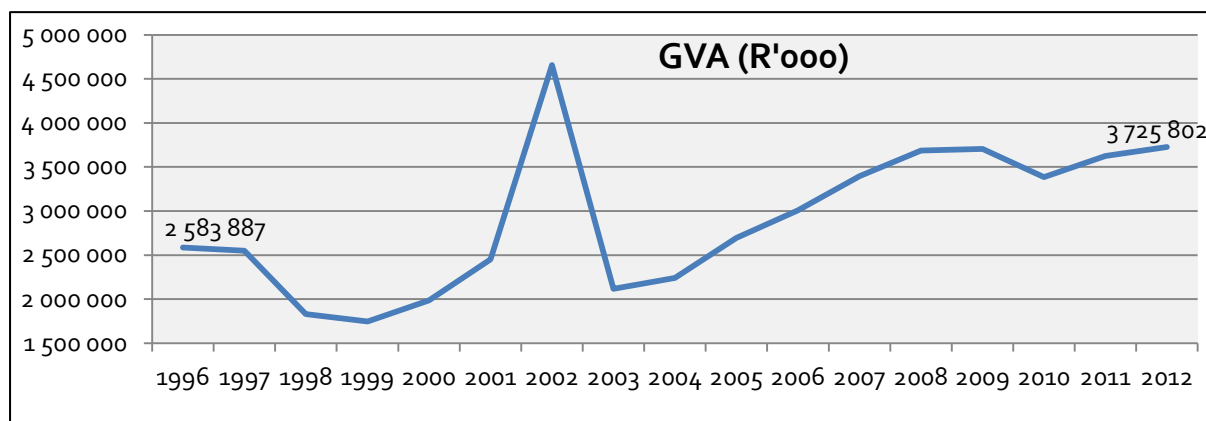
### 5.2.1. NORTH WEST AGRICULTURE SECTOR PERFORMANCE

The rural economy in the North West province is dominated by agricultural activity and although the contribution of this sector to overall provincial production is small, agriculture provides a source of income and, by implication, a livelihood to rural communities, where alternative jobs or sources of income are often hard to come by. Farm workers comprise a large share of total non-urban employees, significantly more than any other non-urban occupation. Furthermore rural employees in the North West typically have a larger number of non-working dependents that rely on their support. The importance of the performance of the agricultural sector within the wider economy is also universally recognised in that it provides national food security, garnishes foreign exchange and provides rural communities with the potential to generate income and alleviate poverty.

It is also important to note that the provincial agriculture sector, unlike most other economic sectors in the province, is relatively equally distributed between the four DMs. The BPDM contributes 26 per cent to total provincial agricultural production, while the DKKDM contributes 31 per cent, the DRSMMDM 15 per cent and the NMMMDM 28 per cent.

The following figure presents the annual growth of production (GVA) in the agriculture sector of the provincial economy.

Figure 5.1: agriculture production in the North West, 1996 – 2012



Source: Stats SA data (2013\*) and IHS Global Insight data (2013#)

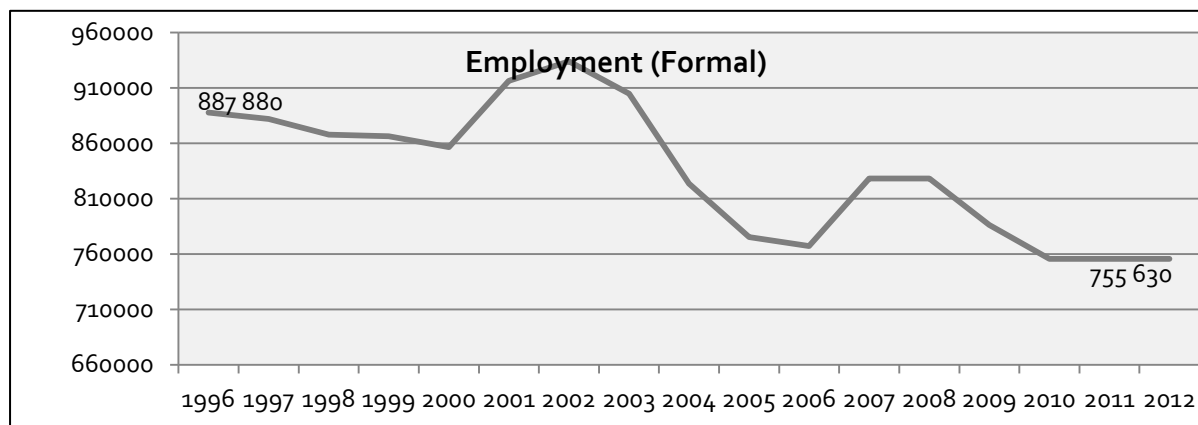
From Figure 5.1 the following conclusions can be drawn:

- Production growth in the agricultural sector, albeit being relatively cyclical, has been strong over the past ten years averaging approximately 4.3 per cent per annum
- This sector performed well during the recent global recession

The following figure presents the annual growth in employment in the agriculture sector of the North West provincial economy.



Figure 5.2: agricultural employment growth, 1996 - 2012



Source: Stats SA, 2013

From Figure 5.2 the following conclusions can be drawn:

- employment has decreased in this sector over the past sixteen years
- 15 381 fewer people are currently employed than in 1996

Despite this decline in agricultural employment illustrated above, the sector still has the potential to contribute significantly to overall employment. The sector also has a large multiplier effect due to its many forward and backward linkages with other sectors of the economy, which means that for every one job created in agriculture, a comparatively high number of additional jobs will transpire in other sectors. Labour intensive agricultural products and processes which show growth potential should therefore be prioritised.

### MECHANISATION IN AGRICULTURE

Advances in technology and mechanisation contribute largely to the decline in agricultural employment. Modern farmers currently utilise machinery more than ever before, and even chemical allocation and irrigation are increasingly applied through a network of pipes and controlled by computers or digital systems. Mechanisation requires certain skills of which training in the sector did not keep pace. A lack of skills development increases the challenge of employment in the agriculture sector (Cimbi & Aliber, 2000<sup>1</sup>)

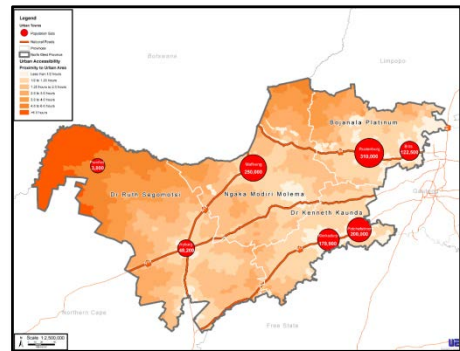
The Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries (2010<sup>2</sup>) suggests that uncertainty from farmers regarding government policy (and their intention to guard themselves against any negative effect that this might have on their operational capacity or on their well-being) plays a significant role. This factor is especially applicable with regard to policies on remuneration, regulation in hiring and firing, land reform and tenure rights. The latter being closely linked to the enactment in 1997 of the Extension of Security of Tenure Act (ESTA), which is one of the biggest concerns to farmers in deciding whether or not to employ permanent farm workers. The main objectives of the Act were to protect farm workers against unlawful eviction, and to set out proper procedures for removing surplus farm workers. However the Act caused many farmers to become very reluctant in employing permanent labour and also ended up affecting relationships between farmer and farm worker and causing overall uncertainty and apprehension.

This uncertainty regarding the policy environment often encourages farmers to mechanise as a substitution to labour wherever possible.



## 5.2.2. SPATIAL STRUCTURAL CHALLENGES

Accessibility to main markets, due to both the rural nature of the North West province and the inherited spatial character of urban areas, remain a critical challenge, combined with pressure on natural resources such as arable land and water. Municipal services are also often of poor quality due to both the cost involved in supplying these to small dispersed communities and the lack of necessary capacity in rural municipality structures. These services include water and sanitation, electricity and refuse removal. The quality of health care, social services and education, often as a result of the spatial character of rural North West, also remains a challenge.



### RURAL RESTRUCTURING ZONES

Spatial development in rural areas has to allow for rural restructuring zones. These zones are characterised by large populations that are experiencing change, for example, new settlement formation. Such areas need management, institutional development, land and tenure reform, infrastructure provision and economic stimulus. Rural restructuring zones generally include the more densely populated parts of the previous homelands, where there is population dynamism and sufficient numbers to provide the basis for viable markets. There may also be areas with agricultural, tourism or mining potential (NDP, 2012<sup>3</sup>).

## 5.2.3. LAND ADMINISTRATION, ACCESS AND REFORM

A large share of the North West province is under the administration of traditional authorities. This means that many communities live on land that is subject to traditional authority administration, and therefore lack formal (recognised by law) security of tenure, which if obtained could in turn be used to obtain mortgages and other streams of finance. A local chief/traditional council may allocate land for residential, business, industrial as well as for grazing or arable land. A number of problems arise in effective administration of these rights, in terms of both recording the rights and in demarcating the land and, as a result, disputes regarding land tenure often occur.

Additional to this is the challenge that communal land or land without security of tenure attract very limited investment and is typically not managed as well as formally demarcated and formally owned land. Land reform has also not been effective enough in both its reach as well as in the performance of beneficiaries of rural land reform. This has the potential to affect food security and growth (production and employment) in the agricultural sector.

Allocation of land use within government could also pose challenges due to the obligation thereof being distributed between different levels of government and different departments. The municipality administers land use in areas transferred into freehold ownership within its area of jurisdiction while provincial government administers land use in those areas falling outside the boundaries of the municipality. Different national and provincial departments are responsible for administering land use rights in terms of their field of expertise. This creates duplication, demand cooperation between the departments concerned and is time-consuming and costly.





Land is a national competency, the provincial government can only make recommendations and identify issues regarding land which affects development.

### 5.3. VISION 2030

A very large share of the population of the North West province lives in rural communities, towns and villages.

*By 2030 these communities should be able to access high-quality basic services that enable them to be well nourished, healthy and increasingly skilled. Rural economies will be supported by agriculture and, where possible, by mining, tourism and agro-processing. This vision includes better integration of the country's rural areas, achieved through successful land reform, infrastructure development, job creation and poverty alleviation. The driving force behind this will be an expansion of irrigated agriculture, supplemented by dry-land production where feasible. In areas with low economic potential, education, health care, basic services and social security will support the development of human capital. In areas with some economic potential agricultural activities such as agro-industry, tourism and smaller enterprise will boost development. Under-development in the former homelands and in areas under traditional administration must be confronted through agricultural development, improved land management and administration, infrastructure provision and targeted support to rural women. Key to the development of the rural environment must be the desire to keep rural areas rural.*

#### 5.3.1. HOW TO ACHIEVE IT

A number of prerequisites, including the empowerment of farm workers, increased access to basic services and relationships between traditional institutions, the public sector and communities are important in addressing rural development and unlocking the undisputed potential of rural areas. Three key focus areas have been identified that are considered to be priority in addressing the challenges in rural areas and ensuring integrated, inclusive and vibrant rural economies. These are:

- agricultural development based on successful land reform, employment creation and strong environmental safeguards
- human capital development, social security and basic services provision
- support for non-agricultural activities such as agro-processing, tourism, and small enterprise development

#### RURAL INFRASTRUCTURE – COMPREHENSIVE RURAL DEVELOPMENT PROGRAMME (CRDP)

The Rural Development Framework, adopted by government in 1997, identifies rural nodes across South-Africa. In the 4227 municipal wards, 68.2 per cent of the national wards have a rural character. The CRDP was developed in 2009 and was for the first time a funded rural development programme. The CRDP is an all-encompassing strategy that is intended to create social cohesion and development in rural areas. It is premised on three pillars of land reform; agrarian transformation; and rural development. The North West province must continue implementing the CRDP to promote the creation of vibrant, equitable and sustainable rural communities and food security for all (North West Office of the Premier, 2012).





## 5.4. AGRICULTURAL DEVELOPMENT

The agricultural sector is the backbone of the North West rural economy. Its strategic importance lies not only in its production value but also in its linkages with the rest of the economy, the establishment and maintenance of food security and the potential to increase economic welfare in rural areas and in traditional communities. The decrease in employment opportunities over the past decade and a half poses a considerable risk for the provincial economy. The agricultural sector has many forward and backward linkages with other economic sectors, which typically means that for every additional job created in agriculture, a comparatively high number of indirect or induced employment opportunities will be created in other economic sectors. If agricultural jobs continue to be lost, many other economic sectors will struggle to maintain its growth potential and its employment levels. Agricultural oriented manufacturing accounts for a significant share of total employment in the manufacturing sector, and agriculture supplies approximately one fifth of all processed exports. If agricultural production is therefore limited (willingly or not) by lack of labour absorption, the entire economy will be affected and not just the agricultural sector.

Employment in the agricultural sector or the lack thereof, is of further concern to the economy due to its significance in providing rural, often poor, communities with a source of income, where alternative jobs (or sources of income) are very scarce. In most rural areas, farm workers comprise at least a third of the entire workforce, considerably more than any other rural occupation. This statistic even excludes domestic workers that are employed on farms, the second most common rural occupation. This means that close to half of the workforce in non-urban areas in the North West is directly dependent on employment from farmers. This has already placed significant pressure on the livelihoods of rural communities and on the sustainability of the settlements or towns from where these individuals originate. Furthermore rural employees typically have a larger number of non-working dependents that rely on their support since average rural households tend to be larger and often dependent on individual workers. Considering as an example that one worker supports an average of four other people, would mean that the total number of individuals affected by the loss of agricultural jobs since 1995 amounts to 550,000 rural people, or 15 per cent of the current total provincial population.

The main growth targets for agriculture in the province are the following:

- 136 000 direct jobs must be sustained through the agriculture, agro-processing and related sectors by 2030. This will require 71 000 additional jobs to be.
- Maintain a positive trade balance for primary and processed agricultural products.
- Agriculture must maintain an average growth rate of 8.5% between now and 2030. Against this growth rate, the GVA contribution of the sector will increase from R 3.39 million to R 17.31 million in 2030 (2010 R-values).
- The sectoral GVA contribution of agriculture will expand from 2.3% in 2010 to 4.1% in 2030.

### AGRICULTURE AND THE AVAILABILITY OF WATER

The agricultural sector presents great challenges regarding the availability and use of water. The sector needs to expand to be able to offer more employment opportunities besides developing its economic potential. Limited water resources require more effective and equitable use of available downstream irrigation. Reference is made to a phrase “white revolution” (the use of plastic tunnels) that makes agricultural inputs more efficient, creates more jobs and production out of the same quantities of water and land). In North West, water efficiency in Vaalharts, has made water available in Taung for increased irrigation. The National Planning Commission has used this as an example to emphasise the possibility of



expanding irrigation even as there is less water made available for agriculture. (North West Office of the Premier, 2012<sup>4</sup>). The availability of water for agricultural purposes will also be reliant on the implementation of the North West Water Provision and Management Plan (Department of Water Affairs, 2008<sup>5</sup>) as indicated in Chapter 4.

### 5.4.1. EXPAND COMMERCIAL AGRICULTURE



The semi-arid climate in the North West province combined with low minimum temperatures in the winter creates a challenging environment for the cultivation of many crops. However, despite the natural challenges to agriculture in the province, it is the physical and policy environment that places the largest strain on growth and employment in this sector. The current road infrastructure that allows more efficient movement and sales of goods and better access to markets are poorly maintained in many rural areas throughout the province. Crime and violence on farms (in which farmers and

farm workers are victims) are often more pronounced than in urban areas and result in a detrimental impact on investment attraction and retention in commercial agriculture. The sector also faces the major challenge of poor labour relations between farmers and farm workers, specifically with regard to inflexible and restrictive labour legislation, accommodation and eviction (tenure rights of permanent workers) and worker remuneration.

Despite numerous challenges agriculture production needs to be expanded with emphasis on (well supported) small-scale farming, communal farmers and cooperatives and land reform beneficiaries. These types of activities hold the greatest potential for production and employment growth in the North West province. However, due to the already significant impact of the sector on the provincial ground water quality, any expansion of agriculture activity should be done with water conservation as a predetermining factor. Establishing agricultural (agro-processing) industries in strategic locations and ensuring market access and preferential procurement will provide additional support to this sector.

#### EMERGING FARMERS

Emerging farmers also have the potential to play a significant role in the expansion of agricultural production in the North West province. However, this group is faced with more severe obstacles than established farmers and market entry is often much more challenging. Emerging farmers include land reform beneficiaries, small-scale farmers, and young prospective commercial farmers. The most prominent obstacles include:

- Production limitations – due to a common lack of financial means it is difficult for emerging farmers to acquire the necessary (scale and quality) input material and equipment required to turn basic and subsistence farming into a commercially viable venture.
- Access to capital – due to the risks involved in agriculture it is especially difficult to obtain credit as an emerging farmer. Lack of tenure security, loan guarantee systems, credit histories and collateral exaggerates the problem and causes many emerging farmers to never enter the formal commercial market.
- Human capacity – many emerging farmers lack the necessary skill and industry knowledge to become successful commercial farmers and extension/support services are of sub-standard quality



- Market access – another very applicable challenge in the North West province is the poor quality of regional roads, airports, inadequate access to market information and the lack of transport and storage options.

### ACTIONS

- Encourage tunnel growing (so-called white revolution), hydroponics and aquaculture as well as horticulture and organic growing.
- Develop a more supportive attitude/position at provincial level toward the agriculture industry and farmers.
- Retain and expand strategic non-labour intensive industries such as grain, sunflowers, maize, livestock and poultry due to its potential value chain linkages and role in ensuring food security.
- Encourage production and consumption of vegetables, as the sub-sector with the most growth and employment potential. Analyse the current consumption patterns to inform projects to be initiated.
- Increase and refocus investment in agricultural research, especially to investigate the effect of climate change and the adaptations that would be required by farmers as well as the types of crops that can withstand particular weather conditions.
- Initiate an unbiased research effort to determine the exact character of worker employer relationships on farms as well as possible means to address this matter.
- Increase irrigation infrastructure where possible.
- Agricultural expansion should be monitored sternly through partnership between local government, the provincial department of environmental affairs as well as the department of water affairs in partnership with the relevant water service authorities and water boards.
- Align the Agricultural Master Plan and the Provincial Water Provisioning and Management Plan.
- Utilise new technologies in water conservation.
- Implement pilot projects identified in the North West Agriculture Master Plan.
- Investigate and develop the potential of medicinal plants and essential oils crops in the dryer western parts of the province.
- Expand the provincial Department of Agriculture incentives programme to include incentives for increased employment on farms.
- Establishing agricultural (agro-processing) industries in strategic locations and ensuring market access and preferential procurement will provide additional support to this sector.
- Introduction of ICT to improve direct access of farming products to buyers and the market.

#### 5.4.2. SUPPORT SMALL-SCALE FARMING, COOPERATIVES AND COMMUNAL FARMERS

Communal farming has not produced substantial benefits in terms of production and employment and the majority of farming in communal areas is typically subsistence oriented. Some of the key factors in preventing the shift to commercial agriculture have been a lack of skill and industry knowledge and a lack of properly (undisputed) demarcated land and/or formal tenure. The benefits and potential of agriculture needs to be promoted in these areas to encourage the uptake of agriculture as a means of providing increased household income and achieve greater developmental impacts in rural areas. Many small-scale farmers, of which the majority are located in communal areas, struggle to become commercially viable and their location does not allow for effective market access. Access to finance is very difficult for small-scale farmers and communal farmers very often lack security of tenure and credibility that would allow greater access to finance. Too few cooperatives have also been formed to overcome some of the key challenges experienced by small-scale communal farmers.

### ACTIONS

- Enable access to security of tenure for communal farmers.



- Encourage the formation of small-scale farming cooperatives and increase support, especially in cattle and goat farming and vegetable production.
- Focus on and implement cooperative models which have been proven successful.
- Establish training, education and extension services in rural / traditional locations, particular focus should be placed on livestock development.
- Engage with development finance institutions to establish a provincial microfinance institution/fund (or provide support to existing institutions that still have limited operations in the North West province) focussing on women.
- Implement preferential procurement programmes for new entrants.
- Investigate the potential of establishing equity sharing models between existing farmers and land reform beneficiaries.
- Provide improved market linkages in terms of physical infrastructure (cold-storage facilities and transport).
- Improve market linkages through ICT to enable information access such as market trends (supply, demand, prices etc.).
- Investigate the potential of extending irrigation infrastructure in traditional areas based on the capacity of rivers in the province (irrigation board to conduct such study). Skills to maintain such infrastructure to be decentralised to meet the demands of such an agrarian society.

### 5.4.3. IMPROVING ON LAND REFORM

The land reform programme encompasses three distinct components, namely restitution, tenure reform, and the redistribution programmes. The establishment of the National Department of Rural Development and Land Reform (with provincial land claims commissions) has also re-confirmed government's commitment to revitalise and develop rural areas and that land should be seen as a catalyst for poverty alleviation, job creation, food security and entrepreneurship. The principles which underpin land reform are identified as follows:

- de-racialise the rural economy
- democratic and equitable land allocation and use across race, gender and class
- a sustained production discipline for food security

The existing land reform process however, has largely been unsuccessful in delivering on its promises in the North West province (as in the rest of South-Africa) and redistribution of arable land has been slow. Productivity on redistributed land has often reduced very often due to a lack of capacity or desire among land reform beneficiaries to become commercial farmers. Large tracts of arable land are also lost to game farming, which places pressure on food production, the provincial economy and to food security in both the North West as well as South-Africa. The North West province is currently implementing a project on mediating the relations between land reform, tourism and mining. The rapid resolution of outstanding land claims is imperative to development in rural and adjacent communities.

#### RESOURCE CRITICAL REGIONS

Resource critical regions refer to regions with competition between development and environment, or between competing environmental land uses. In the North West province, one category of the resource critical regions represents the competing interests between high valued mineral resources, the environment, tourism or land claims. These prioritised areas should be clearly mapped and recognised as 'resource critical regions' as defined in the NDP to ensure appropriate focus and attention. Each resource critical region should have a provincial and local spatial land use plan to achieve sustainability and accommodate the competing land uses.



The outcome of these planning processes will be that a formal agreement should be reached amongst competing parties and other stakeholders, including relevant spheres of government, on the best optimisation model for a resource critical region. These agreements must become a 'spatial contract' binding on all spheres of government and relevant role players (NDP, 2012).

#### **ACTIONS**

- Promote a revision to the current Green Paper on Land Reform by taking into consideration the land reform model proposed in the NDP as well as proposals by industry institutions such as Agri SA.
- District Municipalities (DMs) should be mobilised and capacitated to accept and implement the land reform model that is proposed in the NDP.
- Accordingly it will be necessary to establish partnerships between each provincial DM, the Department of Water Affairs, Commercial Banks and Agri-Business, the Land Bank and Research Councils and provincial Department of Agriculture and Rural Development.
- Offer commercial farmers and organised industry bodies the opportunity to significantly contribute to the success of other farmers through mentorships, chain integration, preferential procurement and meaningful skills transfer.
- Encourage and prioritise the rapid resolution of land claims in the North West province.
- Increase the provision of skills training, education and support services to land reform beneficiaries, including entrepreneurial training.

### **5.5. HUMAN CAPITAL DEVELOPMENT AND BASIC SERVICES**

Vulnerable groups (children, youth and the elderly) of which the majority are women, comprise the largest share of the provincial rural population. As central focus of rural development it is necessary to increase the access of this population segment to education, healthcare and other basic services in order to continually ensure food security and proper nutrition. The following section provides the key objectives, challenges and proposed actions that relate to human capital development and basic services in rural communities.

Human capital development (particularly education and healthcare) plays a very important role in rural communities and should be considered priority. As a result of the character of rural environments and historical spatial divides, accessibility will also need to be addressed though improved, subsidised, public transport initiatives.

#### **5.5.1. ENSURE EFFECTIVE HUMAN CAPITAL DEVELOPMENT**

Human capital refers in this instance primarily to education, skills development and training, healthcare and well-being and nutrition/ food security. The North West province has many small fragmented communities which increase the cost and the practical challenges involved in service delivery. A fine balance needs to be achieved between sustaining small, mostly economically inactive rural communities and enabling such communities to relocate to urban areas where opportunities and services are more readily available. Quality of education and healthcare (often simply due to lack of access) in rural areas tend to be inferior to that offered in urban areas. Malnutrition tends to also be more pronounced in rural areas and affects the well-being of rural communities, the performance of scholars and the development and growth of children.

#### **ACTIONS**

- Subsidised transport solutions should be implemented for the transportation of school children to and from schools.



- Improve nutrition education with a specific focus on mothers and caregivers through provincially led campaigns.
- Advocate the importance of education and ensure accountability from parents and teachers.
- Subsidised transport solutions need to be implemented for access to healthcare facilities and urban nodes.
- Expand the reach of community libraries/centres in rural areas as well as the ICT that is offered in such facility, specifically to provide e-health solutions to many communities that have limited access to healthcare facilities.
- Provide clearer guidance to mining companies in providing infrastructure solutions through SLP programmes and improve monitoring and evaluation of such programmes.
- Introduce policy measures to increase consumption of healthy foods (thereby increasing the demand for vegetables) and reducing the intake of saturated fats.
- Improve the reach of mobile clinics, mobile libraries and social services.
- Partner with ICT providers to expand broadband infrastructure in rural areas (libraries, schools and community centres).
- Generate awareness among rural communities on renewable energy solutions such as cooking stoves, solar water heaters etc.

### 5.5.2. ACCESS TO SERVICES IN RURAL COMMUNITIES, VILLAGES AND SETTLEMENTS

Despite significant strides in service delivery over the past two decades, many rural communities in the North West province still lack adequate municipal services. The most pressing issue is that of water provision with many communities, who despite having access to water infrastructure, do not have access to quality and reliable water provision. The challenge involved in service delivery is therefore often related to a lack of management and institutional capacity as opposed to infrastructure. In areas where municipal resources do not allow adequate service delivery, more needs to be done through partnership with district municipalities and private sector.



#### ACTIONS

- Innovative solutions will need to be developed in areas where population and population densities are low. These include dry sanitation, water capture and re-use techniques and off-grid electricity provision.
- Encourage the youth to become involve in rural development.
- Ensure effective outreach of social services in rural areas, including safety and security, assistance and welfare.
- Secure sustainable funding streams for rural municipalities.
- Conduct a study on the current reality of service delivery in rural areas and develop a data base accordingly. Based on the results, develop an applicable definition of 'basic services' that should be available in rural environments. Expand on the definition with acceptable standards and costing of services in rural areas. Sustainable service delivery in a feasible manner should be the driving force.

### 5.5.3. PROVINCIAL AND HOUSEHOLD FOOD SECURITY

Food security is present when everyone in a community has access to sufficient, nutritious and safe food at all times. Malnutrition is the direct outcome of food insecurity. Food security consists of two facets; the first entails the ability of households to access food; and the second is whether there exists a sufficient supply in an area to meet the nutritional needs of a community.





Food insecurity at household and individual level in rural areas is best addressed by job creation and agricultural productivity. From a provincial level strategies include assisting the poor households to cope with food price increases. Steps that have been taken before and that can be taken again in the future to create food security is the Public Works Programmes for rural infrastructure development and ensuring that all eligible households have access to social grants. In the majority of cases rural households pay more for a basic food basket than their urban counterparts because of the low volume of sales, limited competition, high transport costs and lack of adequate storage facilities in rural areas.

Regarding the supply aspect of food security, it has been proven that it is possible to have increased agricultural productivity without a corresponding improvement in nutritional value. This is partly due to less nutritious crops being planted and a lack of nutritional knowledge.

In some rural areas, community organisations have implemented basic food-support activities with the support of non-governmental organisations. Unfortunately these services do not reach their full potential since they are uncoordinated and uneven while facing a very high demand. A food security strategy should be developed to assist and align community efforts and projects.

### ACTIONS

- Develop a provincial food security strategy which contributes to greater stability of food supply and prices in the rural areas of the province. The strategy should include measures to assist and align community efforts and projects.
- Provincial food security strategies must incorporate household food security strategies.
- Provincial food security strategies should include utilising and expanding existing public works programmes. In particular, the Community Works Programme for rural infrastructure development should be implemented.
- Investigate the following measures to close the urban / rural food-price gap:
  - ✓ including better access to price information for farmers
  - ✓ effective communication between transport companies and wholesalers
  - ✓ educating packers and retailers on safe food handling
  - ✓ cost-effective packaging to reduce losses after harvesting
- Effective nutritional education for health workers, mothers and other caregivers
- Links between agriculture and nutrition must be strengthened, particularly regarding producing and processing nutrient-rich foods such as vegetables.
- Promote the increased intake of fruits and vegetables and the reduced intake of saturated fats, sugar and salt to increase the demand for vegetable and fruit production.

## 5.6. SUPPORT FOR NON-AGRICULTURAL ACTIVITIES

Although the proposed focus on the agricultural sector is a prerequisite to creating an inclusive and vibrant rural economy, it is not enough to lift rural communities out of poverty and to reduce inequality on a sustainable and substantial basis. It will be of equal importance to develop linkages with the mining and agricultural sectors, in manufacturing (agro-processing and beneficiation) and services, develop the tourism industry to unlock the potential of the arts and culture of rural communities, and to facilitate rapid expansion of rural SMMEs.

In urban nodes and semi-urban settlements in regions that undergo land reform and agricultural expansion it will be necessary to focus attention on support for agri-related industries and agro-processing. Small enterprise should also be encouraged by focusing on access to finance and land and small business support,



especially for female entrepreneurs. Tourism potential, including the arts and cultural industries, should also be unlocked to allow greater economic participation in rural areas.

#### **5.6.1. DEVELOP AGRO-PROCESSING AND BENEFICIATION OPPORTUNITIES**

The manufacturing sector has struggled to create jobs over the past 15 years, having in fact, shed more than 30,000 jobs in the province, approximately 12,000 in the past four years. The majority of manufacturing activity in the North West as well as the majority of beneficiation activities are largely capital and energy intensive and as such, offer limited employment potential in the long-term. The agro-processing industry offers high potential for growth, especially if provincial agricultural production increases. The challenge in this sector is however that the agro-processing industry is predominantly controlled by large corporations leaving limited opportunity for small-scale manufacturers outside niche markets. Attracting investment in agro-processing is also often much harder in rural areas, due to the particular location and lack of access to larger markets etc.

##### **ACTIONS**

- While beneficiation should be encouraged, increased focus and support should be prioritised toward firstly, upstream manufacturing activities that produce input products to the mining, construction and agriculture industries and secondly, to input-services related to the same industries.
- The public sector should focus support on the development of “entire value chains” in specific industries (potential exist in the bio-fuels industry in areas where no threat exist to expansion or preservation of food crops).
- Focus mining and agricultural related manufacturing on input products such as chemicals, plastics, metal products, implements and textiles (including other forms of protective apparel).
- Develop and incentivise niche markets that allow market entry for small-scale producers.
- Encourage the formation of cooperatives and improve support services.
- Promote animal feed production in support of the cattle production industry in the province.
- Implement the pilot project identified in the North West Agriculture Master Plan.
- Develop the medicinal plant industry and production of essential oils.
- Improve alignment of enterprise development projects facilitated by mining companies (through mandatory LED programmes) to take place in agro-processing and beneficiation industries.

#### **5.6.2. INCREASE MARKET ACCESS AND ENTRY FOR RURAL SMMEs**

Small and micro enterprises are concentrated in the trade and retail sector but some SMMEs also conducts business in manufacturing, personal services, beneficiation and agro processing. The majority of rural SMMEs are survivalist in nature and are typically not expanding. A lack of ICT (especially broadband internet access) resulting in reduced innovation and information is hampering competitiveness and is reducing the ability of these businesses to grow. This lack of information also prevents the establishment of new businesses and often means that rural communities have very little opportunity to become economically active.

A lack of both vocational and high-technology skills also means that very few non-retail SMMEs with the potential for fast growth, becomes established. Other key factors preventing market entry and rural SMME expansion include a lack of an entrepreneurial culture, mediocre skill levels among recent school graduates, limited cooperative being formed, and a lack of access to finance to fund business ventures.





### ACTIONS

- Engage with development finance institutions to establish a microfinance institution in the province or provide support to the Women's Development Business, Marang Financial Services or Small Enterprise Foundation (SEF) to expand its scope in North West (support could be provided through funding, marketing support and through offering facilities).
- Increase the availability of small business support services in rural areas (business incubators and business chambers).
- Distribute information in rural areas more effectively by utilising ICT (especially cell phone services)
- Ensure the availability of information on existing rural SMMEs to allow for improved local procurement by the public sector, mining companies and farmers.
- Improve FET colleges with a focus on high-technology skills and entrepreneurial short courses.
- Increase involvement of rural SMMEs and entrepreneurs in the tourism industry, especially in established tourism nodes such as the Madikwe and Sun City/Pilanesberg region.
- Address the skills shortage and encourage an entrepreneurial culture in schools and after Grade 12.
- Investigate the potential of creating a consolidated mining enterprise development fund (thereby sourcing out enterprise development away from mining companies who have often been unsuccessful in encouraging local enterprise development).
- Ensure greater partnership with mining companies in delivering on their mandate of enterprise development in communities.

### 5.6.3. INCREASE THE RURAL TOURISM OFFERING

Many of the top tourism attractions in the North West province, including provincial parks, game reserves, entertainment complexes and cultural sites, are located in rural areas. Tourism therefore already plays an important role in the rural economy. The aim of promoting tourism is to increase the net benefits to rural people and increase their participation in managing the tourism product. If tourism can be developed in rural areas, particularly in ways that involve a high level of local participation in decision making and enterprises, then poverty alleviation impacts are likely to be improved.

The North West province currently has no international airport and access is therefore provided by road exclusively. Road infrastructure however is in a sub-par condition and could affect the number of tourists that is attracted to the province (especially domestic tourists that could easily choose alternative destinations). Rural tourism is inadequately resourced and under-funded and as a result remains under developed despite many opportunities in terms of eco-tourism, culture and heritage, unspoilt natural beauty and adventure, business and agri-tourism. This also hampers growth in the local arts and culture industry since exposure is still limited. Service standards in the local tourism industry and the lack of an updated provincial Tourism Master Plan are additional challenges that need to be addressed as part of the development of the rural tourism industry. The North West province is currently implementing a project on mediating the relations between land reform, tourism and mining. The rapid resolution of outstanding land claims is imperative to development of tourism in rural and adjacent communities.

### ACTIONS

- Critical aspects that need to be addressed in improving rural tourism include product development, marketing, skills development, support infrastructure and research.
- Capacity and/or funding to the provincial tourism and parks board needs to be increased
- Develop the Madikwe region as a rural tourism node.
- Update the provincial Tourism Master Plan.
- Increase efforts to exploit the short-stay domestic market originating from Gauteng.



- Build on the established bio-diversity, heritage and cultural diversity, enabling local arts and culture to be showcased.
- Develop certain key tourism routes and expand the offering of local art and culture.
- Exploit the lucrative business tourism market by marketing the province as a conference and business destination.
- Prioritise community benefit in established tourism nodes where communities have substantiated land claims.
- Ensure the establishment of co-management arrangements, skills training and internships and promote integration between communities and provincial parks (especially in areas where land claims apply). Encourage and prioritise the rapid resolution of land claims in the North West province.
- Improve tourism and hospitality service standards by offering more, higher quality short courses through FET facilities.

### **5.7. AN INTEGRATED AND INCLUSIVE RURAL ECONOMY IMPLEMENTATION PLAN**

The integrated and inclusive rural economy implementation plan was developed to support the strategic objective set out in this chapter. Specific actions have been outlined for each objective. The role and responsibilities of various lead departments was assigned to each implementation programme and potential funding sources were identified.

The following key programmes were identified for the implementation of the rural economy strategy (Refer to Annexure 1):

- Agriculture Expansion Programme
- Provincial Land Reform Improvement Programme
- Integrate Rural Development with Provincial Planning and Ensure Effective Human Capital Development Programme
- Access to Services in Rural Communities, Villages and Settlements and Infrastructure Development
- Provincial Food Security Programme
- Establish a Rural Finance System Programme
- Rural Tourism Development Programme



### NOTES

---

\* Statistics South Africa (2012 - 2013) Labour Force Survey: <http://www.statssa.gov.za>

# HIS Global Insight. 2013. <http://www.ihsglobalinsight.co.za/> Date of Access: January, 2013.

<sup>1</sup> Cimbj, T & Aliber, M. 2000. Agricultural employment crisis in South Africa. <http://www.tips.org.za/files/415.pdf> Date of Access: September, 2012.

<sup>2</sup> Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries. 2010. Estimate of the contribution of the agriculture sector to employment in the South African economy. [http://www.daff.gov.za/docs/Economic\\_analysis/Contribution\\_agriculture\\_sectorSAeconomy.pdf](http://www.daff.gov.za/docs/Economic_analysis/Contribution_agriculture_sectorSAeconomy.pdf) Date of Access: November, 2012.

<sup>3</sup> National Planning Commission. 2012. National Development Plan. <http://www.npconline.co.za/pebble.asp?relid=25> Date of Access: August, 2012.

<sup>4</sup> North West Province Office of the Premier. 2012. Report on Growth and Development Colloquium: Strategies to Unlock the Economic Potential of the North West Province.

<sup>5</sup> Department of Water Affairs (DWA). 2008. North West Water Provision and Management Plan.





A topographic map showing a settlement area with various planning overlays. The map includes contour lines, roads, and different colored zones. A large orange-shaded area is labeled 'PROPOSED FUTURE EXTENSION'. Other labels include 'TO BLOEMFONTEIN', 'UNDEVELOPED', 'EXISTING SEWER LINE', 'R59 PROVINCIAL ROAD', 'LIGHT INDUSTRIAL', 'DENTAL', and 'SCHOOL'. A north arrow is in the top right corner.

## 6. HUMAN SETTLEMENT AND SPATIAL TRANSFORMATION

### KEY POINTS

- ⇒ Address the apartheid geography and create the conditions for more humane – and environmentally sustainable – living and working environments.
- ⇒ It is important to address the entrenched spatial patterns that exacerbate social inequality and economic inefficiency, cognisant of the unique needs and potentials of different rural and urban areas in line with emerging development corridors
- ⇒ Ensure that the delivery of housing contributes to the restructuring of towns and cities and strengthens the livelihood prospects of households
- ⇒ Active citizenship in spatial development should be supported through properly funded interventions that encompass citizen-led neighbourhood vision and planning processes; and the introduction of social compacts
- ⇒ Settlement planning should ensure the creation of spaces that are liveable, equitable, sustainable, resilient and



## 6.1. INTRODUCTION

South-Africa's landscape is characterised by an uneven spatial pattern of socio-economic development, shaped by years of unequal resource allocation and segregated planning policies during apartheid. Despite continued efforts towards eradicating the apartheid geography, spatial imbalances still persist. The core-periphery structure remains, with former homeland areas continuing to be economically marginalised.

The uneven and inequitable settlement patterns have a bearing not only on the economic well-being of the residents of the country, but also have very specific impacts on the ability to cost-effectively provide services and infrastructure. Furthermore, where communities are located far away from employment opportunities it restrict their ability to productively participate in the economy, sustain livelihoods and improve the standard of living.

Comprising of substantial former homeland areas and an uneven endowment of natural and mineral resources, the North West province is also characterised by an uneven pattern of development. The majority of urban areas and population concentrations are located to the south and east of the province, with the western regions of the province being particularly isolated from areas of economic activity.

The Bill of Rights, as contained in the Constitution of South-Africa, affirms the right to a healthy environment; availability of adequate housing; and access to basic services. In order to realise these rights and create a more sustainable future for residents of the North West province, it is required that the inequitable spatial geography be restructured to create integrated human settlements that are efficient; offer access to social and economic opportunities for all citizens; and are environmentally sustainable.

This chapter focus on “human settlement and spatial transformation” as one of the key focus areas of the North West province.

## 6.2. THE CURRENT PERSPECTIVE

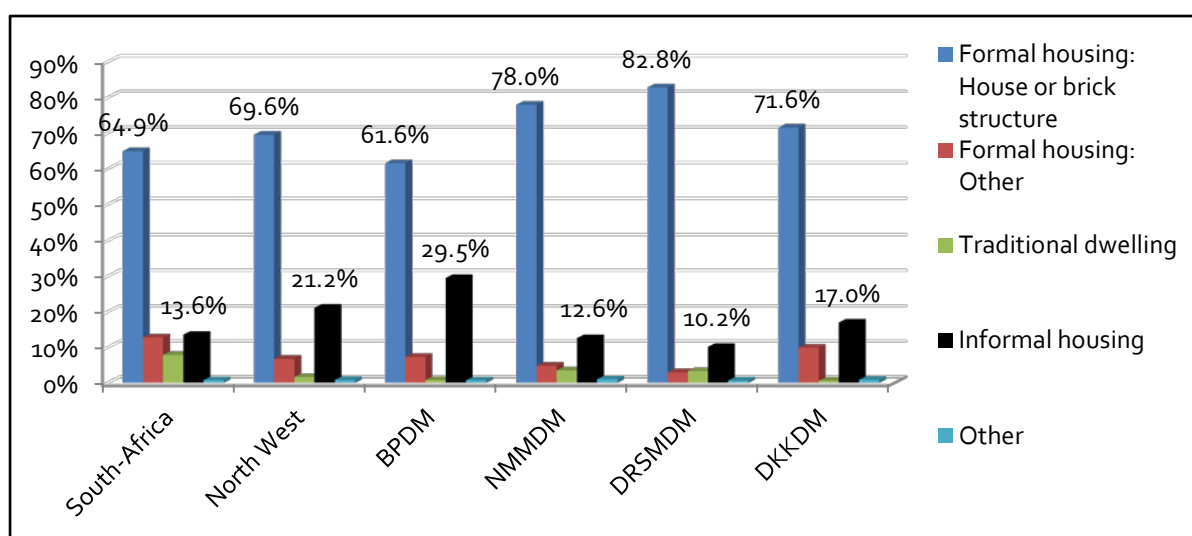
According to the North West Multi-Year Housing Development Plan (Department of Local Government and Housing, 2009<sup>i</sup>) there exists a substantial housing need in the North West province. The premier announced that the provincial government is commencing with the rental stock programme, in order to decrease the housing backlog in the province and achieve the goal of providing housing units for all and facilitate the provision of secure, stable rental tenure for lower income persons; and provides a coherent framework for dealing with many different forms of existing public sector residential accommodation. The programme targets persons and households that cannot be accommodated in the formal private rental and social housing market.



The figure below illustrates the current reality with regard to housing in the North West province.



Figure 6.1: dwelling types, 2012

Source: Stats SA, 2012<sup>ii</sup>

The National Home Builders Registration Council (NHBRC) is an organ of state established in terms of the Housing Consumers Protection Measures Act, 1998 (Act 95 of 1998). Housing construction in South-Africa must adhere to the NHBRC standards. Traditional dwellings and informal housing types do not adhere to NHBRC standards and are therefore not considered as acceptable housing types.

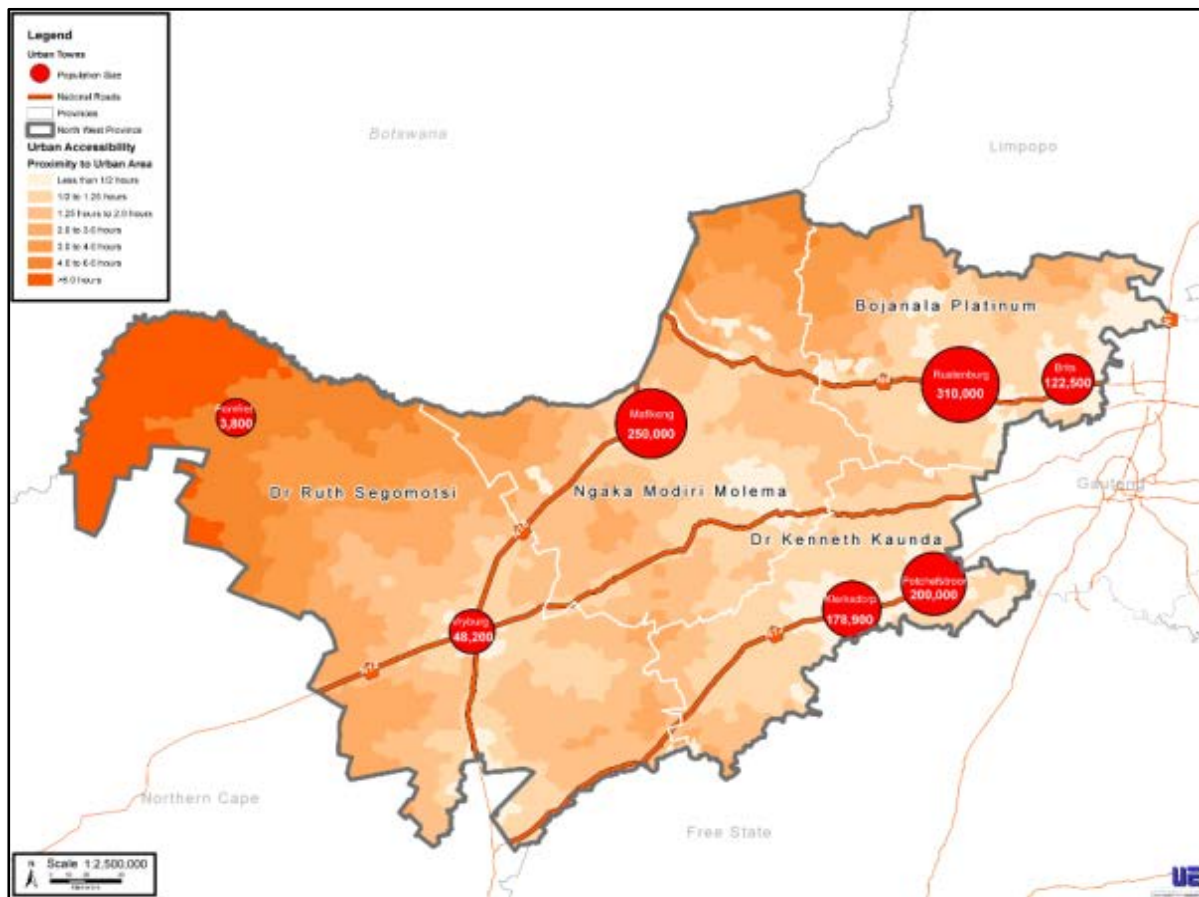
The focus of the PDP is on affordable housing to provide suitable housing for low to middle-income groups. Affordable housing ranges from a brick structure separate on a stand or yard to a single flat in a block of flats which are all formal housing types.

More than 70 per cent of households within the North West province live in some sort of formal housing type while 21.2 per cent of households still occupy informal housing and 1.7 per cent resides in traditional dwellings. It is especially in the BPDM that large portions of the municipal population are residing in informal housing (30%) likely due to the migratory population settling in the area on a temporary basis in search of work in the mining sector. The portion of the provincial population that occupies informal housing has decreased since 2001 despite the opposite negative trend in the NMMDM, where the portion of the population occupying informal housing has increased.

Despite the development of many urban centres, some parts of the province remain relatively inaccessible and isolated from urban areas. The following map illustrates the four DMs, the major urban areas and the urban accessibility of various regions in the province. The map also provides an indication of the sizes (in terms of population) of the more prominent urban centres.



Map 6.1: urban accessibility, 2012

Source: NWPSDF drawn by Urban-Econ, 2012<sup>iii</sup>

According to Map 6.1 above one is able to observe that the majority of urban areas are located in the southern (Potchefstroom and Klerksdorp) and eastern (Rustenburg and Brits) regions of the province. The population is therefore mainly concentrated in these areas. The concentration of the population is due to the proximity of these areas to economic opportunities presented in Gauteng as well as in areas where mineral or metal deposits are found, such as in the DKKDM and the BPDM. In the DRSMDM some areas are located more than six hours away from the nearest urban centre. It is especially the Kagisano Molopo LM that is least accessible from the urban areas within the province.

The attainment of healthy, integrated human settlements and equitable spatial development patterns in the North West province is confronted by a number of challenges in specific areas of concern. The exclusion of many rural households and the housing conditions in mining communities are central to the provincial human settlement challenges. However, a number of additional, often overarching issues hamper progress the realisation of sustainable and integrated human settlements across the North West.

- **Coordination and cooperation:** spatial and human settlement planning functions are spread across a vast range of competencies, placing responsibilities on various public and private sector role-players. Human settlement is multi-sectoral and involves public and private entities that require coordination towards common goals and provision of basic service requirements such as water and electricity. Lines of responsibility are often blurred and the various roles of each entity in the entire process are not always clear, resulting in duplication of efforts; competing interests; gaps in responsibility; and general inefficiency. Planning is often undertaken in isolation, with little



communication and input from other stakeholders, preventing coordination in the response to the spatial restructuring mandate.

- **Capacities and capabilities:** spatial planning and housing development competencies generally fall within the ambit of provincial and local spheres of government and require the employment of significant resources, including human capital, land and finance. However, implementing agencies often do not possess the prerequisite capabilities to effectively fulfil this mandate. At both provincial and local level, relevant departments are faced with insufficient human resource capacities and/or technical skills to efficiently implement planning and/or oversight functions. Delivery is also hampered by ever-increasing costs and shrinking budgets to meet delivery targets. The existing uneven spatial patterns further exacerbate this situation, as the provision of services to poorly located settlements make service delivery difficult and costly.
- **Lack of supporting infrastructure:** integrated and sustainable human settlements require the presence of appropriate economic infrastructure upon which opportunities for livelihood creation can be leveraged. The North West province is faced by a lack of connecting infrastructure that allows mobility and access to markets and/or opportunities. Marginalised areas and previous housing developments in particular may not have been appropriately planned to supply supporting infrastructure for development.

Key development corridors have been developed along three of the four national transport routes throughout the North West province. These corridors are considered Spatial Development Initiatives (SDIs) and play an important role in encouraging corridor and cluster development throughout the province. Corridor and cluster development aims to build and stimulate the economic potential of the region. Cluster development will be established through a hierarchy of functional nodes located throughout the province.

The linkages formed between the functional nodes and development corridors will enable the movement of people, goods, energy and information throughout the North West province which in turn will promote sustainable growth. The key provincial development corridors referred to as Spatial Development Initiatives (SDI's) and functional nodes are illustrated in the following map. The development corridors illustrated in Map 4.2.4 includes:

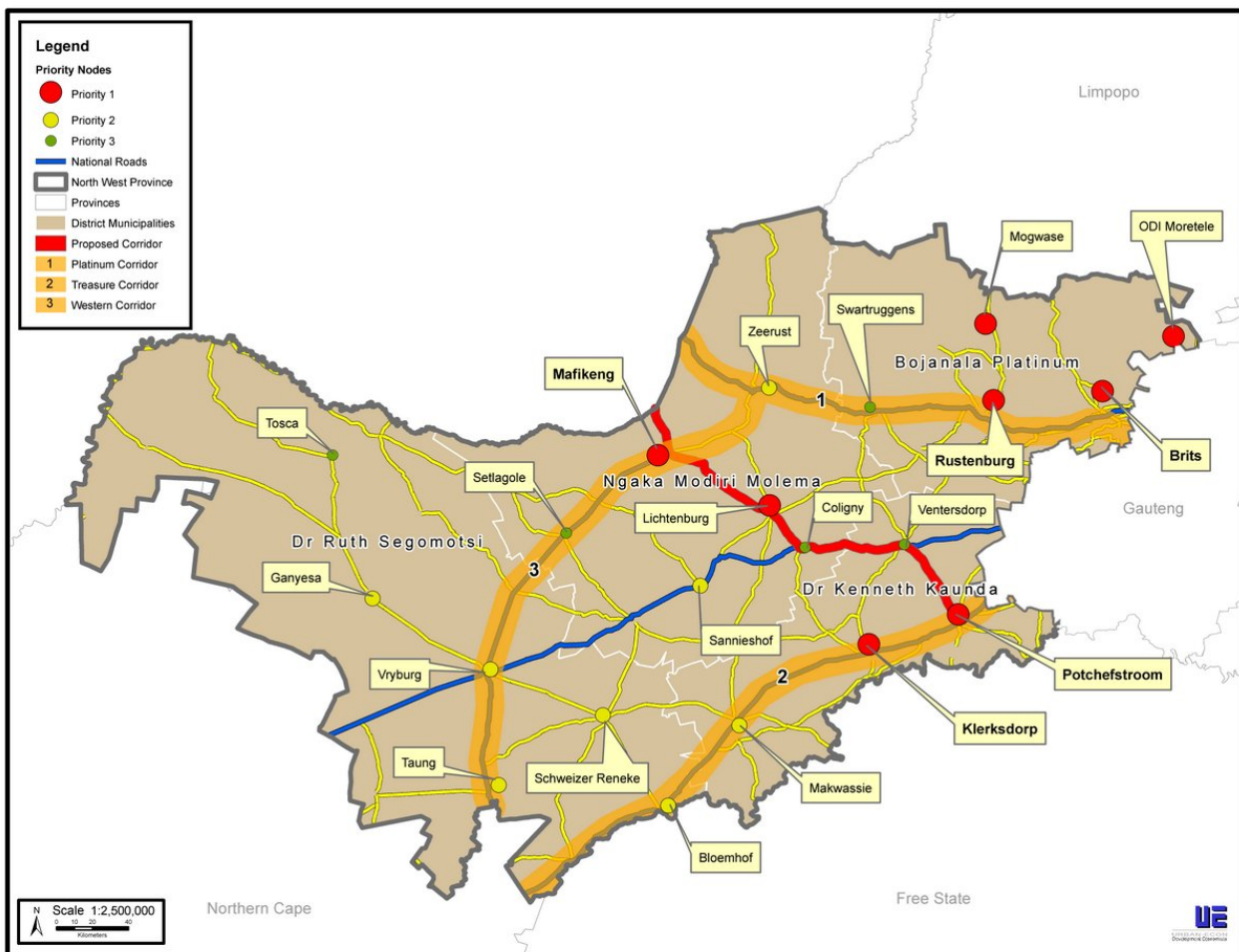
- ✓ The **Platinum Corridor** presents the western portion of the N4 corridor that links Maputo with Walvis Bay. The route passes through Nelspruit, Pretoria, Rustenburg, Lobatse and Windhoek.
- ✓ The **Treasure Corridor** is aimed at strengthening linkages between Johannesburg, Potchefstroom, Klerksdorp and areas further south along the N12 national road.
- ✓ The **Western Corridor** is intended to strengthen a north-south initiative from the South-African Development Community (SADC) through Botswana southwards.

A new development corridor is proposed to be formed between Potchefstroom through Ventersdorp to Mafikeng and Botswana. The proposed new corridor will promote north south interaction to markets and mobility in the province. The development and infrastructure corridors serve as linkages between urban nodes in the province.





Map 6.2: development corridors and functional urban nodes, 2012



Source: NWPSDF drawn by Urban-Econ, 2012

The functional urban areas are classified as a hierarchy of nodes in Map 6.2. The development corridors link the majority of the identified primary urban nodes in the province. The urban hierarchy in the province are as follows:

- **Primary nodes:** Rustenburg; Madibeng; Mogwase; Odi Moretele; Potchefstroom; Klerksdorp; Carletonville; Lichtenburg; and Mahikeng.
- **Secondary nodes:** Zeerust; Coligny; Sannieshof; Schweizer Reneke; Bloemhof; Makwassie; Vryburg; Ganyesa; and Taung.
- **Tertiary nodes:** Koster; Swartruggens; Ventersdorp; Tosca; Zeerust; and Setlagole.

The scattered and dispersed settlement pattern makes service delivery and access very challenging and typically hampers economic growth in rural areas. To address this scattered settlement pattern, attempts need to be made to encourage settlement consolidation and concentration through the selective investment of transportation infrastructure and services.

It is important that these cross-sectional challenges be addressed in an attempt to accelerate delivery on spatial planning aspects. The detailed provincial challenges, the main priorities with respect to the transformation of human settlements in the North West province and specific action recommendations are described in the remainder of this chapter.



### 6.3. VISION 2030

The transformation of spatial patterns and human settlements is a national imperative and requires that all spheres of government seek to achieve a shared vision in this regard. Through a coordinated approach towards diminishing spatial imbalances and transforming human settlements at a local and regional level, the national space economy will also be transformed. A fundamental reshaping of the colonial and apartheid geography may take decades, but by 2030 South Africa should observe meaningful and measurable progress in reviving rural areas and in creating more functionally integrated, balanced and vibrant urban settlements.

In line with the national vision of transforming human settlement and the space economy, the 2030 vision for the North West province is that:

*The vision for 2030 is the availability of vibrant human settlements offering access to social amenities, economic infrastructure, and job opportunities. Rural communities have become areas of economic production, providing goods, services and markets for the national economy as well as space for the development of industries that require affordable land. Urban and peripheral settlements no longer operate 'informally' and instead are upgraded to provide infrastructure and service delivery, social cohesion, and sustainable livelihoods. Finally, new settlements are developed following careful infrastructure and transport planning to facilitate spatial transformation through the reduction of commutes between home and work, improved access to education and job opportunities, and reduced levels of poverty and inequality.*

#### 6.3.1. HOW TO ACHIEVE IT

In order to achieve more equitable and sustainable spatial structures and viable human settlements, it is important that settlements be created that provide a healthy social, economic and environmental setting. This can only be achieved if a joint vision; clear measureable goals; universally accepted principles; and collective action towards achieving these goals is pursued. Engagement and participation by all citizens and stakeholder institutions in planning and implementation processes is imperative to the successful transformation of communities.

Accordingly, the following priorities towards spatial restructuring and integrated human settlements in the North West province are identified:

- **Establish planning principles and priorities for spatial restructuring:** in order to realise change in the spatial economy, it is critical that common principles be adopted that will guide human settlement development and spatial restructuring initiatives throughout the North West province. The creation of integrated human settlements that offer opportunities for the creation of sustainable livelihoods should be prioritised. In all instances, an equitable balance should be achieved between economic, social and environmental considerations.
- **Implement instruments that ensure positive changes in human settlement patterns:** while a common vision and principles give direction, successful implementation is dependent on the creation and use of robust and practical instruments/ mechanisms that can give effect to priorities. Spatial restructuring will be achieved through the effective use of land use management tools and the provision of economic infrastructure as catalysts for development. Healthy and vibrant human settlements will also be created by increasing the diversity of housing and finance options, reducing the need to settle in poorly located and unsafe informal settlements.
- **Promote greater efficiency, integration and capacity in the provincial planning system:** delivery on the vision for sustainable human settlements is also dependent on effective cooperation between



various role-players. Swift results can only be achieved where implementation procedures are streamlined and efficient; and where responsible entities are adequately capacitated to fulfil their mandates.

- **Encourage community involvement in spatial planning processes:** human settlements are home to a vast range of economic activities and diverse communities and cultures. In order to reach a joint vision for inclusive human settlements, it is important that citizens, the private sector and government actively participate in spatial planning, ensuring that all interests are given due consideration. Broad participation also creates the opportunity for the generation of innovative solutions to the challenges faced in living and working environments.

#### 6.4. PLANNING PRINCIPLES AND PRIORITIES FOR SPATIAL RESTRUCTURING

Spatial restructuring across the North West province requires that normative principles and planning priorities be identified and pursued. This will ensure that a coordinated approach is followed by all relevant implementing agencies at local and provincial level. It is, however, important that planning principles be aligned with those prioritised at a national level, in order to contribute to the transformation of the space economy at a national level.

In line with the adopted principles and priorities, it is vital that strategic guidance be provided for spatial transformation initiatives, through the development of strategies and policies and the undertaking of research to allow fact-based decision-making. Specific priorities pursued by the province should be based on the principles of integration and sustainability. In all proposed developments, the North West province should seek to establish inclusive human settlements that create opportunities for citizens to build sustainable livelihoods and to unlock their potential. Decisions should also strike a balance between the imperatives of spatial equity, economic competitiveness and environmental sustainability.

The North West province does not operate isolated from the rest of South-Africa and even the rest of the world. Provincial growth indicates an increase in the total income and or per capita income of a province. This will result from a better use of the factors of production such as land, labour and capital. An increase in income will surge the demand for commodities both from within the province and outside. This implies cross border activities to stimulate and maintain provincial growth. It can thus be said that growth in the province can result either from factors within or outside or both.

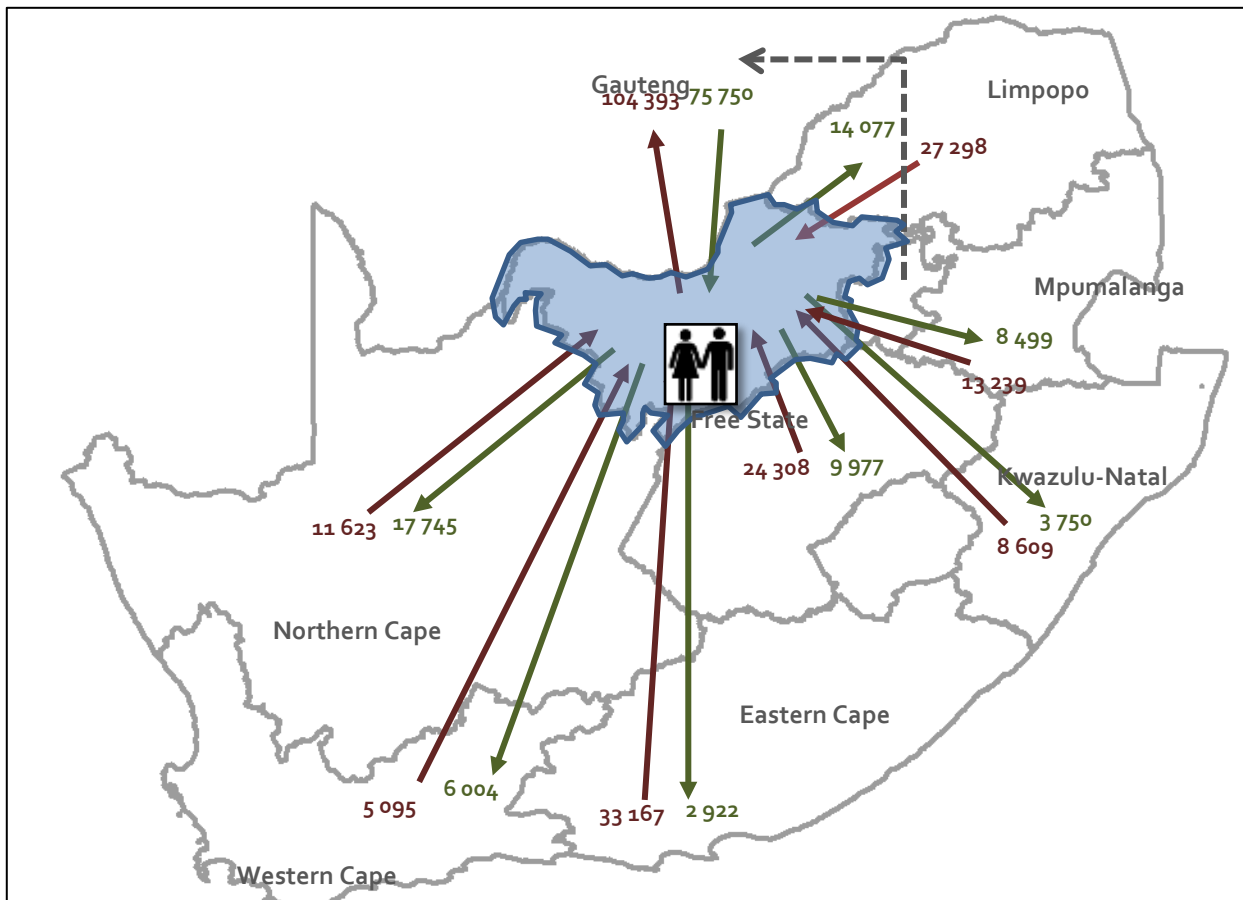
A high demand from neighbouring provinces for a product produced in the North West will attract capital and stimulate the provincial economy. A high demand from within the North West province for a product produced in other parts of the country will have the opposite effect. There exist interdependency between towns, municipalities, provinces and countries.

Migration is one of the 'flows' between the North West province and the surrounding regions. Migration has an influence on among others urbanisation, unemployment, service delivery and human settlement development. The physical movement of humans from one area to another, across administrative borders and sometimes over long distances or in large groups is known as migration. Migration in the past has been due to a variety of reasons including wars, lack of employment opportunities in areas of origin, political conflicts and natural disasters. Current migration in South-Africa is predominantly economically motivated.

Figure 6.2 illustrates the migration patterns in and out of the North West province based on Census 2011 data.



Figure 6.2: net migration (province of enumeration by previous province of residence) (2011)



Source: Stats SA: Census, 2011

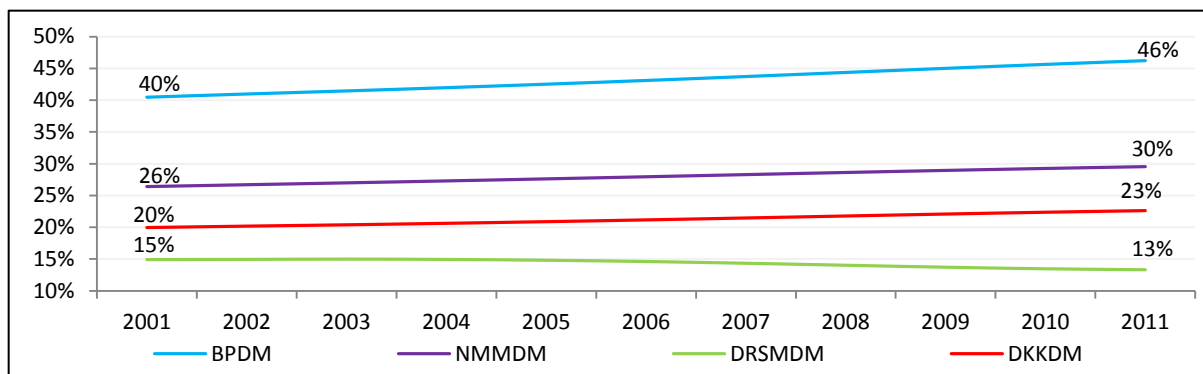
The North West province had an overall inflow of 199,089 people compared to an overall outflow of 167,367. The single largest number of people moving into the North West province originates from the Gauteng province (75,750). Apart from the Gauteng province, the North West province attracts migrants from especially the Eastern Cape, Limpopo and the Free State provinces. The Gauteng province attracted the most migrants from the North West province with 104,393 migrants. Other popular destinations for migrants from the North West are Limpopo and the Northern Cape.

The North West province experienced positive net migration in recent years. More people are migrating to the province than from the province. According to the 2011 Census data, 31,722 more people moved to the North West province than from the province.

Additional to migration to and from the North West province, migration within the province also plays a large role in the demographic composition of the region. It is particularly urbanisation which influences population patterns on local level within the province. Urbanisation entails migration patterns from rural areas to urban built up areas. Urbanisation results in among others an increased demand for land, services and goods in urban areas placing pressure on local authorities to meet these growing demands. The figure below illustrates how the provincial population have become increasingly concentrated in the urbanised areas of the province.



Figure 6.3: percentage of population residing in urban areas (2001-2011)



Source: Stats SA, 2012

The process of urbanisation is likely to continue and intensify the pressure on the urban environment and authorities in these areas. The government and the private sector should understand the distinct challenges and potential of different areas and respond with a location-specific approach.

#### MIGRATION IMPLICATION

The migration reality in the North West province include negative impacts such as an increased development burden, a loss of highly skilled, medium to high income and entrepreneurial out-migrants and the gain of numerous lower skilled, low-income, non-entrepreneurial in-migrants (Udjo, van Aardt & Moshoeu, 2007<sup>iv</sup>). Positive impacts include the consumption expenditure multipliers on aggregate demand and employee remuneration brought about by the in-migrants who entered the province. These positive effects will be reliant on the socio-economic profile of the in-migrants compared to those migrating from the province.

These impacts have the following key implications on development in the North West province:

- The first and foremost implication of migration is that the province loses a large share of its human capital investment made through education and training. The human capital lost could have been highly beneficial in terms of economic growth, entrepreneurship and innovation in the province.
- An extra developmental burden is created for the province due to the fact that migrants entering the province are less skilled and poorer than those leaving the province.
- A further economic implication of migration is that the prosperous people leaving the province constitute a different type of consumer than poorer migrants entering the province. A significant loss of high-end consumers has a strong impact on aggregate demand, which in turn has implications for GVA growth in the province.
- The provincial tax base is also affected by the out-migration of skilled people. Through out-migration there is a decrease in the tax base and the availability of funds to render the services government are obliged to. This is especially a challenge on municipal level.
- A final economic implication is that existing economies of scale for a number of products and services in the province are negatively impacted on, while new economies of scale are brought about. With a larger pool of more skilled people leaving the province non-food services and product economies of scale are negatively impacted on, i.e. due to less people being able to afford vehicles, furniture, appliances, hotels, restaurants, etc., while a greater demand for basic products is being created by more less skilled, less affluent migrants entering the province.



As indicated above, Gauteng is the main receiving province of migrants from the North West province. The Gauteng province surpasses the North West province in a number of key development indicators and is therefore a more attractive option to people seeking employment opportunities and improved living conditions. The creation and **stimulation of economic opportunities** within the province should be made priority to increase the attractiveness of the province in order to retain its population, especially young entrepreneurs and individuals with specialised skills who can contribute to the economy of the province. This will replace the current negative leverage effect resulting from highly skilled residents leaving the province to be replaced by lower skilled individuals.

Regarding urbanisation, there is a demand for the provision of bulk services (including housing and formal tenure) in and around the major urban areas of the North West province, particularly in areas with high urbanisation rates such as Rustenburg, Brits, Klerksdorp and Potchefstroom. In many instances the poor (often unemployed) are forced to settle in unsafe, unhealthy and often dangerous environments. Therefore the delivery of these services should also be made a priority within the province to ensure that the province can retain its population and workforce, and also ensure equal access, especially for those people living in unsafe and unhealthy environments.

#### 6.4.1. A COMMON VISION FOR HUMAN SETTLEMENT DEVELOPMENT

In achieving spatial restructuring that is based on inclusive and sustainable planning principles it will be necessary to ensure strategic direction and leadership, appropriate research, effective policy development and joint planning in the province. The national framework for settlement making should provide the guidance in this regard emphasising the importance of ensuring a human-centred approach. This approach suggests that the purpose of planning is to ensure that the development needs of people living in settlements are catered for and, in particular, that opportunities for people to achieve their full potential through their own efforts are maximised.

Cities, towns and even villages have an important role as 'central places'. The principle of a 'central place' is based on a city, town or village providing one or more services for the population living around it. Simple basic services (e.g. grocery stores) are said to be of low order while specialised services (e.g. universities) are said to be of high order. Having a high order service implies there are low order services around it, but not vice versa. Services provided by central places include the following:

- provision of amenities
- nodes on transportation networks
- the provision of banking and commercial facilities
- the provision of educational and cultural facilities
- governmental and other administrative functions

It can thus be said that besides population, a settlement's importance as a 'central place' depends upon numerous factors. Although there are separate references to rural and urban 'central' areas the distinction between the categories is often blurred.

#### THE RELATIONSHIP BETWEEN URBAN AND RURAL

Rural areas play an undeniable role in urbanisation. Urban areas are markets for rural products and rural areas demand urban goods. As urbanisation grows, rural areas continue to provide the goods, services and markets essential for the provincial economy, but they also start to provide space for economic activities





that cannot survive in expensive urban environments. It can be said that the economic fortunes of rural and urban areas are increasingly interdependent – bound together by multiple cords.

The definition of 'urban' and 'rural' have changed over time in South-Africa because different criteria and thresholds have been applied. Rising mobility and the spread of telecommunications has changed the way distance is experienced. 'Rural' and 'urban' areas are thus part of a continuous provincial, national, and international landscape and are interrelated through complex economic, social, political and environmental forces. The discrete consideration of rural development as completely distinct from urban development is therefore no longer valid.

A balanced approach to development addresses both ends of the continuum, rather than rural areas in isolation of urban. There is thus a need for an inclusive spatial development framework and restructuring strategy (Section 6.4.5) which complements the urban and rural areas of the North West province and the interdependence between them. More work is required to ensure that there is a sufficiently differentiated understanding of rural areas in the North West province so that interventions in support of rural development will be sensitively attuned to variant developmental conditions. The province must, for example, develop a better understanding of the changing demographics of who stays, who leaves and who returns, and what impact that has on the nature of the household structure and livelihood opportunities.

## ACTIONS

- Produce an integrated human settlement plan to guide all new developments.
- Ensure the review and alignment of municipal housing sector plans with the integrated human settlement plan.
- Establish a housing advisory panel.
- Identify new projects and evaluate project plans / feasibilities.
- Provide administrative support and guide housing statutory bodies.
- Gather and disseminate spatial development and housing data as basis for planning and to feed into the national observatory.
- Assess the impact of housing programmes on beneficiaries and housing needs.
- Elimination of current hostel systems in the mines and the establishment of family units.

### 6.4.2. COMPREHENSIVE LAND AUDIT

The spatial structure of the province is unbalanced, with limited economic activity and opportunity in many rural areas, especially in the NMMDM and the DRSMMDM. Many communities have been forced (either by means of relocation or by preventing settlement in alternative areas) onto land that is inaccessible to markets and thus hinders socio-economic development. Supporting infrastructure often lacks in these areas and SDFs and IDPs are not adequately prioritising practical human settlement development. Municipalities need to do more to ensure that suitable, well serviced land is made available more readily for public human settlement development. The need exists for a thorough land audit through which legitimate state land and land appropriate for development can be identified.

## ACTIONS

- Conduct a comprehensive land audit to identify legitimate state land and land appropriate for development. Utilise the Surveyor General (SG) as potential source to assist in comprehensive land audit.





The North West province is characterised by rural and informal settlements offering little in terms of infrastructure, service delivery, and social cohesion. The provinces rural settlements are sparsely populated and widely dispersed, often located far from any real economic activity. Inversely, informal settlements are situated next to mines throughout the province and manufacturing activities in the east and south-east near Gauteng. Although these settlements provide new migrants and the urban poor with access to employment this opportunity is accompanied by high degrees of physical and social vulnerability. The development prescription is therefore to create new communities near economic hubs as well as upgrade existing settlements. These efforts are severely constrained however by the lack of suitable land and significant cost of upgrades, with many informal settlements located on land unsuitable for infrastructure installation. Therefore it is also important that government develop transportation networks to improve access to job opportunities, invest in social amenities, and support the creation of economic opportunities in rural areas.



## ACTIONS

- Develop a strategy for densification of towns.
- Develop settlements around transport routes and accessible economic nodes to support livelihoods.
- Initiate urban renewal and inner city regeneration programmes.
- All human settlements should be planned, designed and developed to promote sustainable social cohesion and integration. Expand state support to include investments in public space and public, social and economic infrastructure.

The North West province is home to several land intensive industries which compete with each other and human settlements for access to land while also struggling to reconcile their individual resource demands and environmental impact. The provinces economic growth and sustainability requires however that industry, primarily mining, manufacturing and agriculture, and human settlements are organised to allow for their mutually sustainable operation. This implies that land is allocated optimally to each activity, while also ensuring that the consequences of their operation are mitigated in order to avoid negative spill-over effects. The allocation of land must also consider the potential for tourism and conservation as an economic activity as well as a mechanism for environmental preservation.

The development of economic activities and neighbouring human settlements requires the consideration of environmental impacts. This involves the upholding of building standards, environmentally sustainable designs, green energy solutions, and waste management schemes. To this effect environmental considerations and sustainability must echo through each aspect of human settlement development. Towns and cities have immense potential to become less resource intensive. The concentration of people, industries and infrastructure in urban areas presents opportunities to use resources more productively.

The economic competitiveness of a region depends on the patterns and networks of economic interdependence. Settlements occur where locations provide opportunities and therefore advantages.



Economic systems are dynamic organisations of interdependent economic activities for the production, exchange, distribution, and consumption of goods and services. Among others, improvements in transportation and communication networks reduce the effect of distance and time on the movement of people, products, and ideas. Such improvements are thus conducive to the economic competitiveness of an area.

A variety of human settlement types exists in the North West province. There can be differentiated between among others, the small market towns, agri-villages, informal settlements, farm villages, scattered homesteads in commercial farming areas, peri-urban informal settlements, villages, and scattered homesteads in former homelands. The economic interdependence of each settlement type will differ. The need exist for differentiated planning responses in relation to varying settlement types and the economic competitiveness of each. There exists a need for primary towns closer to mining cities in areas such as the Setlagola Village in the Ratlou LM.

### ACTIONS

- Promote collaborative action in biodiversity protection, climate-change adaptation, tourism and economic development across municipal and provincial borders.
- Introduce a spatial planning approach that prioritises "best use" and balanced outcomes.
- Implement and enforce waste management schemes.
- Examine mechanisms for mine and land rehabilitation and the introduction of new environmentally sustainable activities.
- Enforce building regulations and incorporate sustainable planning and green energy solutions into new and existing settlements.
- Urgently respond to the formation of illegal settlements and work with community members to identify alternative and sustainable housing solutions.
- Improve and utilise transportation and communication networks to reduce the effect of distance and time on the movement of people, products, and ideas.
- Develop differentiated planning responses in relation to varying settlement types and the economic competitiveness of each.
- Explore the possibility of new primary town developments nearer to mining cities. Identify and develop areas such as the Setlagola Village in the Ratlou LM where sufficient demand exists for such developments.
- Develop a Land-Use Conflict Identification Strategy (LUCIS) where different sectors map areas important for their land-use category, e.g. agriculture, conservation, mining. These results can then be compared to identify areas of potential conflict.

### 6.4.5. PROVINCIAL SPATIAL DEVELOPMENT FRAMEWORK AND RESTRUCTURING STRATEGY

As indicated throughout this section spatial planning is crucial in the future development of the province. The NDP (National Planning Commission, 2012<sup>v</sup>) identifies the following intervention areas for spatial development:

#### ▪ COMPETITIVENESS CORRIDORS

These corridors entail logistics hubs, road, rail fuel and other infrastructure that are vital to the future of the provincial economy.



#### ■ **NODES OF COMPETITIVENESS**

Nodes of competitiveness include clusters of localities that account for at least 5 per cent of the provincial GVA or employment. These areas have experienced higher than average growth since 1994.

#### ■ **RURAL RESTRUCTURING ZONES**

Spatial development in rural areas has to allow for rural restructuring zones. These zones are characterised by large populations that are experiencing change, for example, new settlement formation. Such areas need management, institutional development, land and tenure reform, infrastructure provision and economic stimulus. Rural restructuring zones generally include the more densely populated parts of the previous homelands, where there is population dynamism and sufficient numbers to provide the basis for viable markets. There may also be areas with agricultural, tourism or mining potential.

#### ■ **RESOURCE CRITICAL REGIONS**

Resource critical regions refer to regions with competition between development and environment, or between competing environmental land uses. In the North West province, one category of the resource critical regions represents the competing interests between high valued mineral resources the environment, tourism or land claims. With regards to environmental sustainability and biodiversity planning (as discussed in Chapter 8) resource critical regions must incorporate the following (SANPARKS, 2009<sup>vi</sup>):

##### ■ **Critical Biodiversity Areas (CBAs)**

CBAs incorporate the following:

- Areas that need to be safeguarded in order to meet national and provincial biodiversity thresholds.
- Areas required to ensure the continued existence and functioning of species and ecosystems, including the delivery of ecosystem services
- Important locations for biodiversity features or rare species.

CBAs in the North West province must allow for special reference to water scarcity. The North West is a water scarce province as discussed in Chapter 4. There is competing uses for water which include amongst others agriculture, the environment and mining. The point of departure that needs to be recognised is that water is central to sustainable growth and development and that water security and quality must be the overall objective. The province must identify Water Critical Resource Areas as a matter of urgency. The quality of water is equally important to the quantity of water to efficiently meet the needs of all users in the long-term.

##### ■ **Ecological Support Areas (ESAs)**

ESAs are supporting zones required to prevent the degradation of CBAs and Protected Areas. These may include areas that are degraded or even transformed if these areas still play an important role in supporting CBAs.

#### ■ **SPECIAL INTERVENTION AREAS**

These areas require particular forms of state support for specified periods. They include:



#### ▪ Job Intervention Zones

These zones include areas that have lost more than 20 per cent of their employment over the past decade, with significant losses to the provincial economy. The provincial government may seek to stimulate the growth of new sectors, develop new skills or, in extreme cases, promote outmigration.

#### ▪ Growth Management Zones

Growth management zones are areas of rapid anticipated growth that may require special planning and management. For example, rapid new growth areas have been identified in the Rustenburg LM and Tlokwe LM urban cores.

#### ▪ Green Economy Zones

These zones have proven potential to create “green jobs”, where short-term state intervention could leverage significant private development. With the expansion of the renewable energy sector in the North West province these economic zones will become more apparent.

The North West province currently has a Provincial Spatial Development Framework (PSDF) in place which includes amongst others the identification of competitive nodes and corridors as indicated in the NDP. The province must expand on the current spatial zones to include the areas described above. Each of the identified zones should in future have an integrated programme of actions developed to help realise potential or deal with problems.

The outcome of these planning processes will be that a formal agreement should be reached amongst competing parties and other stakeholders, including relevant spheres of government, on the best optimisation model for a resource critical region. These agreements must become a ‘spatial social contract’ binding on all spheres of government and relevant role-players.

### ACTIONS

- Develop an inclusive spatial development framework and restructuring strategy, which complements the urban and rural areas of the province and the interdependence between them. The framework must include intervention areas for spatial development to address apartheid geography.
- Translate municipal and provincial plans into spatial contracts that are binding across all spheres of government.

## 6.5. REGULATING HUMAN SETTLEMENT PATTERNS

To give effect to the vision and principles set for the North West province with respect to spatial restructuring and human settlement development, it is required that effective instruments, mechanisms and tools be put in place. These instruments should be robust and practical; and should facilitate the realisation of the positive changes envisioned for the province.

One of the key mechanisms for attaining spatial change is land use management. Decision-making through the land use management system should be influenced by the spatial planning principles adopted by the province. Further structuring instruments relate to the provision of economic infrastructure in areas prioritised for growth. Well-located and appropriate infrastructure can be leveraged to facilitate the development of local economic activities. Appropriate transport infrastructure can also increase mobility and access to social and other economic opportunities, contributing to sustainable livelihoods.

A significant proportion of households are caught in the gap market, earning too much to qualify for housing subsidies, but too little to secure commercial financing. There is thus a demonstrated need to expand the

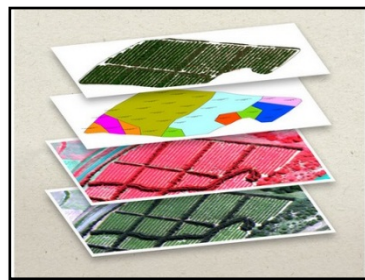


choice and flexibility of housing and financing options in the North West province. Given the significant poverty levels, some 20 per cent of households in the North West province live in informal dwellings located in poorly located and unsafe informal settlements. It is required that alternative housing options be provided for these households. In instances where informal settlements are well-located and align with the spatial planning principles of the North West province, in-situ upgrades should be undertaken, providing not only suitable housing, but also appropriate supporting infrastructure and services to transform these settlements into vibrant and sustainable spaces.

An additional instrument in facilitating positive spatial change is the appropriate oversight over spatial development, ensuring acceptable quality standards; compliance with planning principles; and monitoring of performance.

### 6.5.1. STRENGTHEN INSTRUMENTS OF LAND USE MANAGEMENT

Land use management in many parts of the North West province is inefficient due to poor planning capacity in many local municipalities, and significant pressure from urbanisation and in-migration of low income work seekers in many areas. This inefficiency is aggravated in part by the high costs associated with infrastructure development in rural areas. Additionally, areas that have been allocated to social or low-cost housing are often inappropriately planned resulting in weak supporting infrastructure incapable of accommodating additional population growth. These land use policies also tend to be disconnected due to poor transportation and spatial planning and resulting in continued isolation and weak transport routes between rural communities and urban settlements. It is therefore important that municipalities encourage urban densification and the integration of rural communities into economic hubs.



#### ACTIONS

- Ensure application of principles contained in guiding documents (densification, spatial restructuring, spatial development framework, integrated human settlement plan) in land use planning and decision-making.
- Introduce incentives and programmes to shift jobs and investment to dense urban townships in support of sustainable urban livelihoods.
- Introduce incentives and regulations that support compact, high-density, mixed-use development close to transport nodes and along transit routes.
- Direct funding for services; economic and connecting infrastructure; and settlement development into designated rural hubs.
- Make substantial investments into safe, reliable and affordable public transport (Chapter 4).
- Provide appropriate economic infrastructure upon which development can be leveraged and private sector investment can be crowded in (Chapter 4).
- Invest in transport infrastructure that enhances mobility and access to markets (Chapter 4).

### 6.5.2. DIVERSITY IN HOUSING CHOICE, SPATIAL MIX, FLEXIBILITY AND FINANCE OPTIONS

The North West province currently faces a housing backlog that can be addressed through the diversification of housing options and the introduction of flexible financing. This diversification is currently constrained however by weak investment from the private sector which is provided with little incentive to enter the low-cost housing market. There also exists the added challenge of limited land availability, especially near urban areas. The presence of dolomite in much of the province further limits the ability to develop infrastructure and upgrade informal settlements. Despite these constraints however there is a growing demand for diversified housing including formal brick structures and low-cost rental accommodation. Rising construction costs



requires a new approach to housing delivery. Alternative housing types, such as pre-fabricated, sandwich panels, pre-cast concrete or container houses will have to be considered in the future. Much of this demand comes from low-income families occupying a 'gap market' in that they earn too much to qualify for social grants and Reconstruction and Development Programme (RDP) housing but too little to qualify for mortgage financing. These households are also often unaware of the various housing options, programmes and benefits available to low-income households.

There is a growing recognition that the RDP was a blunt instrument in response to the diverse housing needs of individuals and households. It was unable to respond to individuals who did not qualify for the subsidy and who were also unable to access the limited range of housing products available in the market. It failed to address the importance of rental accommodation and alternative housing types.

Sufficient funding for the development of housing within integrated sustainable human settlements can often be challenging. Sustainable human settlement presumes the availability of health, sport, recreational and educational facilities. These requirements are often not feasible within the existing funding mechanisms. The NDP advocates for a national discussion on the future funding of housing in South-Africa (National Planning Commission, 2012). The respective roles of the state, private sector and individual households in providing housing and creating integrated and sustainable human settlements needs to be clearly defined. A more innovative application of the existing provincial and local government housing development instruments should be promoted. There also exists a need for new instruments that will incentivise and complement investment by households to upgrade their own housing circumstances.

#### ACTIONS

- Undertake research to determine demand for rental accommodation in the province.
- Identify appropriate/suitable land for housing development. Undertake geo-technical and dolomite stability assessments/investigations for housing projects.
- Develop a focused strategy on the NW housing gap market, involving banks, subsidies and employer housing schemes.
- Develop a housing delivery strategy.
- Maintain multi-year housing plans and annual conditional grant business plans.
- Set targets for housing delivery, serviced sites, approval of beneficiaries, property transfers, building of community residential units built, processing of claims and applications, etc.
- Establish incentives that encourage the inclusion of affordable housing in private housing developments, as well as private-sector investment in well-located areas.
- Improve partnership/funding agreements with mining companies (through SLPs) for provision of housing/rental units.
- Market and promote housing and finance options available.
- Host housing consumer education campaigns on housing options and application procedures.
- Launch a comprehensive feasibility study on alternative housing types that could be considered for the province.
- Lobby for a national discussion on the future funding of housing in South-Africa.
- Develop housing instruments incentivising and complementing investments by households to upgrade their own housing circumstances.



### MEASURES TO ADDRESS HOUSING CONDITIONS BY THE MINING SECTOR

In order to meet the requirements of Regulation 46 of the Mineral Petroleum Resource Development Act (MPRDA, 2002), each mining operation (through its SLP) should employ certain measures to address the housing and living conditions of its employees. This is however a challenging task since employees have very different preferences in terms of single or family units, housing subsidies or assistance, rent or buy, permanent or temporary etc. Appropriate housing is also a very costly expenditure and mining companies are often required to go into partnership with financial institutions and large developers. This however means that having a single stakeholder abandon the process (due to the recent financial crisis for instance) means that the whole housing delivery plan falls apart, despite proactive efforts of mining companies to address housing conditions. In other instances mining companies are simply not held to account for not addressing housing conditions, often despite proposals for such activities forming part of their original SLP. The MPRDA requires mining companies to address housing conditions in each SLP in the following manner:

- *Provide the current status of available dwelling for employees*
- *Provide current status of houses within the community*
- *Provide the municipality's strategy to address housing*
- *Establish the preferred requirements for housing and living conditions of the workforce*

*The proposed measures to address housing and living conditions should include but is not limited to:*

- *Promotion of home ownership*
- *Converting hostels into single quarters and family units*

**Note:**

*The proposed measures to address housing and living conditions should be integrated with the municipality's housing plan. Every mine should, in consultation with representatives of trade unions, be required to draw up a five year plan for the improvement of living conditions for workers incorporating specific targets. The housing plan should be aligned with the housing and living standards as per section 100 (1) (a) of the MPRDA.*

A few salient features should be highlighted with regard to SLPs and housing conditions of mining employees:

- The SLP process should be revised to identify clear roles for every stakeholder involved. This means that local government, mining companies, Departments of Human Settlement, mining communities (including traditional authorities) and the Department of Mineral Resources (DMR) need to be aware of their exact responsibility in dealing with communities and in delivering housing/settlements. Interaction between mining companies and communities would likely need to be limited in favour of interaction between community and local government, while interaction between mining companies and local government needs to be strengthened. The delivery of housing/settlements on the other hand needs to become a partnership between mining companies and the Department of Human Settlements.
- Compliance with SLPs and monitoring and evaluation needs to be improved considerably, a function that is likely to remain with the DMR. In this regard mining companies need to be much more diligent in providing accurate annual SLP reports that outline actual progress against initial SLP proposals.





### 6.5.3. ERADICATE INFORMAL SETTLEMENTS

One in five households in the province lives in informal housing, a problem that is most pronounced in the BPDM (Stats SA, 2011), where the mining industry attracts many migrant workers, temporary workers and unemployed work seekers. Informal housing settlements has subsequently sprouted in many areas, especially in mining communities, and many has taken on a much more permanent character than initially foreseen. Despite the need to address housing conditions in these areas, not all informal settlements can be upgraded due to unsafe/unsuitable land conditions for housing and infrastructure development. Such conditions include unsuitable geological conditions (such as dolomite), unsuitable topography (for example, steep slopes at risk of landslip, or sites within flood lines), near heavy industrial infrastructure (such as mine dumps, slimes dumps or within smell zones) or within water, gas or electricity servitudes. Also, in informal settlements where upgrades are possible, not all residents qualify for housing assistance and many have no alternative accommodation available.

#### ACTIONS

- Undertake rapid assessment of informal settlements and determine appropriate interventions for each. Utilise, update and maintain the informal database available from the North West Informal Settlement Upgrading Programme conducted between 2007 and 2012.
- Identify informal settlements that are well-located and that can be upgraded in-situ; and initiate an implementation programme.
- Ensure appropriate capacity and commitment at local level for informal settlement upgrading.
- Incrementally upgrade tenure rights and ensure clear property rights are transferred to beneficiaries
- Provide assistance in securing alternative housing/finance options for beneficiaries that do not qualify for housing assistance.
- Secure funding and implement programmes for development of community facilities, public infrastructure and public space as part of settlement upgrades.

### 6.5.4. ENSURE OVERSIGHT AND QUALITY ASSURANCE

Land markets generally place the poor at a distinct disadvantage and public sector intervention (market correction) is therefore required to unlock the potential of this segment of the population and to offer them the opportunity to break out of poverty. As part of this intervention the public sector partners with recognised private service providers in delivering housing. These private companies adhere relatively well to requirements such as employment equity and quality standards. However, these service providers often subcontract portions of work to unregistered builders that are not accountable to the NHRBC, resulting in substandard products being delivered to the poor. It is therefore possible to conclude that although oversight and quality assurance measures are in place; these often allow for gaps or loop-holes and should be improved.

#### ACTIONS

- Ensure project funding is only released once convincing project preparation has been concluded.
- Oversee and assist municipalities in undertaking relevant research on local housing sub-markets; housing market characteristics for the poor; availability of suitable and affordable land for new developments.
- Monitor and evaluate programme performance against implementation/business plans.

Upgrading is a staged process of improvement of quality of life in informal settlements, based on incremental provision of services and tenure. It should seek to maximise in-situ development in appropriate areas and minimise relocation.



- Facilitate housing related training for emerging contractors to capacitate contractors to meet their contractual obligations, project deadlines and required quality standards.
- Strengthen contracts and accountability/performance measures with contractors.
- Establish and enforce qualifying criteria for mining housing to qualifying criteria.
- Enrol homes with the NHRBC. Appoint appropriate inspectors to monitor compliance with NHRBC standards and ensure rigorous enforcement of building standards.
- Work towards achievement of a national set of spatial governance evaluation indicators.
- Investigate the feasibility of regulating the rental housing market, possibly through a rental tribunal.

## 6.6. EFFICIENCY IN THE PLANNING SYSTEM

Achievement of a common vision and implementation of planning instruments require the presence of efficient and effective processes, systems and institutions. This requires not only greater coordination between various role-players, but also that procedures be streamlined and made more efficient. Through a clearly defined and integrated approach whereby all stakeholder parties are accountable for specific responsibilities; planning and development is undertaken through collaborative action; and inefficiencies in procedures are eliminated, delivery can be accelerated.

Improvements in this regard, however, also require enhanced capacities and capabilities across all spheres of government involved in housing delivery and spatial planning. Both human resource and financial capabilities should be strengthened to bolster the ability of these institutions to fulfil their mandates.

### 6.6.1. AN INTEGRATED APPROACH AND COORDINATION IN SETTLEMENT PLANNING

A lack of effective inter-departmental planning and coordination currently exists in the province which slows down the delivery of human settlements and therefore the reduction in the current housing backlog. Human settlement development requires great coordination between departments, since sustainable settlements require a variety of functions (healthcare, education, economic infrastructure, police and emergency services, etc.). Equally important is the role that local government plays in proclaiming and providing land, providing bulk services connections to that land, and ensuring service delivery to the eventual population on that land. Human settlement further relies on private entities in the provision of basic service requirements such as water and electricity. Lines of responsibility are often blurred and the various roles of each entity in the entire process are not always clear, resulting in duplication of efforts; competing interests; gaps in responsibility; and general inefficiency.

If all these stakeholders are not aligned and coordinated, progress in development and upgrading of human settlements will be decelerated. The Department of Human Settlements needs to play a more prominent and authoritative role in ensuring participation and cooperation between departments and between provincial and local government. The existing planning system is operated strictly along municipal and provincial boundaries. This inhibits cross boundary planning between provinces and municipalities. This is a major obstacle in development planning as many developmental issues, such as environment, transportation and economy issues, straddle political boundaries.

One of the consequences of weak spatial governance is that spatial planning has tended to follow patterns set up by private-sector investment. While the private sector has a role to play, the overall pattern of spatial development should be shaped by the long-term public interest, and so the capability of the state to engage with the private sector must be improved. Spatial development patterns set on private-sector investments results in insufficient infrastructure development and backlogs resulting from a lack of coordination. Spatial policies can make a difference when they are integrated with plans for physical public and private investment carefully adapted to the needs and opportunities of specific places. Municipal Integrated Development Plans



(IDPs) vary in quality. One of the problems with IDPs at municipal level is there is no effective system for them to gain the national and provincial support that they require to be meaningful. IDPs also depend on robust capacity within municipalities for both planning and implementation, which is often lacking. Many municipalities are still struggling to produce credible IDPs.

### ACTIONS

- Establish district housing offices to localise services and increase efficiency.
- Clarify roles of responsibilities of role-players including the private sector in order to avoid duplication of efforts.
- Strengthen and utilise social cluster meetings and forums to enhance cooperation and coordination among role-players.
- Undertake joint planning on issues of housing and spatial development towards the implementation of integrated settlement solutions.
- Coordinate planning across municipal and / or provincial boundaries to promote collaborative action in among others biodiversity protection, climate-change adaptation, tourism and transport.
- Circulate departmental plans for input, comment and alignment.
- Ensure effective funding for effective and sustainable coordination and cooperation which determines the hierarchy in decision-making choices.
- Integrate plans for physical public and private investment carefully adapted to the needs and opportunities of specific places.
- Improve the capacity and capabilities of municipalities to develop IDP's as a practical instrument to guide municipal investment.

An effective improvement process is built on close community participation and cooperation, aiming to strengthen livelihoods strategies of the poor.

### 6.6.2. STRENGTHEN PROVINCIAL AND MUNICIPAL PLANNING CAPABILITIES AND CAPACITY

The main challenges in capacity at local government level relate to the lack of authority in strict implementation of Spatial Development Frameworks (SDF). Many rural local municipalities do not even have a SDF which exacerbates the challenge of effective land use management, especially when inexperienced town planners are appointed. Several local municipalities also lack the necessary capacity to efficiently establish bulk services to potential development sites, which hampers delivery of human settlements from a provincial level. Additional challenges include a complex administrative procedure in terms of housing delivery and assistance, resulting in some finalised housing projects without beneficiaries assigned to them. Sound spatial governance requires strong professionals and mobilised communities. Many municipalities struggle to appoint town planners and urban designers, due to the fact that there is a shortage of available, experienced and qualified town planners in the country and often they are not considered as a priority by the municipalities. The capacity of the provincial government in land use and settlement planning, specifically in terms of the revision of municipal housing sector plans also needs to be improved.

The North West province and municipalities are located within a broader environment. Spatial planning must cross municipal, provincial and even national boundaries to ensure sustainable integrated development. Cooperation between different municipalities and provinces must be priority in all planning systems.



**ACTIONS**

- Facilitate housing and human settlements related training for municipal planning staff.
- Delegate certain provincial housing responsibilities to municipalities to build capacity on housing delivery issues and eventually take over certain functions.
- Identify and remove institutional weaknesses.
- Ensure competency in recruitment.
- Improve implementation and monitoring of the Planning Profession Act as it would ensure proper capability and standards with regard to designing and interpreting spatial policies and strategies
- Assist municipalities to appoint qualified planners and urban designers.
- Facilitate the development and maintenance of a “housing needs” register.
- Identify internal inefficiencies/ bottlenecks in administrative procedures and introduce mitigation/ streamlining measures.
- Identify finalised projects that do not have beneficiaries attached and finalise the beneficiary administration process.
- Ensure that all subsidy claims submitted are processed.
- Strengthen performance contracts and require reporting on turn-around times in decision-making to increase accountability for service delivery.

**6.7. COMMUNITY INVOLVEMENT IN SPATIAL PLANNING PROCESSES**

Acceptable solutions for integrated human settlement and spatial planning will only be achieved if communities and other stakeholders are made part of the planning process. Human settlements accommodate a variety of communities and economic activities and it is important that the interests of all parties are taken into consideration in spatial planning, in order to ensure a harmonious living and working environment.

In line with the approach taken in the NDP, it is imperative that a “social compact” be developed wherein all stakeholders have a voice on the future of their communities (National Planning Commission, 2012). Broad-based participation also the identification of key challenges faced in communities and creates the opportunity for the interactive generation of innovative solutions in addressing concerns.

**6.7.1. ENABLE PARTICIPATION ACROSS ALL SECTORS OF SOCIETY**

Community participation is critical in delivering human settlements, especially in terms of settlement upgrading and renewal strategies. Since housing can be delivered in such a variety of ways, including self-build housing processes, social housing or affordable rental, individual subsidy or consolidation subsidies, communities need to be included in visioning, spatial planning and problem resolution. Community participation has generally been structured through ward committees, and been limited to procedures rather than encouraging flexibility of shelter and services solutions. Ward committees in rural North West also face particular challenges since geographic areas are large and communities are far apart. The participation process however is not limited to communities and should include municipalities, NGOs and the private sector. The Upgrading of Informal Settlements Programme (UISP) for instance envisages municipalities as developers in informal settlement upgrading, but progress in this regard has so far been limited. Engagement and encouragement of municipalities to become more pro-active is essential to harness resources, broaden the base of experience and innovation, and achieve large-scale implementation. Furthermore, participation with the private and NGO sector needs to be strengthened; especially in order to build on public sector skills and capacity for project management and property management.



### ACTIONS

- Facilitate training for communities related to housing, spatial structuring and planning processes
- Provide incentives for citizen involvement in local planning.
- Develop neighbourhood social compacts to build consensus over spatial futures.
- Mediate spatial conflicts.
- Develop plans or components of plans that address concerns of vulnerable/ marginalised group.



## 6.8. HUMAN SETTLEMENT AND SPATIAL TRANSFORMATION IMPLEMENTATION PLAN

The human settlement and spatial transformation implementation plan was developed to support the strategic objective set out in this chapter. Specific actions have been outlined for each objective. The role and responsibilities of various lead departments and stakeholders has been assigned to each implementation programme and potential funding sources were identified.

The following key programmes were identified for the implementation of the human settlement and spatial transformation strategy (Refer to Annexur 1):

- Inclusive Spatial Development Framework and Restructuring Strategy
- Conduct a Comprehensive Land Audit
- Urban Densification and Renewal Strategy
- Eradicate Informal Settlements Programme



---

## NOTES

---

<sup>i</sup> Department of Local Government and Housing. 2009. North West Multi Year Housing Development Plan.

<sup>ii</sup> Statistics South Africa. 2012. Census 2011 Results. <http://beta2.statssa.gov.za/> Date of Access: December, 2012.

<sup>iii</sup> North West Provincial Government. 2008. North West Spatial Development Framework.

<sup>iv</sup> Udjo, E.O., van Aardt, C.J., & Moshoeu, A.N. 2007. Settlement and Migration Patterns in the North West Province.

<sup>v</sup> National Planning Commission. 2012. National Development Plan. <http://www.npconline.co.za/pebble.asp?relid=25> Date of Access: August, 2012.

<sup>vi</sup> South African National Parks. 2009. GIS Metadata : Detailed Report. [http://196.21.45.151/imf-aims50/sites/BGIS/overberg\\_metadata\\_ona.pdf](http://196.21.45.151/imf-aims50/sites/BGIS/overberg_metadata_ona.pdf) Date of Access: March, 2013.





## 7. IMPROVING EDUCATION, TRAINING AND INNOVATION

### KEY POINTS

- ⇒ Improving education is one of the key strategies to reducing inequality and alleviating poverty in the North West province. Strong Early Childhood Development (ECD), basic education, further and higher education systems are critical to the development of the province
- ⇒ A strong basic education system in the North West province depends on adequate human capacity, school management, district support, infrastructure and results-oriented mutual accountability between schools and communities
- ⇒ The reach of further and higher education systems in the North West province needs to be expanded and diversified through Further Education and Training Colleges (FET's), public adult learning centres, sector education and training authorities, professional colleges and Community Education and Training Centres
- ⇒ Due to the spatial structure of the province distance learning will have to expand significantly to achieve its potential in improving education, training and innovation
- ⇒ Private providers will be important partners in improving education, training and innovation in the NW
- ⇒ Research and innovation has a key role to play in improving the national and even global competitiveness of the provincial economy. Coordination between the different role-payers in this sector is crucial



## 7.1. INTRODUCTION

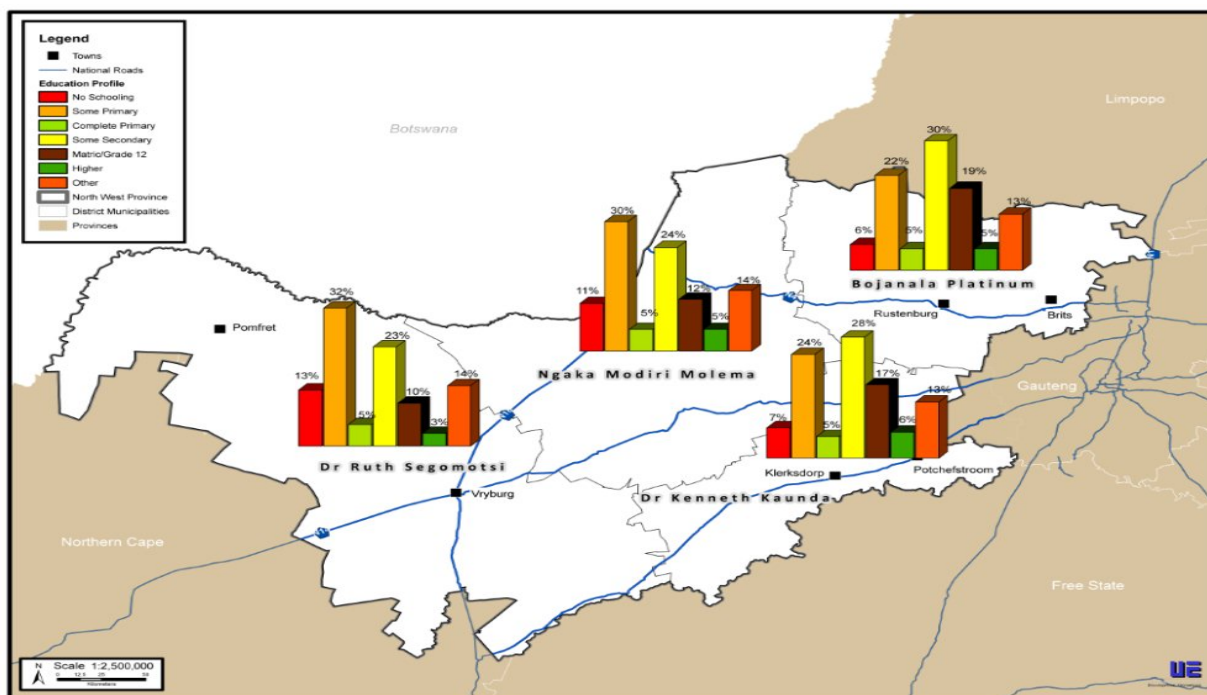
The survival of an individual and the opportunities he or she is exposed to will be a direct result of the education and training they receive. Education, training and innovation are key factors towards alleviating poverty and reducing inequality in the North West province. The majority of the North West province is rural and therefore education must be utilised to create opportunities to those living in the rural areas that are equal to the opportunities the urban population are exposed to. Education will unlock the future for people in the North West province through building and improving their own capabilities.

Improving education, training and innovation was identified as one of the developmental focus areas for the North West province. Education is the key to unlocking innovation and entrepreneurship, which in turn alleviate poverty and unemployment.

## 7.2. THE CURRENT PERSPECTIVE

The educational composition of the population of the North West province and DMs are illustrated in the map below.

Map 7.1: education profile of the North West province (2011)



Source: Stats SA, 2012'

It can be observed in the map above that the highest percentage of the population who has completed Grade 12 was in the BPDM with 19 per cent. There are large sections of the provincial population who only obtained some primary or secondary education. These percentages will have to decrease in the future while the portion of the population with matric and some form of higher education increases significantly.

There are various challenges that the North West province are confronted with towards implementing quality education, training and innovation throughout the province. The key challenges range across all sub-sectors

of the schooling system and are therefore discussed as main challenges to be addressed additional to the individual challenges in each sub-sector. The main challenges in the North West province are:

- **Interdepartmental Coordination:** education and training in the province will require cooperation between various departments and role-players to ensure all children receive equal opportunities. The development of an individual should be approached holistically addressing all their needs. A child from a poor background who does not receive a nutritional diet cannot perform and concentrate in school like his / her middle-class counterpart. It is thus important that all the needs of children are met through interdepartmental cooperation.
- **Socio-Economic Issues:** poverty, malnutrition and exposure to violence are among others socio-economic factors that will influence an individual's ability and willingness to learn. A large percentage of students in the North West province are exposed to circumstances that are not conducive to their education. These students' homes are normally poor, unsafe and dirty. Social protection must form an integrated part of the education system in the North West province to ensure all students have access and exposure to relevant opportunities, education and therapy that will enhance their optimal development.
- **Moral Deterioration:** a vacuum of parental care exists in South-Africa and the North West province. With every right received comes a responsibility. The right to an education carries responsibility and this should be carried over from parent to child. The lack thereof results in students being disrespectful of the schooling system. Awareness must be created among parents of the important role they have in the education and future of their children.
- **Physical Character of the North West Province:** large parts of the North West province are rural in character. As a result communities in the province do not always receive equal access to educational services. This includes among others access to quality education, infrastructure, ICT technology and sporting facilities.
- **Quality of Education:** it is not only the accessibility of education and training opportunities which are of importance but also the quality. A pupil can attend school on a daily basis but if the education he receives is not up to standard he will not be equipped to further his education upon completion.

### 7.3. VISION 2030

The vision for education, training and innovation acknowledges the importance of education in the development of North West province towards 2030. The emphasis of the vision is on providing quality education for all. An integrated vision regarding education in South-Africa will ensure cohesion and cooperation across provincial borders and aid the country in building an educated capable nation. It can thus be said that:

*By 2030, the North West province should have access to education and training of the highest quality, leading to significantly improved learning outcomes. The performance of provincial learners in international standardised tests should be comparable to the performance of learners from countries at a similar level of development and with similar levels of access.*

#### 7.3.1. VISION 2030 TARGETS

In order for the vision set out for education, training and innovation in the North West province to realise a number of targets had to be developed.

Table 7.1 illustrates the key targets for education, training and innovation in the North West province.

Table 7.1: improving education, training and innovation targets (2030)

KEY PERFORMANCE INDICATORS (KPI's)	CURRENT	TARGETS AND TIME FRAMES			
		2015	2020	2025	2030
The percentage of Grade 1 learners in the North West province who received Grade R	67% (2009)	90 %	100 %	100 %	100 %
The percentage of primary schools which have Grade R on offer	76.6% (2010)	90 %	100 %	100 %	100 %
<b>Improve literacy, numeracy/mathematics and science outcomes</b>					
Percentage of Grade 3 learners performing at the required literacy level according to the country's Annual National Assessments	50% (2012)	60%	70%	75%	80%
Percentage of Grade 3 learners performing at the required numeracy level according to the country's Annual National Assessments	36% (2012)	50%	60%	70%	80%
Percentage of Grade 6 learners performing at the required literacy level according to the country's Annual National Assessments	39% (2012)	50%	60%	70%	80%
Percentage of Grade 6 learners performing at the required numeracy level according to the country's Annual National Assessments	21% (2012)	50%	60%	70%	80%
<b>Number of students eligible to study maths and science at university</b>					
Percentage of schools as parallel medium ordinary schools	58% (2010)	65%	90%	100%	100%
Number of learners in ordinary schools with English as language of learning and teaching	51% (2010)	65%	90%	100%	100%
The percentage of learners in schools where at least one educator has received specialised training in the identification and support of special needs	46% (2009)	70%	100%	100%	100%
Number of school with no electricity supply	89 (2011)	30	0	0	0
Number of schools with unreliable electricity supply	11 (2011)	0	0	0	0
Number of school with no water supply	44 (2011)	0	0	0	0
Number of schools with unreliable water supply	76 (2011)	30	0	0	0
Number of schools with no ablution facilities	37 (2011)	0	0	0	0
Percentage of schools without a library	81% (2011)	40%	0%	0%	0%
Percentage of schools without laboratories	84% (2011)	40%	0%	0%	0%
Percentage of schools without a computer center	78% (2011)	40%	0%	0%	0%
Percentage of schools without any communication system	2% (2011)	0%	0%	0%	0%
Percentage of schools without any sport facilities	8% (2011)	0%	0%	0%	0%
The percentage of schools in the North West province that have acquired the full set of financial management responsibilities on the basis of an assessment of their financial management capacity	83% (2009)	95%	100%	100%	100%

KEY PERFORMANCE INDICATORS (KPI's)	CURRENT	TARGETS AND TIME FRAMES			
		2015	2020	2025	2030
The percentage of schools in the North West province visited at least twice a year by district officials for monitoring and support purposes:	66% (2009)	100%	100%	100%	100%
The percentage of school principals in the North West province rating the support services of districts as being satisfactory	53% (2009)	100%	100%	100%	100%
The percentage of schools in the North West province where the SGB meets minimum criteria in terms of effectiveness	66% (2009)	100%	100%	100%	100%

Source: Urban-Econ calculations based on North West Provincial Department of Education (2012ii), National DBE (2010iii, 2011aiv 2011bv, 2012vi, 2013avii & 2013bviii), RSA (2009) & own calculations

Additionally to the targets provided above the following are key targets for education, training and innovation in the North West province:

- Eradicate micronutrient deficiencies in children that are younger than 18 months.
- Approximately 80% of schools and learners achieve 50% and higher in literacy, mathematics and science in grades 3, 6, and 9.
- At least 80% of students should complete 12 years of schooling.
- Expand the further education and training sector through improving the quality and relevance of its courses. The sector should reach a participation rate of 25 % by 2030.
- Improve the Further Education and Training (FET) graduation rate to 75% by 2030.
- By 2030, 75% of academic staff at universities should have completed a PhD.
- Produce 100 doctoral graduates per million per year.

It is generally accepted that it will be very difficult in the South-African context to achieve and maintain economic growth rates in excess of 5% with the existing skills levels. The ability to achieve the economic growth targets will thus be dependent on the implementation of an aggressive skills development programme to ensure the delivery of the necessary number of people with the required priority skills in the various sectors to support the overall implementation of the PDP.



The North West Social Accounting Matrix (SAM) provided a detailed breakdown of the type of labour by economic activity. In Table 7.3.2, data from the SAM relating to both skills levels and income groups have been aggregated according to the economic sectors (Rossouw and Naude, 2007<sup>ix</sup>).

Table 7.2: skills requirements per sector

	Skilled	Semi-skilled	Unskilled	Total
Agriculture	14%	42%	44%	100%
Mining	30%	60%	10%	100%
Manufacturing	37%	52%	11%	100%
Electricity	39%	55%	6%	100%
Construction	23%	61%	16%	100%
Trade	33%	56%	11%	100%
Transport	35%	56%	9%	100%
Finance	63%	34%	3%	100%
Community services	69%	26%	5%	100%

Source: Rossouw and Naude (2007)

In Chapter 2 of the PDP sectoral growth targets for employment was identified. The table below provides an overview of the employment growth targets that will have to be aligned with skills development in the province.

Table 7.3: sectoral employment targets for 2030<sup>1</sup>

Sector	2010	2030	Additional Jobs (2010-2030)
Agriculture	64 000	136 000	71 000
Mining	162 000	218 000	55 000
Manufacturing	52 000	178 000	127 000
Electricity	3 000	17 000	14 000
Construction	34 000	91 000	57 000
Trade	134 000	268 000	134 000
Transport	27 000	68 000	41 000
Finance	37 000	112 000	76 000
Community Services	166 000	355 000	189 000
Households	69 000	120 000	51 000
<b>TOTAL</b>	<b>748 000</b>	<b>1 563 000</b>	<b>815 000</b>

Source: Urban-Econ calculations based on Global Insight Data (2013), Stats SA (2013) and the NDP (2012)

Based on the skills requirements provided in Table 7.2 and the economic growth targets discussed above, skills requirements for 2030 could be identified. Table 7.4 illustrates the skills requirements for the North West province towards 2030.

Table 7.4: North West province skills requirements (excluding household employment) (2030)

2010	Skilled	Semi-skilled	Unskilled	Total
Agriculture	9 000	27 000	28 000	64 000
Mining	49 000	97 000	16 000	162 000

<sup>1</sup> Tourism is located within the Trade, Transport and Finance sectors.  
SMME development is located across all sectors.

2010	Skilled	Semi-skilled	Unskilled	Total
Manufacturing	19 000	27 000	6 000	52 000
Electricity	1 000	2 000	-	3 000
Construction	8 000	20 000	5 000	34 000
Trade	44 000	75 000	15 000	134 000
Transport	10 000	15 000	2 000	27 000
Finance	23 000	12 000	1 000	37 000
Community Services	114 000	43 000	8 000	166 000
<b>TOTAL</b>	<b>277 000</b>	<b>320 000</b>	<b>82 000</b>	<b>679 000</b>
2030	Skilled	Semi-skilled	Unskilled	Total
Agriculture	19 000	57 000	60 000	136 000
Mining	65 000	131 000	22 000	218 000
Manufacturing	66 000	93 000	20 000	178 000
Electricity	7 000	9 000	1 000	17 000
Construction	21 000	55 000	14 000	91 000
Trade	88 000	150 000	29 000	268 000
Transport	24 000	38 000	6 000	68 000
Finance	71 000	38 000	3 000	112 000
Community Services	245 000	92 000	18 000	356 000
<b>TOTAL</b>	<b>606 000</b>	<b>664 000</b>	<b>173 000</b>	<b>1 443 000</b>
SKILLS DEFICIT	Skilled	Semi-skilled	Unskilled	Total
Agriculture	10 000	30 000	31 000	71 000
Mining	17 000	33 000	6 000	55 000
Manufacturing	47 000	66 000	14 000	127 000
Electricity	5 000	8 000	1 000	14 000
Construction	13 000	35 000	9 000	57 000
Trade	44 000	75 000	15 000	134 000
Transport	14 000	23 000	4 000	41 000
Finance	48 000	26 000	2 000	76 000
Community Services	131 000	49 000	9 000	189 000
<b>TOTAL</b>	<b>329 000</b>	<b>344 000</b>	<b>91 000</b>	<b>764 000</b>

Source: Urban-Econ calculations based on Stats SA (2013x), Global Insight Data (2013xi), NDP (2012xii) and Rossouw and Naude (2007)

It becomes apparent from Table 7.3 that if economic growth should reach the targets set out for the North West province, a skills deficit will be created in the absence of new skills development. The ability to achieve the economic growth targets will thus be reliant on the implementation of a skills development programme. According to Table 7.3 it is clear that by 2030, 329 000 skilled workers and 344 000 semi-skilled workers will be needed to reach the desired provincial economic growth. The majority of skills training will be required in the community services, finance, trade and manufacturing sectors. The skills development programme must therefore focus specifically on these sectors to meet the future demands in the province.

### 7.3.2. HOW TO ACHIEVE IT

Improving the education, training and innovation system in the North West province will be through focusing on the following four sub-sectors:

- early childhood development
- basic education

- post-school
- research and innovation systems

#### **7.4. EARLY CHILDHOOD DEVELOPMENT (ECD)**

Early childhood is the most important phase for overall development throughout the human lifespan. Early childhood interventions of high quality have lasting effects on learning and motivation of an individual. In the human life cycle the early childhood phase from birth to nine years is considered the most important phase for every human-being. Giving children the best start in life means ensuring them good health, proper nutrition and early learning. The well-being of children depends on the ability of families to function effectively. Children need to grow up in a nurturing and secure family that can ensure their development, protection, survival and participation in family and social life. Education and training providers for ECD in the North West province are:

- public centres
- non-profit centres
- private centres
- corporate foundations

Only 76.6 per cent of primary schools in the NWP offered Grade R in 2009 (DBE, 2011b)

*Early Childhood Development (ECD) refers to a comprehensive approach to policies and programmes for children from birth to nine years of age with the active participation of their parents and caregivers. Its purpose is to protect the rights of the child to develop his or her full cognitive, emotional, social and physical*

##### **7.4.1. NUTRITIONAL PROGRAMME FOR MOTHERS AND INFANTS**

The effect of early nutrition in the development of a child has shown countless positive effects. Under nutrition is the single most deleterious determinant of a poor child development, with a strong link also to diminished adult capacity, health and adjustment. Indirectly sufficient early childhood nutrition has been proven to increase school attainment by up to one grade and adult earnings by up to 40 per cent. The opportunity to improve ECD of all children through a nutritional programme needs to be embraced throughout the North West province. In the past ECD planning was done separately from ECD nutritional planning but the two should be merged to ensure that all the needs of a child are adhered to. The ECD nutritional programme should be linked to the provincial household food and nutrition security programme which are discussed in greater detail in Chapter 9.

##### **ACTIONS:**

- Design and implement a nutritional programme which entails nutrition support for pregnant and breastfeeding women and young children through home, community and facility-based programmes.
- The nutritional programmes should be followed by a childhood development and care programme for all children under the age of three.
- Interdepartmental coordination between the Department of Health, Department of Social Development, Women, Children and People with Disabilities and the Department of Education towards providing sufficient nutrition in ECD. Integrate ECD planning and early childhood nutrition planning.



### 7.4.2. ECD TRAINING AND EDUCATION

ECD must be a top priority among the measures to improve the quality of education and long-term prospects of future generations in the North West province. Dedicated resources should be channelled towards ensuring that all children are well cared for from an early age and receive appropriate emotional, cognitive and physical development stimulation. Early childhood development must be flexible and provide for not only children but when required support for their primary care givers. It has been reported on provincial level that two of the main challenges in ECD are inadequate infrastructure and budget allocation for subsidies. The need exist for a comprehensive provincial ECD programme addressing all the different components and challenges of ECD.



All children should have at least two years of pre-school education. Currently there are very large disparities between the qualifications of different teachers. A large percentage of teachers only have a diploma in education while less have a degree in education. The standards relating to who is officially qualified to teach pre-school education is unclear. With the assistance of the private sector sufficient capacity can be created for pre-schooling

but it is important for government to take a stronger role.

The percentage of Grade 1 learners in the NWP who received Grade R: 67 per cent in 2009 (DBE, 2011b)

A challenge to privately provided ECD centres is their uneven distribution. It is often the case that the most vulnerable and poor children especially in rural areas do not have access to pre-school education centres. According to the Department of Basic Education's annual report on ordinary schools only 76.6 per cent of primary schools in the North West province has Grade R on offer. To ensure all children in the province receive pre-school education the percentage of schools with Grade R available should be increased.

Many families cannot afford to pay for early childhood services for their children. Comprehensive ECD and education will assist these children to escape the poverty trap and it is thus crucial that all children in the province have equal access to ECD centres and pre-school education. Early learning and support for child development should not be restricted to services provided by centres; it must be expanded to include home- and community-based programmes. There is currently little government support for the establishment of either centre-based or expanded services in underserved areas, nor are there policies to ensure that children from families who cannot afford fees, can still access services, either in centres or in home- and community-based programmes. For these reasons, government departments responsible for provisions for young children must work together to support quality early childhood services that are accessible and affordable to all families.

The need exists for coordination of weaknesses between the different sectors and departments responsible for ECD services. An authority or organisation to bring all participating sectors in government together to work towards agreed ECD goals needs to be established. This requires an independent mechanism - an agency, board or commission with high-level influence, an explicit mandate, and the necessary resources including expertise, to drive the ECD agenda forward and deliver results.

#### ACTIONS:

- Capacitation and resourcing of provincial and local government to ensure provision of a comprehensive ECD programme, including funding, infrastructure and quality assurance. Attract foreign donors and private sector funders in ECD in the province.

- Provide pre-school teachers with effective teacher guides and learners with high-quality readers and workbooks. Invest further in training early childhood development practitioners, upgrading their qualifications and developing clear career paths.
- Maintain a strong and vibrant layer of ECD centres run by NGOs and community-based organisations but with government playing a stronger role. Government must expand ECD programmes to reach all vulnerable children, including children in rural area and with disabilities.
- Insure coordination of weaknesses between the different sectors and departments responsible for ECD services:
  - at a provincial level, a provincial inter-departmental structure/unit on early childhood care and development must be established under the lead of the Department of Education, together with the Department of Social Development, Women, Children and Persons living with Disabilities, the Department of Health and the Office of the Premier as equal partners
  - at municipal level, structures/units on early childhood care and development must be established, consisting of the Departments of Education, Social Development and Health, and the Mayor's Office as equal partners
- Monitor the progress of ECD in the province through an assessment of Grade 1 learners in schools.
- Encourage innovation in the way ECD development services are delivered. Pilot home and community-based early childhood development interventions in selected districts. Establish and implement toy libraries in support of the social sector ECD.

### 7.5. BASIC EDUCATION

Basic education is the phase in which the rest of an individual's life will be determined. Quality education and guidance will open doors for students and provide them with opportunities for their future. The value and role of "knowledge" is different in every culture but good basic education is essential in every culture and at all levels. Giving priority to basic education will support the development of the North West province in the long-term. The youth of today is the working force of tomorrow. The three main role playing factors in education in the province are demand, curriculum and budget. The three factors determine the quality and quantity of school facilities in the North West province. Basic education can be separated into primary and secondary education and training providers. The following are primary education and training providers:



- public schools
- independent schools
- home schools

Secondary education and training providers are the following:

- public schools
- technical high schools
- independent schools
- home schools

According to the annual survey of the Department of Basic Education for ordinary schools in 2010 there were 1 678 schools located in the North West province which accounts for 6.5 per cent of the schools in South-

Africa. Of the schools located in the province 3.1 per cent were independent facilities and the other 96.9 per cent were public schools.

Table 7.5 indicates the total number of learners, including public and independent learners from 2010 to 2012. The information for the district municipalities is based on the provincial growth rates. It was assumed that the distribution will remain the same across the district municipalities. From the table it is evident that there has been an increase of 16,028 learners (1.1%) from 2010 to 2011. It is also clear that the majority of these learners are situated within the BPDM (nearly 40%).

**Table 7.5: total number of learners (public and independent), 2010 – 2012**

STUDY AREA	LEARNERS		
	2010	2011	2012
<b>BPDM</b>	279 961	282 176	285 872
<b>DRSMDM</b>	124 572	125 558	127 202
<b>NMMDM</b>	213 511	215 200	218 019
<b>DKKDM</b>	141 070	142 186	144 049
<b>NORTH WEST</b>	<b>759 114</b>	<b>765 120</b>	<b>775 142</b>

Source: Urban-Econ calculations based on information obtained from the Department of Basic Education, 2012

The National Senior Certificate (NSC) examination of 2008 was the first based on the National Curriculum Statement (NCS), which requires all learners in Grades 10 to 12 to take seven subjects. The NSC is the final Grade 12 examination in South-Africa. The share of learners gaining a NSC is regarded as one of the most important indicators of the performance of the country's schooling system. The number of candidates enrolled for the NSC in the North West province declined in 2011 and increased slightly in 2012. Part-time enrolment has increased since 2010.

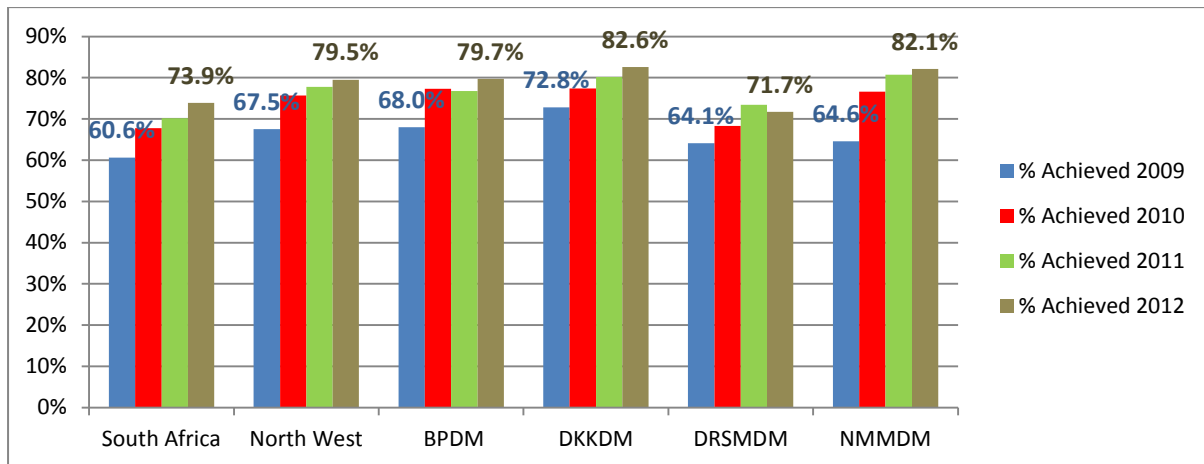
**Table 7.6: national senior certificate enrolment (part-time and full-time), 2010 – 2012**

PROVINCE	NUMBER OF CANDIDATES								
	2010			2011			2012		
	Full-time	Part-time	Total	Full-time	Part-time	Total	Full-time	Part-time	Total
<b>NORTH WEST</b>	29 586	2 679	32 265	25 930	3 144	29 074	27 555	3 437	30 992
<b>SOUTH-AFRICA</b>	558 980	82 553	641 533	511 038	112 780	623 818	527 814	120 484	648 298

Source: Department of Basic Education, 2013b

Even though the number of candidates enrolling for NSC's in the North West province has decreased since 2009, the overall pass rate has increased. The high pass rate should be sustained and even improved upon, but more should be done to encourage an increase in enrolment numbers in the province. The figure below illustrates the high pass rate of the North West province compared to the national average.

Figure 7.1: comparison of NSC passes from 2009 to 2012



Source: Department of Basic Education, 2013b

It can thus be concluded that the matric pass rate in the North West province has been higher than the national average over the last three years. With the share of students gaining a NSC regarded as one of the most important indicators of the performance of the province's schooling system it can be said that the North West province has performed fairly well with pass rates. The decrease in annual enrolment is a matter of concern regardless of the positive pass rate. The decrease in the number of NSC students indicates the schooling system prior to Grade 12 fails the students or fewer students are enrolling on a yearly basis. Both possibilities need urgent attention.

This sub-section of the PDP is aligned with the 'Action Plan and Vision for Schooling in 2025' the (Department of basic Education, 2011b<sup>xiii</sup>) Millennium Development Goals (RSA, 2010<sup>xiv</sup>) with inputs from the provincial Department of Education.

### 7.5.1. IMPROVE LEARNING OUTCOMES: CURRENT PERSPECTIVE

The first intervention discussed was the improvement of learning outcomes in the North West province. Note that all the interventions discussed in this section have improving overall learning outcomes in the province as fundamental objective. It can thus be said that all the actions identified further in the section will be towards improving learning outcomes in the North West province.

#### 7.5.1.1. IMPROVE LITERACY, NUMERACY/MATHEMATICS AND SCIENCE OUTCOMES

There has been a strong tradition in South-Africa and the North West province of focusing on Grade 12 examination results and aiming to improve learner performance in this grade. Over the last decade, however, the emphasis has changed towards monitoring learner performance in the lower grades as well, particularly in the foundation and intermediate phases. The extent to which these outcomes are achieved is monitored through the administration of the Annual National Assessments (ANA) (Department of Basic Education, 2012). ANA has four key impact areas to improve learning in schools:

- to expose educators to better assessment practices
- to make it easier for districts to identify the schools that are most in need of assistance
- to encourage schools to celebrate success in their schools and outstanding performance
- to empower parents with important information about their children's performance

The table below analysis the average score in literacy and numeracy in the North West province.

**Table 7.7: average literacy and numeracy scores, grade 3, 6 and 9, 2012**

	GRADE 3		GRADE 6		GRADE 9	
	Literacy	Numeracy	Literacy	Numeracy	Literacy	Numeracy
NORTH WEST	46.4%	34.1%	34.6%	23.6%	39.2%	11.2%
SOUTH AFRICA	52.0%	41.2%	39.2%	26.7%	39.0%	12.7%

Source: Department of Basic Education, 2013a

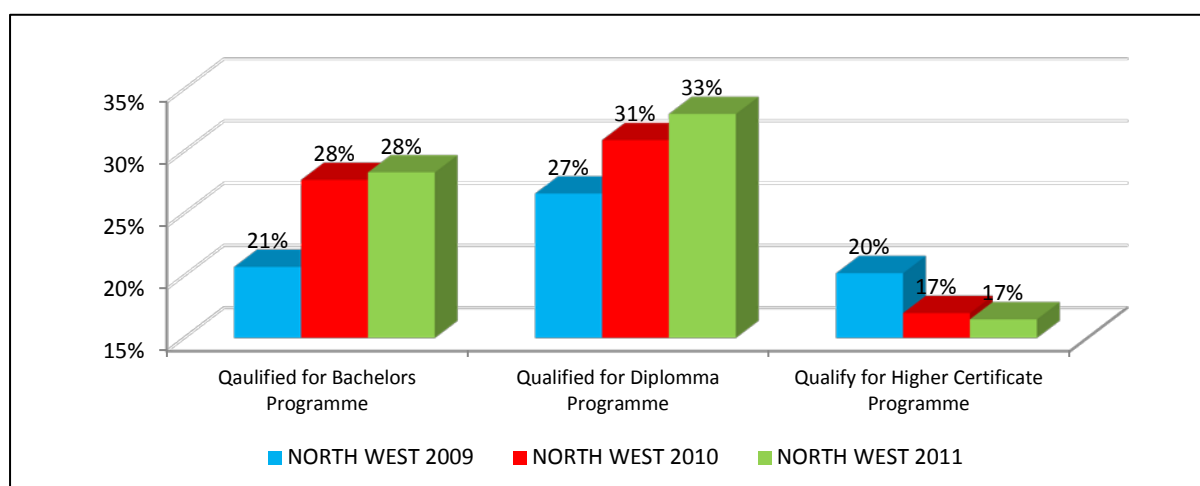
It can be concluded from Table 7.7 that the average literacy and numeracy scores for the North West province are lower than the national averages. Compared to other countries in the world the learner performance for South-Africa is viewed as unacceptably low and has recently been rated among the top ten worst performing countries in the world (Department of Basic Education, 2011). There exists an urgent need in the province to increase the number of learners in Grade 3, 6 and 9 who, by the end of the year, have mastered the minimum language and numeracy competencies for their particular grade. By 2030, 90 per cent of learners in grades 3, 6 and 9 must achieve 50 per cent or more in the annual national assessments in these subjects.

The 2011 ANA programme involved 19,740 grade 3 learners and 19,397 grade 6 learners in 827,840 schools respectively. The table below analysis the average score in literacy end numeracy for the North West province.

#### **7.5.1.2. INCREASE THE NUMBER OF GRADE 12 LEARNERS WHO BECOME ELIGIBLE FOR A BACHELOR'S PROGRAMME AT A UNIVERSITY**

A NSC qualification dramatically increases the opportunities available to individuals in terms of both further education as well as employment opportunities. A comparison of the type of qualifications which were obtained in the province between 2009 and 2011 is provided in the figure below. There is an increase in the number of learners qualifying for Bachelor and Diploma Programmes while the number of learners qualifying for Higher Certificate Programmes decreased.

**Figure 7.2: comparison of the NSC performance by the type of qualification 2009-2011**



Source: Department of Basic Education, 2012

Through the interventions discussed in the remaining of this section the number of grade 12 learners who become eligible for a bachelor's programme at a university needs to increase on an annual basis.

### 7.5.1.3. INCREASE THE NUMBER OF STUDENTS ELIGIBLE TO STUDY MATHS AND SCIENCE AT UNIVERSITY

Although government has identified mathematics and science as key school focus subjects to reach its education development goals, continuing low pass rates do not augur well for the future. Consideration should be given to the Dinaledi Schools initiative, which increases access to maths and science in underprivileged schools. The Dinaledi intervention programme to improve learning outcomes in mathematics and physical science in secondary schools was introduced in 2001. This programme involved providing support to teachers and learners, through training and supplementary materials, in almost 500 mostly historically disadvantaged schools. Its focus included strengthening the two subjects in Grades 8 and 9 and encouraging learners to continue with these subjects beyond Grade 9.

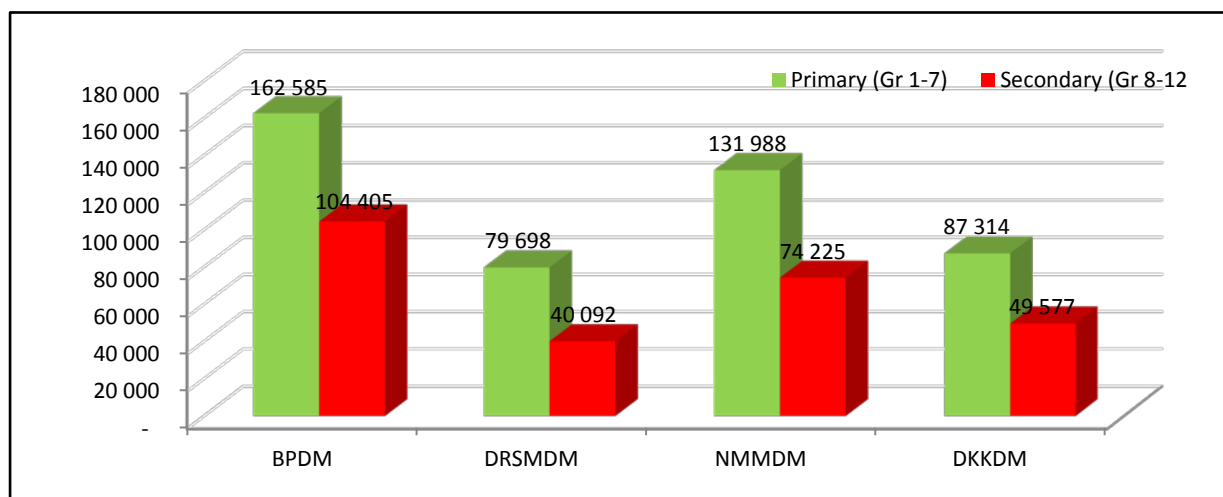
### 7.5.1.4. RETAIN MORE LEARNERS

Enrolment and completion of secondary school play a crucial role in creating healthy cohesive societies and as a result the stimulation of economic growth. The North West province must aim at a completion rate in secondary school of between 80 per cent and 90 per cent including learners in Further Education and Training (FET) colleges.

Career guidance in the senior phases of primary school will help reduce the high numbers of learners who drop out of school. Career guidance creates awareness among students of further educational opportunities and assists them in making informed career choices. Career choices will motivate pupils to complete school and make a success of their future.

It is clearly visible from Figure 7.3 that the numbers of learners dropped significantly from primary school to secondary school in 2010.

Figure 7.3: number of learners, 2012



Source: Department of Basic Education, 2012

### 7.5.2. AREAS OF INTERVENTION

There are a number of issues which requires special attention towards ultimately creating a comprehensive schooling system in the North West province. The first issue is that the schooling system needs to pay special attention to the promotion of all official languages.

Research has shown that children learn better when key concepts are taught to them in their home language during the first few years of schooling. The home language of learners should be used to teach key concepts

for longer but with English being introduced to children earlier in the foundation phase. According to the Department of Basic Education (2010) there were 142 single medium schools in the North West province during 2009 with only Setswana as medium of instruction. The number of English / Setswana parallel mediums schools in the province was the highest with 714 such schools in 2009. The single medium schools in the province need to be transformed to parallel medium schools to promote the proficiency in English among learners.

Everyone is born with different talents and abilities. These talents need to be discovered and developed at an early age within the schooling system. Current curriculum restricts diversification to accommodate the needs of different learners. Students with special needs must also be accommodated in the schooling system within an inclusive education policy. A challenge is that those learners with special needs who are enrolled in schools very often do not receive the specialised attention they require. This is especially the case in poor areas. Resources and skills to accommodate learners with special needs are absent in the schooling system. The education and assistance special needs students are currently receiving can be described as basic, rather than the specialised education they require.

Entrepreneurship is the act and art of being a person who undertakes innovations or introduces new things and has finance and business acumen to transform innovations into economic goods. The education system in the North West province must promote entrepreneurship. Training in entrepreneurship today will lead to innovative thinking in the future.

The percentage of schools in the NWP complying with a very basic level of school infrastructure: 88 per cent in 2009 (DBE, 2011b)

The Department of Education should ensure that the teachers have the skills and competence to deliver the curriculum. Learners must cover all topics and skills areas set out for an academic year. It is often the case that teachers reach the end of the academic year without completing their teaching programme for the year. This results in not all topics set out in the curriculum being covered. There is a lack of research to measure the current extent of the problem in the province but the issue requires urgent attention. Non completion of the yearly curriculum in one grade makes it more difficult to complete programmes in subsequent grades. In other words, the problem is easily compounded and will spiral if not addressed.

### ACTIONS:

- Transform the single medium schools in the province to parallel medium schools with English being introduced earlier in the foundation stages while key concepts are taught in the home language of the students.
- Training and effective support materials should be available for teachers and learners to facilitate the transition to English as the language of learning and teaching.
- Monitor teachers to ensure the curriculum is delivered completed on a yearly basis.
- Provide inclusive education that enables everyone to participate effectively in a free society.
- Learners with special needs should receive specialised education and assistance. Their needs must be catered for in curriculum design, presentation of classes, physical requirements, and use of technology where appropriate. The capacity of teachers in ordinary schools should be strengthened to provide special needs support. Intervention of fully qualified specialists in the field is further required.
- Entrepreneurial education.
- At pre-primary and primary level, emphasis should be on the development of personal skills useful to an entrepreneur such as independent thinking, team work and creative skills.
- At secondary level, programmes should be designed to impart a spirit of entrepreneurship among students through team-based, experiential learning. Learners should be taught to run their own



enterprises from the development of a business idea to the organisation of production and commercialisation of the product or service.

- Introduce career guidance at the senior phase of primary school to ensure that learners are aware of further educational opportunities and can make informed career choices.

### 7.5.3. ERADICATE INFRASTRUCTURE BACKLOGS

There exists a definite school infrastructure backlog in the province. The NDP sets a target to eradicate school infrastructure backlogs and ensure that all schools meet the minimum standards by 2016. This will require a comprehensive school infrastructure audit throughout the province to determine the current reality and enable sufficient future planning. Once the infrastructure is in place, maintenance thereof must be priority at all times. School infrastructure requires constant maintenance to ensure a safe and quality environment for all pupils.

Additional to the backlog, the physical state of the schools varies immensely. On the one hand you can find public schools in the province with a great variety of educational and sporting amenities and on the other hand there are numerous schools with poor infrastructure not conducive to the education of pupils. These schools can often be found in rural areas. All children in the province should enjoy equal access to a quality educational environment.

School infrastructure planning should be sensitive to the fact that needs in different geographical locations could vary greatly. The needs of a school in a rural area will differ from the same type of school located in an urban area. An innovative approach in infrastructure development should be encouraged since resources are often limited disproportionately to the needs of children. The provision of adequate school transport is fundamental to ensuring accessibility to basic education for all people throughout the North West province. School transport should be available in the urban and rural areas of the province.

Communication between the provincial Department of Education and schools should happen on a regular basis especially with schools that have infrastructure needs. The current system makes it difficult for these schools to access information on when their needs will be addressed by the provincial department. If schools have an indication of the time they will have to wait they can plan how to improve and cope with their situation while waiting for assistance from provincial level. The Department of Education should have information readily available for schools through, for instance, their website.

### ACTIONS

- Conduct a comprehensive school infrastructure audit throughout the province to enable sufficient planning. Infrastructure planning must be done taking the unique geographical location and needs of each school into consideration.
- Plan new schools according to population trends and settlement patterns to avoid constructing schools where demand is declining. This will require closer coordination with local authorities.
- Monitor the maintenance of existing infrastructure; capacitate schools to maintain their infrastructure sufficiently.
- Target no-fee schools when planning infrastructure to compensate for resource deficits in communities. Significant infrastructure upgrading.
- Learner safety must be taken into account at all times when planning infrastructure
- Develop innovative designs and construction methods for schools and infrastructure to deliver services more efficiently and cost effectively without compromising quality.
- Expand infrastructure delivery capacity.
- Subsidised transport solutions should be implemented for the transportation of school children to and from schools.

- To avoid construction delays clarify and streamline the responsibilities of different institutions including provincial Department of Education, Department of Public Works, Roads and Transport and local authorities.
- Establish communication between the Department of Education and schools through among others, the departmental website.
- High speed broadband should be readily available and incorporated into the design of schools. Corporate foundations, NGOs and international donors should be invited to work with the government to develop open source educational software and content.

#### 7.5.4. HUMAN CAPACITY AND TEACHER DEVELOPMENT

Table 7.5.5 indicates the total number of educators, including the educators from both the public and independent schools. The information for the district municipalities is based on the provincial growth rates, if it is assumed that the distribution will remain the same across the district municipalities. It is evident from Table 7.5.5 that there has been a decrease of 0.2 per cent in the number of educators from 2010 to 2012, i.e. a total of 82 educators. Similar to the distribution of learners, it is clear that the majority of the educators are found within the BPDM, also accounting for nearly 40 per cent of the total provincial number of educators.

**Table 7.8: total number of educators (public and independent), 2010 – 2012**

STUDY AREA	EDUCATORS		
	2010	2011	2012
<b>BPDM</b>	10 008	99 66	9 976
<b>DRSMDM</b>	4 058	4 041	4 045
<b>NMMDM</b>	7 042	7 012	7 020
<b>DKKDM</b>	4 898	4 877	4 883
<b>NORTH WEST</b>	<b>26 006</b>	<b>25 897</b>	<b>25 924</b>

Source: Urban-Econ calculations based on information obtained from the Department of Basic Education, 2012

The table below indicates the different ratios in terms of educator and learners; school and learner ratio; as well as school and educator ratios.

**Table 7.9: ratios, 2010 – 2012**

STUDY AREA	SCHOOLS								
	2010			2011			2012		
	Educator: Learner	School: Learner	School: Educator	Educator: Learner	School: Learner	School: Educator	Educator: Learner	School: Learner	School: Educator
<b>BPDM</b>	28	433	15	28	444	16	29	457	16
<b>DRSMDM</b>	31	407	13	31	418	13	31	430	14
<b>NMMDM</b>	30	419	14	31	431	14	31	443	14
<b>DKKDM</b>	29	590	20	29	606	21	30	623	21
<b>NORTH WEST</b>	<b>29</b>	<b>446</b>	<b>15</b>	<b>30</b>	<b>458</b>	<b>16</b>	<b>30</b>	<b>471</b>	<b>16</b>

Source: Urban-Econ Calculations based on information obtained from the Department of Basic Education, 2012

The number of educators per learner in the province for 2012 is 30 learners to each educator. On national level the educator learner ratio amounts to 1:29, which is fairly similar to that of the province. The average number of learners per school amounts to 471 in the province, slightly below the national figure of 481. The DKKDM

has a high number of learners per school (623), but yet, the educator-learner ratio for the DKKDM is not above the provincial ratio. This is because the district manages to maintain a high number of educators per school. The DRSMDM which has the smallest population of all four district municipalities has a school to learner ratio of only 430, but on average only 14 educators per school, and therefore a high educator to learner ratio (31). A similar situation is observed in the NMMDM.

From the table it is also evident that the BPDM has the lowest educator to learner ration, of 29. The learner, educator and school ratios for the North West province compare well to the national averages. The current

The percentage of teachers absent from school on an average day in the NWP:  
6.69 per cent in 2009 (DBE, 2011b)

teacher learner ratio should be maintained in the province and even lowered where possible. A high teacher learner ratio impacts negatively on the quality of education pupils receive. Teachers become less able to provide individual attention to learners in classes with more than 40 pupils at a time. Large classes further decrease the attractiveness of teaching as a profession, making it more difficult to attract and retain

teachers. It has been reported it is not necessarily access to schools in the North West province which hinders the education of pupils but rather the quality of the education they receive.

One of the key steps in improving education in the North West province is to improve the human capacity in the schooling system. Human capacity in the schooling system depends on the teachers available and their level of skill and commitment. It is often the case that teachers do not have the skill and competence to provide quality education. In the majority of cases a lack of skill and competence is as a result of the training they received. Apartheid did not only cause segregation in schools, but also segregation in the training teachers received. Not all teachers received quality training as a result of apartheid and the exclusion from sufficient opportunities.

Individual teachers, teacher unions, NGOs and government have come a long way towards eradicating the training imbalance among teachers but a need still exists for urgent training and development among a big portion of existing teachers. The School of Continuing Teacher Education in the NWU is responsible for the in-service training of under and un-qualified teachers, as well as the further training of already qualified teachers. The training provided by the School of Continuing Teacher Education and other role-players should be promoted to ensure the improvement of professionalism, skills and subject knowledge of teachers throughout their careers.

Professional associations have first-hand experience in certain subjects on a daily basis. Reeling in the knowledge attained by the professional associations will enable teachers to educate pupils on best practises and updates on cutting-edge research in a variety of subjects. There should thus be collaboration between professional associations and teachers to ensure the education provided in schools reflects the reality of the professional environment.

The percentage of teachers in the NWP who are able to attain minimum standards in anonymous and sample-based assessments of their subject knowledge:  
46 per cent in 2009 (DBE, 2011b)

### ACTIONS:

- The Funza Lushaka bursary scheme is a new national strategy to attract new potential candidates into the teaching profession. The provincial government must work with national government to immediately absorb Funza Lushaka graduates into schools and promote the efficiency of the bursary.

- Produce more and better qualified teachers. The *Integrated Strategic Planning Framework for Teacher Education and Development in South-Africa 2011–2025* provides a useful framework and must be implemented effectively in the North West province.
- Develop teachers' skills, commitment, professionalism and subject knowledge throughout their careers. Create a partnership with the NWU to promote the School of Continuing Teacher Education.
- Teacher development and training programmes must be designed to provide relevant support. The key focus should be the following:
  - ✓ assist teachers in dealing with classroom situations that exist in reality, and not just deal with ideal situations
  - ✓ training on curriculum pacing and the subject content that teachers find difficult to teach
  - ✓ help teachers develop better ways of delivering the curriculum through the learner workbooks provided; including structuring lessons, covering the material in the curriculum and conducting assessments
  - ✓ teachers should be encouraged and assisted to improve their knowledge of the subjects that they teach
  - ✓ ICT should be used as one of the ways of delivering teacher development
- Teachers must play an active role in their training and approach the Department of Education for assistance in the areas they have identified for further development.
- The use of technology should be embraced by teachers in their own training and in their teaching.
- Review the pay structure for teachers in the province to increase the attractiveness of the profession. Bursaries alone will not attract enough top-achieving candidates into teaching.
- Encourage leadership and good governance development amongst teachers and school principals.
- Recognise teachers for their efforts and professionalism. Teaching should be a highly valued profession. Annual rewards to teachers in the province, including the best teachers in science, mathematics, other teachers, and teachers who excel in promotion of innovative thinking amongst learners.
- Consideration should be given to public investment in accommodation for teachers in the rural areas of the province. Adequate accommodation could make rural schools preferable for some teachers.
- Create operations between teachers and professional associations.

### 7.5.5. PROPOSALS FOR IMPROVING DISTRICT SUPPORT

Well-functioning district offices will assist the provincial government in addressing educational challenges. The majority of district offices are not coping with the responsibilities they are assigned with. District offices face capacity challenges including staff shortages, lack of skills and training among existing staff members, lack of physical supporting resources and the absence of effective management structures or models. The result of all the capacity challenges is bottlenecks in district offices affecting the functioning of the schooling system for which they are accountable. Whilst building capacity in districts is vital, the ultimate goal must be to ensure that schools receive the district support they need to function as they should.

District offices should also ensure communication and information sharing between the education authorities and schools, and also between schools. It is necessary to construct a results-oriented framework of mutual accountability where districts are accountable for supporting schools, including the nature of the support they provide, the number of times they have visited each school and what they did during their visits. Schools also need to be accountable to education authorities for their overall performance on key indicators. More importantly, schools should be accountable to the school community for the performance of the school in relation to the annual school plan. Finally, parents should be accountable for the behaviour, attitude, attendance and work ethic of their children.

### ACTIONS:

- Construct a result oriented framework of mutual accountability where districts are accountable for supporting schools, schools are accountable to the community in relation to the annual school plan, and parents are accountable for the behaviour, attitude and work ethic of their children.
- Curriculum experts at district level should support teachers, and managers should support principals and heads of departments. Districts should also be responsible for planning for the academic year in each school, making sure that each school has all the necessary materials, and designing interventions to support underperforming schools.
- Deploy multi-disciplinary support teams to work with districts in the short to medium-term.
- Districts should help to develop the leadership and management capacity of principals and heads of departments. At a minimum, this development should cover training in the key responsibilities of principals and members of school senior management teams.
- Adequate capacity in districts must be established to enable them to support the schools in the province. Some of the support provided by district offices should be curriculum management, project management, data analysis, monitoring, planning, reporting, accounting and problem solving.
- Improve teaching in schools through targeted support by district offices. There is a need to take stock of past successes and failures in the training of district staff and to rely partly on ICT in taking the best training to as many as possible, bearing in mind that all districts have at least some access to computers and the internet.

### 7.5.6. SPORTS, PHYSICAL EDUCATION, ARTS AND CULTURE

The role of schools in the education of pupils should go beyond providing cognitive development. Schools must be utilised as vehicles to promote access to a range of public services and supporting activities / facilities. Health, psychosocial support, sport, art and culture should among others be accessible to all children in the school system.

The provision of for instance sport facilities is often neglected in rural areas. Learners from rural areas should have the same access to services, as does learners from urban areas.

There should be a deliberate collaboration between the Department of Education and Department of Sports, Arts and Culture to encourage the participation of learners taking art subjects and participating in cultural events. This will entail the inclusion of the Department of Economic Development, Environment, Conservation and Tourism to provide practical experience to pupils in the preservation of heritage sites for learners taking tourism as a subject.

Additional to sports, arts and culture, the overall health of pupils must be endorsed. Health awareness campaigns as well as carefully formulated health promotion strategies preventing alcohol, tobacco, and drug use, STD infections; injuries, obesity and other eating disorders, stress, depression, and suicide must be developed for each school in the province.

The percentage of schools in the NWP visited at least twice a year by district officials for monitoring and support purposes: 66 per cent in 2009 (DBE, 2011b)

### ACTIONS:

- Collaboration between the Department of Sport, Arts and Culture and the Department of Education to promote school sport, art and culture in the province.
- Include the Department of Economic Development, Environment, Conservation and Tourism in educational planning to provide practical experience to pupils.
- Development, upgrading and maintenance of facilities (multipurpose sport and recreation facilities including school sport linked to national and local plans).
- Adequate resource location in rural areas

- Create awareness among local municipalities (LM's) regarding the importance of sport in the development of the youth.
- Launch health awareness campaigns and health promotion strategies throughout the province to address of the health and wellbeing risks pupils are faced with

### 7.5.7. IMPROVE SCHOOL MANAGEMENT

Principals play an immense role in the management and overall functioning of schools. It is the overarching responsibility of a school principal to lead the core business of the school which are learning and teaching. The quality of schools and the education provided in them are often not up to standard due to the appointment of unskilled principals. These principals require support and training to develop their skills and the quality of their schools. If it is realised that despite training and support a school principal is still not up to standard, the necessary steps will have to be taken to replace him / her. Development and training of principals are of equal importance to that of teachers as discussed above.

The percentage of schools in the NWP where the school governing body meets minimum criteria in terms of effectiveness: 66 per cent in 2009 (DBE, 2011b)

The role of a school principal is too important to be occupied by someone not capable to do the job. School principals all over the province are to ensure that their schools have a school improvement plan in place which is updated on an annual basis. The improvement plan will indicate what key challenges the school are facing and how they can be addressed. This will measure the performance of principals towards reaching the goals set out on an annual basis.

The percentage of schools in the NWP that have acquired the full set of financial management responsibilities on the basis of an assessment of their financial management capacity: 83 per cent in 2009 (DBE, 2011b)

The percentage of children in the NWP who enjoys a publicly funded school lunch every school day: 53 per cent in 2009 (DBE, 2011b)

The percentage of schools in the NWP producing the minimum required management document, for instance a school budget, a school improvement plan, an annual report, attendance registers and a record of learner marks: 12 per cent in 2009 (DBE, 2011b)

### ACTIONS:

- The provincial Department of Education and national Department of Basic Education must work in collaboration to ensure human resources management capacity in the province is improved.
- The provincial Department of Education must ensure that human resources management capacity is improved and recruitment of principals is undertaken correctly. Where necessary the appointment process needs to be changed to ensure that competent individuals are attracted to become school principals. Appointment criteria of principals should include the following:
  - candidates should undergo a competency assessment to determine their suitability and identify the areas in which they would need development and support.
  - the North West province have a rural character in large areas and candidates must have the necessary skills to improve educational outcomes in these areas
- Provide support and training to existing principals showing the ability to lead a school successfully but who are currently lacking in skills.
- Each school in the North West province must have an improvement plan in place to be updated annually.
- Introduce performance contracts for principals and deputy principals. Other school management members should also be subject to a performance contract over time.

- Gradually provide principals with more administrative powers as the quality of school leadership improves. This will ensure principals are held accountable for their schools.
- Principals must utilise ICT as a way to from information sharing between each other and initiate discussion groups.

### 7.5.8. MUTUAL ACCOUNTABILITY AND COMMUNITY OWNERSHIP

In order for schools to make decisions that will benefit and represent the communities in which they are located, community involvement and ownership of schools are crucial. School Governing Bodies (SGB's) must play an increasing role in improving the quality of schooling in the province.

SGB's are representative of a democratic structure and should at all times be upheld as a means of maintaining accountability to local communities. Special measures must be taken in poorer and rural communities in order to encourage community ownership of schools. Involving the local communities in decision making processes will create ownership of schools. An imbalance often exist in power relations between parents and schools, since parents from disadvantaged and poor backgrounds do not view themselves equipped enough to engage with teachers about the performance of their children and the school. Schools must develop performance indicators which are accessible to parents and provide frequent feedback to parents on their children's performance. This must be provided to all parents regardless of their income and social status.

Only around 38.8 per cent of schools in the NWP had an email address in 2009 (DBE, 2011b)

Parents and schooling staff especially are mutually accountable for discipline within a school. Discipline and respect cannot solely be the responsibility of teachers. It is the responsibility of parents or caregivers to ensure that the children that they are responsible for have a recognised sense of respect and discipline, not only in the schooling system but in general. . The schooling system will then further build on the behavioural foundation established in the parenting home. Respectable relationships with parents or caregivers must at all times be maintained to ensure the accountability of both groups.

#### ACTIONS:

- Provide all stakeholders with clear information on accountability measures. Performance indicators must be accessible to all parents and frequent feedback provided to parents regarding the performance of their children. Performance indicators include among others the rate of improvement on ANA results, curriculum coverage and teacher and learner attendance.
- Provide additional support to SGB's. School governing bodies have a clear legal mandate to oversee the governance of schools. This includes extensive responsibility of finances and internal school policies.
- School management will have to work with communities on an on-going basis to develop and maintain a strong sense of ownership. Parents must be properly informed on their rights, duties and what the key school governance issues are. The media can be utilised for this purpose to ensure parents throughout the province have access to the relevant information. Radio and newspaper advertisements are among many ways to reach the public.
- A complaints officer should be appointed on provincial and district levels who can initiate appropriate actions when parents feel their rights are not being adhered to in a school.



### 7.5.9. ENHANCE INFORMATION AND COMMUNICATION TECHNOLOGY (ICT) IN SCHOOLS

ICT could and will most probably play a revolutionary role in education in the North West province over the next 18 years. The possibilities of ICT in the schooling system are endless. ICT removes distance and boundaries between pupils and education opportunities. Through the successful implementation of ICT systems in the province a pupil living in a rural town such as Madibogo can enjoy access to the same information than a pupil attending a school in the urbanised town of Rustenburg. ICT must be embraced in the province to enrich teaching and learning while taking educational outcomes to a new level.

The utilising of ICT in schooling should be approached with a measure of caution to avoid a 'digital divide' between those who have access to new technologies and those who do not. According to the Department of Basic Education (2010), only around 38.8 per cent of schools in the North West province had an email address in 2009. It is of great importance that all learners and schools gain access to ICT as soon as possible to reduce the risk of an unequal digital divide in the province. Infrastructure limitations in the rural areas of the province will have to be addressed as an urgent priority.

The percentage of learners in the NWP in schools with a library or media centre fulfilling certain minimum standards:  
**49 per cent** in 2009 (DBE, 2011b)

Access to high speed broadband will be the ideal method to reach all students, in the interim social media and other forms of technology can be used to overcome the current infrastructure challenges of high speed broadband. A large percentage of children will have access to a cellphone in their households and applications such as MXit was used in the past by the Department of Basic Education to distribute advice to matric students. The potential of such applications is limited but it has to be realised that the potential of ICT in education is endless.

ICT can also play an increased role in the management of schooling systems. Among others, the computerisation of routine administrative tasks and use of technology in training and communication will aid the management structures of schools immensely. ICT planning in school should be included and aligned to provincial ICT planning as described in Chapter 4 of the PDP.

#### ACTIONS:

- Utilise ICTs to improve educational outcomes in the province especially in maths and science as subject and the rural areas as geographical locations.
- Improve administration and management of schools with the implementation of ICT through linking schools with district offices and provincial offices and computerising routine administrative tasks to name but a few.
- Ensure a regional cooperation on ICT in schools.
- Address ICT infrastructure limitations through collaborations with different departments, businesses and other stakeholders. An example of such a partnership could be between the Department of Education and the Department of Sports, Art and Culture to distribute mobile libraries equipped with ICT technology to reach pupils in rural areas.

The percentage of school principals in the NWP rating the support services of districts as being satisfactory:  
**53 per cent** in 2009 (DBE, 2011b)

**7.5.10. ALIGN, CAPACITATE AND MOTIVATE ALL ROLE-PLAYERS**

There should be a common goal amongst all stakeholders in the provincial educational system. The goal is the improvement of educational outcomes in the North West province to address community needs and stimulate economic growth. All stakeholders in the education system must be motivated to reach this goal. To reach this goal the following challenges will require attention:

- capacity shortages in educational institutions to implement the policy successfully
- lack of resources to support both top performing schools and underperforming schools
- NWU has projects such as Ikataleng in place to improve education throughout the North West province. The project is not operated in conjunction with the schooling system
- there are numerous learners in the province who do not have access to textbooks, workbooks, exercise books and stationery that they need

**ACTIONS:**

- Provide educational institutions with the capacity to implement policy. Where capacity is lacking, this should be addressed as an urgent priority.
- Introduce incentive schemes linked to the annual national assessments to reward schools for consistent improvements.
- Top performing schools in the public and private sectors must be recognised as provincial assets. They should be supported and not saddled with unnecessary burdens. Top performing schools should support underperforming schools.
- Establishment of a North-West Educational Best Practice Committee, to advise the North West Department of Education on educational policy. Members should include education experts, academics from universities and other experts.
- Work in partnership with the NWU to utilise the availability of their knowledge and infrastructure towards improving education in the province especially in underperforming schools. The Department of Education must create a partnership with the NWU to work in unison on all educational projects launched in the province.
- Ensure that every learner has access to the minimum set of textbooks and workbooks required according to national policy.

IKATALENG is one of South-Africa's longest-running and most successful supplementary education programmes. It is currently in its 23<sup>rd</sup> year and has aided thousands of Grade 12 learners through Saturday classes to pass matric with full university exemption.

**7.6. POST-SCHOOL**

The post-schooling system will determine the future growth of South-Africa and the North West province. There are numerous post-school education and training providers in the North West province. The following are post-school education and training providers:

- universities
- universities of technology
- private higher education institutions
- public further education and training colleges
- private further education and training colleges
- workplace training providers

- non-profit organisations
- public and private learning centres
- professional colleges

### 7.6.1. THE COMPLETE POST-SCHOOL SYSTEM

In the past, post-school attainment was judged according to success in academic studies at a university. As indicated above, universities are only one of a number of post-school education providers. It was especially vocational training options which were not sufficiently available and when they were available they were disregarded and undervalued by teachers and parents. This is partly due to Apartheid in which vocational studies were associated with race-based job reservations. This paradigm and narrow outlook in post-school education need to be replaced with a focus on new training and job opportunities for the youth outside of universities. The important role of universities must not be undermined but the important role of other post-school educators must be heightened.

#### 7.6.1.1. ALIGN SKILLS DEVELOPMENT WITH ECONOMIC GROWTH SECTORS AND CLUSTERS

All role-players involved in the post-schooling system must provide focused skills development, education and training aligned with economic growth sectors and clusters. The role of Sectoral Education and Training Authorities (SETAs) should among others be utilised towards sector orientated education. Increased labour market information and technology need to be made available across the North West province especially in the rural areas. Access to adequate information will assist people in making informed decisions regarding their future. Entrepreneurial education should be encouraged from primary education structures through to tertiary education levels.

Skills development alignment will require clear data on current skills development in the province and the contribution of the private sector. Previous attempt to assess the contribution of the private sector in skills development in the North West province has failed despite considerable time and effort expended (John Addis, 2010<sup>xv</sup>). Some of the key provincial challenges include the following:

- there is a lack of reliable training data that has been recorded in the North West province since the advent of the Skills Development Act from the private sector and SETAs
- the information recorded by the SETAs are only on national level and does not reflect the province
- lack of willingness to participate in skill audits
- many of the large private employers operating in the North West province have their head offices located in Gauteng and as such do not provide separate training data for their provincial operations
- there is no skills development value chain or process in place

The percentage of learners in the NWP having access to the required textbooks and workbooks for the entire school year:  
Only **56 per cent** in 2009 (DBE, 2011b)

A key role-player in skills development in the province is the North West Business Forum. The North West Business Forum represents a wide range of companies and organisations operating in the province and is a key role-player in skills development in the province. Currently representative structures exist within the Forum to facilitate inputs into skills development. It has been noted that although the Business Forum is committed to skills development in the province, there lacks a co-ordinated strategy in place to achieve this (John Addis, 2010).

### ACTIONS

*A comprehensive intervention strategy needs to be put in place without delay to ensure that meaningful information and data on skills development becomes available and is used for skill planning purposes in the North*

*West province. The province must thus through a comprehensive skills audit identify critical skills areas and develop the skills of the youth accordingly with the support of the private sector.*

*The intervention strategy will allow for the following:*

- A provincial labour market information system where the following information is recorded, analysed and interpreted for policy formation:
  - ✓ current and projected skills needed by the industry
  - ✓ a provincial skills shortage list which is informed by the national scarce skills list
  - ✓ a current and reliable database of employers
- Information will be made available to the public, especially senior school learners who are about to make career choices, and employers.
- The inclusion of Resource Centres of Information in the planning of local governments.
- At tertiary level not only advanced entrepreneurial training will be provided, but industry specific applications should be taught to students in all fields of study, including to students in science, engineering, health, etc. All vocational education must be accompanied by extensive entrepreneurial training.

*For an intervention strategy to be developed successfully the following is necessary:*

- Develop a relationship with the SETA's through the Offices of the North West province.
- Develop a relationship with the North West Business Forum to ensure their active participation in the data gathering process.
- Develop a partnership with the NWU to increase the availability of information and intelligence throughout the province. The establishment of Resource Centres of Information should be promoted throughout the North West province.

### **7.6.1.2. PRIVATE PROVIDERS**

It is important to note that not only the state does determine the post-school system but also the private sector. Private providers have in the past played an important role in the post-school system and will continue to do so. With regard to the role of private providers there exists a gap in the regulating the quality of the education and training. There exists a need for a coordination system to combine the efforts of both state and private providers.

#### **ACTIONS:**

- Create a coordination system through which the quality of private post-schooling providers is regulated.
- Conduct a comprehensive analysis of all FET colleges, other colleges and adult learning centres to identify gaps in the provincial post schooling system.

### **7.6.1.3. PROMOTE DISTANCE EDUCATION AND ICT**

Distance learning will be discussed in greater detail further in this section. It is important to note that distance learning should not be limited to universities but should rather be promoted by all post-schooling providers. Distance education, aided by advanced information communication technology, will play a greater role in expanding learning opportunities for different groups of learners. ICT infrastructure limitations, especially in rural areas are a challenge.

#### **ACTIONS:**

- Expand the ICT infrastructure of existing institutions and find innovative ways to reach rural areas with ICT infrastructure.

- Work in conjunction with the Department of Sport, Arts and Culture for the provision of ICT facilities in libraries and mobile libraries to reach students in rural areas.
- Upfront investment is needed in technology, curriculum design, quality assurance and monitoring to implement ICT successfully.
- Accelerate ICT skills development through collaboration of government and business.
- Establish specialised institution to focus on ICT skills.
- Develop a policy framework to guide institutions in developing distance education.

### 7.6.2. UNIVERSITIES

The North West University (NWU) consists of three campuses of which two are located in the North West province. The Potchefstroom Campus is the largest and the Mafikeng Campus is the second largest. The location of the two NWU campuses in the province creates an opportunity to advance science and technology through a partnership between the university and the different spheres of government. The university and provincial, district and local governments have worked and are currently working together on projects with great success. That being said, much more can still be accomplished through cooperation between the university and governments in the province. Political challenges have in the past limited the operations between the two parties. These challenges need to be addressed and the potential of successful operations between the NWU and government embraced. Knowledge sharing, implementation of expertise and the utilisation of available infrastructure are a few of the positive operations that a successful partnership between government and the university can result in. The potential of such a partnership is endless and can range from assisting the provincial government in utilising technology in the battle against crime to finding innovative infrastructure solutions. A partnership in government with the university could and will most probably range across all departments and spheres of government and will therefore have to be managed through a central governing body.

### PROPOSAL

Government must identify projects and or areas they lack n expertise in which they could utilise the available resources of the NWU. Clear communication channels between the university and governments at different levels should be established through a governing body located in either the Office of the Premier or Provincial Planning Commission. Identified projects and areas of intervention should then be considered and discussed by all parties involved. If it should be concluded that a partnership on the project or area of intervention under discussion will have positive results for the province the necessary steps must be taken to implement the project and available expertise where needed. Roles of different stakeholders involved in each project should be clearly defined to avoid confusion and ensure all parties contribute their share and efforts fairly.

#### 7.6.1.4. INCREASE ENROLMENT AND QUALITY ENVIRONMENT

The NWU has shown impressive growth over the last six years. The table below illustrates the number of students enrolled in each of the campuses located in the North West province.

**Table 7.10: number of students enrolled (2006 – 2012)**

CAMPUS		2006	2007	2008	2009	2010	2011
Potchefstroom	Contact (on campus students)	16 612	16 055	16 374	17 463	18 326	19 129
	Distance (teacher further training)	10 244	16 657	18 800	20 797	23 639	22 765
	TOTAL	26 856	32 712	35 174	38 260	41 965	41 894
Mafikeng	Contact (on campus students)	8 446	7 266	6 633	6 240	7 042	7 694

CAMPUS		2006	2007	2008	2009	2010	2011
	Distance (teacher further training)	42	1 422	1 457	1 583	1 512	1 517
	TOTAL	8 488	8 688	8 090	7 823	8 554	9 211

Source: NWU (2012<sup>xvi</sup>)

It can be concluded from Table 7.10 that the number of students enrolled as contact and distance students at the Potchefstroom Campus has been growing since 2006. At the Mafikeng Campus the distance students have been increasing over the last six years while contact students showed a decrease in numbers between 2006 and 2009. From 2009 onwards the number of students enrolled as contact students started growing again. It is envisioned in the NDP that enrolment at universities across the country should increase by 70 per cent by 2030. Based on the figures provided in Table 7.6 the Potchefstroom and Mafikeng campuses combined had an average annual growth of 8 per cent. This is regarded as an above average growth rate and resulted in the NWU reaching its full capacity with regard to infrastructure and available lecturers. The necessary funds are not available to expand and accommodate more contact students on campus. Infrastructure limitations do not only involve class room and equipment shortages but also adequate accommodation for students.

For the NWU to reach the targets set out in the NDP for enrolment in universities the NWU will have to overcome physical expansion limitations. The NWU has reported this will be possible through increased distance learning. The NDP supports and promotes the expansion of distance learning in the province. Currently the majority of learners enrolled as distance students are within the School for Continuing Teacher Education. The School of Continuing Teacher Education is responsible for the in-service training of under and un-qualified teachers, as well as the further training of already qualified teachers. These educational courses provided by the NWU are contributing immensely towards improving the quality of teachers in both the province and South-Africa. The future planning of the NWU entails the expansion of their distance courses available to potential learners. Nursing and theology are currently being established as distance courses on offer through the university. Some courses will be more appropriate for distance learning than others. Courses such as micro-biology require laboratories and other specialised physical equipment which becomes a challenge in distance courses. Innovative ideas to overcome these challenges will have to be developed and the possibilities of technology towards this goal should not be underestimated. To realise the goal of increased distance learning in the province through the NWU upfront investment will be required in technology, curriculum design, quality assurance and the monitoring of courses.

The NDP reports there is a shortage of academics, especially in the human, natural, engineering and actuarial sciences. All of these sciences are presented at the NWU and an academic career in each should be promoted. Partnership between the university and public and private sector should inform universities of the needs of industries and societies. Courses should be developed and presented accordingly to avoid graduate unemployment and skills shortages. Recruitment drivers should be in place for the public sector within universities. An example is to have recent public sector recruits come to the university and talk to students about their experiences working in the public sector.



Many aspiring students are from poor backgrounds and are not academically prepared on the level of their middle class counterparts. Extra support should be provided to these students to assist them in coping with the demand of higher education. The university should further be in an environment welcoming to all with staff representative of the nation as a whole.

#### ACTIONS:

- Improve the quality of teaching and learning where lacking. University lecturers should be recognised teachers. Improve the qualifications of staff towards increasing the number of PhD qualified staff in higher education.
- Expand university infrastructure. Infrastructure challenges such as student accommodation and lack of equipment in the NWU needs urgent attention.
- Utilise ICT and distance learning to overcome the infrastructure and capacity challenges to further expansion of the NWU. Expand the courses available through distance learning in the NWU. Upfront investment will be required in technology, curriculum design, quality assurance and the monitoring of courses.
- Promote academic careers in human, natural, engineering and actuarial sciences.
- Utilise labour market information and intelligence to plan and develop university courses. Promote graduation in the critical skill categories such as engineering, actuarial science, medicine, financial management and chartered accountancy.
- Establish public sector recruitment programmes.
- Support programmes for underprepared learners must be offered and funded at all institutions.
- Double the number of graduate and postgraduate scientists and increase the number of African and women postgraduates, especially Doctor of Philosophy degrees (PhD), to improve research and innovation capacity and make university staff more representative.

#### 7.6.1.5. ESTABLISH NWU AS LEADING INNOVATOR

The vision for the NWU towards 2030 is to be established as leading innovator through an increased number of master degree and Doctor of Philosophy degree (PhD) students. By 2030 over 25 per cent of enrolments at the university should be at postgraduate level. The table below provides the number of master degree and PhD degrees awarded between 2007 and 2011.

**Table 7.11: number of master and PhD degrees awarded (2007-2011)**

POST GRADUATE DEGREE	2007	2008	2009	2010	2011
Master's degrees awarded	618	583	659	633	639
PhD's awarded	124	100	123	129	115

Source: NWU (2012)

From the table above there has been a slight increase in the number of master degrees awarded while the number of PhD's awarded decreased. The number of post graduate students at the NWU is currently restricted by infrastructure limitations at the two campuses. This is due to the high volumes of contact students enrolled. Through increased distance learning the NWU wants to enrol fewer contact students and make infrastructure and resources on campuses available for post graduate students. This will increase the number of PhD's greatly and meet the vision set out in the NDP.

#### ACTIONS:

- Increase the number of under-graduate students through distance learning to allow space for post graduate students on the existing campuses.



- Increase the number of masters and PhD students through supporting partnerships for research. Encourage and pursue international exchange partnerships.
- Promote doctorates in science, engineering, technology and mathematics to establish the NWU as leading innovator.

### 7.6.2. COLLEGES

As discussed previously, the Apartheid era led to a culture of mistrust in colleges among teachers and parents. Colleges can answer to the educational needs of a large portion of the provincial youth. An urgent need exists to expand the college system with a focus on improving quality. To regain the trust of the public, the education and training provided in colleges must be of an exceptional standard. The negative perception associated with colleges has a negative spin off in the ability of college students to gain work experience. Work experience is required for students to be able to complete their National Technical Diplomas. This then results in unemployed college students which reflects negatively on colleges and promotes the existing negative perception. The expansion of colleges with a focus on quality will break the cycle of negative perceptions associated with colleges. Among others the following groups of people are to be targeted by colleges:

- young people in the FET phase who choose the vocational pathway
- adults who want to start a career
- Unemployed people who wish to start a career

Colleges have the potential to impact the skills profile of South-Africa and the North West province. Through better quality Colleges the through put rate will be increased and more artisans produced on a yearly basis.

#### ACTIONS:

- Regain the trust of the public through expanding colleges, improving the quality and advocating the role of colleges all over the province.
- Create work experience opportunities for college students through building a strong relationship between the college sector and industry in the province. This will increase the employment or absorption of students upon completion of their diplomas.
- Support the development of specialised programmes in universities focusing on training college lecturers and providing funding for universities to conduct research on the vocational education sector.
- Build the capacity of FET institutions to become the preferred institutions for vocational education and training. It is not only a question of establishing FET institutions, quality institutions need to be developed. Expand the geographical reach of FET institutions in the North West province.
- Align colleges and schools to improve the overall percentage of learners obtaining a college qualification.

### 7.6.3. ADULT EDUCATION

Adult education in South-Africa and the province face a list of challenges. These include among others a lack of facilities, isolation from the rest of the educational system, limited curriculum and lack of appropriate formal qualifications. When considering all the challenges involved it becomes clear that adult education in the province is underdeveloped and does not receive the attention and resources it deserves. As solution to the numerous challenges in adult education it is proposed that Community Education and Training Centres are established all over the province. The existing adult learning centres should be transformed into Community Education and Training Centres. These centres will contribute to creating alternative education and training pathways in a community which will range from basic adult education to secondary and non-formal education.

### ACTIONS:

- Transform current public adult learning centres into Community Education and Training Centres that offer a variety of courses ranging from adult basic education to secondary and non-formal education
- Establish new Community Education and Training Centres where no adult education centres exist.
- Incorporate Community Education and Training Centres in the IDP's and SDF's of local governments.
- Partner with the NWU on their projects for adult education in the province to overcome identified challenges. Utilise the available expertise and resources of the NWU towards adult education in the province, especially in poor areas.
- Computerisation, libraries and laboratories should be provided at public educational institutions. Computer centres linked to online encyclopaedias, journals, e-books etc. may gradually replace libraries.
- Youth and women skills development programmes should be expanded, made more accessible and promoted in all areas, including rural areas.

## 7.7. RESEARCH AND INNOVATION SYSTEMS

Research and innovation must at all times be priority in the province to improve the competitiveness and sustainability of the provincial economy. The key role-players in research and innovation systems are:

- research institutes
- research organisations
- universities
- science councils
- departments
- NGOs
- private sector

It is clear from the role-players identified above that research is not limited to universities. The NWU will play a crucial role in the research and innovation system of the province but should work in partnership with the role-players.

### ACTIONS:

- Create a partnership with the NWU to establish research and innovation systems in the North West province. The NWU has established partnerships with various key- role-players in research and innovation
- Develop a partnership framework with strategies and incentives to attract businesses to develop industry clusters designed to increase competitiveness and wealth in the North West province.
- A combination of measures should be employed to increase commercialisation of knowledge generated by the NWU (and possibly other tertiary educational institutions) in the province.
- Host annual science expo's to stimulate the interest of young people towards a career in science.
- Increase agricultural and mining research, especially in areas of water conservation and water use efficiency.

## 7.8. IMPROVING EDUCATION, TRAINING AND INNOVATION IMPLEMENTATION PLAN

The implementation plan for improving education, training and innovation was developed to support the strategic objective set out in this chapter. Specific actions were outlined for each objective. In the

implementation plan, the role and responsibilities of the various stakeholders were identified as well as potential funding sources.

The following key programmes were identified towards the improvement of education; training and innovation (Refer to Annexur 1):

- Comprehensive Provincial ECD Programme
- Comprehensive Provincial Education Programme
- Comprehensive Post-School Coordination and Improvement Programme
- University Support Programme

### NOTES:

- <sup>i</sup> Statistics South Africa. 2012. Census 2011 Results. <http://beta2.statssa.gov.za/> Date of Access: December, 2012.
- <sup>ii</sup> NORTH WEST DEPARTMENT OF EDUCATION. 2012. VOTE 8 2012/13 Estimates of Provincial Revenue & Expenditure.
- <sup>iii</sup> DBE. 2010. REPORT ON THE 2009/2010 ANNUAL SURVEYS FOR ORDINARY SCHOOLS
- <sup>iv</sup> DBE. 2011b. ACTION PLAN TO 2014- TOWARDS THE REALISATION OF SCHOOLING 2025
- <sup>v</sup> DBE. 2011d. NATIONAL EDUCATION INFRASTRUCTURE MANAGEMENT SYSTEM (NEIMS) REPORTS MAY 2011
- <sup>vi</sup> DBE. 2012. National Guidelines for School Library and Information Services
- <sup>vii</sup> DBE. 2013a. NATIONAL SENIOR CERTIFICATE EXAMINATION: Technical Report
- <sup>viii</sup> DBE. 2013b. REPORT ON THE ANNUAL NATIONAL ASSESSMENTS 2012: GRADES 1 TO 6 & 9.
- <sup>ix</sup> Naude, W and Rossouw, R. 2007. Analysis of the North-West Economy using a Social Accounting Matrix. North West University.
- <sup>x</sup> Statistics South Africa (2012 - 2013) Labour Force Survey: <http://www.statssa.gov.za> Date of Access: December, 2012.
- <sup>xi</sup> HIS Global Insight. 2013. <http://www.ihsglobalinsight.co.za/> Date of Access: January, 2013.
- <sup>xii</sup> National Planning Commission. 2012. National Development Plan. <http://www.npconline.co.za/pebble.asp?relid=25> Date of Access: August, 2012.
- <sup>xiii</sup> DBE. 2011b. ACTION PLAN TO 2014- TOWARDS THE REALISATION OF SCHOOLING 2025
- <sup>xiv</sup> RSA. 2010. Millennium Development Goals.
- <sup>xv</sup> JOHN ADDIS & ASSOCIATES. 2010. Determination of the Contribution of the Private Sector to Skills Development in the North West Province: Final Report.
- <sup>xvi</sup> North West University (NWU). 2012. Student Statistics of the University of the North-West.

## 8. ENVIRONMENTAL SUSTAINABILITY

---

### KEY POINTS

- ⇒ The transition to a low carbon future and a more diverse and inclusive economy in the North West province can be aided by the rich endowment of natural resources and mineral deposits in the province if responsibly used
- ⇒ The effects of climate change is a reality in the North West province and it is especially the poorer communities who could be exposed in future if development challenges are not addressed in a manner that ensures environmental sustainability and builds resilience to climate change
- ⇒ Investment in skills, technology and institutional capacity is crucial in all aspects regarding a sustainable society and low-carbon economy. Management structures are a key priority towards developing a sustainable North West province and will need to be supported by focused, institutionalised capacity building
- ⇒ Consumer awareness initiatives and sufficient recycling infrastructure must be made priority in the province
- ⇒ The development of environmentally sustainable green products and services, including renewable energy technologies, will contribute to the creation of jobs in niche markets. The North West province needs to explore this market towards developing a competitive advantage that will be a provincial and national advantage



### 8.1. INTRODUCTION

The maintenance of a healthy ecosystem and natural resources are pre-conditions for human well-being in the North West province. In the past, development was accompanied by accumulated wealth and as a result an increased impact on the environment. There are limits to the goods and services that can be provided through the environment. In other words, environmental sustainability acknowledges that human-beings are part of nature and not a separate entity. Environmental sustainability involves making decisions and taking action that are in the interests of protecting the natural world, with particular emphasis on preserving the capability of the environment to support human life. Currently, it is an important topic, as people are realising the full impact that they and their daily activities can have on the environment.

The World Commission on Environment and Development (WCED) defines sustainable development as the ability to "*meet the needs of the present without compromising the ability of future generations to meet their own needs*" (Brundtland Commission Report, 1987<sup>i</sup>).

The National Environmental Management Act 107 of 1998 (NEMA), defines the environment as "*the surroundings within which humans exist and that are made up of:*

- i. *The land, water and atmosphere of the earth;*
- ii. *Micro-organisms, plant and animal life;*
- iii. *Any part or combination of (i) and (ii) and the interrelationships among and between them, and iv.*
- iv. *The physical, chemical, aesthetic and cultural properties and conditions of the foregoing that influence human health and well-being."*



Sustainability in this context of the PDP implies environmental sustainability. It recognises that the maintenance of healthy ecosystems and natural resources are preconditions for human well-being. It further recognises that there are limits to the goods and services that can be provided. In other words, environmental sustainability acknowledges that human-beings are an indispensable part of nature. The purpose of environmental sustainability is making responsible decisions that will reduce negative impacts on the provincial environment. It is not simply about reducing the volumes of waste produced or being more energy

efficient, it is concerned with developing processes that will lead to the North West province becoming completely sustainable in the future.

Currently, environmental sustainability is a topical issue that not only receives major media attention, but also interest from different governmental departments. This is a result of the depth of research going into assessing the impact that human activity can have on the environment, which is called environmental degradation. Environmental degradation is the deterioration of the environment through depletion of resources such as air, water and soil (Stern, Common & Barbier, 1996<sup>ii</sup>). It is the destruction of eco-systems and the extinction of wildlife. Although the long-term implications of these negative impacts are not yet fully understood, it is generally agreed that the risk is high enough to merit an immediate response. The North West province boasts a growing economy and has development opportunities in various sectors of the economy. As positive as this may seem, it also holds a great responsibility towards the environment. There



are definite signs that the activities conducted in the province, are infringing on the quality of environmental resources, impacting on the most vulnerable segments of the population. A balance needs to be established between expanding the economic prosperity in the province and protecting the environment. Continued environmental degradation will infringe on the prosperity of the province over the long-term. Environmental sustainability will force provincial planning to go beyond making short-term gains and consider the long-term impacts of proposed developments on the natural environment.

### NATIONAL FRAMEWORK FOR SUSTAINABLE DEVELOPMENT

In July 2008<sup>iii</sup>, the Cabinet passed the National Framework for Sustainable Development (NFSD). The NFSD signalled a new wave of thinking that was aimed at promoting the effective stewardship of South Africa's natural, social and economic resources. The NFSD proposed a national vision, principles, trends, strategic priority areas, and a set of implementation measures that are intended to enable and guide the development of the national strategy and action plan.

The NFSD discusses the various environmental and social risk areas facing South Africa and identify five strategic priority areas:

- Enhancing systems for integrated planning and implementation.
- Sustaining the country's eco-systems and using resources sustainably.
- Investing in sustainable economic development and infrastructure.
- Creating sustainable human settlements.
- Responding appropriately to emerging human development, economic and environmental challenges.

According to the NSFD, in order to embark on the journey to a sustainable, economically prosperous and self-reliant nation, it needs a robust institutional framework, an action plan or roadmap to make sense of the five strategic priority areas and on-going consultation and communication.

The NFSD promotes simple actions on a large-scale. As understanding of sustainable development increases, and it becomes clear that this is the key mechanism for building capacity and governance to achieve human development based on sustainable production and consumption systems; government and society across all spheres and all sectors will approach and address the issues identified in the NFSD with the seriousness that it deserve.

To successfully implement the NFSD, the entire nation must share in the common vision of the plan. Therefore the PDP was aligned to the NFSD and all role-players involved, including all elements of the state such as civil society, organised labour and business, need to participate in the social contract to implement this plan.

It has to be noted that the North West Provincial Development Plan (PDP) as a strategic document provide guidelines on the holistic development of the North West province towards 2030. Environmental sustainability encompasses various highly technical subjects. It has to be noted that further technical inputs from experts will have to be acquired by the concerned role-players upon the implementation of each proposed strategic guideline.





## 8.2. THE CURRENT PERSPECTIVE

In the process of achieving the identified priorities for environmental sustainability in the North West province, there are certain key challenges, which will have to be overcome. Each individual priority will have its own challenges and require its own unique receptive actions. The key challenges are the following:

### ▪ *INADEQUATELY INFORMED DECISION-MAKING AND GOVERNANCE*

Decision making in environmental sustainability must be informed and requires good governance. In this regard the province faces a number of challenges such as capacity constraints. Capacity constraints are experienced at different levels but especially in the areas of compliance monitoring and enforcement. The role of the Department of Economic Development, Environment, Conservation and Tourism (DEDECT) is crucial in this regard. According to Chapter 3 of the National Environmental Management Act (No. 107 of 1998) the DEDECT is responsible for administering the following in terms of environmental management:

- Environmental Impact Assessments (EIAs);
- Strategic Environmental Assessments (SEAs);
- Environmental Management Frameworks (EMFs), and
- Environmental Implementation Plans (EIP).

The EIP is a statutory instrument used to coordinate and harmonise environmental policies, plans, programmes and decisions of local government and various provincial departments that exercise functions which may affect the environment or are entrusted with powers and duties aimed at the achievement, promotion and protection of a sustainable environment.

Integrated planning as discussed in Chapter 6 of the PDP must at all times form part of the environmental decision making process and governance. The environmental sector needs to identify a set of biodiversity and friendly land use guidelines that can be incorporated into municipal land use schemes and spatial development frameworks.

### ▪ *NATURAL RESOURCE DEGRADATION AND DEPLETION OF ECOLOGICAL INFRASTRUCTURE*

There are a number of factors contributing to natural resource degradation and depletion of ecological infrastructure such as competing land uses and unsustainable production processes.

Ecological infrastructure refers to strategically planned and managed networks of natural lands, working landscapes and other open spaces that conserve eco-system values and functions and provide associated benefits to society (Stephens, 2011<sup>iv</sup>). Networks of ecological infrastructure may take the form of large tracts of natural land or ocean, or small remaining patches or corridors embedded in production landscapes. If the ecological infrastructure is degraded or lost, the flow of eco-system services will diminish. Ecological infrastructure is just as important as built infrastructure for providing vital services that underpin social and economic activity.

Competing land uses leads to the overexploitation of natural resources which has an overall negative impact on ecological infrastructure. Unsustainable production processes in the province results in land degradation and soil erosion which undermine the productive potential of the land and compromise water and food security. Intervention in natural resource degradation and the depletion of ecological infrastructure necessitate integrated and innovative approaches to natural resource management. A careful balance between development imperatives and sustainable utilisation is necessary.



### RESOURCE CRITICAL REGIONS

Resource critical regions refer to regions with competition between development and environment, or between competing environmental land uses. Resource critical regions with regard to environmental sustainability and biodiversity planning must be linked with the following (SANPARKS, 2009<sup>v</sup>):

- Critical Biodiversity Areas (CBAs)

CBAs incorporate the following:

- Areas that need to be safeguarded in order to meet national and provincial biodiversity thresholds.
- Areas required to ensure the continued existence and functioning of species and eco-systems, including the delivery of eco-system services
- Important locations for biodiversity features or rare species.

CBAs in the North West province must allow for special reference to water scarcity. The North West is a water scarce province as discussed in Chapter 4. There is competing uses for water that include amongst others agriculture, the environment and mining. The point of departure that needs to be recognised is that water is central to sustainable growth and development and that water security and quality must be the overall objective. The province must identify Water Critical Resource Areas as a matter of urgency. The quality of water is equally important to the quantity of water to efficiently meet the needs of all users in the long-term (DWA, 2008<sup>vi</sup>).

- Ecological Support Areas (ESAs)

ESAs are supporting zones required to prevent the degradation of CBAs and protected areas. These may include areas that are degraded or even transformed if they still play an important role in supporting CBAs.

In the North West province, one category of the resource critical regions represents the competing interests between high valued mineral resources, the environment, tourism or land claims. These prioritised areas should be clearly mapped and recognised as 'resource critical regions' as defined in the NDP to ensure appropriate focus and attention. Each resource critical region should have a regional land use plan to achieve sustainability and accommodate competing land-uses.

The outcome of these planning processes will be that a formal agreement should be reached amongst competing parties and other stakeholders, including relevant spheres of government on the best optimisation model for a resource critical region. These agreements must become a 'spatial contract' binding on all spheres of government and relevant role-players.

- **WASTE MANAGEMENT**

Waste management includes the management of hazardous waste, healthcare waste, mine dumps, sludge and general solid waste (Department of Agriculture, Conservation, Environment and Rural Development, 2008<sup>vii</sup>). Improper disposal of waste can cause adverse effects on human health and the environment. An area that deserves urgent attention is that levels of recycling and re-use are relatively low and waste is not necessarily seen or considered as a resource with socio-economic potential.



### ▪ **AIR POLLUTION**

Air pollution is a mixture of solid particles and gases in the air that holds the potential to negatively affect the natural and built environment. The main sources of air pollution in the North West province include among other; vehicle emissions, domestic fuel, industrial emissions and mining operations. Forest, bush and veld fires are a substantial contributor during certain periods of the year. To ensure the realisation of every individual's right to air that is not harmful to his/her health and well-being, it is imperative that there is the effective implementation of the Air Quality Act (Act No. 39 of 2004) and the development and use of innovative approaches such as air quality offsetting.

### ▪ **WATER POLLUTION**

The North West province is a water scarce province that further faces future drying trends and weather variability with cycles of droughts and sudden excessive rains that affects aquatic eco-systems (DWA, 2008). Healthy catchments, rivers and wetlands provide crucial ecological infrastructure that supports water quality and quantity. It is therefore necessary to invest in ecological infrastructure which has a key strategic role in supporting water security and preserving eco-systems.



### ▪ **ADAPTING TO CLIMATE CHANGE**

Climate change is considered as one of the biggest threats to global sustainability and should be regarded as such in the North West province. Climate change can have adverse effects on inter alia socio-economic conditions, water, food security, health, natural resources and eco-system services (Department of Environmental Affairs, 2011<sup>viii</sup>). Responding efficiently to climate change in the North West province will require successful mitigation and adaptation measures. There is also a need to enhance the resilience of people and the economy to adapt to the effects of climate change.

## 8.3. VISION 2030

The vision for environmental sustainability in the North West province towards 2030 must reflect the vision of the country as a whole, while planned according to the unique character of the province. It must at all times be the vision of environmental planning in the province to have a transition to an environmentally sustainable, climate-change resilient, low-carbon economy and fair society that will be well under way by 2030. Environmental sustainability in the North West province is the obligation of both the public sector and private sector. The vision includes:

- Implementing effective land-use policies that control environmental and social cost of new developments.
- The North West province is committed to the protection of biodiversity.
- Resource Critical Areas are identified and protected through a 'spatial contract' binding on all spheres of government and relevant role-players.
- Communities and the private sector participate fully in environmental sustainability through taking all the necessary measures to become a zero-waste society.
- Waste management is effective throughout the province. Recycling and re-use are high and the value of the waste as a resource with socio-economic potential is realised.



- The North West province reduces its carbon emissions as part of South Africa's international commitments.
- The province is prepared for climate change and other environmental pressures through coordinated planning.
- The protection of the freshwater eco-system and Water Critical Biodiversity Areas are identified recognising the North West as a water scarce province.

### PHASED TRAJECTORY

To achieve the vision set out for environmental sustainability, the North West province will be phased over three successive Medium Term Strategic Framework (MTSF) periods. The phased trajectory will be in line with the vision of the NDP (2012<sup>ix</sup>).

#### *PHASE 1- The piloting and investing phase (2014 – 2019):*

- Creation of a framework for implementing the transition to an environmentally sustainable, low-carbon economy.
- Unblocking regulatory constraints.
- Data collection.
- Establishment of baseline information.
- Indicators testing some of the concepts and ideas.
- Build capacity in the NW for implementation of climate change mitigation and adaptation.
- Land, agriculture and water policies and strategies are reviewed at regular intervals to ensure that they continue to contribute to sustainable development approaches.

#### *PHASE 2- Implementation of sustainable development programmes and targeting a peaking of greenhouse gas emissions (2019 – 2024)*

- Poverty and unemployment are reduced.
- Land, agriculture and water development strategies have provided the basis for programmes of environmentally sustainable rural regeneration.
- The development and marketing of niche products and services is encouraging the domestic manufacturing of green technologies.
- Medium-term adaptation strategies are being piloted and implemented, including for disaster preparedness, encouraging investment in adaptation technologies and research into the conservation and rehabilitation of eco-systems and biodiversity assets.
- A culture of energy efficiency in society is well established.

#### *PHASE 3 - An environmentally sustainable society, expanded low-carbon economy and reducing emissions (- 2030)*

- Poverty and unemployment are reduced to socially sustainable levels.
- Emissions reaching a plateau by 2030.
- Investment in low-carbon and climate-resilient infrastructure has enabled the province to profit from its technologies and skills, and benefit sectors that deliver enhanced energy, food and water security, new high-quality job opportunities, and improved quality of life.
- The state is well capacitated and comfortably manages its policy, regulatory and support functions.
- The benefits of building resilience are evident in the strides towards a flourishing and prosperous population.



### 8.3.1. HOW TO ACHIEVE IT

The following five priorities have been identified towards achieving the environmental sustainability vision for the North West province:

- Sustain eco-systems in the North West province and use natural resources efficiently.
- Building sustainable communities.
- Responding effectively to climate change: mitigation and adaptation.
- Managing a just transition to an environmentally sustainable, low-carbon economy.

The vision for environmental sustainability in the North West province requires the commitment of all sectors of society to contribute to the efforts required to meet common objectives.

### 8.4. SUSTAIN ECO-SYSTEMS AND USE NATURAL RESOURCES EFFICIENTLY

Life, economic activity and human well-being all depend on natural resources. Goods needed to sustain life, are the result of well-functioning eco-systems. It can thus without a doubt be said that any socio-economic objective that this report brings forward is subject to the state of the natural environment. The following are key features and trends in respect of the North West province natural resources:

- The main economic activity in the North West province is mining. Mining is heavily reliant on available water resources for mineral extraction and processing. The North West province is however a region with limited water resources. As mining expands, increased pressure is placed on the availability of water resources for other uses such as human consumption and natural functions within eco-systems.
- According to the North West Province Biodiversity Conservation Assessment (Desmet, Schaller & Skowno, 2009<sup>x</sup>), 61 vegetation types are located in the North West province. Urban development, mining and agriculture are the main reasons for the transformation of these habitats.
- Cultivated agriculture has been identified as one of the biggest threats to the eco-system of the NW province. Agriculture requires both arable land and sufficient water supply for the cultivation of crops. To increase agricultural production and yields, larger areas of land must be cleared and possibly irrigated. This results in agriculture having an increased environmental footprint in the province. That being said, agriculture is a very important source of employment especially in the rural areas. Therefore, even though there is a limited area of land available for cultivation, a balance must be maintained between the area under cultivation and untransformed open spaces for the health of the ecosystem.
- The soil degradation in the province is not only as a result of agricultural activities. Communally managed land is severely affected by soil degradation and desertification. Wind and water erosion is also a major source of degradation.
- The province hosts a variety of species, eco-systems and habitats. Amongst these are endemic species as well as rare and threatened species.
- The Groot Marico River was identified as a National Freshwater Priority Area (Water Research Commission, 2011<sup>xi</sup>). The Groot Marico River also forms part of the River Health Programme (RHP) that was initiated in 1994 by the Department of Agriculture, Conservation and



Environment, 2008<sup>xii</sup>. The RHP was developed in response to the need for monitoring, assessment and reporting on the ecological status of river eco-systems, based on their biological condition in relation to the anthropogenic impacts on the water resources.

There are 15 provincial reserves located within the North West province. The most well-known are the Pilanesberg and Madikwe National Parks, which are administered by the North West Parks and Tourism Board. In total, approximately 2.4 per cent of the province is formally protected areas. Additionally to the conservation areas there are also numerous important cultural heritage sites within the North West province. These include Stone Age sites, Iron Age sites and various battlefields from the South African War. There are three world heritage sites located in the province namely:

- The Taung Skull World Heritage Site
- The Cradle of Humankind World Heritage Site (shared with Gauteng)
- The Vredefort Dome World Heritage Site

This section of the chapter focuses on sustaining eco-systems and use natural resources efficiently in the North West province.

### 8.4.1. STRATEGIC ENVIRONMENTAL PLANNING

Large parts of the North West province consist of rural areas with poor rural communities; therefore the protection of environmental resources is crucial. These communities are heavily dependent on the resources available in the environment for their survival. It is often the reality that despite environmental damage, the social and economic benefits of a proposed development justifies it. In rural and urban areas where such damage cannot be avoided or mitigated, a corresponding investment in community development and the rehabilitation and conservation of biodiversity assets and eco-system services are required.

The North West province consists of a diverse natural character and natural resources. The North West Environmental Outlook (2008<sup>xiii</sup>) identifies indicators to ensure the effective management and protection of the natural environment. There are two headline indicators that the province needs to regularly report on:

- **Eco-system threat status** reflects the degree to which eco-systems are still intact or alternatively losing vital aspects of their structure, function and composition, on which their ability to provide eco-system services ultimately depends. Eco-system types are categorised as Critically Endangered (CR), Endangered (EN), Vulnerable (VU) or Least Threatened (LT), based on the proportion of each eco-system type that remains in good ecological condition relative to a series of thresholds.
- **Eco-system protection level** illustrates whether eco-systems are adequately protected or under-protected. Eco-system types are categorised as not protected, poorly protected, moderately protected or well protected, based on the proportion of each eco-system type that occurs within a protected area recognised in the Protected Areas Act.

Ideally these indicators must be accompanied by annual reports on the status of each. These reports can then inform policy formulations. There are currently three environmental plans that have to be completed in the North West province; the Biodiversity Strategy and Action Plan, the Conservation Plan and the Protected Areas Expansion Plan.

A biodiversity assessment is currently underway in the province. The assessment combined with the development biodiversity friendly land-use guidelines will form the backbone of the first Biodiversity Plan for the province. The Provincial Biodiversity Plan will form the basis of four District Municipality Biodiversity Sector Plans. For these plans to be effective, they require up-to-date information on the following:





- Up-to-date point locality data for the species across all taxon groups found in the province.
- Up-to-date land cover and land-use data. These datasets should be produced every three to five years.
- Historical land use datasets.



The Biodiversity Plan indicated will form the backbone of the North West Protected Area Expansion Strategy (NWP AES). The goal of the NWP AES is to achieve cost-effective protected area expansion for ecological sustainability and increased resilience to climate change. It sets targets for protected area expansion, provides maps of the most important areas for protected area expansion, and makes recommendations on mechanisms for protected area expansion.

Protected areas are vital for ecological sustainability and adaptation to climate change, serving as nodes in the ecological infrastructure network. South Africa has an opportunity to take a global lead in giving protected areas a central role in the climate change response strategy. Key information gaps that should be filled for future revisions of the NWP AES include:

- an accurate spatial layer of existing protected areas
- a complete provincial wetlands map
- a national spatial data layer on land ownership and tenure

Research priorities regarding the NWP AES entail the following:

- further exploration of the role of protected areas in supporting eco-system based adaptation to climate change
- ecologically meaningful biodiversity thresholds for aquatic eco-systems
- innovative ways to consider land price and opportunity costs in the identification of priority areas for protected area expansion
- past and present trends in the funding of protected area expansion
- likely costs of different mechanisms for protected area expansion into the future
- relative income and job creation potential of regular agriculture compared with protected areas and eco-tourism
- research to support and evaluate pilot projects in which biodiversity stewardship agreements are used to support land reform and rural development

As discussed earlier in this section, there is a lack of stewardship programmes and or associations in the province. These programmes will support commitments to sustain natural habitats in the province. The commitments will include not only the public sector but also role-players in the private sector such as farmers. Stewardship programmes can ensure privately owned areas with high biodiversity value, receive secure conservation status and are linked to a network of other conservation areas in the landscape. This will require cooperation between land-owners and government initiated through the stewardship programme. An improved Biodiversity Plan will inform the next version of the Protected Area Expansion Strategy for the province. Both the proposed Biodiversity Plan and the accompanying NWP AES will be used to update the Provincial Stewardship Strategy.





An environmental management framework must at all times be in place for the province to ensure that developments with serious environmental or social effects are offset by support improvements in related areas.

### ACTIONS:

- Consider joint initiatives with major production sectors such as agriculture and mining in order to implement biodiversity set asides and to enhance operational standards in areas of high biodiversity importance.
- Protect the remaining critical bio-diversity areas in the North West province. Coordination is required between the Department of Economic Development, Environment, Conservation and Tourism and the Department of Agriculture and Rural Development to investigate the socio-economic implications and policy requirements of a system to mitigate the environmental and social impacts of new agricultural developments. Agricultural development must consult all sector plans.
- Ensure that threatened eco-systems, ecological corridors, special biodiversity features (e.g. wetlands, ridges) and ecological infrastructure are given appropriate status in spatial planning and ensure that these are adequately considered in decisions regarding land use change.
- The impact of development projects on the use of natural resources (e.g. water) in the province must be quantified. Consideration must be given to among other, the impact of development proposals on the natural resource base of adjacent provinces (e.g. water resources, etc.), landscapes and sites that constitute the cultural heritage of the province and on air quality and climate change.
- In rural and urban areas where environmental damage resulting from a development cannot be avoided or mitigated, a corresponding investment in community development and the rehabilitation and conservation of biodiversity assets and eco-system services must be made mandatory.
- Utilise the indicators provided in the North West Environmental Outlook (2008) to ensure the effective management and protection of the natural environment. These indicators must be accompanied by annual reports on the status of each. These reports must then inform policy formulations.
- Establish partnership with development agencies to promote and attract environmental investments and technologies.
- Explore projects that will attract funding from the private sector and create Public Private Partnerships (PPPs). Municipalities need to get involved and form partnerships to deliver particularly solar water heaters locally.
- Explore partnerships with interested global partners who want to support provincial development as part of a platform to unlock blockages in developments.
- Develop a Provincial Biodiversity Strategy and Action Plan on a five year basis.
- Complete the provincial Conservation Plan and the NWPAES.
- Create and promote provincial stewardship programmes to build conservation partnerships in and around privately-owned land.
- Develop a Land-Use Conflict Identification Strategy (LUCIS) where different sectors identify areas important for their land-use category, e.g. agriculture, conservation, mining. These results can then be compared to identify areas of potential conflict. This strategy will form part of Chapter 6 of the PDP.
- Land, agriculture and water policies and strategies must be reviewed at regular intervals to ensure that they continue to contribute to sustainable development approaches.

### 8.4.2. RESEARCH AND KNOWLEDGE GENERATION

In the formulation of the proposed plans, one of the key challenges identified to date is the lack of information available. A provincial assessment of biodiversity depends on a good foundation of knowledge of



species and eco-systems, including which ones are found in the North West province and where they occur. The National Biodiversity Assessment (2011<sup>xiv</sup>) identifies a number of areas in which adequate research and knowledge generation is fundamental. These areas should be prioritised as indicated in the actions below.

Biodiversity is a provincial asset and a potentially powerful contributor to economic development and job creation. However, its potential is not always fully recognised. Research to improve understanding and evaluation of eco-system services is a priority. Spatial assessment and mapping of eco-system services would facilitate better integration of eco-system services into biodiversity assessment and planning at all scales and would enable mainstreaming of eco-system services in planning and decision-making in other sectors and in turn help to reduce loss of biodiversity in priority areas.

### ACTIONS:

- A biodiversity assessment for the province should take place every three to five years.
- Create regularly updated land cover maps for the province at a suitable spatial scale. This data layer is vital for assessing the condition of terrestrial eco-systems, and helpful for assessing the condition of rivers, wetlands and estuaries.
- Develop a provincial map of environmental degradation.
- Provide regular updates on the present ecological state of rivers on five year intervals. Improved data on influencing factors such as land cover, pollution, hydrology and fishing pressure would strengthen the results.
- Identify wetlands of strategic importance for assessing wetland condition.
- Ensure spatial assessment and mapping of eco-system services. This would facilitate better integration of eco-system services into biodiversity assessment and planning on all scales and would enable mainstreaming of eco-system services in planning and decision-making in other sectors and in turn help to reduce loss of biodiversity in priority areas.
- Conduct further research on the links between biodiversity and eco-system services, the types of ecological infrastructure needed to optimise the delivery of eco-system services, prioritise eco-systems for eco-system based adaptation to climate change, and the potential for integrated management of natural resources to contribute to job creation and poverty alleviation.

### 8.4.3. ENERGY EFFICIENCY

Increasing the contribution of renewable energy to electricity generation is one of the key steps in securing provincial environmental sustainability. Increased energy efficiency and less carbon-intensive industrial processes should be encouraged throughout the province. The process of enhancing energy efficiency should be guided by planning instruments which ensure the North West province utilises its endowment of renewable energy resources. Energy efficiency and the implementation thereof were discussed in Section 4 of this report. This sub-section is included to illustrate the role of energy efficiency in the environmental sustainability of the province. Without appropriate steps to implement renewable energy and less carbon-intensive industrial processes, environmental sustainability will not be possible. Renewable energy was discussed in greater detail in Chapter 4 of the plan. All renewable energy planning should refer to the Renewable Energy Strategy for the North West Province (2012<sup>xv</sup>).



### 8.4.4. PROVINCIAL WATER CHALLENGE

Water reserves consist of two parts, the basic human needs reserve and the ecological reserve. The basic human needs reserve provides for the essential needs of individuals served by the water resources in question



and includes water for drinking, food preparation and personal hygiene. The ecological reserve relates to water required to protect the aquatic eco-system of the water resource.

The North West province is characterised by a dry to semi-dry climate with erratic rainfalls. The availability of water is a key limiting factor for development in the province. Both groundwater and surface water are under pressure from users such as mining, industry, settlements and agriculture. The effective implementation of environmental regulations to mitigate the exploitation of water reserves and aquatic eco-systems should be made priority.

One of the river eco-systems that require protection is the Groot Marico River. The Groot Marico River was identified as a National Freshwater Priority Area (Water Research Commission, 2011<sup>xvi</sup>). Freshwater eco-systems provide a valuable natural resource with economic, aesthetic, spiritual, cultural and recreational value. Freshwater eco-systems face a number of challenges such as:

- Managing vast areas of land to maintain connectivity between freshwater ecosystems.
- Competition between stakeholders for utilisation.
- Building appropriate governance and co-management mechanisms.

The Groot Marico River also forms part of the River Health Programme (RHP) that was initiated in 1994 by the Department of Agriculture, Conservation and Environment, (2008<sup>xvii</sup>). The RHP was developed in response to the need for monitoring, assessment and reporting on the ecological status of river eco-systems.

The protection and management of water in the North West province requires the commitment of all sectors of society. All stakeholders should depart from the position that water is central to economic growth and development. Water infrastructure and service provision for basic human needs reserves was discussed in detail in Chapter 4 of this report. This section provides appropriate actions for the protection of the ecological water reserves of the province.

### ACTIONS:

- Minimise future development within the riparian zone. Control and manage existing activities such as urban development, road construction, grazing and mining activities. which sometimes irreversibly, change the structure and functioning of the riparian zone.
- Clear alien vegetation.
- Set water resource quality objectives for the rivers and monitor to ensure compliance.
- Improve farming practices: water abstraction; agricultural return flows pollute water resources.
- Adhere to licensing conditions for discharges.
- Upgrade sewage systems and improve the management thereof.
- Characterise, delineate and classify seeps, springs and palustrine wetlands in order to derive their protection status.
- Manage surface run-off at the source - impervious surfaces (roads, paving, roofs, etc.) that accompany urban development cause water that would naturally percolate into the ground to form a rapid flowing surface run-off.
- Control alien flora and fauna - alien fish cross breed and their feeding behaviour alter in-stream habitat.
- Install fish ladders and eel-ways in flow regulating structures - allow natural migration patterns; and improve functional connectivity.





### 8.4.5. CLEAN AIR EMISSIONS

Air quality in the North West province is one of the key focus areas towards sustaining natural resources efficiently. The main sources of air pollution in the North West province include among other vehicle emissions, domestic fuel, industrial emissions and mining operations. Forest, bush and veld fires are a substantial contributor during certain periods of the year.

Information regarding the status of air quality within the North West province is available through strategies such as the North West Air Quality Management Plan (2001<sup>xviii</sup>). Information regarding the status of the ambient air is crucial to determine the significance of the impacts on human health and the environment. To ensure realisation of everyone's right to air that is not harmful to health and well-being, it is imperative that there the Air Quality Act, 2004. (Act No. 39 of 2004) is effectively implemented as well as the development and use of innovative approaches like air quality offsetting.

#### ACTIONS:

- Continuously monitor the status of the ambient air quality to evaluate the significance of the impacts on human health and the environment. Focus responses accordingly on ambient air quality monitoring and the expansion of the current monitoring network.
- Continue with the ambient air quality monitoring programme with the purpose of providing continuous, accurate data on pollution concentrations at a specific location.
- Assist municipalities to acquire air monitoring equipment and a system to automatically retrieve air quality data from loggers and sensors for the management of remote data acquisition equipment.
- Address skills shortages through appointing adequate professional personnel on a long-term basis. Review the provincial air quality management plan based on the data retrieved from the air quality monitoring programme.
- Reduce the household combustion of various fuels by increasing access to electricity and/or renewable resources.
- Reduce the use of fossil fuel for electricity generation.
- Reduce vehicle emissions.

## 8.5. BUILDING SUSTAINABLE COMMUNITIES

Natural resources are consumed by communities. Sustainable communities will manage the use of resources and the associated environmental risks. It can be said that sustainable communities will meet the needs of residents while at the same time being sensitive to the surrounding eco-system and natural resources. Given the large number of poverty stricken people in the province, especially in the rural areas, building sustainable communities is a priority. Informal settlements can still be found all over the province and is not a sustainable way of living. Community participation should be an integral part of establishing sustainable human settlements.

The finalisation and implementation of the provincial Land-Use Bill in line with the Spatial Planning and Land Uses Management Act (SPLUMA) will aid in building sustainable communities. Implementing the Land-Use Bill will ensure that the development of communities does not conflict with environmental protection. It is thus clear that the current planning capacity in the North West province is not up to standard. There is a shortage of appointed planners in the North West province. To successfully implement the Land-Use Bill and manage spatial planning in the province, the shortage in planning capacity needs urgent attention.



The environmental footprint associated with delivering utility services such as waste management, electricity, water and sanitation, and public transport needs to be reduced through effective planning of urban densification. With regard to waste management there should be an absolute reduction in the total volume of waste disposed to landfill each year. There should be a holistic approach to low-cost housing developments through incorporating local recreational facilities, retail opportunities, as well as community, social, and health services. This approach was discussed in detail in Section 6 of the report.

### ACTIONS:

- Ensure that provincial, district and local Spatial Development Frameworks promote the creation of integrated and sustainable human settlements which limit the impact on the natural resource base.
- Incorporate environmental indicators in the criteria for evaluating investment in bulk infrastructure.
- All new buildings to meet the energy efficiency criteria set out in South African National Standard (SANS) 204 through ensuring compliance with strengthened monitoring of implementation, particularly with respect to energy efficiency standards, and the roll-out of solar water heating.
- Implement urban greening programmes to promote quality of life in urban areas. Urban greening is an integrated approach to the planting, care and management of all vegetation in cities, towns, townships and informal settlements in urban and peri-urban area.
- Finalisation and implementation of the Land-Use Bill has to be made priority in the North West province. Strengthening sustainability principles in land use planning, growth and development strategies and plans at all levels.
- Realise the important role of planners in the development of the province and appoint more professional planners to guide sustainable development in the province. Universities and colleges should develop courses that promote a holistic approach to low-cost housing developments. Advocate the planning profession in the public sector among young students and graduates. Make adequate resources available in all spheres of the provincial government to appoint competent professional planners.
- Review the North West Integrated Waste Management Plan (2008<sup>xix</sup>). Implement waste minimisation programmes with the provision of appropriate facilities and incentives to support them as per the National Waste Management Strategy (Department of Environmental Affairs, 2011<sup>xx</sup>).
- Incorporate waste hierarchy strategy of reduce, re-use and recycle into provincial waste management planning. This requires product stewardship (producer responsibility) and the rapid expansion of recycling infrastructure.
- Investment in consumer awareness, green product design, recycling infrastructure and waste-to-energy projects results in significant strides to becoming a zero-waste society.
- Encourage the composting of organic domestic waste to bolster economic activity in poor urban communities.

### 8.5.1. ROLE OF LOCAL GOVERNMENT IN BUILDING SUSTAINABLE COMMUNITIES

The responsibility of building sustainable human settlements must progressively be transformed to local governments. In human settlement development and other environmental sustainability issues, the need for improved capacity within local government must be realised. Local governments are in direct contact with communities and are in the best position to meet their needs in a sustainable manner.

The development and use of Environmental Management Frameworks to inform various planning initiatives in the province should be encouraged. Environmental Management Frameworks (EMF's) should ideally inform Spatial Development Frameworks (SDF's). This is not always the case especially at local level. Not all municipalities, particularly in the rural areas have an EMF in place. Stimulating economic growth and addressing poverty are crucial but protecting the environment also. Local governments often face a conflict of interests when confronted with these issues. Although developing townships and new businesses will



stimulate the economy in the short-term, if it is going to be at the expense of the environment, the long-term effects will affect the economy negatively.

### ACTIONS:

- The role of local government in developing sustainable communities must be enhanced.
- Local government must at all times lead by example in terms of recycling and other sustainability initiatives.
- Create adequate planning capacity within local governments towards building sustainable communities.
- Apply the indicators provided in the North West Environmental Outlook (2008<sup>xxi</sup>) to environmental planning in local governments.
- SDF's and EMF's must be aligned in municipalities to ensure an integrated approach in building environmental sustainability. All municipalities should ideally have an up-to-date EMF in place. Enhance capacity and provide support in municipalities especially in rural areas to develop EMFs.

### 8.5.2. URBAN AND RURAL COMMUNITIES

The urban areas of the province have access to a bigger variety of resources than rural areas. Urban areas must thus take the lead in developing partnerships contributing to the sustainable delivery of services throughout the province. Due to the unequal distribution of resources between urban and rural areas it is often the rural communities who are the most exposed to environmental degradation and climate change effects. Special mitigation and adaption measures will be required in these areas. The following are challenges that rural communities face on a daily basis:

- The sustainable existence of rural communities is dependent on agriculture. Small-scale and subsistence farming has not received the attention it deserves in the past as a result of the Apartheid legacy. The livelihood of many depends on subsistence farming and it therefore forms a part of rural economies although it is not always recognised as such.
- Rural development is often inextricably tied to land reform and in many parts of the country, traditional leaders determine progress.
- It is often the case that environmental sustainable development projects and policies fail to promote the interest of woman. As a result gender is often a challenge, with issues of equity in many cases being an obstacle to sustainable development of rural communities.
- Dispersed rural communities often struggle to gain access to basic services such as public health, electricity and water because of the cost involved in providing the infrastructure.



### ACTIONS:

- Provincial government in collaboration with national government must provide institutional support for the development of projects to accelerate and broaden the development of partnerships for the sustainable provision of services.
- Exchange innovative approaches to provide electricity and other services to facilities and households in dispersed rural settlements as discussed in Chapter 4.
- Develop strategies promoting the efficient use of agricultural land, equal access to land, social equity and importance of subsistence agriculture in some rural economies.





- Address the need for security of tenure in traditional land arrangements. Tenure security is vital to secure an income for existing farmers and new entrants. The possibility of flexible systems of land use for different kinds of farming on communal land needs to be investigated.
- Channel public investment into research, new agricultural technologies for commercial farming, as well as for the development of adaptation strategies and support services for small-scale and rural farmers.
- Incorporating sustainable land use and agriculture principles into land claim projects in rural areas through training. Ensure sustainable production on transferred land by making sure that human capabilities precede land transfer through incubators, learnerships, mentoring, apprenticeships and accelerated training in agricultural sciences.
- Offer white commercial farmers and organised industry bodies the opportunity to significantly contribute to the success of black farmers through mentorships, chain integration, preferential procurement and meaningful skills transfer.
- Environmental sustainable development planning of urban and rural communities should follow a gendered approach, in favour of women.
- Introduce concept of Ecosystem-based Adaptation (EbA) that integrates the sustainable use of biodiversity and eco-system services into an overall adaptation strategy to help people adapt to the adverse impacts of climate change.

The role of the rural economy in the province is discussed in Section 5 of the report.

### 8.6. RESPONDING TO CLIMATE CHANGE: MITIGATION AND ADAPTATION

Climate change is considered as one of the biggest threats to global sustainability and should be regarded as such in the North West province. Responding efficiently to climate change in the North West province will require successful mitigation and adaptation measures. There are a number of small-scale initiatives that the department have launched but they lack coordination. The North West province thus needs a determined approach to tackle climate change in the province through comprehensive policies and the implementation thereof in all spheres of government and departments. An independent Climate Change Structure, in

partnership with academic institutions and other appropriate institutions should be established in the province to support and coordinate the actions of government, business and civil society towards climate change mitigation and adaptation. Climate change is a new mandate to the Department of Economic Development, Environment, Conservation and Tourism and as a result has not yet been established in provincial planning and policies. It is crucial to identify high risk areas in the province through a comprehensive vulnerability assessment. Effective communication of the possible impact and potential responses of climate change is a significant adaptation challenge. Accessible and reliable information is lacking, with too few social platforms to allow citizens to engage effectively on climate-change issues.



Climate change mitigation refers to efforts to reduce or prevent emission of greenhouse gases. Mitigation can mean using new technologies and renewable energies, making older equipment more energy efficient, or changing management practices or consumer behaviour. It can be as complex as a plan for a new urban development or as simple as equipping a house with a solar geyser. The three key mitigation measures for climate change in the North West province are:

- promote greater energy efficiency in household consumption and production methods





- increase the usage of renewable energy throughout the North West province
- air emission reductions through licensing

The actions below provide only a few of the possible actions to be taken with respect to climate change mitigation measures. The planned provincial climate change policy must discuss these measures in greater detail informed by qualitative indicators.

Adaptation to global warming and climate change is a response to climate change that seeks to reduce the vulnerability of biological systems to climate change effects. Even if emissions in the province are stabilised relatively soon, climate change and its effects will last many years, and adaptation will be necessary. Climate change adaptation is especially important in the underdeveloped rural areas of the province since the people living there rely on the availability of natural resources for their survival. Rural areas will generally have less capacity to adapt to climate change since adaptive capacity is linked to social and economic development.

Adaptation to global warming and climate change is a response to climate change that seeks to reduce the vulnerability of biological systems to climate change effects. Even if emissions in the province are stabilised relatively soon, climate change and its effects will last many years, and adaptation will be necessary. Climate change adaptation is especially important in the underdeveloped rural areas of the province since the people living there rely on the availability of natural resources for their survival. Rural areas will generally have less capacity to adapt to climate change since adaptive capacity is linked to social and economic development.

It is important to understand the potential resilience of biomes and eco-systems to climate change, as well as the role of eco-systems in helping humans cope with climate change. Resilience refers to the ability of a biome, landscape or eco-system to absorb change and re-organise itself in order to retain its character and ecological functioning.

The National Biodiversity Assessment (Department of Environmental Affairs, 2011<sup>xxii</sup>) identified areas where biomes are most likely to be at risk as a result of climate change, as well as areas of biome stability where biomes are most likely to maintain a stable ecological composition and structure in the face of climate change, based on a range of possible future climate scenarios. Areas of biome stability present good opportunities for new or expanded protected areas aimed at improving representation of the biome concerned in the protected area network.

Within areas of biome stability as well as areas where biomes are most likely to be at risk, some features in the landscape are more likely to support resilience of biodiversity to climate change than others. Keeping these areas in a natural or near-natural state will help eco-systems and species to adapt naturally to climate change, thus supporting healthy landscapes and the ability of eco-systems to continue to provide eco-system services. They should be considered vital elements of the provincial ecological infrastructure in the face of climate change.

### ACTIONS:

- Manage and conserve areas important for climate change resilience through a range of mechanisms including land-use planning, environmental impact assessments, protected area expansion, and working with industry sectors to minimise their spatial footprint and other impacts.
- Build capacity in the NW for implementation of Climate Change mitigation and adaptation
- Implement new building design standards (including solar water heaters) and reduce domestic use of fossil fuels through universal electrification.
- Cut down on solid-waste disposal; promote composting and recycling of organic waste.
- Facilitate public and catalyse private sector investment in renewable energy.



- National climate change mitigation measures and interventions should be supported, integrated and promoted on provincial level.
- Implementation of the National Climate Change Response White Paper (RSA, 2011<sup>xxiii</sup>) in the North West province.
- Develop climate adaptation strategies unique to the North West province environmental, social and economic character.
- Where climate is an important factor, as in agriculture, water and infrastructure development and sectoral development must be informed by the best available climate predictions and coordinated responses promoted through an effective provincial planning system.
- Conduct further research to inform climate resilient planning and implementation. This must seek to provide more detailed information about the potential impact on different geographic regions.
- A climate adaptation strategy will coordinate different initiatives in the North West province.
- Create social platforms to allow citizens to engage effectively on climate change issues. Ensure effective communication of the possible impacts and potential responses of climate change through the availability of accessible and reliable information.
- Utilise government and non-government role-players to promote awareness of sustainability issues within communities, and disseminate context-sensitive information about the causes and effects of climate change through amongst others media campaigns and information sessions.

### **8.7. MANAGING A JUST TRANSITION TO AN ENVIRONMENTALLY SUSTAINABLE, LOW-CARBON ECONOMY**

The concept of the green low carbon economy has gained currency to a large extent because it provides a response to the multiple crises that the world has been facing in recent years – the climate, food and economic crises – with an alternative paradigm that offers the promise of growth while protecting the earth's eco-systems and, in turn, contributing to poverty alleviation. In this sense, the transition to a green economy will entail moving away from the system that allowed, and at times generated, these crises to a system that proactively addresses and prevents them.

Provincial economic planning is currently not aimed at transforming the economy to a green or low carbon economy. It can rather be described as a consumption driven economy. Employment in a consumption driven economy is not sustainable. Transforming the economy to a low carbon green economy is more sustainable on the long-term. That being said it has to be realised that the transformation will entail certain trade-offs and will have to be carefully managed.

To illustrate the implications of a transition to a green economy the mining sector in the province will be used. Mining is an energy-intensive industry and one of the largest employers in the province. A transition to a low carbon economy will entail the loss of employment opportunities. A just transition will have to protect the poor and vulnerable from these shocks through providing them with alternative opportunities. If government fails to do so the poverty trap that these people are in will grow. Research has shown that as inequality increases so does the environmental footprint left by poor communities combined with an increase in crime and other social problems. It is thus crucial to ensure that a transition to a green economy does not result in an increase in social inequality.

To manage a just and fair transition to a low-carbon economy, it is essential that there is policy alignment at all levels of government. This alignment should be in relation to priorities and considerations when investing in infrastructure that has long-term consequences for the environment and provincial mitigation targets. While the transition ultimately should make an immediate impact on emissions and provide support to those already affected by environmental impacts, the socio-economic trade-offs of the transition will have to be



carefully managed. In managing the transition, the North West province needs to understand that the decision that they take can have long-term environmental and economic consequences.

### ACTIONS:

- Prioritise the transformation of the provincial economy towards a low carbon economy through effective regulatory measures within policies.
- Phasing and sequencing of investments has to be priority in the low carbon economy planning process.
- Trade-off decisions, based on a set of criteria and indicators that include environmental and socio-economic factors, will need to be made.
- The transition to an environmentally sustainable, low-carbon economy is a crosscutting objective that will have to be integrated into the plans of government departments, IDP's and future iterations of the medium-term Strategic Framework.
- Carbon emissions targets must inform environmental assessment procedures for infrastructure investment decisions at all levels of government. Studies and data on carbon emissions should be made available to all relevant departments and municipalities.
- Implement skills development, in particular the youth, in the green economy sector (green industries)
- Promote programmes that create jobs within the green economy.

### 8.7.1. ENHANCING MANAGEMENT SYSTEMS

The transition to a low carbon economy and sustainable environment will be the result of government interventions. Effective implementation of the PDP will require an institutional mechanism that facilitates coordinated planning, monitoring and evaluation of performance, and measures progress towards sustainability that supports ethical behaviour, and also defines and underpins conduct that is right or wrong at an individual and institutional level (in the provincial and local spheres of government). The role of the Department of Economic Development, Environment, Conservation and Tourism (DEDECT) is crucial in this regard. According to Chapter 3 of the National Environmental Management Act (No. 107 of 1998) the DEDECT is responsible for administering amongst others the Environmental Implementation Plans (EIPs). The EIP is a statutory instrument used to coordinate and harmonise environmental policies, plans, programmes and decisions of local government and various provincial departments that exercise functions which may affect the environment or are entrusted with powers and duties aimed at the achievement, promotion and protection of a sustainable environment.

The extent of development initiatives required to reach the overall provincial development goals implies various development programmes across the province over eighteen years. A programme launched by the proposed governing structure to effectively manage the development impacts is required. These programmes are to be filtered down to municipal level for implementation.

### ACTIONS:

- A NW Environmental Forum must be established to ensure interdepartmental coordination in the province towards sustainable goals.
- Pursue partnerships with adjacent provinces and countries to effectively manage eco-systems and species that cross administrative boundaries.
- Pursue the improved integration of land development and environmental authorisation processes in the province through addressing it in the provincial Land Use Bill.
- Establishment of an information management system linked to sustainability indicators as provided in the North West Environmental Outlook (2008).



- Develop spatial data infrastructure in the form of a Geographical Information System (GIS) Warehouse to enhance information management. The system will serve as a repository for storing all planning related information. This action will form part of the provincial ICT strategy identified in Chapter 4
- Strengthening of the integration of sustainability principles in the specific planning frameworks and strategies, such as the Provincial Development Plan (PDP), the Integrated Development Plan (IDP), the Spatial Development Framework (SDF) and the Local Economic Development (LED) strategy.
- The environmental sector needs to identify a set of biodiversity friendly land use guidelines that can be incorporated into municipal land use schemes and spatial development frameworks.
- Launch effective programmes to manage the impact of new developments. These programmes are to include the following:
  - introducing measures to ensure that SDFs and other plans and strategies by all spheres of government consider the impacts of proposals on the natural environment
  - ensure that economic development strategies take into consideration the developmental impacts on the natural resource base of the province
  - Ensure monitoring and evaluation

### 8.7.2. HUMAN CAPITAL DEVELOPMENT

Once the coordination of environmental affairs is structured and established in the province the second part of enhancing environmental management systems is capacity. In order to implement the priorities identified in this chapter and unlock the opportunities presented by the provincial wealth of biodiversity resources, a concerted investment is required in human capital to study, govern, manage, restore and protect ecosystems (Department of Environmental Affairs, 2011<sup>xxiv</sup>). Lack of sufficient skilled and experienced people has been identified as a key constraint in the biodiversity sector, along with many other sectors in the province

Investing in skills for biodiversity conservation, management, restoration and protection has the potential to support significant employment creation, often at lower skills levels, and in rural areas. While fewer in number and more expensive to produce, managerial, professional and technical skills are vital for unlocking jobs at lower levels of skill. It is also at these high and intermediate levels where most of the sector's scarce and critical skills are present.

Human capital development in the biodiversity sector is not only essential for achieving biodiversity outcomes but has significant potential to contribute to provincial job creation and development objectives.

#### ACTIONS:

- Identification of funding to support community-based capacity-building projects.
- Develop critical skills such as strategic leadership, advocacy, and the ability to work across disciplines (Incorporated in Chapter 7).
- Promote scarce skills development including wetland science, resource economics and biodiversity informatics (Incorporated in Chapter 7).
- Encourage stronger human capital development skills to address the systemic quality challenges in basic and higher education, develop more broad based scientific literacy and support students and mid-career professionals in completing post-graduate studies (Incorporated in Chapter 7).



### NOTES

---

- <sup>i</sup> World Commission on Environment and Development. 1987. Brundtland Commission Report.
- <sup>ii</sup> Stern, D., Common, M. S., Barbier, E. B. 1996. Economic growth and environmental degradation: The environmental Kuznets curve and sustainable development. <http://www.sciencedirect.com> Date of Access: December, 2012.
- <sup>iii</sup> Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism. 2008. A National Framework for Sustainable Development in South Africa
- <sup>iv</sup> Stephens, A. 2011. Harnessing ecological infrastructure and adapting risk. [http://www.nbi.org.za/Lists/Events/Attachments/48/Stephens\\_Harnessing\\_Ecological\\_Infrastructure\\_And\\_Adapting\\_To\\_Risk.pdf](http://www.nbi.org.za/Lists/Events/Attachments/48/Stephens_Harnessing_Ecological_Infrastructure_And_Adapting_To_Risk.pdf) Date of Access: November, 2012.
- <sup>v</sup> South African National Parks. 2009. GIS Metadata : Detailed Report. [http://196.21.45.151/imf-aims50/sites/BGIS/overberg\\_metadata\\_ona.pdf](http://196.21.45.151/imf-aims50/sites/BGIS/overberg_metadata_ona.pdf) Date of Access: March, 2013.
- <sup>vi</sup> Department of Water Affairs (DWA). 2008. North West Water Provision and Management Plan.
- <sup>vii</sup> Department of Agriculture, Conservation, Environment and Rural Development. 2008. Provincial Integrated Waste Management Plan.
- <sup>viii</sup> Department of Environmental Affairs. 2011. National Climate Change Response Paper.
- <sup>ix</sup> National Planning Commission. 2012. National Development Plan. <http://www.npconline.co.za/pebble.asp?relid=25> Date of Access: August, 2012.
- <sup>x</sup> Desmet, P, Schaller, R & Skowno, A. 2009. North West Province Biodiversity Conservation Assessment Technical Report.
- <sup>xi</sup> Water Research Commission. 2011. Technical Report for the National Freshwater Ecosystem Priority Areas project.
- <sup>xii</sup> North West Department of Agriculture, Conservation and Environment. 2008. North West Environmental Outlook.
- <sup>xiii</sup> North West Department of Agriculture, Conservation and Environment. 2008. North West Environmental Outlook.
- <sup>xiv</sup> Department of Environmental Affairs. 2011. National Biodiversity Assessment.
- <sup>xv</sup> Department of Economic Development, Environment, Conservation and Tourism. 2012. Renewable Energy Strategy for the North West Province.
- <sup>xvi</sup> Water Research Commission. 2011. Technical Report for the National Freshwater Ecosystem Priority Areas project.



<sup>xvii</sup> North West Department of Agriculture, Conservation and Environment. 2008. North West Environmental Outlook.

<sup>xviii</sup> North West Department of Agriculture, Conservation and Environment. 2009. Provincial Air Quality Management Plan.

<sup>xix</sup> Department of Agriculture, Conservation, Environment and Rural Development. 2008. Provincial Integrated Waste Management Plan

<sup>xx</sup> Department of Environmental Affairs. 2011. National Waste Management Strategy. <http://www.info.gov.za/view/DownloadFileAction?id=154171> Date of Access: November, 2012.

<sup>xxi</sup> North West Department of Agriculture, Conservation and Environment. 2008. North West Environmental Outlook

<sup>xxii</sup> Department of Environmental Affairs. 2011. National Biodiversity Assessment.

<sup>xxiii</sup> Republic of South Africa. 2011. National Climate Change Response Paper

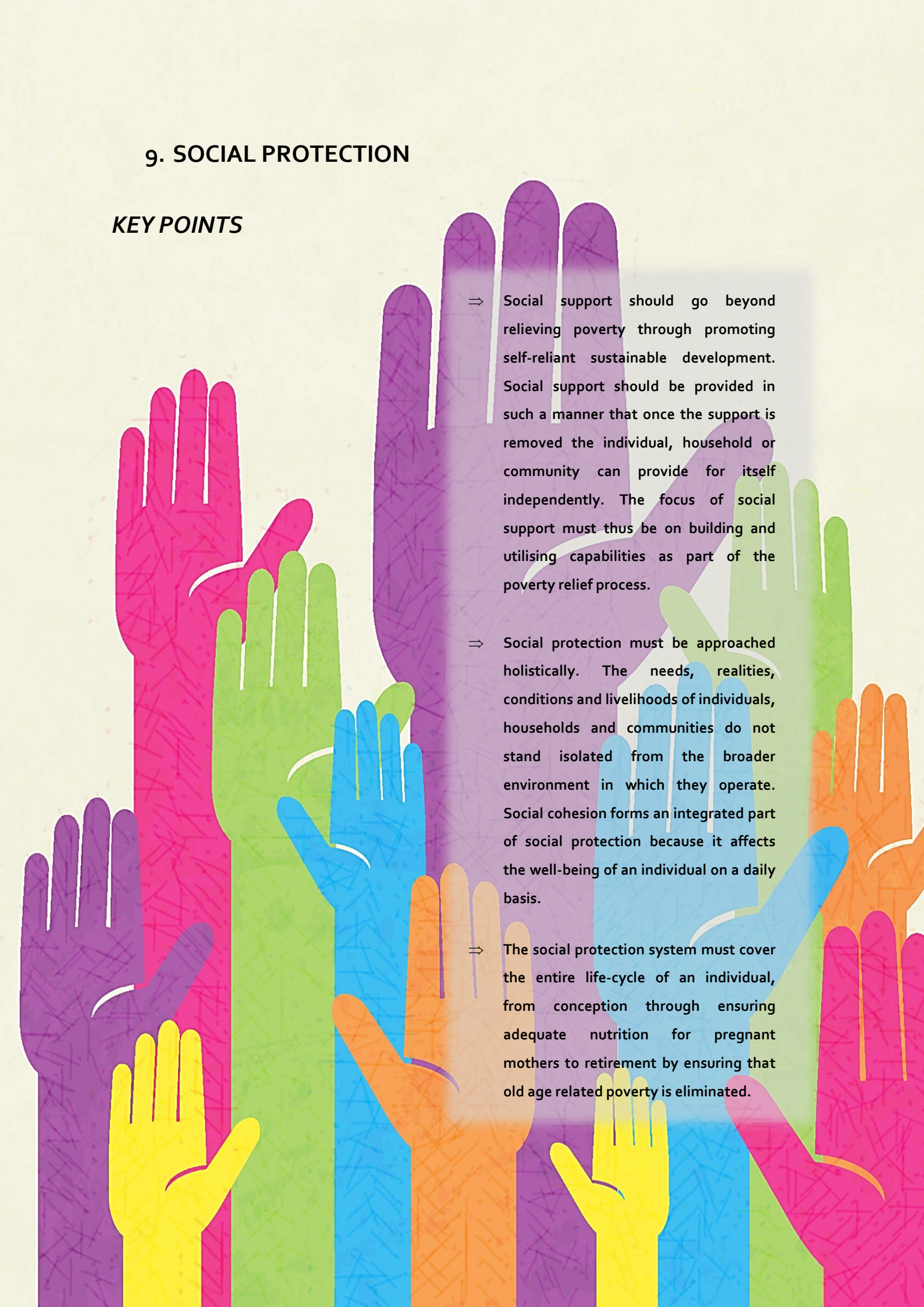
<sup>xxiv</sup> Department of Environmental Affairs. 2011. National Strategy for Sustainable Development and Action Plan (NSSD1) 2011-2014





## 9. SOCIAL PROTECTION

### KEY POINTS

- 
- ⇒ Social support should go beyond relieving poverty through promoting self-reliant sustainable development. Social support should be provided in such a manner that once the support is removed the individual, household or community can provide for itself independently. The focus of social support must thus be on building and utilising capabilities as part of the poverty relief process.
  - ⇒ Social protection must be approached holistically. The needs, realities, conditions and livelihoods of individuals, households and communities do not stand isolated from the broader environment in which they operate. Social cohesion forms an integrated part of social protection because it affects the well-being of an individual on a daily basis.
  - ⇒ The social protection system must cover the entire life-cycle of an individual, from conception through ensuring adequate nutrition for pregnant mothers to retirement by ensuring that old age related poverty is eliminated.



## 9.1. INTRODUCTION

Social protection refers to efforts in preventing, managing, and overcoming situations that adversely affect people's well-being. It incorporates non-statutory or private measures for providing social security without excluding traditional social security measures such as social assistance and social insurance, social welfare services, and active labour market policies. Effective social protection therefore becomes the result of comprehensive and accessible social security and welfare, education, health, employment, housing and transport systems. An important factor with regard to social protection is that it is aimed at the entire life cycle of an individual. No part of the life cycle should expose the individual to vulnerability or to living standards below the social floor.

Social security is the outcome of a Constitutional provision. Section 27 recognises social security as a basic right. *All South Africans "have the right ... to social security, including, if they are unable to support themselves and their dependants, ..."* Section 27(2) goes further to explain that the state must take reasonable legislative and other measures, within its available resources, to achieve the progressive realisation of the right of access to social security and social assistance. Section 28(1)(c) provides for the right of children to social services.

## 9.2. THE CURRENT PERSPECTIVE

In the process of achieving the identified priorities for social protection and cohesion in the North West province certain key challenges will have to be addressed additional to the individual challenges each priority will face. Poverty and inequality is not homogeneously spread across the North West province. The Human Development Index (HDI), number of people living in poverty and dependency ratios was used as barometers to measure the extent of human development in the province and each District Municipality (DM).

### 9.2.1. HUMAN DEVELOPMENT INDEX (HDI)

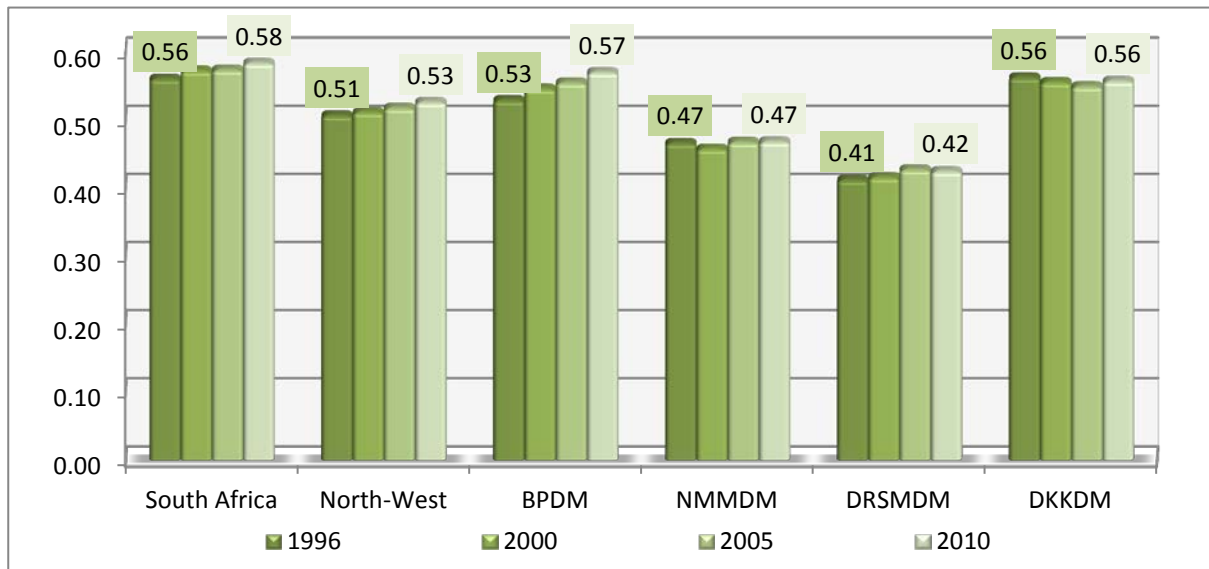
The Human Development Index (HDI) is a composite, relative index which attempts to quantify the extent of human development of a community. It is based on measures of life expectancy, literacy and income. It is thus seen as a measure of people's ability to live long and healthy lives, to communicate, to participate in the life of the community and to have sufficient resources to make a decent living.

The HDI can assume a maximum value of one, indicating a high level of human development, and a minimum value of zero.

According to the United Nations (UN) Human Development Report (2011<sup>i</sup>), South-Africa is considered to have a medium HDI while countries like Canada, the Netherlands and Sweden have very high HDI scores. The HDI of the North West province definitely reflects the average HDI of South-Africa and is accordingly illustrated in Figure 9.2.1.



Figure 9.1: HDI for South-Africa and North West province (2001-2010)



Source: Global Insight, 2013

The HDI within the North West province can be considered to be medium and have been increasing since 1996. Interventions to improve life expectancy, literacy and income in the province will all contribute to a higher provincial HDI and as a result, people's ability to live a long and healthy life, to communicate, to participate in the life of the community and to have sufficient resources to make a decent living. The NMMDM (0.47) and DRSDM (0.42) have the lowest HDI of the four DM's. None of the DM's has shown a decrease in their HDI since 1996. The BPD in which the mining sector plays a dominant role has had the highest increase in HDI from 0.53 in 1996 to 0.57 in 2010.

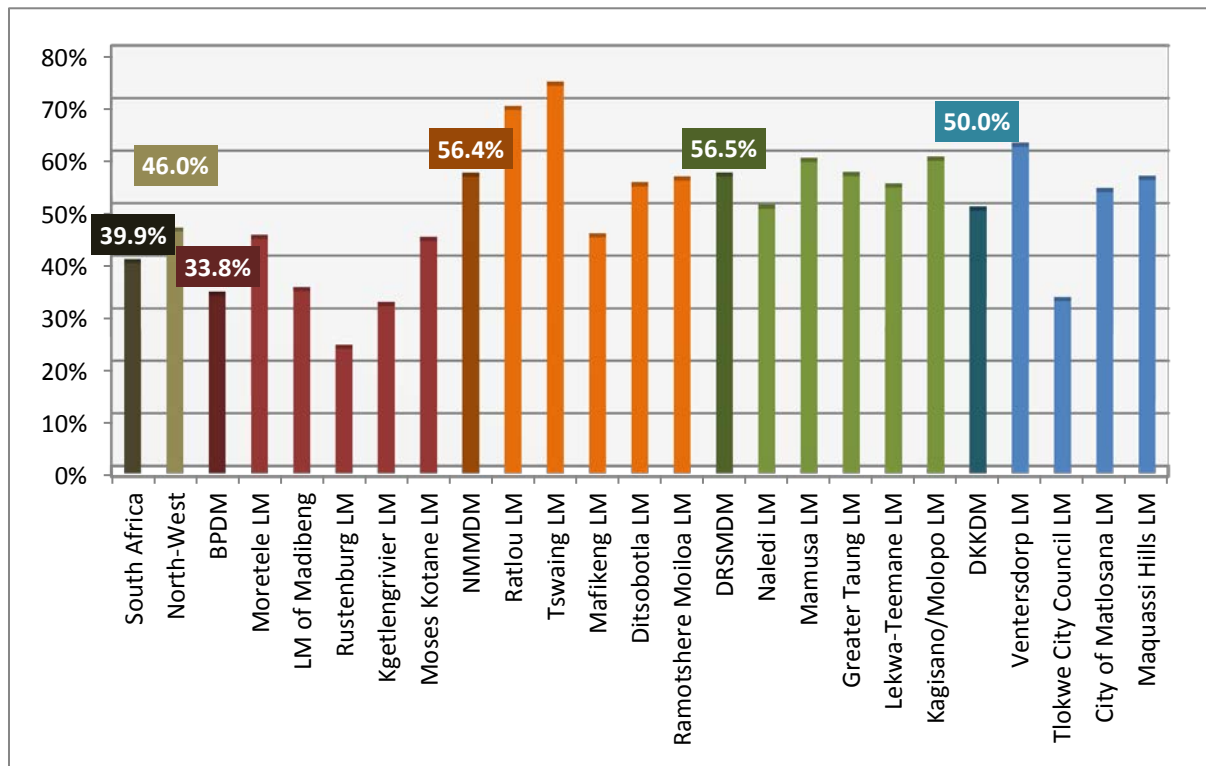
### 9.2.2. POPULATION LIVING IN POVERTY

Eradicating poverty in the North West province will require a clear indication of the existing poverty levels. The North West province has a diverse character ranging from the rural area in the west to the urbanised area in the east. Since the eradicating of poverty is one of the main objectives of the PDP, this section of the plan provides an overview of the population living in poverty on a national, provincial, district and local level.

Figure 9.2.2 provides the percentage of each population living in poverty on national, provincial and local level.



Figure 9.2: percentage of population living in poverty, 2010



Source: Urban-Econ calculations based on Global Insight data, 2013<sup>ii</sup>

The following can be concluded from the figures above:

- The North West province has a higher percentage of people living in poverty (46%) than the national average (39.9%).
- The DRSMMDM (56.5%) has the highest percentage of people living in poverty followed by the NMMDM (56.4%).

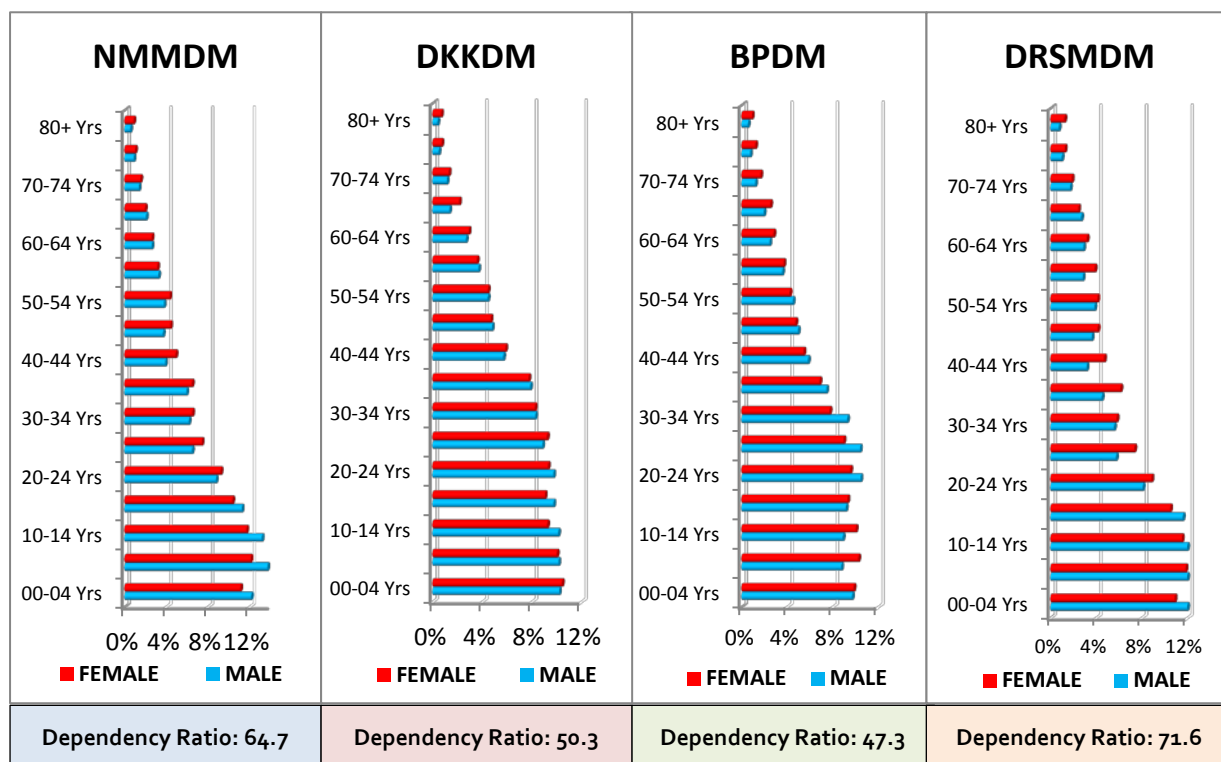
### 9.2.3. DEPENDENCY RATIO

Another development indicator derivable from the population structure is the dependency ratio in the province. The dependency ratio is made up by the number of people every 100 persons in the economically active age group (15-64) will have to cater for. In 2011 every 100 persons in the economically active years (15-64) were expected to cater for 57.8 people in the North West province.

Figure 9.2.3 provides an overview of the dependency ratio in each DM as well as the age and gender structure of each region.



Figure 9.3: age and gender composition and dependency ratio, 2012

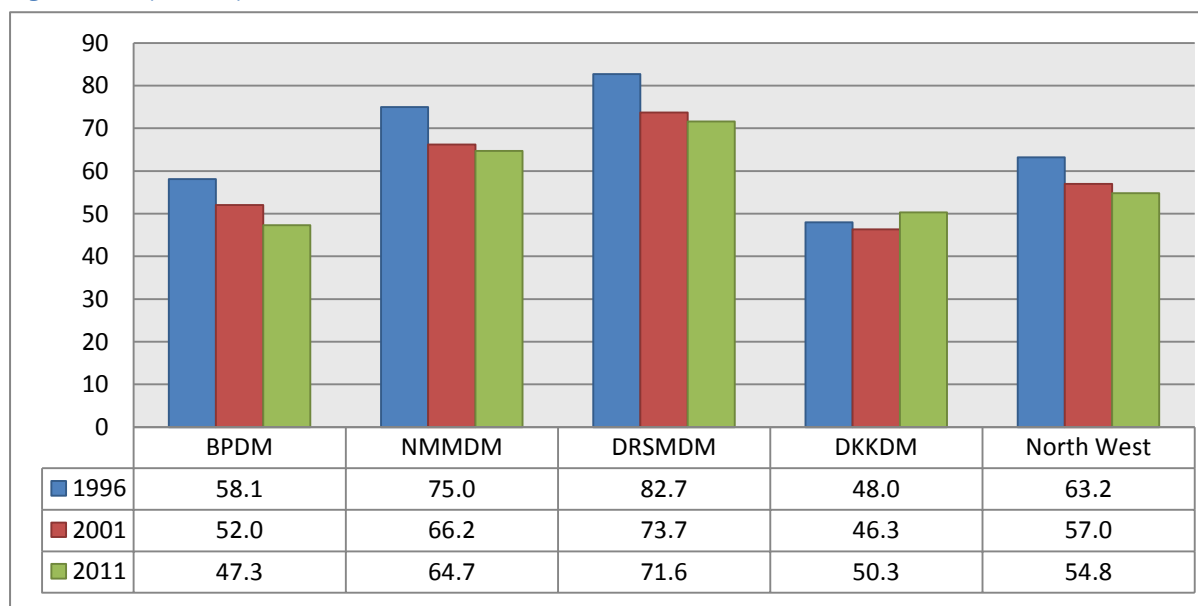
Source: Stats SA, 2012 a<sup>iii</sup>

It is evident that the population composition differs between the district municipalities of the North West province. A high dependency ratio is evident in the NMMDM (64.7) and DRSMMDM (71.6). The high dependency ratios are reflected in the age and gender composition of the municipalities. A large section of the NMMDM and DRSMMDM population is aged between 0 - 14 years. There is a steep decline in population numbers from the age of 20 years and above, especially between the ages of 20 and 54 years. There are also considerably fewer males than females present within these age groups. This is an indication of a lack of employment opportunities within these two DMs. Male workers typically migrate to other areas in search of employment opportunities.

Figure 9.2.4 provides the dependency ratio for the four DM's from 1996 to 2011.



Figure 9.4: dependency ratios (1996 – 2011)



Source: Stats SA, 2012 -2013

For the North West province, the dependency ratio has decreased from 63.2 in 1996 to 54.8 in 2011. The DKKDM is the only DM that experienced an increase in the number of people dependant on every 100 people of the population in the working age group (15-64 years).

#### 9.2.4. SUMMARY

It can be concluded that poverty and the impact thereof is not equally distributed in all four DM's of the North West province. The North West province has a diverse character ranging from the rural area in the west to the urbanised area in the east. The DRSDM located in the west has the lowest HDI combined with the highest percentage of its population living in poverty and the highest dependency ratio. From a developmental perspective it can thus be said that the DRSDM requires the most attention followed by the NMMDM. The DRSDM and NMMDM are less urbanised than the eastern sections where mining plays a dominant role. The DRSDM and NMMDM are rural and rely on agriculture, manufacturing and various tertiary activities for their existence. They are also the two DM's with the lowest contribution towards the provincial GVA as discussed in Chapter 3. The BPDM boast with the strongest provincial economy followed by the DKKDM. These characteristics reflect the prevalence of poverty in the province. Areas with lower contributions towards the provincial economy have higher poverty levels. It can be concluded that the North West province face challenges regarding poverty levels. This challenge is considered as a matter of urgency throughout the PDP.

### 9.3. VISION 2030

Social protection in the province and in the country as a broader concept than social security should be considered an equally important part of the development process as a prerequisite for inclusive economic growth and human development.

*To effectively tackle poverty and inequality, social and economic policies have to work together. Social protection as part of public policy should provide support that reduces vulnerability, alleviates and ultimately prevents poverty, and empowers individuals, families and communities. The private sector must play an active role in social*



*protection in the North West province. By 2030, everyone must enjoy an adequate standard of living. There must be basic social protection guarantees aimed at preventing or alleviating poverty and protecting against vulnerability. These should be easily accessible and available to those who need them the most. The social protection system must cover the entire life-cycle of an individual, from conception through ensuring adequate nutrition for pregnant mothers to retirement by ensuring that old age related poverty is eliminated.*

### 9.3.1. HOW TO ACHIEVE IT

According to this vision, all social development planning between now and 2030 must be guided by the objectives of the proposed social floor with effective private and public sector participation. Development planning must incorporate the unique needs of each DM.

The social floor objectives are:

- Benefits aimed at facilitating access to nutrition, health care, education, social care and safety should be accessible to all children in the North West province. This will support the physical growth and cognitive development of children through reducing problems such as hunger, malnutrition and micronutrient deficiencies.
- Vulnerable groups and the elderly must at all times enjoy the full protection provided for under the Constitution of South-Africa. There should be an effective social welfare system that delivers better results for vulnerable groups, with the state playing a dominant role. Actions and programmes of civil society should complement government initiatives.
- Basic services such as shelter, water, sanitation and energy should be accessible to everyone living in the North West province.
- The working age population in the province should be empowered to participate in social and economic life.
- No person living in the province should suffer poverty induced hunger, thus no individual should live below the poverty line of R419 (2009).
- Public works programmes, training and skills development, and other labour market related incentives must create income support for the unemployed working population.
- Everyone residing in the province should have access to basic essential health care, with the state taking the responsibility for delivery.

This vision for social protection should be attained through a combination of public and private provision of services. It aims to ensure the most basic needs of recipients are met and so break the cycle of poverty. Achieving these objectives will require focus on three main priority areas for social protection. These priorities are:

- Ensure developmental social welfare services
- Create household food and nutrition security
- Create labour market initiatives

### PRIVATE SECTOR PARTICIPATION IN SOCIAL PROTECTION

Addressing social challenges in the North West province requires a collective and concerted effort, involving all factors across civil society, the private sector and government. Social welfare services may be provided by the state, non-governmental organisations and the market. For example, homes for the elderly and the frail, mental health clinics, child guidance services and services related to addictions are provided by government, private providers, non-profit providers and government subsidised providers.

As part of a developmental state the provincial government must also play a much stronger role in establishing clear, measurable and time-bound targets for common programmes, and for monitoring their implementation. Strategic capacity within government is thus crucial. Strategic capacity means the ability of



the state to take the lead in defining a common provincial agenda, to mobilise all of society to take part in the implementation of this agenda and to direct society's resources towards this shared programme. Public Private Partnerships (PPP's) may improve efficiency of social service delivery. Furthermore, PPP's may attract private capital investment. But their success is very much related to a comprehensive planning process and to on-going monitoring from the public partner. Only in this manner can the quality of basic social services be assured.

The unique rural character of the North West province will demand innovative collaborations as described above to ensure all citizens have access to social security as a basic human right.

#### 9.4. ENSURE DEVELOPMENTAL SOCIAL WELFARE SERVICES

Welfare is the provision of a minimal level of wellbeing and social support for all citizens. Welfare is largely provided by the government, in addition to charities, informal social groups, faith based groups, and inter-governmental organisations.

The vast majority of children in South-Africa live in poverty and are faced with considerable inequalities which continue to inhibit their access to better quality of life, enhanced educational levels, improved health outcomes and access to opportunities. Children are defined by the Constitution of the Republic of South-Africa as 'individuals under the age of 18 years'. Approximately 6.9 per cent of the children living in South-Africa are located in the North West province. The majority of children in the North West province are black Africans (93.4%). The rest of the provincial child population comprises of 1.4 per cent coloured, 0.1 per cent Indian or Asian and 5.1 per cent white children. The table below provides an overview of the demographics and sociological composition of the child population in the North West province.

**Table 9.1: child demographics in the North West province and South-Africa (2010)**

PARAMETER	NORTH WEST	SOUTH-AFRICA
Per cent who are orphaned (both parents have died)	4.2%	4.4%
Per cent living with both parents	31.5%	33.5%
Per cent living in child headed households	0.1%	0.5%
Per cent living in poverty conditions	62.2%	62.1%
Per cent living without employed adult	35.8%	36.0%

Source: Stats SA, 2012b<sup>iv</sup>

It can be concluded from the table above that orphans of which both parents have died represents 4,2 per cent of the child population in the North West province. Only about one third (31,5%) of children living in the North West province consistently live with both their biological parents while almost one quarter (26.3%) live with neither their biological parents. Black African children are the least likely to live with both their parents, while Indian children are most likely to do so. These demographic patterns are quite common in most African cultures where an expanded view of parenthood and the raising of children exist. Uncles and aunts are often represented as mother or father figures and children raised by grandparents are very common.

Less than 1 per cent of households in the North West province are headed by (or consist of only) individuals younger than 18 years. Children are heavily affected by poverty in the North West province; nearly two thirds of children (62.2%) live in poverty conditions. These provincial patterns show a close resemblance to the





distribution of children living in households where one or more adult is employed indicating the relationship between income poverty and employment.

The population composition of the youth in the North West province is very similar to the child composition. The youth population comprises of 93.6 per cent black Africans, 1.4 per cent coloured, 0.3 per cent Indian or Asian and 4.8 per cent white. The table below analyses a few demographic indicators regarding the youth of the North West province and South-Africa.

**Table 9.2: youth demographics in the North West Province and South-Africa (2010)**

	AGE	NORTH WEST	SOUTH-AFRICA
Per cent households headed by youth	15-24	3.9%	6.6%
	25-34	14.2%	20.7%
Per cent living in poverty conditions	15-24	56.1%	57%
	25-34	46.6%	43%

Source: Stats SA, 2012b

It is evident from the different age categories that the youth is not homogeneous. Household members are often more vulnerable to poverty and unemployment when living in households in which young members are forced to take on responsibility for themselves and their siblings as a result of the death or absence of their parents. There is also a bigger portion of the younger youth living in poverty than the older section of the youth. More than half of the youth aged between 15 and 24 lives in poverty conditions.

The table below illustrates some demographics regarding female headed households in the North West province.

**Table 9.3: female headed households in the North West province and South-Africa (2011)**

	NORTH WEST	SOUTH-AFRICA
% households headed by a female	33.3%	27.5%
% of female headed households with a per capita income of less than R 650 per month	61.1%	63.9%
% of male headed households with a per capita income of less than R 650 per month	33.7%	31.7%

Source: Stats SA, 2012b

In 2011 nearly a third (33.3%) of all households in the North West province was female headed. This is lower than the national average of 37.5 per cent of all households being female headed. A larger portion of the female headed households than the male headed households in the North West province has a per capita income of less than R 650 per month. More than half of the female headed households (61.1%) live in poverty conditions compared to 33.7 per cent of the male population in the North West. As a result female headed households are more likely to and rely more heavily on social grants (child support and old age) than male headed households.

The current generation of the elderly in South-Africa was particularly burdened by the apartheid government system. Adequate education, employment and socio-economic opportunities were not provided to a large portion of the elderly during their younger years. Without the means to break free from the bondage of poverty, the majority of older people were unable to provide for their old age through secure retirement



benefits. The table below provides an overview of a few demographics and the sociological composition of the elderly population.

**Table 9.4:** demographics of the elderly in the North West province and South-Africa (2010)

	NORTH WEST	SOUTH-AFRICA
Per cent households headed by older persons	23%	20.50%
Per cent living in poverty conditions	42.7%	40.1%

Source: Stats SA, 2012b

It can be concluded from the table above that the percentage of households headed by older persons is 23 per cent in the North West province. Slightly less than one-quarter of all persons in South-Africa live in a household headed by a person aged 60 years and older. Approximately 42 per cent of the elderly live in households where poverty conditions prevail, compared to 40 per cent in South-Africa as a whole. The elderly in South-Africa is heavily dependent on grants from the government. In 2009, 69 per cent of older persons received some form of government grant compared to only 28 per cent of persons in the general population.

#### 9.4.1. EFFECTIVE SOCIAL WELFARE SYSTEM

An effective social welfare system needs to be established in the province working with the national government and initiatives to protect and reach the most vulnerable people of society. Within the social welfare system the state should play the largest role with civil society and the private sector complementing government initiatives.

As illustrated above there are large sections of the provincial population in need of social support. All children should enjoy services and benefits aimed at facilitating access to nutrition, health care, education, social care and safety. Unfortunately there often exists a lack of coordination and integration in the social system. There are different role-players and departments present in the social welfare system and efforts by all need to be coordinated and regulated by a governing body. It is especially the lack of commitment from sector departments and municipalities particularly on appointment of focal persons, participation in structures and lack of reporting on international protocols and agreements that is regarded as a challenge in the North West province.

Additional to a lack of coordination, capacity and funding also pose a challenge. NPO's are in partnership with departments in terms of reaching out to clients and delivering services. Non-compliance by NPO's to the NPO Act is prompted by lack of capacity and this can inhibit the participation of certain NPO's in the sector. Cases have been reported of double funding of NPO's by sector departments. Monitoring of funding by sector departments has not been effective in the province and this has disadvantaged government at large in terms of fair allocation of resources. A further budget constraint is the implementation of the Children's Act. The Department of Social Development, Women, Children and People with Disabilities as the custodian of the Children's Act has the responsibility to ensure the implementation of the Act, however based on the appropriation; it is difficult to implement all sections of the act due to budgetary constraints.

The distribution of and access to both public and private social welfare services remains skewed along racial and income lines. The wealthy enjoys access to relatively effective private services while it is the poor and vulnerable who need social services the most but to whom it is not always accessible. The poor thus bear the greatest burden of a heavily constrained social welfare system.



### ACTIONS

- Maintain the existing social security system. Improve service delivery and protect the most vulnerable from neglect, exploitation and abuse.
- Adequate budget for compensation and implementation of the Children's Act.
- Identify and implement measures such as community awareness, job creation, promotion of personal savings and permanent clothing and food banks to reduce dependency on the social security system.
- The state has to ensure that non-governmental providers do not take advantage of vulnerable groups and that they provide the correct benefits. Ensure effective monitoring of funding by sector departments.
- Development of a comprehensive NPO's capacity building programme.
- Develop and implement care and support programmes for older persons.
- Develop and facilitate the implementation of prevention of substance abuse programmes.
- Facilitate the social integration of people with disabilities to the mainstream of society and strengthen specialised protection, care, support and developmental programmes for people with disabilities.
- Facilitate care and support services to victims of violence and abuse.
- Improve service facilities for children in need of care and protection.
- Remove capacity constraints and administrative bottlenecks to ensure the most vulnerable groups in the province, especially in the rural areas receive social security.

#### 9.4.2. SKILLS DEFICIT

A well-functioning social welfare system requires skills and capability but there currently exist a skills deficit in the sector. Structural conditions in the education and health sectors affect the ability of tertiary institutions to produce social work, community development and social development professionals, as well as specialists such as school psychologists. The skills deficit needs to be addressed. Additional to the skills deficit a major challenge in the North West province is an inadequate compensation budget to attract and retain professionals such as social workers and community development practitioners.

### ACTIONS

- Address the structural conditions in the education and health sectors to increase the supply of four categories of social service professionals to respond to the demand for appropriate basic social welfare services, i.e. social workers; auxiliary or assistant social workers, community development workers, and child and youth care workers.
- Adequate budget allocation for the compensation of professionals such as social workers and community development practitioners.

#### 9.4.3. EFFICIENCY IN DELIVERY OF SERVICES

Exclusion errors in the social welfare system mean that some people are not accessing the benefits that they are entitled to. This may be due to a failure to reach certain geographic areas or the administrative burden that the system places on the poor. These gaps disproportionately affect the poorest people in certain areas; especially orphans and children; persons with disabilities and the elderly on farms; in remote rural areas; and difficult to reach informal settlements. The Department of Social Development, Woman, Children and People with Disabilities are currently managing 48 000 cases of foster care in the North West province. Administrative challenges due to staff shortages affect the management of foster care and as a result the province is experiencing a backlog. As discussed in the previous section, skills, resource and capacity challenges directly affect the efficient delivery of services.



Costing of social welfare services is not uniform and economic in certain areas and as a result it poses challenges on the available budget. There exists a definite need for the development of an effective model for the costing of services across the North West province.

Another factor affecting the efficiency of service delivery is that the demand for services is increasing while the funding therefor is decreasing. Non-governmental welfare organisations play a crucial role in the welfare system and it is particularly these organisations which are experiencing a decline in funding.

#### ACTIONS

- Improve efficiency in the delivery of services, address exclusions by identifying and reaching those who are entitled to the existing benefits of social protection, reduce the administrative bottlenecks that prevent people from accessing benefits.
- Develop an effective model for the costing of services.
- Ensure that accountability is built into partnerships with the non-governmental sector through providing sufficient funding for the functions of these organisations.

### 9.5. CREATE HOUSEHOLD FOOD AND NUTRITION SECURITY

Social protection extends beyond income security. It includes ensuring that individuals have adequate food security. The table below provides a few facts on the nutrition of children, the youth and the elderly.

**Table 9.5: nutritional data of children, the youth and the elderly in the North West province and South-Africa (2010)**

PARAMETER	NORTH WEST	SOUTH-AFRICA
Per cent of children living in households that reported hunger	24.9%	16.2%
Per cent of the youth living in households with inadequate access to food	38.8%	28.9%
Per cent of the elderly living in household that reported hunger	18.3%	16.2%

Source: Stats SA, 2012b

It can be concluded from Table 9.5.1 that hunger and inadequate access to food is a reality in all age groups. The youth faces the biggest challenge with regard to adequate access to food with 38.8 per cent not enjoying sufficient access. It is estimated that 24.9 per cent of children in the North West province lived in households that experienced hunger in 2010. It was found that children living in households without any employed adults are more vulnerable to hunger than children living in households that contain at least one employed adult. Households headed by younger individuals are also more likely to have experienced hunger than households headed by older individuals. Older persons are however (likely due to the success of the old age grant) less prone to be vulnerable to hunger than the population as a whole.

The fact that such large portions of the provincial population do not have adequate access to food needs urgent attention. Inadequate access to food will lead to malnutrition and micronutrient deficiencies that affect physical growth and cognitive development, especially among children. The private sector and civil society should also play an active role in community development and nutritional programmes. Successful community development and nutritional programmes will be beneficial to all stakeholders both private and public. Well-developed communities will be more productive and less prone to illness and other health risks.

In the majority of time cost is the factor restricting households from accessing a balanced diet. Which makes this matter worse is the fact that in rural areas where poverty is the highest, so is the price of food. This imbalance needs to be addressed through innovative ways such as community gardens to ensure everyone enjoys adequate access to food. Existing community and household projects funded by the Department of



Social Development, Woman, Children and People with Disabilities has been described as unsustainable due to a lack of technical skills. Community development practitioners need to be enrolled and trained in business planning to enable them to develop financial feasible community projects including food and nutrition programmes.



An urgent need exists for a detailed community development model and strategy for the North West province. Without such a model the roles of all stakeholders in community development is not clearly defined which in the past has resulted in the duplication of services delivered by other sector departments. Such an approach will not accommodate and address the unique needs of communities in the North West province. The community model and strategy coordinated by skilled community development practitioners must identify methods to attract investment in community development and planning to address the existing lack thereof.

Different departments are involved in implementing community development nutritional programmes. Cooperation between these departments is usually not conducted in a well-coordinated and integrated fashion. The Department of Social Development, Women, Children and People with Disabilities and the Department of Agriculture and Rural Development share similarities in their mandates to address food security. Therefore the two departments should forge a relationship leading other role-players towards food security in the North West province. Sustainability should be endorsed in all provincial community development and food security programmes. In the past, projects and NGO's funded by the Department of Social Development, Women, Children and People with Disabilities has not always prioritised environmental sustainable methods. When projects are considered for funding, environmental sustainable approaches should be made a priority.

### ACTIONS

- Develop a comprehensive community development model and strategy that will cater for the needs of communities including a comprehensive food and nutritional security programme.
- Develop a capacity building programme for community practitioners on business planning.
- Identify the main elements of a comprehensive food security and nutrition strategy and launch a campaign in 2012 – 2015. Promote sustainable methods throughout the strategy.
- Combine all household food and nutrition security programmes with Early Childhood Development programmes.
- Create multi-sector partnerships to reduce malnutrition. Develop and implement a nutrition programme in the province that is coordinated centrally.
- Among others secure cooperation between the Department of Social Development, Women, Children and People with Disabilities and the Department of Agriculture and Rural Development to take the leading role in household and provincial food and nutritional security.
- A household food and nutrition security roadmap should be pursued, including elements such as vegetable growers, who could be structured in a horticulture community cooperative.



## 9.6. CREATE LABOUR MARKET INITIATIVES

Labour market initiatives in both the private and public sector will create employment opportunities throughout the province. Private companies may have a strong interest in hiring a trained and qualified labour force. On the other hand, the public sector has a stake in lifting people out of low-skilled informal jobs into qualified and formal employment. Private companies should render training services related to occupational training or further training. It can be stated that there should be a huge overlap of public and private interests in the labour market policies sector.

Employment is the best form of social protection since it provides security and as a result safety and should thus be endorsed as such. Employment is discussed in greater detail in Section 2 of the report.

### ACTIONS

- Provide income support to the unemployed through various active labour market initiatives such as public works programmes, training and skills development, and other labour market related incentives.
- Pilot mechanisms and incentives to assist the unemployed to access the labour market.
- Expand existing public employment initiatives to create opportunities for the unemployed.
- Create labour market activation strategies for the youth to enhance the employability and improve the chances of entering higher income jobs. Most of these jobs must be in the private sector.
- Establish employment services to assist the unemployed in finding work and skills development opportunities, and help employers recruit new employees.
- Create a partnership with the NWU for education, training, skills development programmes and the development of information centres.
- Facilitate the implementation of integrated youth development programs.

Households headed by youth aged 15 to 24 years is significantly more vulnerable to hunger, and are more likely to suffer from poor living conditions, low-income and unemployment.

Realising full and productive employment for all young people should be priority in the North West province. Youth employment and development could lead to the eradication of poverty and inequality. Also, the youth are not supported by the social safety nets that are available to children and to older persons. There exists a need to target the youth in social development programmes, social protection and social welfare services.



### NOTES

---

<sup>i</sup> United Nations. 2011. Human Development Report <http://hdr.undp.org/en/reports/> Date of Access: November, 2012.

<sup>ii</sup> HIS Global Insight. 2013. <http://www.ihsglobalinsight.co.za/> Date of Access: January, 2013.

<sup>iii</sup> Statistics South Africa. 2012a. Census 2011 Results. <http://beta2.statssa.gov.za/> Date of Access: December, 2012.

<sup>iv</sup> Statistics South Africa. 2012. Social profile of vulnerable groups in South Africa 2002–2011 <https://www.statssa.gov.za/Publications/Report-03-19-00/Report-03-19-002002.pdf> Date of Access: December, 2012.





## 10. PROMOTING HEALTH

---

### **KEY POINTS**

⇒ Health is not just a medical issue. The social determinants of health need to be addressed, including promoting healthy behaviours and lifestyles.

⇒ Access to quality health care and well managed facilities is an important function of provincial government and more should be done to provide health care services to all.

⇒ A major goal is to reduce the disease burden to manageable levels.

Households need information and incentives to change their and behaviour toward healthy and active lifestyles.

⇒ Training and skills development of hospital managers, doctors, nurses and community health workers are a key priority. Focus is placed on adequate and qualified health staff, especially in terms of deploying them to the areas where they are most needed.

### **10.1. INTRODUCTION**

Health care in South-Africa is no longer considered merely a medical matter, but requires a broader perspective that takes into consideration issues of human behaviour; lifestyle choices; the environment in which people live and work.

At present, South-Africa is faced by a poor and fragmented health system that is characterised by an uneven and inequitable distribution of services and a primary health care and district health system that is not functioning effectively. In addition, the country is confronted by a significant disease burden (including HIV/AIDS related and non-communicable diseases); high maternal and child morbidity and mortality levels; and substantial societal burdens on health care as a result of violence, injury and trauma. In the North West province, substantial disparities in access to health services occur, both with respect to the spatial distribution of health care facilities and medical aid coverage.

The national approach to healthcare is being reformed, addressing shortcomings in the systems and the capacities to deliver comprehensive healthcare to all. It is required that such reforms also take place in the North West province to ensure greater access to healthcare and improved service delivery to ensure a healthy and productive population.

Promoting health has been identified as one of the key developmental priority areas in the North West province.

### **10.2. THE CURRENT PERSPECTIVE**

The availability and access to appropriate and affordable healthcare is important to the growth and development of the North West province, as it ensures a healthy and productive labour force that can participate in the economy. This allows not only for economic growth and development, but also contributes to the ability of households to sustainably earn a living, reducing the burden on government to support such households.

However it should be noted that accessibility and affordability to healthcare, are not the only factors that need to be considered in promoting health within the province, human well-being and other social determinants, need to be taken into account.

Thus the purpose of this section is to give an overview of the current situation in the North West province in terms of access to healthcare facilities, as well as depicting the situation in terms of human well-being and other social issues relating to the promotion of equitable health to all.

#### **10.2.1. ACCESS TO HEALTHCARE**

Access to comprehensive, quality health care services is important for the achievement of health equity and for increasing the quality of a healthy life for everyone. Disparities in access to health services affect individuals and society. Limited access to health care impacts a person's ability to reach his/her full potential, negatively affecting their quality of life. It is therefore important to improve the health care infrastructure, so that all citizens of the North West province have access to medical services. The number of healthcare facilities within each municipality is illustrated in Table 10.1.

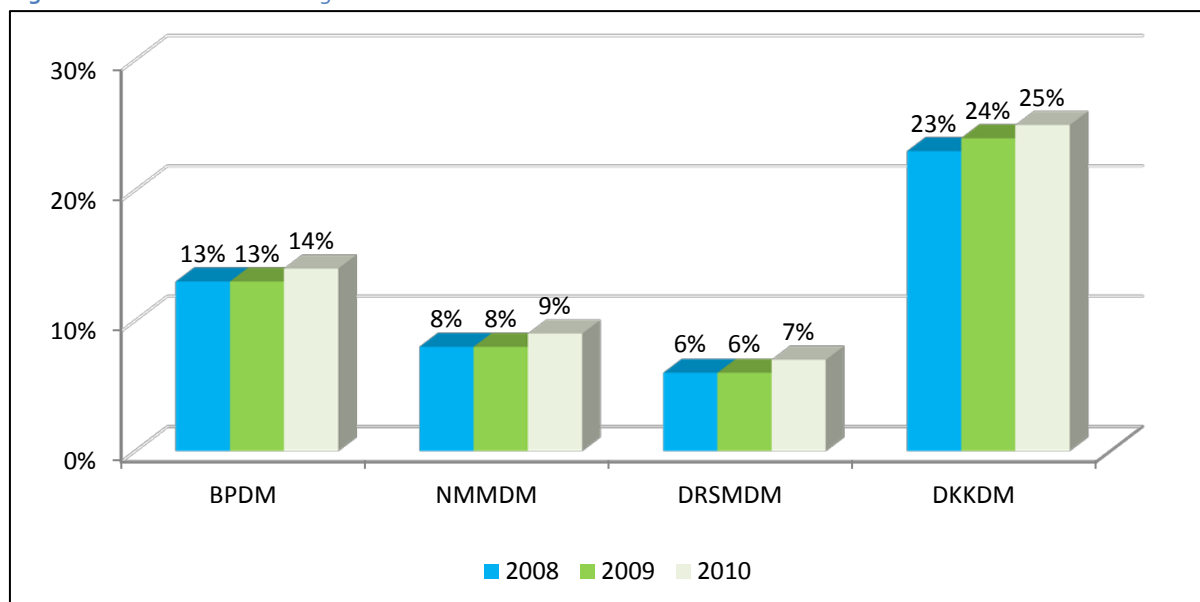


**Table 10.1:** number of healthcare facilities in the North West Province (2011)

Type of Facility	BPDM	NMMDM	DRSMDM	DKKDM
Clinics	107	77	52	28
Community Health Centres (chcs)	13	16	12	9
Mobile services	21	23	19	14
District hospitals	4	5	5	2
Regional hospital	1	1	-	-
Provincial tertiary hospital	-	-	-	-
National central hospital	-	-	-	-
Specialised hospital	-	1	-	1
Private hospitals/ health facilities	5	1	1	7
Total number of healthcare facilities	151	124	89	61

Source: Stats SA, 2012

Health facilities can take the form of clinics, CHCs, mobile services or hospitals. According to Table 10.2.1 there is a significant number of clinics in the North West province, in comparison to the other types of healthcare facilities. The highest number of clinics is located in the BPDM with a total of 107 clinics followed by the NMMDM at 77. The DKKDM has the largest number of private healthcare facilities. Specialised hospitals are only found in the NMMDM and the DKKDM. Figure 10.1 presents an illustration of the medical aid coverage per district municipality in the North West province.

**Figure 10.1:** medical aid coverage: 2008-2010

Source: Stats SA, 2012

Medical aid coverage assists patients to access the private healthcare system. Lack of adequate coverage often makes it difficult for people to access the standard of health care required, especially for specialised procedures and treatment. Figure 10.2.1 illustrates how medical aid coverage in the North West province has increased from 2008 to 2010. Medical aid coverage in the DKKDM is very high in comparison with the other district municipalities. Medical aid coverage is especially low in the DRSMDM.



### 10.2.2. HUMAN WELL-BEING

The demographic well-being in the North West province refers in this case to the provincial fertility and mortality rates. Information on the human well-being of a region is a goal in itself; however it also has important general benefits. Among others, a poor health status reduces the ability of people to be productive, earn a proper income and escape the poverty cycle. The cost of preventing illness is far lower than the cost of curative treatment and absence from work. Indicators of health status include life expectancy, fertility rates and infant mortality.

### 10.2.3. FERTILITY RATES

The fertility rate for South-Africa on provincial and district level were calculated according to the 2007 Community Survey. The fertility rate influences planning, implementation and monitoring of local government projects and programs that are affected by fertility patterns. High fertility rates are generally found in contexts with poverty and powerlessness. Health care, education, old-age security, women's empowerment, economic aspirations and urbanisation are generally associated with lowering fertility rates.

It can thus typically be concluded that higher levels of economic development is associated with lower fertility rates. The Western Cape and Gauteng province have the lowest fertility rates in South-Africa with respectively 2.1 and 2.2 children per woman. The Western Cape and the Gauteng province are the most economically advanced provinces in the country. The fertility rate in the North West province was found to be three children per woman. This is higher than the national average of 2.8 children per woman. The highest provincial fertility rate was found to be in the Limpopo province with 3.5 children per woman.

On district level the BPDM had the lowest fertility rate of 2.7 children per woman followed by the DKKDM with 2.9 children per woman. The NMMDM and the DRSMDM which can be said to be economically developed to a lesser degree than the other two district municipalities have a fertility rate of 3.3 children per woman. A fertility rate of 3.3 is high considering the highest rate on provincial level is 3.5 children per woman. The NMMDM and the DRSMDM include vast rural areas implying that rural populations continue to grow despite significant urban-rural migration.

Compared to the national averages the North West province has a slightly higher fertility rate with three children per woman. Health care, education, old-age security, women's empowerment, economic aspirations and urbanisation are all factors which will contribute to reducing fertility rates in the Province.

Fertility rates in the North West province are highest in the more rural municipalities, and lowest in the more urbanised, implying that rural populations continue to grow despite significant rural-urban migration. The rural growth will result in a higher demand for services in areas, where it is often more challenging and costly to deliver such services

### 10.2.4. MORTALITY

The average life expectancy in the North West province (2012) is nearly 52 years with an expectancy of 53.2 years for females and 50.4 years for males (North West Department of Health, 2012<sup>1</sup>). The infant mortality rate has shown a decline since 2008 from 32.4 to 30.1 deaths per 1,000 births in 2011. It is projected to decrease even more to 28 deaths per 1,000 births in 2015. The North West mortality rate is below the national mortality rate of 33.2 in 2011. The under five years mortality rate shows a similar decreasing pattern but with a higher number of deaths. The number of deaths under five years per 1,000 births was 43.7 in 2011.



The percentage of HIV and AIDS related deaths have decreased between 2008 and 2011 in the North West province from 42.9 per cent to 37.2 per cent. It is projected to decrease even more to 36.4 per cent in 2015. Of the total provincial population the prevalence of HIV was among 12.4 per cent of the total population in 2011. On district level the BPDM has the highest percentage with 13.7 per cent of the population living with HIV or AIDS. The DKKDM has the second highest percentage of 13.3 per cent while the NMMDM and DRSMMDM have a lower AIDS population with 11.9 per cent and 10.9 per cent respectively (Stats SA, 2012<sup>ii</sup>).



According to ASSA (2008<sup>iii</sup>) the frequency of HIV in the North West province will increase by 0.2 per cent to 12.6 per cent in 2015. HIV/AIDS has been a powerful factor in South-Africa's demographics over the past two decades. The national estimated HIV incidence rate is about 11 per cent with Kwazulu-Natal making the largest contribution with a prevalence rate of 14.9 per cent. The North West province has the second highest HIV prevalence rate of the nine provinces in South-Africa.

### 10.3. VISION 2030

In order to provide quality health care and achieve positive long-term health outcomes for all citizens, a concentrated effort towards the reform of the public health system is pursued. The vision for healthcare in 2030 is:

*A healthy and productive population supported by an accessible and integrated health care system.*

In particular the North West province should seek to reach national health goals, which are to:

- Raise the life expectancy of South-Africans to at least 70 years.
- Ensure that the generation of under-20s is largely free of HIV/Aids.
- Significantly reduce the burden of disease.
- Achieve an infant mortality rate of less than 20 per thousand live births, including a fewer than five mortality rate of less than 30 per thousand.

Based on the national health goals, the following objectives

- Significantly reduce the prevalence of non-communicable chronic diseases, i.e. diabetes, high blood pressure, asthma, etc.
- Deploy primary healthcare teams to provide care to families and communities, especially in the rural communities, as it is known that many of these areas do not receive proper health care services (i.e. health clinics and hospitals). Therefore these teams could be a temporary solution in providing health support and services, until the objective of providing proper and quality clinics, hospitals and services is realised within these rural areas.
- Each and every individual in the North West province must have access to equal standard of care, regardless of their income.
- Fill posts with skilled, committed and competent individuals.

#### 10.3.1. VISION 2030 TARGETS

The key targets developed for the health sector of the North West province are the following:

- By 2030 life expectancy should be increased from 53.2 for females and 50.4 for males to 70 for both.



- The under-20 age group should largely be an HIV-free generation.
- The infant mortality rate should decline from 30.1 to 20 per 1 000 live birth.
- All HIV-positive people should be on treatment and preventive measures such as condoms and microbicides should be widely available, especially to young people.
- Train and establish 46 600 community health workers by 2030.

### 10.3.2. HOW TO ACHIEVE IT

The attainment of this vision requires specific focus on addressing the key social determinants that have a bearing on health and the burden of disease and placing emphasis on the prevention of the risk of disease. Reforms aimed at strengthening the public health system also need to be pursued, including interventions aimed at improving the management of the health system; increasing the capacity of the system to provide services, increasing accountability for responsible organisations and individuals; improving patient information systems; and focussing attention on improved maternal and infant health care. It is therefore important that the following key priorities be considered towards the promotion of health on the province:

- address the social determinants that affect health and disease
- strengthen the health system
- prevent and reduce the disease burden and promote health
- combat HIV and AIDS and decrease the burden of disease from TB
- improve human resources within the health sector

## 10.4. ADDRESS THE SOCIAL DETERMINANTS THAT AFFECT HEALTH AND DISEASE

Societal factors and individual lifestyle choices have a significant bearing on the contraction and spread of disease. Poor and unhealthy lifestyles, diets and nutrition, as well as the environment within which individuals live and work influence not only the susceptibility to health issues and disease, but also have bearing on the productivity, quality of life and life expectancy of citizens. It is therefore, imperative that citizens are educated towards making healthy choices and integrating positive behaviours into their daily lives.

Healthy lifestyles are best developed and habituated if introduced at a young age. The introduction of physical sport and healthy diets in schools can significantly increase both the physical and emotional health of young people. Coordinated efforts and cross-sectoral collaboration between different role-players with respect to early childhood development, education, and other social programmes can significantly contribute to the well-being of communities.

### 10.4.1. ENSURE COLLABORATION ACROSS SECTORS

A number of societal factors influence the promotion of health within the province to a large extent. Factors such as access to clean water, sanitation and education; food security; safe environments etc. all play a role in ensuring human well-being and healthy lifestyles among all the citizens of the province. Therefore it is evident that a number of factors from outside the health department/sector need to be taken into account, and therefore other government departments also have a role to play in ensuring a healthy environment for all. All spheres of government need to ensure a collaborated and integrated approach is taken towards promoting health in the North West province.

The health sector should engage with partners and other departments to ensure that the negative impact of other policies on health outcomes is understood and mitigated, and promote policies that result in positive health outcomes. Cooperation with the civil society organisations is very important as they have a





relationship with the communities at grass root levels, and therefore they can be an important role-player in ensuring collaboration and effecting positive change within the local communities.

Health is everyone's responsibility, including the city planning officials. Many functions of a city government, like providing pedestrian walks, cycling lanes, open parks and street-lighting, can have a positive effect on physical activity which is essential for health outcomes. At local government level for example the Integrated Development Plan (IDP) must facilitate inter-sectoral action within the province.

The provincial government should ensure alignment of local and provincial plans and strategies, and together with the strengthening of municipal and district management capacity this could create a conducive environment for ensuring inter-sectoral action that facilitates and promotes health. .

### HEALTH AND THE AVAILABILITY OF WATER

It is acknowledged that water is a scarce and valuable resource in the North West province (Department of Water Affairs, 2008<sup>iv</sup>). Water is both a social and economic resource supporting all facets of human life. The availability of water, sanitation and hygiene has important impacts on both health and disease. It is important that the province should consider its current water usage and future demand / need especially given the pressure point as discussed in Chapter 4. Insufficient water management and planning will lead to an increase in water related diseases and social degradation which will place additional pressure on the provincial health system and other related departments

### ACTIONS

- The North West Department of Health needs to engage with the different government departments to ensure that the negative impact of other policies on health outcomes is understood and minimised.
- The Department of Health must collaborate with departments whose mandate has a direct impact on alleviating poverty since it is a significant determiner of health.
- Other policies which result in positive health outcomes need to be extensively promoted by the Department of Health.
- The departments need to understand the linkages between different sectors and their impact on health promotion It should be understood what the impact would be of different programmes addressing for example the issue of hunger and extreme poverty; access to education as well as reduction of crime and violence.
- Strengthen coordination between departments, as well as private and non-profit sectors. Focus should be on routine day-to-day coordination between units of departments that do similar work.

#### 10.4.2. PROMOTE HEALTHY LIFESTYLE CHOICES FROM AN EARLY AGE

The provincial government needs to promote healthy lifestyles throughout the province, especially amongst children at an early stage in their lives. This should be done by means of creating an environment for people to be able to practice and maintain healthy lifestyles. Therefore initiatives in addressing this issue should include for example the creation of more public parks and facilities to enable people to partake in physical exercise, as well as promoting healthy lifestyles by means of marketing and educational campaigns, especially introducing it amongst the youth.

### ACTIONS

- Ensure that physical education be implemented in all the schools within the province.





- Employ qualified physical education teachers in all the primary and secondary schools within the province.
- Provide all schools with equal access to adequate facilities which will ensure that all schools are able to provide sport and physical education to children.
- Establish school health promoting teams within each district. These teams should regularly visit schools within their areas.
- Establish a culture of wellness within the communities and at work environments.
- Ensure that each and every ward within the North West province has adequate facilities to encourage basic exercise and sporting activities.
- Provide information in terms of healthy eating and maintaining healthy lifestyles. Information brochures and pamphlets could be designed and distributed at hospitals, schools, municipalities, etc.
- Create awareness and provide education in terms of good nutrition in order to decrease malnutrition, especially amongst children.
- Provide community gyms and sporting facilities in low income areas and ensure accessibility to the facilities.
- Facilitate local authorities in order for them to be able to promote exercise by ensuring that the urban roads have proper pavements and that they develop cycle lanes in order to assist in creating an environment in which citizens are able to maintain healthy lifestyles.
- A household food and nutrition security programme should be pursued, including the promotion of local vegetable growers within rural communities, who could be structured in a horticultural cooperative for example.
- Commission relevant quality research on issues relating to healthy lifestyles.
- Increase community and household involvement in securing and promoting the health of children.

### 10.4.3. IMPLEMENT A COMPREHENSIVE APPROACH TO EARLY LIFE

Children raised within poor families are most at risk for infant death, low birth weight, stunted growth, and poor adjustment to school, increased repetition and drop-out rates. The vast majority of children in South-Africa live in poverty and are faced with considerable inequalities that continue to inhibit their access to better quality of life, improved health outcomes and access to opportunities. According to Stats SA more than 60 per cent of children under the age of 18 years old live in poverty conditions. Furthermore it was also determined that 24.9 per cent of the children in the North West province lived in a household that reported hunger (Stats SA, 2012a<sup>v</sup>). The negative implications resulting from malnutrition and severe illness among children due to poverty is vast, i.e. children struggle to concentrate in school if they are hungry or become very ill, and therefore many children living under these poverty conditions struggle to pass their grades and as a result cannot get proper education or the skills-set which enables them later in their lives to have access to proper employment. As a result these children might be unable to improve their quality of life and in turn escape the cycle of poverty. Furthermore child-headed households (with or without financial aid) due to the death of both their parents, neglect or abandonment also increases the probability of poverty, illiteracy (which also increases the poverty incidence) and school drop-out. There are a number of actions and initiatives that could be implemented to address this issue, however this station does not only need to be addressed within the health sector, and therefore relates to the previous objective, of ensuring collaboration across all sectors in terms of addressing certain issue relating to health and its social determinants.

A large percentage of children in the North West province do not live with their biological parents. Risks such as physical, emotional and sexual abuse of children increase as a result of the physical distance between biological parents and their children. Public information and education campaigns, stressing the importance of the active involvement of parents and or caregivers in the education and development of their children could assist in mitigating the potential negative impact that this may have on child development and well-



being. Even though child-headed households make up a very small percentage of all households in the North West province, great efforts have to be made to decrease the vulnerability of these households.

### ACTIONS

- Build on existing child survival programmes (Early Childhood Development) and extending intervention in early life to include social/emotional and language/cognitive development. Includes:
  - Delivering services to young children (ensure equal accessibility)
  - Training of care-givers and educating parents
  - Promoting community development
  - Strengthening of institutional resources and capacity
- Increase community and household involvement in securing and promoting the health of children.
- Increase the proportion of schools which are visited by a school health nurse.
- Implementation of school feeding programmes in all of the schools across the province to reduce malnutrition among the youth.
- Ensure the availability and access to centres/homes for misplaced, abandoned, abused and neglected children and orphans.

## 10.5. STRENGTHEN THE HEALTH SYSTEM

The functioning of the health system in the North West province is not optimal and requires that significant reforms be implemented, particularly around institutional aspects and management capacity. The provincial health system requires substantial improvements in the form of strengthened leadership and management capabilities; well-resourced facilities; good quality equipment; and a more equitable spread of health care services. The operations of health systems also need to be streamlined though the provision of good information systems. In seeking to provide improved health services policy generation and decision-making need to be based on solid and relevant research.

### 10.5.1. STRENGTHENING THE HEALTH CARE SYSTEM AND IMPROVING ITS MANAGEMENT

Health management is one of the most important factors to consider in promoting health within the province and ensuring an effective health system. In the 2010-2014 Negotiated Service Delivery Agreement, health management was identified as a core element in strengthening the health system, and the 2010 health management competency assessment was an important first step in this effort.

As part of revamping the health system, a very important aspect to consider is the quality standards of service delivery in terms of healthcare. Each and every person within the province has the right to have equal access to proper quality health services, and therefore the North West provincial government needs to ensure that an enabling environment is created, whereby proper quality healthcare can be provided throughout the entire province. Furthermore provision of accessible, equitable and affordable comprehensive health care services, should also be one of the key objectives in strengthening the health system.

### ACTIONS

- audit the provincial health system to identify areas requiring improvement and to establish appropriate standards throughout the province.
- Strengthen and mobilise the leadership structures to promote policy and support.
- Improve the efficiency of health management through partnerships.
- Ensure equity of access to primary health care services in both urban and rural areas.
- Facilitate easy access for people with disabilities.
- Develop and implement community health worker programmes across all the districts.



- The provincial as well as the local governments should seek and strengthen partnerships with alternative community based health providers.
- Develop and implement quality improvement plans in all districts and hospitals across the province.
- Promote quality within the health sector by means of benchmarking and accrediting actual performance against national standards for quality.
- Retraining of health professionals and management.
- Improve the quality and accessibility of health care services.
- Improve health care infrastructure.

### 10.5.2. IMPROVEMENT OF HEALTH CARE FINANCING AND MANAGEMENT

A National Health Insurance system has been considered for implementation in order to ensure the improvement of health care financing and to ensure equal access to affordable health care. The North West province needs to align their plan and strategies with the NHI, and should also take the following actions to improve health care financing and management within the healthcare system of the province:

#### ACTIONS

- Maintain effective asset and inventory management systems.
- Implement and maintain risk management strategies.
- Prepare for the implementation of the National Health Insurance (NHI) system.

### 10.5.3. WELL-FUNCTIONING AND COMPETITIVE HOSPITALS (HEALTH FACILITIES MANAGEMENT)

In order to ensure that quality services are provided equally, the provincial government needs to ensure the provision of well-functioning and competitive hospitals throughout the province, especially in the rural areas, that currently have no or limited access to proper quality and affordable health care facilities. The DKKDM for example has the second highest population growth rate within the province (1.4% from 1995 to 2010) and represents 20 per cent of the total provincial population; however, this district municipality has the least number of health care facilities (Stats SA, 2012b<sup>vi</sup>).

Furthermore the current healthcare facilities needs to be examined and determined what the infrastructure requirements are, in order to ensure that these facilities can provide quality health care services. The hospitals should also be facilitated with improved information and communication technology and health information systems.

#### ACTIONS

- Accelerate the delivery on the hospital revitalisation programme as well as health infrastructure and maintenance.
- Ensure effective monitoring of infrastructure development and maintenance.
- Ensure the utilisation of the Essential Health Technology Package (EHTP) as a planning tool in all hospitals.
- Improve medical equipment maintenance in all health care facilities.
- Introduce and implement e-health in the health system of the North West province.
- Facilitate all healthcare facilities with access to information and communication technology.

### 10.5.4. EFFECTIVE AND WELL-MANAGED HEALTH RESEARCH

Health research within the North West province needs to be managed more effectively in order to support and strengthen the health system. The issues raised in terms of effective research within the health research, include the unequal distribution and availability of qualified personnel to undertake research. The health



research system within the province should have strong leadership and effective management to enable it to allocate resources effectively and fairly, sustain human and institutional capacities, generate and use knowledge, and create an environment in which research can flourish.

Another challenge faced by the public in terms of research, is the expensive nature of research within the health sectors, and therefore allocation of budget towards research within the health sectors, is usually lacking.

### ACTIONS

- Establish and promote health research systems/centres within the province.
- Ensure equitable access to research information for a range of key stakeholders, such as policy-makers, health professionals, researchers, the public, civil society, patients, health system managers and health insurers.
- Identify priority research needs, and allocate funds accordingly in order to enable the development of new methodologies and innovation within the health system.

## 10.6. IMPROVE LIFE EXPECTANCY AND PREVENT AND REDUCE THE DISEASE BURDEN

South-Africa and the North West province are faced by what is referred to as the “quadruple burden of disease”, which includes HIV/AIDS related disease (including TB); maternal and child mortality; non-communicable disease related to lifestyle issues; as well as violence, injuries and trauma. This places an enormous strain on the healthcare resources of the country. To counter this situation, it is required that the integrated health programmes undertake substantial efforts towards education and awareness for the prevention of disease. This will not only increase the health status and productivity of communities, but will also contribute to the life expectancy of the province’s population, which is currently just over 52 years.

### 10.6.1. IMPROVE LIFE EXPECTANCY OF ALL INDIVIDUALS

As indicated earlier in the chapter, the average life expectancy in the North West province is nearly 52 years. Furthermore it was also determined that the infant mortality rate has declined from 32.4 to 30.1 deaths per 1,000, from 2008 to 2011. However it was identified by the national health goals, as identified earlier in the chapter, this figure needs to be reduced to 20 deaths per thousand, and therefore the North West also needs to align their goals with the national goals in terms of promoting health, and aim for this figure. In reducing the infant as well as the child mortality rates, the life expectancy of the individuals in the province could be increased.

In order to ensure that the life expectancy of all individuals within the North West province is increased, the prevalence of non-communicable diseases also needs to be reduced. Another issue in ensuring an increase in the life expectancy is to reduce the burden of HIV/ Aids and TB. This aspect is discussed in the following section.

### ACTIONS

- Intensify health promotion programmes.
- Strengthen programmes focussing on Maternal, Child and Women’s Health.
- Implement Prevention of Mother to Child Transmission (PMTCT) paediatric treatment guidelines.
- Implement PMTCT adult treatment guidelines.
- Reduce the maternal mortality ratio.
- Reduce severe malnutrition among children from 0 to 5 years of age.



- Increase the percentage of mothers and babies who receive post-natal care within six days of delivery.
- Increase the proportion of facilities providing Basic Antenatal Care (BANC).
- Increase the percentage of pregnant woman who book for antenatal care before 20 weeks.
- Increase the number of designated primary health facilities providing Choice on Termination of Pregnancy (CTOP).
- Develop and implement a comprehensive disabled people's health support system.
- Strengthen immunisation programmes.
- Improve Emergency Medical Services.
- Develop a framework for the management of non-communicable diseases.
- Have strong and consistent mobilisation and awareness campaigns on communicable and non-communicable diseases.

### **10.7. COMBAT HIV AND AIDS AND DECREASE THE BURDEN OF DISEASE FROM TB**

The disease burden as a result of HIV/AIDS and related diseases is significant in the North West province. By 2015, it is estimated that the prevalence of HIV/AIDS in the province will amount to approximately 12.5 per cent, with 37.2 per cent of deaths in 2011 in the North West province being attributed to AIDS-related disease. To reduce the health burden of these diseases and increase the life expectancy of the population, it is critical that the spread of HIV/AIDS, TB and other communicable diseases be prevented. This requires significant efforts towards awareness creation and education on the prevention of these diseases, as well as testing.

With respect to persons that have already contracted these diseases, it is vital that patients are provided access to appropriate counselling, treatment care and medication.

#### **10.7.1. REDUCE THE NUMBER OF HIV/AIDS AND IMPROVE TB OUTCOMES**

As indicated earlier in the chapter, the percentage of HIV/Aids related deaths have decreased from 42.9 per cent to 37.2 per cent from 2008 to 2011. However the prevalence of HIV was among 12.4 per cent of the total provincial population, which indicates that the North West Province has the second highest HIV prevalence rate in South-Africa. According to the ASSA (2008<sup>vii</sup>) HIV in the province will only increase by 0.2 per cent from the current 12.4 per cent to 12.6 per cent in 2015. Even though the projected increase is considered to be very small, HIV/Aids is a serious reality in the province and a large section of the provincial population will be living with HIV/Aids in the years to come. Life expectancy in the North West province will continue to be affected by HIV/Aids, however the extent to which this will happen will depend on the efficacy and impact of treatment and prevention programmes in the province.

Initiatives and strategies should be implemented to decrease the burden of HIV/Aids and related diseases, to ensure that the number of people affected by HIV/Aids becomes more stable, and also ensure that affected people have equal access to medication and treatment. These initiatives need to be informed by national comprehensive strategies and plans. The implementation of a comprehensive strategy towards HIV/Aids, including the provision of access for all to ARVs and the strengthening of home-based care programmes needs to be some of the key elements with respect to this priority. The following actions need to be taken to ensure that the North West provincial government reaches the goal of reducing HIV/Aids and improving TB outcomes. These actions are in line with the National Strategic Plan on HIV, STIs and TB 2012 – 2016 (

#### **ACTIONS**

- Accelerate the implementation of HIV/Aids strategic plan.
- Implementation of all Prevention of Mother to Child Transmission (PMTCT) programme guidelines.



- Increase access to Antiretroviral Treatment (ARV) (accelerate this assessment of sites to initiate patients on treatment).
- Train nurses on Nurse Initiated Management of ARV.
- Implementation of Adult ARV Guidelines.
- Improve TB case detection/finding and cure rate.
- Scale up access to HIV Counselling and Testing (HCT) to people aged between 12 and 64, using public health facilities and other service points.
- Scale up access to treatment care and support services in households.

### **10.8. IMPROVE HUMAN RESOURCES WITHIN THE HEALTH SECTOR**

As the foundation of an effective health care system, it is important that appropriate human resources are put in place. The provision of quality healthcare and an efficient system requires competent and well-trained medical professionals, specialists and managers. The health system in the North West province faces severe shortages in the availability of qualified staff across all health competencies. Human resources are also not evenly distributed throughout the province, affecting the quality of care in marginalised areas. It is therefore, critical that sufficient human resources (both with respect to capacity and competence) are sourced.

#### **10.8.1. COMMUNITY-BASED HEALTH CARE**

A core component of re-engineering primary health care is to emphasise population-based health and health outcomes. This includes a new strategy for community-based services through primary health care outreach teams, based on community health workers. The strategy includes advocacy on major health campaigns, such as providing health information, and responding to issues identified by communities.

#### **ACTIONS**

- Ensure that primary health care teams are established throughout the province with the required number and qualified doctors' specialists, physicians and nurses.
- Train nurses, to ensure appropriately skilled nurses form part of the primary health care teams.
- Recruit, train and employ a number of community health workers to implement community-based primary health care. When the community health worker programme is extended to the entire population, the North West province is likely to need well over 46 000 community health workers by 2030.
- Ensure equitable access by all households to a well-trained community health worker.
- Provide primary health care teams with the adequate resources to enable them to provide the needed services.

#### **10.8.2. IMPROVEMENT OF HUMAN RESOURCE PLANNING AND DEVELOPMENT**

Continued high vacancy and turnover rate (more than 50% in both cases) is a key challenge for the North West province, especially in mission critical posts. The North West Department of Health had to introduce limited suspension of the filling of posts with a view to avoiding personnel over-expenditure. The implementation of Occupation Specific Dispensation is considered to be the backbone of recruitment and retention strategies. However, the impact of this initiative on service delivery has not yet been recognised. While Occupation Specific Dispensation has been implemented, facilities based in the underserved areas continue to experience high vacancy and turnover rates. Supply of foreign health professionals is becoming increasingly difficult as a result of red-tape, i.e. recent international agreement of non-recruitment of developing countries, which places further strain on the recruitment processes of the North West Health Department.



The National Human Resource plan for health was approved in 2011. The North West Province needs to align their priorities in terms of this plan towards improvement of human resources in the health sector and therefore refine the plan so that it will cater to the specific needs of the province. Other actions to consider in improving the human resource planning and development in the province include:

### ACTIONS

- Refinement of the Human Resource Plan for the health sector to be applicable to the North West province.
- Recruitment and retention of professionals, including urgent collaboration with countries that have excess of these professionals.
- Specify staff shortages and training targets for the next five years.
- Make an assessment of and also review the role of the Health Professional Training and Development Grant (HPTDG) and the National Tertiary Services Grant (NTSG).
- Manage the coherent integration and standardisation of all categories of Community Health Workers.
- Increase the investment in health-personnel development.
- Train more health professionals to meet the requirements of the primary health care system.
- Link the training of health professional to future diseases, especially different categories of non-communicable diseases.
- Design and implement incentives schemes, such as the occupation-specific dispensation, in order to boost services in underserved areas.

### 10.8.3. APPROPRIATELY SKILLED NURSES

The core of the primary health care outreach team will be a professional nurse, a staff nurse and community health workers. Many more trained nurses are needed, and their skills to carry out and support primary health care need to be strengthened. Community nurses will also need to be substantially competent in promoting health and preventing ill health. In several countries, community nurses (professional nurses with public health training) lead many aspects of district health work.

In 2013 the following were reported as accredited nursing education colleges in the North West province (South-African Nursing Council, 2013<sup>viii</sup>):

- Bafokeng Nursing College
- Bophelong Nursing College
- Excelsius Nursing College
- Gold Fields Nursing College
- Mmabatho Nursing College
- Amplats Medical Services-Training Department
- Lehurutshe Community Hospital
- Taung Community Hospital
- Thusong Community Hospital
- Tshepong Hospital
- Ukwazi - Potchefstroom Sub-Campus
- Witrand Hospital
- Witrand Hospital

### ACTIONS

- Re-open and strengthen existing nursing schools and colleges to support primary health care facilities.





### 10.8.4. REVIEW MANAGEMENT POSITIONS AND APPOINTMENTS AND STRENGTHEN ACCOUNTABILITY

Centralisation of hospital budgets and key functions such as supply chain management has been detrimental. Although the delivery of health services and care for patients take place within the province, the health facility managers lack the powers to manage effectively. Therefore to ensure that people in management positions are appointed on a fair basis and are qualified to ensure that the hospitals are correctly managed the following actions need to be taken by provincial government.

#### COLLABORATE WITH TRADITIONAL HEALERS

African traditional medicine is one of the major service industries in this country. Raw medicinal plants, prescriptions and herbal medicines are all considered part of African traditional medicines. A policy framework for how traditional medicine fits into the health sector must be established.

#### ACTIONS

- Ensure that the human resource management personnel within the health sector are appropriately accredited.
- Continuously review the remuneration structures within the health sector.
- Set procedures and competency criteria for appointing hospital managers.
- Set clear criteria for the removal of underperforming hospital managers.
- Set up a framework that describes how to manage the usage of traditional medicine.

### 10.9. IMPROVING HEALTH IMPLEMENTATION PLAN

The following key programmes have been identified for the improving health implementation plan (Refer to Annexure 1):

- Health Promotion
- Strengthen the Health System
- Improve Health Care Financing and Management
- Health Research
- Health Facilities and Services Development and Maintenance
- Improve Life Expectancy
- Reduce the Disease Burden
- Human Resource Development



### NOTES

---

<sup>i</sup> North West Department of Health. 2012. Five Year Strategic Plan 2012 – 2017.

<sup>ii</sup> Stats SA. 2012. Mid-year population estimates <http://www.statssa.gov.za/publications/Po302/Po3022012.pdf> Date of Access: January, 2013.

<sup>iii</sup> ASSA (2008) ASSA2008 Model: ProvOutput. AIDS Committee of Actuarial Society of South Africa. <http://aids.actuarialsociety.org.za/ASSA2008-Model-3480.htm>

<sup>iv</sup> Department of Water Affairs (DWA). 2008. North West Water Provision and Management Plan.

<sup>v</sup> Statistics South Africa. 2012a. Social profile of vulnerable groups in South Africa 2002–2011 <https://www.statssa.gov.za/Publications/Report-03-19-00/Report-03-19-002002.pdf>

<sup>vi</sup> Statistics South Africa. 2012b. Census 2011 Results. <http://beta2.statssa.gov.za/> Date of Access: December, 2012.

<sup>vii</sup> ASSA (2008) ASSA2008 Model: ProvOutput. AIDS Committee of Actuarial Society of South Africa. <http://aids.actuarialsociety.org.za/ASSA2008-Model-3480.htm>

<sup>viii</sup> South African Nursing Council, 2013. Lists of Accredited Nursing Education Institutions. <http://www.sanc.co.za/neis.htm> Date of Access: August 2013.



## 11. BUILDING SAFER COMMUNITIES

---

### KEY POINTS

⇒ Demilitarise the police and improve professionalism throughout the police service. The police should at all times act professional, impartial, responsive and competent.

⇒ Building safer communities is not only the responsibility of one government department. An integrated approach is needed to build safer sustainable communities. Coordination is required between a variety of departments, the private sector and community bodies. Such coordinated operations must include among others revitalised community-safety centres.

All vulnerable groups including women, children and rural communities should enjoy equal protection through effective, coordinated responses of the police, business, community and civil society.



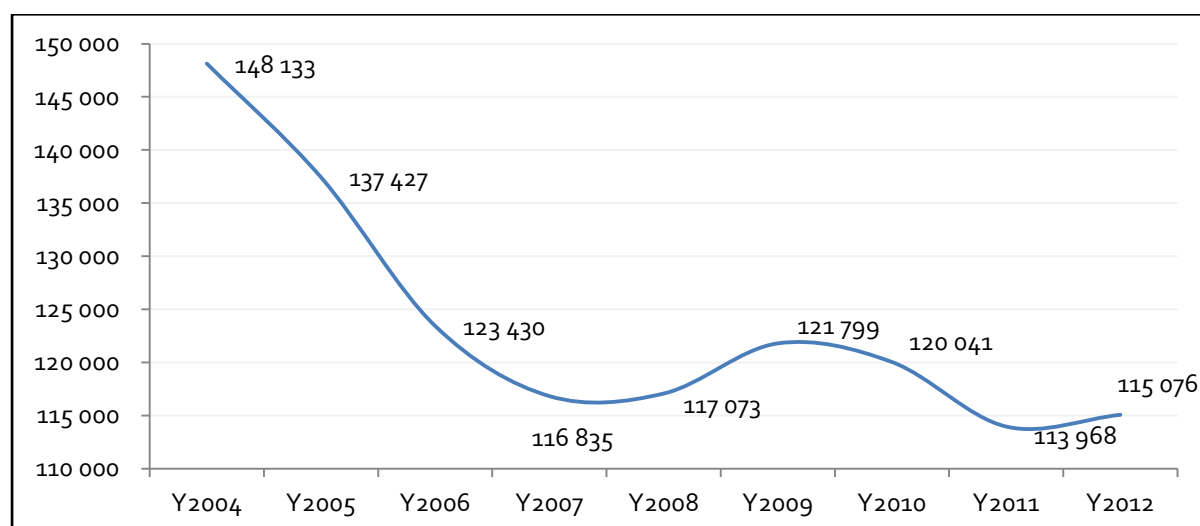
### 11.1. INTRODUCTION

When looking ahead at 2030, planning should occur in a provincial context characterised as a safe environment in which personal and public safety is valued and made a priority. Working towards an ultimate goal of reducing poverty and eradicating inequality the importance of building safer communities should be at the forefront. It is often the communities living in poverty which are exposed to the highest levels of crime and who as a result do not feel safe and live in fear. Feeling unsafe and living in fear of being a victim of crime will restrict an individual from reaching his or her full potential. Creating safe communities for people to live in will increase their overall wellbeing.

### 11.2. THE CURRENT PERSPECTIVE

The total number of crimes in the North West province has been showing a decreasing trend since 2004 with slight fluctuations. The declining crime trend is illustrated in Figure 11.1

Figure 11.1: total number of crimes reported in the North West, 2004 to 2012



Source: Crime Stats SA (2012)<sup>i</sup>

It can be concluded from the table above that the number of crimes reported have decreased from 148 100 in 2004 to 115 000 in 2012 which is a total decrease of 33 100 cases. Although the total number of recorded crimes in the province has decreased, it is still considered high. Crimes generally aimed at vulnerable groups have shown little or no decline. Sexual crimes, drug related crimes, kidnapping and neglect and ill treatment of children have all shown an increase in reported cases since 2004. Vulnerable groups are not as equipped to protect themselves from crime as the rest of the general public. As a result a major responsibility for the protection of vulnerable groups lies with the general public and government. Establishing public safety for all must not happen removed from the development efforts of communities. Local organisations must work with the South African Police Service to incorporate public safety into the mix of issues addressed in comprehensive community development initiatives.

Provincial governments have been grappling with interpretation and implementation of a policy concerning their role in South Africa's safety and security system. The complexities of the problem are related both to the constitutional arrangements which frame all provincial government functions, and to the challenges experienced in the field of policing and public safety. On provincial level public safety is a constitutional structure whose responsibility it is to monitor police activity and make recommendations on a national level.



All changes on provincial level first have to be approved on national level. This process is time consuming and affects the effectiveness of interventions. The Civilian Secretariat for the Police Service ACT 2 of 2011 could enhance the role of the provincial police and should guide all police activities within the province. Budget constraints have been identified as a challenge in the implementation of the Act.

Funding of projects or programmes towards safety and security is a major challenge on provincial level. A need exists to create a framework according to which projects are prioritised and project funding guided. Currently a new void of projects is created on provincial level with every new election. This new void of projects costs the department approximately R800 000 to fill. Skilled individuals to monitor projects are currently not being recruited adequately and this is an important void which needs to be filled with immediate effect. Adequate prioritising, implementation and monitoring of projects need to ensure that projects are transferred from one provincial governing body to the next without creating a costly project void.

### 11.3. VISION 2030

The vision for safety and security in the North West province towards 2030 must reflect the vision of the country as a whole. Having a unified vision towards public safety in South Africa will ensure cohesion and cooperation across provincial borders and aid the country in building a safer nation. It can thus be said that in 2030:

*People living in the North West province feel safe at home, at school and at work. They enjoy a community life free of fear. Women walk freely in the streets and children play safely outside. The provincial police service is adequately resourced and professional. The police service is staffed by highly skilled officers who value their work, serve the community, safeguard lives and property without discrimination, protect the peaceful environment against violence, and respect the rights to equality and justice.*

#### 11.3.1. HOW TO ACHIEVE IT

Achieving this vision requires a well-functioning police service working in collaboration with a variety of government departments, the private sector and community bodies. There are four main priorities towards building safer communities in the North West province:

- Demilitarise the police and improve professionalism throughout the police service
- An integrated approach is needed to build safer sustainable communities
- All vulnerable groups including women, children and rural communities should enjoy equal protection
- Community participation in safety

### 11.4. DEMILITARISE THE POLICE AND IMPROVE PROFESSIONALISM

The police service in the North West province should at all times have the characteristics of a police service and not that of a police force. Police responsiveness to community needs should be made priority by all police officers in the North West province as well as the rest of South Africa. There are currently 82 police stations located in the North West province. Each police station must strive to meet the needs of the community that they are serving in a professional manner and to the best of their abilities.

Demilitarising the police service requires urgent attention. Communities are often intimidated by the police force and do not view them as a structure put in place to protect and meet their needs. Demilitarising the police service will move away from a belligerent approach to ensure public safety and establish a service whose primary task is to protect and lend services to citizenry. A demilitarised professional culture within the police will regain the trust of the public in a police service which responds to people's needs, based on the laws





of the country. Demilitarising of the police service will require the training of all personnel in professional police ethics and practice.

Professionalism is an issue of attitude. A subculture of unprofessionalism currently exists among the older generations of police members which filter through to the younger new members. It is not during the training of students that they are exposed to unprofessionalism but rather once they enter the service. The existing negative and unprofessional attitudes in police stations throughout the province rub off on new members and as a result create a cycle of unprofessionalism. There exists an urgent need to initiate the change towards professionalism at local level among existing police members.

#### ACTIONS

- The change towards professionalism must be initiated within the police stations at local level and among existing members through exemplary leadership.
- Review the organisational culture and subcultures of the police to assess the effects of militarisation, demilitarisation, remilitarisation and management in the province.

#### 11.4.1. EFFECTIVE RECRUITMENT SYSTEM FOR PROFESSIONALISM

Improving professionalism in the police service will require a recruitment system in which competency and skills are prioritised. There is currently a sub culture in the police force where the promotional structure is not always led by skills but rather rank and time spent in the force. Per illustration, it cannot be guaranteed that a person who has been in the service for ten years is more capable and better equipped for a position than someone who has only been in the service for a short period or not at all. All recruits have to be evaluated on an equal basis regardless of the time spent in the service. Skills and competence must at all times be the main determining factors in the police recruitment system.

#### ACTIONS

- All officers within the provincial police service must undergo a competency assessment. Recruitment, selection, appointment and promotion within the police service will then be determined by the results of the competence assessment and the rating each individual received. Each rank will have a customised competency test. If an individual should not meet the standards of his / her rank, he will remain in the rank but not be eligible for a promotion until he has improved and met the set competency standards.
- It is proposed that a two track recruitment system is created; one for commissioned officers and one for non-commissioned officers. Non-commissioned officers will go through the basic police stream, receive training and experience, and progress to any position below a commissioned officer. Commissioned officers must support and mentor non-commissioned officers in the provincial police service. Recruitment to the officers course should then be based on set criteria and be flexible. Officers should only be commissioned once all criteria have been met. Flexibility in the recruitment system will allow for ambitious candidates to work towards meeting the criteria and being taken up in the officer's corps. Through competence assessments officers who do not meet the required standards must lose their commission.

#### 11.4.2. CODE OF CONDUCT

The code of conduct should have a daily function in the operations of every police service member. Regulation and performance appraisals should at all times include the code of conduct. A challenge with regard to the implementation of the code of conduct is officer's unwillingness to cooperate. Every police officer in the North West province is provided with a code of conduct which they are expected to carry with them at all times. The officers are reluctant to carry the code with them and utilise it in their daily operations.



## ACTIONS

- Ensure all officers in the province are not only provided with a copy of the code of conduct but that it is understood and practised on a daily basis. Upon receiving the code members should be required to sign a copy of the code to be kept in their personal file.
- A breach of the code must be viewed as misconduct and be made priority. Officers who stand accused for a breach of the code have to be forced to vacate their position with immediate effect until the case has been investigated and a final verdict given.

### 11.4.3. THE ROLE OF THE POLICE CLEARLY DEFINED

The professional obligations of the police should be spelt out clearly to avoid the blurring of roles and functions between departments. It is often the case on provincial level that functions gets transferred to the Department of Human Settlements, Public Safety and Liaison but not the necessary resources to cope with the additional work. To ensure the effective management of the available resources there should exist absolute clarity on the mandate of the police service in order to establish priority areas for resource allocations.

## ACTIONS

- Prioritise the implementation of the Civilian Secretariat for the Police Service Act (Act No. 2 of 2011) which clearly stipulates the roles and responsibilities of the provincial police service. Through this Act cooperation's and communication between national and provincial level will be improved.
- Coordination between the Department of Human Settlements, Public Safety and Liaison and Department of Social Development, Women, Children and People with Disabilities should take precedence to avoid the blurring of roles and functions towards public safety in the province. Functions such as relocating homeless people should lie with social workers, with the police playing a supporting role.

### 11.4.4. STRENGTHENING CAPACITY AND TRAINING

Technology development has greatly influenced crime patterns. Technological assistance must be utilised fully in the battle against crime in the province. Among others, narcotics, cybercrime, human trafficking, crimes against women and children, and crime syndicates have all seen changing crime trends through new technology and the application thereof. The recent increase in rhino poaching activities in the North West province is a clear example of syndicate activities utilising technology to outwit farmers and enter properties in an organised manner.

The North West province has a diverse character ranging from urbanised in the south east to extremely rural in the north. The different regions will have different requirements to ensure safety throughout the province. As an example, roads in the rural areas are often not up to standard and will require police vehicles which can handle the roads and access all areas easily. The requirements in an urban area will differ. It is thus crucial to ensure that technological capacity, human capacity and resources in the provincial police service are up to standard and allocated taking the diverse character of the province into consideration.

The North West province has a toll free number and SMS service in place to report crime in the province. Both services are currently only available during office hours but the hours will be extended by the end of 2012. Extended hours will improve contact between police and public. ICT can play an immense role in the safety of rural areas. There exist definite room for improvement in the use of ICT to assist the police service in the North West province.





## ACTIONS

- Strengthen the capacity and training of detectives and specialised investigators, particularly in the fields of forensics, ballistics and crime scene investigations.
- Create partnerships with the private sector and universities to stay abreast of technological developments and new research. Knowledge sharing should be promoted between the different bodies.
- Create joint operations between private security companies and the police such as joint patrols and checkpoints with neighbourhood watches.
- Improve the analysis of crime trends to improve the performance with regard to crime prevention and the combating of crime. Deploy officers according to analysed crime patterns and trends.
- Accelerate the role of ICT in the fight against crime in the province.
- Create an efficient computerised system for resource allocation in the province. The unique socio-economic profile of an area must determine the allocation of resources to address the needs of the community.
- Monitor the effectiveness of resource allocation throughout the province.
- Senior policing staff should be made available at all times.

### 11.5. AN INTEGRATED APPROACH

Building safer sustainable communities in the North West province will not be a possibility without the mobilisation of both state and non-state capacities and resources towards identifying and eradicating the fundamental causes of criminality in the province. The roots of criminality can be traced as far back as early childhood development. The following are interrelated factors which are known to cause or provoke criminality:

- Poverty, inequality and unemployment.
- The lack of social cohesion, a lack of 'good' norms and inadequate care of children.
- Opportunity and motive: for example, the availability of targets, the availability of weapons, situational factors (such as spatial or environmental design), and the availability of accomplices.

Addressing the fundamental cause of criminality is a longer route than with a militarised approach. A belligerent and forceful approach will have definite short term result for crime mitigation but is not sufficient or sustainable. Long term solutions for crime are in addressing fundamental causes of crime in the province. The influences of different role-players during the life cycle of an individual should be utilised positively towards identifying and eradicating the fundamental causes of criminality.

#### 11.5.1. HOLISTIC APPROACH TO CRIME AND COORDINATION OF ROLE-PLAYERS

When a young individual resorts to crime it will most probably be due to one of the reasons identified above. When such an individual is arrested for the crime an integrated approach and coordination of role players must ensure the underlying causes for his / her behaviour are addressed. This calls for cooperation beyond the reach of the police service. A holistic approach towards crime requires collaboration between the police service, different departments, local government and civil society. An integrated approach towards building safer communities avoids a police service stretched beyond its capacity. The police play a vital role in protecting citizens by intervening, using reasonable force where necessary to stop harmful actions, support victims and bring offenders before court. The police service must continue with its role of improving safety, while other departments address socioeconomic conditions of human development.

An example of such collaboration will be that once an individual, active in criminal activities, has been identified by the police service, support programmes initiated or supported by other role players are in place



to address the fundamental causes for the criminal behaviour of the individual. Awareness campaigns among parents and adults who have a role in the forming years of a young individual should also be promoted. Communities must be made aware of the role they can play in addressing the fundamental causes of criminality. There are numerous initiatives and programmes that could be launched through the successful cooperation of different role players. One of the challenges the province is faced with is a shortage of skills and capacity to implement and monitor holistic interventions or programmes. Funding for such initiatives is also not readily available. It is often the case that private sector sponsorship is done with a personal agenda as motivation rather than the improvement of the police force or relevant departments.

#### ACTIONS

- Create dialogue and cooperation between the police force, different departments, local government and civil society to initiate and implement programmes to address the fundamental causes of criminality.
- Create community-safety centres to aid local governments in promoting a safe and healthy municipal environment. The provincial Department of Human Settlements, Public Safety and Liaison should give effect to the establishment of community-safety centres (Discussed below).
- Create a framework according to which projects are prioritised and project funding guided.
- Identify and prioritise gaps for sponsorships from the private sector as for example Business against Crime South Africa (BACSA).
- The provincial Department of Human Settlements, Public Safety and Liaison must ensure coordination between the South African Police service, the South African National Defence Force, NGO's, Crime Fighting Agencies and related justice cluster departments.
- Implement Crime Prevention through the Environmental Design Strategy (CDTED) which will involve a number of role-players in the crime prevention process (Discussed below).

### 11.6. EQUAL PROTECTION FOR VULNERABLE GROUPS

The vulnerable groups within a society include children, the youth and women. Special provision and planning have to be made to accommodate and protect these groups within the province. Vulnerable groups are often the most exposed to inequality and poverty and as a result to violence, crime and generally unsafe circumstances. All citizens of the North West province deserve equal protection and therefore the safety of vulnerable groups should be made priority.

One of the key challenges with regard to vulnerable groups is the lack of sufficient data, especially in rural areas. The large rural areas of the North West province are home to many vulnerable individuals. Data is urgently required to measure the vulnerability of people through carefully developed indicators. This will require carefully developed qualitative indicators. Qualitative measures and indicators should allow for all categories of vulnerable groups. Once the extent of vulnerability in the province has been established mitigation measures to secure safety for exposed individuals can be developed. Further research on vulnerable groups should include the prevalence of xenophobia, and of hate crimes against gay and lesbian people, and people with disabilities. Awareness should also be created among communities and businesses regarding the vulnerability of certain groups living among them. The findings of studies should be made available to communities and stake holders to include them in safety plans. Communities and businesses can then aid the police in providing protection and a safe environment for the vulnerable amongst them, especially in rural areas.

#### ACTIONS

- Conduct further research on qualitative measures and indicators to evaluate the safety of vulnerable groups in the province, especially in the rural areas. Where relevant, expand existing indicators to



include all categories of vulnerable people. Research must be in the form of independent studies (Independent Community Satisfaction Surveys (ICSS)) facilitated by the Department Human Settlements, Public Safety and Liaison.

- Develop an effective computerised programme through which resources are allocated based on credible qualitative indicators.
- Local governments should have an annual safety plan and budget in place which allows for environmental safety designs. Create partnership between police, communities and businesses to utilise readily available resources and overcome capacity challenges in local governments. The provincial Department of Social Development, Women, Children and People with Disabilities should facilitate these partnerships.
- Launch awareness programmes for vulnerable groups across the province.
- Create and promote programmes on social cohesion. Social cohesion will not allow for any form of violence or discrimination against vulnerable groups. Social cohesion will ensure patriotic participation and meaningful inclusion of all vulnerable groups in the affairs of the country in a way that empowers them to build social capital and networks, and safer and more cohesive communities.
- State departments are not exempted from violence and abuse and therefore each government department and municipality should have a preventive accountability framework in place. These will be especially relevant in departments responsible for the care and safety of citizens.

#### 11.6.1. PROTECTION OF CHILDREN

Children remain one of the most vulnerable segments of society. In South Africa the most pressing challenges facing children are poverty, child abuse and violence, HIV/AIDS and a lack of access to services. The fragmentation of the family unit and the loss of care givers further exacerbate these challenges. Finding innovative ways that encourage the safe and secure inclusion and participation of children in society is an important step toward observing and protecting the rights of children.

Approximately 6.9 per cent of the children living in South Africa are located in the North West province. The majority of children in the North West province are black African (93.4%). The rest of the provincial child population comprises of 1.4 per cent coloured, 0.1 per cent Indian or Asian and 5.1 per cent white children. In 2010 orphans of which both parents have died represented 4.2 per cent of the child population in the North West province. Less than one per cent of households in the North West province are headed by (or consist of only) individuals younger than 18 years. Children are affected by poverty in the North West province and nearly two thirds of children living in the North West province (62.2%) live in poverty conditions (Stats SA, 2012<sup>ii</sup>).

A large percentage of children in the North West province do not live with their biological parents. Risks such as physical, emotional and sexual abuse of children increase as a result of the physical distance between biological parents and their children. Public information and education campaigns, stressing the importance of the active involvement of parents and or caregivers in the education and development of their children could assist in mitigating the potential negative impact that this may have on child development and well-being. Even though child-headed households constitute a very small percentage of all households in the North West province, great efforts have to be made to decrease the vulnerability of these households. Examples of vulnerable children in the province are the following:

- orphaned children
- children with physical disabilities and incurable diseases
- children affected and infected by HIV
- children from dysfunctional families
- children in homes headed by other children



- children from poor households and communities

It is of importance to note that girls may have safety needs particular to childhood that differs from those of boys. Privacy and safety must at all times be provided for girls especially in schools. It is often the case that old existing schools were not built to accommodate the particular needs and safety of girls. The safety of girls was not a priority at the time the schools were built. Resources are not always available to renovate or redesign old schools to accommodate the safety of girls.

#### ACTIONS

- Conduct further research on child-headed households in the province and children without proper parental care.
- Public information and education campaigns, stressing the importance of the active involvement of parents and or caregivers in the education, development and safety of their children must be implemented to mitigate the potential negative impact that a lack thereof may have on child development and well-being.
- Monitor parents especially surrogate persons and provide support where needed.
- Utilise ICT towards ensuring the safety of all children in the province. For example, create initiatives that involve the use and application of ICTs in fighting the abuse and exploitation of children over the internet.
- Establish safe shelters for women and girls through local government and the Department of Social Development, Women, Children and People with Disabilities.
- Design infrastructure of new schools pro-actively with the safety of girls in mind.
- New innovative ideas or designs should be developed to transform danger areas in existing schools to be a safe environment for young girls.

#### 11.6.2. SAFETY IN SCHOOLS

Children spend a large portion of their day during the week at school. A safe environment at schools is thus crucial. Creating a safe environment should not be the sole responsibility of the Department of Education and school authorities. The Department of Education, police and local government should work in partnership to develop and ensure safe environment in schools. Safety at school is not only limited to providing safe infrastructure. Gangs, bullying, drugs and violence are but a few phenomena's in schools which could threaten the safety of pupils. To address these issues a solid partnership between the role players identified above will be needed. Each school is located in a unique social and geographical environment and will require a school safety plan which is developed accordingly. School governing bodies will be best equipped to develop such plans. The provincial Department of Human Settlements, Public Safety and Liaison will be responsible for the monitoring of such plans.

#### ACTIONS

- Create a partnership between the police service, Department of Education, local government and school authorities to ensure safety of learners.
- All schools or educational facilities in the province should have a learner safety programme or plan in place developed by individual school governing bodies and monitored by the Department of Human Settlements, Public Safety and Liaison.
- Police forums must monitor the school safety plans in an area at community level.
- Safety of girls should be key in school safety plans and infrastructure developed accordingly as discussed above.
- Each school governing body should appoint an official to report on safety measures implemented in the school.



- A provincial coordinating committee needs to be established to which the Department of Human Settlements, Public Safety and Liaison and Department of Education must report on school-safety plans.

### 11.6.3. PROTECTION OF THE YOUTH

The youth forms a vital component in the drive towards the development of any region. The youth represents new entrants into a country's labour force and will also serve as the basis for future demographic growth. The youth can therefore be either a major source of provincial development, or serious social conflict. The role of the youth in the North West province will depend on the success with which they are incorporated into the labour market and other social structures. If the provincial youth is not absorbed into the labour market successfully there is an increased possibility of some youth members resorting to criminality. Poverty, inequality and unemployment are often the main causes for individuals resorting to crime. These factors among the youth will lead to increased crime in the North West province and will not contribute towards building a safe sustainable community. The youth is not supported by the social safety nets that are available to children and to older persons. There exists a need to target youth in social development programmes, social protection and social welfare services. It is important that these programmes are developed in such a manner that it encourages the youth to take responsibility for their own safety. In 2010 the youth population comprised of 93.6 per cent black Africans, 1.4 per cent coloured, 0.3 per cent Indian or Asian and 4.8 per cent white youth (Stats SA, 2012).

#### ACTIONS

- Target the youth in social development programmes, social protection and social welfare services which promote them to take responsibility for their own safety.
- Implement alcohol- and substance abuse as well as anger-management programmes for youth at an early stage in schools.
- Use the role models of the youth to promote crime free, drug free, caring and responsible lifestyles
- Mobilise resources from the public and private sector, creating a partnership to support a comprehensive long-term programme for youth safety.
- Mobilise youth for inner city safety to secure safe places and spaces for young people.
- Create framework according to which youth projects are prioritised and project funding guided
- Create an Inter Departmental Committee on Youth Affairs. The Committee will have the responsibility of integrating planning and coordinating youth development across all provincial departments. All departments should work towards integrating youth mobilisation for safety, education, civic responsibility, job creation, skills development and social cohesion in the province.

### 11.6.4. WOMEN AND GENDER BASED VIOLENCE

Women face many challenges as a result of the history of the province. Far too many women still live under conditions of poverty and deprivation. As a result of these living conditions many women are still victims of gender violence and economic exclusion. Gender based violence will not allow women and girls to achieve total equity and freedom. The vulnerability of women is as a result of unequal access to education, gender division of labour in the household, the low value accorded to women's work and the clustering of women in low paid jobs. As a result women have a skewed skill base which does not unlock doors of opportunities for them. Gender based violence is not only limited to women and children, hate crimes against gays and lesbians also threaten the transgender communities.

Women are often victim to domestic violence in their households. Domestic violence is an issue which largely affects women as the prime target of attack by their male partners or ex-partners, but also a problem which seriously affects children through both witnessing the violence towards their mothers or being at heightened



risk of direct abuse themselves. The wellbeing and productiveness of women and children exposed to such violence are directly affected and their ability to positively contribute to the societies they live in decreases.

#### ACTIONS

- Conduct further research on qualitative measures and develop qualitative indicators to measure the progress made to secure the safety of potential victims of gender based violence.
- Educate both women and men on the realities of domestic violence. This education and training should be done in partnership with social partners and the private sector.
- Establish safe shelters for women and girls through local government and the Department of Social Development, Women, Children and People with Disabilities.
- ICT's can be used to educate women on their rights, especially rural women.
- Women, girls and transgender communities need to have representation on community policing forums to articulate their safety needs.

#### 11.6.5. RURAL SAFETY

The North West province consists of various vast open spaces. Rural communities in these areas are very vulnerable and exposed to crime and safety risks. These communities do not share the same access to provincial government, business and non-governmental resources as the urban communities. The majority of the larger towns and urban centres of the North West province were originally agricultural nodes, but many since evolved into mining towns and later into well-developed and diverse urban centres. Despite the development of many urban centres some parts of the province remain relatively inaccessible and isolated from urban areas. The majority of urban areas are located in the southern (Potchefstroom and Klerksdorp) and eastern region (Rustenburg and Brits) of the province. The population is therefore mainly concentrated in these areas. In the DRSMDM some areas are located more than six hours away from the nearest urban centre. It is especially the Kagisano Molopo LM that is the least accessible from the urban areas in the province. People living in these areas of the province deserve the same protection than those located in the urban areas.

There are two main challenges in providing safety in rural areas. The first is the lack of resources and supporting infrastructure. Police stations in rural areas are often isolated and in many areas the roads are not up to standard which affect their accessibility even more. Rural officers have to be provided with the right equipment and vehicles for the environments they operate in. Secondly, sufficient data on vulnerable groups in rural areas are not available and prohibits the development of qualitative indicators. The murders of farmers and workers, as well as stock theft are a big challenge in the North West province. Rural safety is not limited to farming, but also includes the broader communities living in rural areas. People in rural areas face the same issues of crime as those in urban areas and also need to feel safe.

#### ACTIONS

- Prioritise communication tools and early warning systems to address the impediment of distance and infrastructure in rural areas.
- Explore examples of successful implementation of technology and mobilisation of rural communities. Among others the possibilities of social media in rural crime prevention should be considered.
- Provide safety and crime prevention training and capacity building workshops to farmers and farm workers jointly.
- Develop safety plans for each farm and rural town taking on board the safety needs of everyone especially the most vulnerable and most exposed.
- Improve the functioning of farm watch structures. These structures should be supported by the local police station.



- Create support for farm and rural safety structures by the business community especially those operating in the agricultural field.

### 11.7. COMMUNITY SAFETY

A sustainable strategy towards building safer communities must utilise the resources of both state and non-state policing agencies. The constitution provides for municipalities to be responsible for the creation of safe and healthy communities and as a result the direct involvement of the public in their own safety through civil society organisations and civic participation. Civil society organisations and civic participation are crucial in securing the safety and security of any community. Community safety centres will be essential towards building safer communities in the North West province. These community safety centres will be located in areas where women, children and the youth are most vulnerable. Community policing forums will also play a key role in the overall safety in the North West province. Community policing forums should be strengthened to have effective oversight of police at precinct level.

Communication between community based organisations and their respective police stations is necessary to ensure that the police service is focused on the safety and security needs of communities. Communities can assist police services in fighting crime if there is an open communication channel on which citizens can report suspicious activities.

#### 11.7.1. THE COMMUNITY IN THE BATTLE AGAINST CRIME

A safe and secure society is not only dependent on the authorities but also civil society organisations and civic participation. Bringing state and non-state policing agencies together will require clarity on the roles and responsibility of the various roles. The state is best equipped to take on the role of coordination mechanism and to report to communities. Community-based agencies will include among others church organisations and civic associations. Local government has an immense role to play to ensure community participation in safety. Local government can work directly with community based agencies. Initiatives to incorporate the community into their safety should involve cooperation between sectors such as education, sports, arts and culture, and social welfare. Such collaborations should then be coordinated through community safety centres in LM's.

The establishment of community safety centres will be at the heart of public participation in building safer communities. It is through these centres that local authorities will be able to work directly with non-state bodies to enhance safety. Safety audits such as Independent Community Satisfaction Surveys (ICSS) and other barometers must be developed and conducted through the community safety centres to obtain sufficient data on the needs and desires of the community. These needs could range from having more police members patrolling the streets to better street lighting.

#### ACTIONS

- Strengthen and sustain community safety programmes.
- The state must take the role of coordinating mechanisms for public participation in safety and account to citizens.
- Create community-safety centres to aid local governments in promoting a safe and healthy municipal environment. The provincial Department of Human Settlements, Public Safety and Liaison should give effect to the establishment of community-safety centre. Local authorities must coordinate and involve community-based agencies such as church organisations and civic associations through the community safety centres. Community safety centres must be the end result of collaboration between the community and sectors such as education, sports, arts and culture, and social welfare.





- Incorporate community safety centres into IDP on local level.
- Monitor, assess and report on community participation within a framework developed by the provincial Department of Human Settlements, Public Safety and Liaison to ensure full participation in policing priorities.
- Conduct safety audits such as Independent Community Satisfaction Surveys (ICSS) and other barometers through the community safety centres to obtain sufficient data on the needs and desires of the community.
- Identify crime hotspots through community participation in programmes of crime prevention.

#### 11.7.2. COMMUNITY SAFETY VOLUNTEER PROGRAMMES

As part of community participation in safety, community safety volunteer programmes must be developed. The objective of a community safety volunteer programme is to provide an opportunity for citizens to partner with the police service and support the efforts of police members. The active participation of citizens in support of law enforcement activities increases the quality of life for those living and working in their communities, provides better service to the community, fosters close working relationships between law enforcement personnel and all citizens, and provides an avenue for citizens to learn more about the community's needs and resources. A community safety volunteer programme is community policing in its most basic form – a structured way for citizens to participate in helping provide for the safety and security of their own community.

Recruiting respectable voluntary community safety members is a challenge in the North West province. Community safety volunteer programmes often attract members with wrong intentions such as their own political agendas. Voluntary police workers are often unemployed and once they receive employment they desert the voluntary work. Skills and capacity to implement and monitor community safety volunteer programmes are lacking alongside sufficient funding.

#### ACTIONS

- The police service must develop the ability to deliver a community safety volunteer programme as part of a community empowerment programme for safety.
- Create selection criteria for the recruitment of safety volunteers and provide incentives for the general public to increase the number of volunteers in the North West province.
- Deploy volunteers' at high risk schools, health clinics, pension and grant payment points, taxi ranks, parking spaces, open fields, areas with poor street lighting or public congestion, and generally unsafe areas.
- The safety of volunteers must always be priority; they must only provide safety to the public through visibility and numbers and not put themselves at risk.
- Include the programme in the budgets of local governments and provincial departments of community safety.
- Appoint individuals with adequate skills and capacity to implement and monitor community safety volunteer programmes.
- Create framework according to which projects are prioritised and project funding guided to overcome budget constraints.

#### 11.7.3. COMMUNITY POLICE FORUMS (CPF)

Community Police Forums (CPF) will assist the police to create an integrated approach towards public safety. A CPF is a group of people from different communities and police representatives who meet to discuss safety problems in their communities. There are two main functions of CPF's. Firstly they must undertake accountability checks to ensure that the police are accountable for the communities they serve and secondly they must ensure the co-operation of the community with the police. The police forum must evaluate the



provision of services to the community such as the distribution of resources, the way complaints and charges are handled and patrolling of residential and business areas. The keeping of records, writing of reports and recommendations to the Station Commissioners, the Provincial Commissioner and the MEC will also be evaluated. Community policing forums should be strengthened to have effective oversight of police at precinct level.

#### ACTIONS

- Establish Community Safety Forums throughout the North West province.
- Effective operation of area and provincial CPF boards to evaluate the functioning of CPFs in the province and to co-ordinate the efforts between different CPFs.
- Create a concerted programme of capacity building and training of community representatives on the CPF's.
- Undertake accountable checks through CPF checks to ensure that the police are accountable to the communities they serve.

#### 11.7.4. CRIME PREVENTION THROUGH PHYSICAL AND ENVIRONMENTAL DESIGN

Future housing developments should incorporate safety in their designs. The North West province has launched a Crime Prevention through Environmental Design Strategy (CPTED) which aims to reduce the causes of, and opportunities for, criminal events and to address the fear of crime by applying sound planning, design and management principles to the built environment. There exists a definite relationship between crime and the physical environment. The physical environment can either increase or reduce opportunities for crime. The CPTED approach the North West province has adapted has been widely implemented successfully over many years in countries including Britain, the Netherlands, the United States of America, Australia and Canada.

Many view the CPTED as having high up-front costs. The CPTED works best with new construction. The CPTED for existing structures and neighbourhoods will be more involved and costly. Since CPTED projects are best implemented at the local level, such projects need to be integrated into the IDP planning and budgeting processes.

#### ACTIONS

- Continue to implement the CPTED strategy in the province.
- Involve communities in crime prevention programmes through environmental design, redesign and maintenance.
- Develop courses in universities and technical colleges to promote urban design that will take into account safety in future housing developments.
- Include CPTED projects into IDP's and spatial development frameworks throughout the province.
- Include CPTED on agenda of existing community safety forums.
- Promote the concept of CPTED to the district municipalities and local authorities through discussions and the distribution of educational and promotional material.

#### 11.8. ROAD SAFETY

Road traffic safety must reduce the risk of a person using the provincial road network being killed or seriously injured. Road safety must include the safety of pedestrians, cyclists, and motorists, their passengers, and passengers of on-road public transport. Best-practice road safety strategies focus upon the prevention of serious injury and death crashes in spite of human fallibility.

Road safety is a concern that requires the immediate attention of the NWPG. Dangerous roads have significant impacts on developmental objectives – especially because of the immense economic and social



cost of road crashes. North West Traffic Authorities (Department of Humans Settlements, Public Safety and Liaison, 2013<sup>iii</sup>) have raised serious concern about the number of drunken drivers on provincial roads. Drunken driving is regarded as one of the major contributory factor of road accidents and fatalities in the province, followed by speed, fatigue, driver fitness and vehicle roadworthiness.

#### ACTIONS

- Strengthen existing road safety programmes.
- Reward those who comply with road safety regulations on an annual basis.
- Develop education and awareness campaigns for all road users regarding mutual responsibilities in road safety.
- Ensure institutional capacity to deal with road safety issues.
- Increase road safety through adequate land use planning such as providing efficient networks where the shortest or quickest routes coincide with the safest routes and attention to detail in the physical environment in which pedestrians, cyclists and public transport users move around to make safety intrinsic to all aspects of the planning process.
- Increase awareness amongst politicians, planners, engineers and the public of the importance of addressing the needs of these non-motorised transport users.
- Ensure safe and reliable public transport services.



## NOTES

<sup>i</sup> Available at: <http://crimestatssa.com/province.php?ShowProvince=North+West>

<sup>ii</sup> Statistics South Africa. 2012. Social profile of vulnerable groups in South Africa 2002–2011 <https://www.statssa.gov.za/Publications/Report-03-19-00/Report-03-19-002002.pdf>

<sup>iii</sup> Department of Humans Settlements, Public Safety and Liaison. 2013, Drunken driving remains a concern in NW. [http://www.nwpg.gov.za/public\\_safety/new/media/statements/Drunken%20driving%20remains%20a%20concern%20in%20NW.pdf](http://www.nwpg.gov.za/public_safety/new/media/statements/Drunken%20driving%20remains%20a%20concern%20in%20NW.pdf) Date of Access: 5 August 2013



## 12. BUILDING A CAPABLE DEVELOPMENTAL STATE

### KEY POINTS

- ⇒ The province needs to build a professional public service that is capable of playing a developmental and transformative role.
- ⇒ Staff at all the spheres of government must have the authority, experience and support they need to do their jobs. This will require a long-term approach to skills development.
- ⇒ The province needs to improve inter-departmental coordination and proactively improve relationships with national and local government.
- ⇒ The ability of the public sector to serve society should not be compromised by political instability.

### 12.1. INTRODUCTION

The North-West Development Plan requires cooperation between all sectors of society and effective leadership by the public sector. In a society with prominent historical divisions, where the private sector often distrusts the state, little social or economic transformation will occur without improvements in the manner in which the state facilitates development and service delivery. The development plan is only as credible as the delivery mechanism is viable.

In order to facilitate development, the public sector needs to be capable, effective and motivated to serve. As such, it requires leadership, sound policies, skilled managers and workers, clear lines of accountability, well-defined roles and responsibility, appropriate systems, and consistent and fair application of rules. The North West provincial government will need to play a key role in the developmental effort and in the implementation of the PDP. However, comprehensive integration between other spheres of government is critical to ensure that benefits accrue across society but especially the poor.

**'Building a capable and developmental state' was identified as one of the key priority areas in the North West province. A capable and effective state will enhance economic opportunities and support the development of capabilities to ensure a rising floor of social rights for the poor. The developmental state will combine efforts of the public and private sector as equal partners in the development of the North West province.**

### 12.2. THE CURRENT PERSPECTIVE

Over the last 17 years South-Africa including the North West province has made significant progress in building the structures of a democratic state. The once fragmented apartheid governance structures have been consolidated into a system designed to serve developmental objectives. According to the North West Research Round Table (2012<sup>1</sup>) strong evidence exists that developmental states can manage the balance between economic growth and social development while building democratic institutions at the same time. Successful developmental states are not considered successful because of active state involvement but rather the quality of state involvement, and the quality, capacity and intelligence of state institutions, including the state bureaucracies.

As mentioned throughout the PDP, the realisation of the development objectives for the province requires long-term commitment by all sectors of society, including the private sector. Both the private and public sectors have a responsibility towards developing the province in a sustainable manner as equal partners. There exists interdependence between businesses which effects investment promotion in the North West province. The capabilities of the private sector in development planning can thus be described as crucial.

Successful developmental states have a mix of several inter-locked conditions:

- Effective capacity of the state, the presence of key institutions, inter-arrangements and mix.
- Their relationships with the market, civil society, business, organised labour, communities and citizens.
- Relevant policies, particularly industrial policy, but specific institutional arrangements; formal and informal, and public and private, which interface to provide the optimum conditions for economic growth and development.

In the North West province the foundational structures has been laid for the establishment of a developmental state. It is its weaknesses in how these structures function that constrain the ability of the



province to pursue developmental objectives. This section of the PDP provided a brief overview of the current provincial, district and local structures which will inform the identification of provincial challenges.

### 12.2.1. PROVINCIAL PUBLIC SECTOR STRUCTURES

The North West provincial government has a legislature consisting of numerous elected members, who are responsible for approving the provincial budget as well as some provincial laws. A premier is elected by the legislature who then appoints Members of the Executive Council (MECs) to be the political heads of each provincial department. The MECs and the premier jointly form the provincial executive council (cabinet).

The executive function of provincial government is headed by a director general while provincial departments are headed by a deputy director general or a Head of Department (HOD). They employ directors (managers) and public servants to do the work of government. Most public servants in the country, such as teachers and nurses, are under the administration of provincial governments.

The North West provincial government is divided into 11 departments:

- Finance
- Economic Development, Environment, Conservation and Tourism
- Human Settlements
- Education and Training
- Health
- Social Development, Women, Children and Persons with Disability
- Public Works, Roads and Transport
- Sport, Recreation, Art and Culture
- Agriculture and Rural Development
- Local Government and Traditional Affairs
- Public Safety

The provincial MEC and Department of Local Government are generally responsible for co-ordination, monitoring and support of municipalities in each province. This process is however very challenging with many departments of the opinion that more needs to be done to achieve improved integration between provincial and local government. This however also requires greater integration and coordination between provincial departments, where in contrast to local government, various functions are performed by departments that have its own leadership, its own processes and, often, its own political orientation. This causes challenges and impacts the effectiveness of service delivery.

### THE ROLE OF PROVINCIAL GOVERNMENT

Chapter 6 of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996 (Act 108 of 1996) makes provision for the establishment of nine provinces, each with its own legislative and executive authority. The constitution assigns a number of strategic roles to provinces, which are as follows:

- A strategic role: provinces have to develop a vision and a framework for integrated economic, social and community development in the province through the respective provincial growth and development strategies.
- A development role: provincial governments should ensure that municipal planning and budgetary processes give priority to the basic needs of the community and promote social and economic development.
- An intergovernmental role: provincial governments should establish forums and processes for the





purpose of including local government and traditional leaders in decision making.

- A regulatory role: section 155(7) of the Constitution gives national and provincial governments the legislative and executive authority to see to the effective performance by municipalities of their functions through legislative and other means.
- An institutional development and capacity building role: provincial governments establish municipalities, and are enjoined by section 155(6) of the Constitution to promote the development of local government capacity to enable municipalities to perform their functions and manage their own affairs. These responsibilities give provincial government an important role in the institutional development of municipalities.
- A fiscal role: provincial governments play a role in monitoring the financial status of municipalities through the provincial task teams implementing project viability.
- A monitoring role: provincial governments have a key role in monitoring local government in order to ensure that high standards of public service and good government are maintained.
- An intervention role: provincial governments are given power to intervene in the affairs of local government so as to protect and promote minimum standards of local government service delivery and ensure that local government fulfills its constitutional mandate.

There are four district municipalities in the North West province and each of them consist of between four to six local municipalities. Each district municipality has to co-ordinate development and service delivery in the entire district. It plays a stronger role in areas where local municipalities lack capacity to deliver or where local municipal resources are insufficient to fulfil its mandate. District government has its own administration staff and two types of councillors:

- Elected councillors: are elected for the district council on a proportional representation ballot by all voters in the area (40 per cent of the district councillors).
- Councillors who represent local municipalities in the area: local councillors sent by the local council for representation on the district council (60 per cent of the district councillors).

The responsibility of service delivery is shared between local municipalities and district municipalities. In areas with a more pronounced rural character, such as the DRSDM, the district municipality is likely to have a much greater role to play regarding development facilitation and service delivery.

There are 19 local municipalities in the North West province and they have a council where decisions are made and municipal officials and staff implement the work of the municipality. The council is made up of elected members who approve policies and by-laws in their local jurisdiction. The council has to pass a budget for its municipality every year and decide on development plans and service delivery for their municipal area.

The work of the council is co-ordinated by a mayor who is elected by the council. The mayor is assisted by councillors in an executive committee (elected by council) or a mayoral committee (appointed by the mayor). The mayor together with the executive or mayoral committee also oversees the work of the municipal manager and department heads.

The work of the municipality is done by the municipal administration that is headed by the municipal manager and other officials. S/he is responsible for employing staff and co-ordinating them to implement all programmes approved by the council.

Municipalities in the North West are responsible for the following functions:



- electricity delivery
- water for household use
- sewage and sanitation
- storm water systems
- refuse removal
- fire fighting services
- municipal health services
- decisions around land-use
- municipal roads
- municipal public transport
- street trading
- abattoirs and fresh food markets
- parks and recreational areas
- libraries and other facilities
- local tourism

### LOCAL GOVERNMENT AND INTEGRATED DEVELOPMENT PLANNING

The Constitution sets out the main objectives of the local government system: providing democratic and accountable government, ensuring the provision of services to communities in a sustainable manner, promoting social and economic development, promoting a safe and healthy environment, and encouraging the involvement of communities and community organisations in local government. The 1998 White Paper on Local Government highlighted the need for local government to focus on realising developmental outcomes, such as the provision of household infrastructure and services; the creation of livable, integrated cities, towns and rural areas; the promotion of local economic development; community empowerment and redistribution. The White Paper also identified the need for municipalities to pursue integrated development planning and budgeting, and to work together with local citizens and other partners in order to fulfill their developmental mandate. All municipalities are expected to deliver on these functions despite the large variations in their levels of capacity.

Integrated development planning is seen as a mechanism to enable prioritisation and integration in municipal planning processes. Integrated Development Plans (IDPs) and Local Economic Development (LED) strategies are important tools for driving economic development at local level but, to be effective, they need to take into account the resources and capacity that are available. This requires that municipalities liaise with districts, provinces and national government. Municipal Integrated Development Plans (IDPs) need to be used more strategically to focus attention on critical priorities in the PDP that relate to the mandate of local government such as spatial planning, infrastructure and basic services. This would allow the IDP process to become more manageable and the participation process more meaningful, thus helping to narrow the gap between the aspirations contained in these documents and what can actually be achieved.



### 12.2.2. PROVINCIAL CHALLENGES

As indicated previously the foundational structures has been laid for the establishment of a capable developmental state. The necessary structures are in place to pursue a developmental approach in the North West province. It is how these structures function that constrain the ability of the province to pursue developmental objectives.

.Unevenness in capacity across the different spheres of government leads to uneven performance in local, provincial and national government. This is caused by a complex set of factors, including tension in the political-administrative interface, instability of the administrative leadership, skills deficits, the erosion of accountability and authority, poor organisational design and low staff morale.

The weaknesses in capacity and performance are the most serious in historically disadvantaged areas, where state intervention is most needed to improve the quality of life of people. This is clearly evident in the rural areas of the North West province. Across the North West province, a deficit in skills and professionalism affects all elements of the public service. At senior levels, reporting and recruitment structures have allowed for too much political interference in selecting and managing senior staff. The result has been unnecessary instability in senior posts, which has undermined the morale of public servants and the confidence of citizens in the state. Regarding the junior levels of public servants, the province needs a clear vision for where the next generation of public servants will come from and how specialist professional skills will be reproduced. Weak managerial capacity and lack of leadership prevent these issues being addressed.

Coordination between the different government spheres is a complex issue and has been known to cause weaknesses in the functioning of the public sector. A lack of clarity regarding the division of responsibilities together with a reluctance to manage the system has created tension and instability across the three spheres of government in the country. Coordination problems are not unique to South Africa and the North West province and there is currently no consensus on how this is going to be resolved. Reforms are needed that will enable people to do their jobs by strengthening skills, enhancing morale, clarifying lines of accountability and building an ethos of public service.

Skills, professional ethic and a commitment to public service should be recognised and valued at all levels of the public service and local government.

### 12.3. VISION 2030

The vision for building a capable and developmental state within the North West Province should be in line with the national vision. A unified vision towards a capable and developmental state in South Africa will ensure unity and collaboration across provincial borders and aid the country in creating an enabling environment for good governance to flourish. Therefore the vision for 2030 in terms of building a capable state in the North West Province can be sated as follows:

*The state needs to play a transformative and developmental role. This will require well-run and effectively coordinated institutions with skilled servants who are committed to the public good and capable of delivering consistently high quality services, while prioritising the provinces developmental objectives.*

*A developmental state brings about rapid and sustainable transformation of economic and/or social conditions through active, intensive and effective intervention in the structural causes of economic or social underdevelopment. The developmental state combines efforts of the public and private sector as equal partners in the development of the North West province.*



*The public and private sector needs to foster the necessary capacity to formulate and implement policies that serve society's interest. In addition, the public sector needs to ensure that those policies focus on overcoming the root causes of poverty and inequality; while building the state's capacity to fulfil this role.*

### 12.3.1. HOW TO ACHIEVE IT

Achieving the above mentioned vision for 2030 will require that the North West Provincial Government, in partnership with district and local government as well as non-governmental organisations, private sector and civil society, are capable of playing a developmental and transformative role in order to alleviate poverty and reducing inequality. In reaching the vision, three key priority areas have been identified for the North West province, and are as follows:

- good governance and coordination
- human resource planning, development and management
- mainstreaming public participation

### 12.4. GOOD GOVERNANCE AND COORDINATION

The major objective of government is to ensure that all citizens have to the greatest possible extent, access to high quality public services. The use of the term “governance” instead of “government” implies a shift in emphasis away from a top-down approach by government to an approach that seeks the active participation of society in public policy decisions. The principles of good governance enshrined by the constitution include:

- a high standard of professional ethics must be promoted and maintained
- efficient, economic and effective use of resources must be promoted
- services must be provided impartially, fairly, equitably and without bias
- the public must be encouraged to participate in policy making and their needs must be responded to
- accountability and transparency must be fostered
- human potential must be maximised by means of sound human resource management and career development practices

With these principles in mind, it is necessary to highlight certain key areas where provincial government can focus their energy in an effort to enhance productivity and good governance.

#### 12.4.1. STABILISE THE POLITICAL-ADMINISTRATIVE INTERFACE

In any democratic system there is a need to balance the priorities of the current government with an unbiased and indiscriminating public service to individuals with differing political allegiances. In the North West province the challenge more often than not is to ensure that standards are not undermined by appointing public servants on the basis of political connections rather than skills and expertise. Also, access to state resources and services should not become defined by political association rather than basic inclusive citizenship.

#### ACTIONS:

- Ensure that the provincial administrative head of the public service manage the career progression of heads of departments, including assembling and organising panels for recruitment processes, performance assessments and disciplinary procedures. This role should be fulfilled by the director-general in the North West Office of the Premier.
- Improve reporting lines between HODs and the administrative head of the public service (implications should be strict on non-compliance by HODs).



- Put in place a hybrid approach for top appointments that allows for the reconciliation of administrative and political priorities.
- Use a purely administrative approach for lower-level appointments, giving senior officials full authority to appoint staff in their departments.

### 12.4.2. STRENGTHEN ACCOUNTABILITY AND OVERSIGHT

The key in terms of oversight in the public sector is to ensure that the executive body of the applicable sphere of government is held to account for the actions it takes in serving the public. Additional elements also include the need to rigorously debate proposed and potential policies, and to inquire and investigate when things go wrong. At provincial level the responsibility of oversight is vested in the legislature who needs to be encouraged to increasingly hold the executive to account on delivering services equitably, effectively and honestly. At local government level there is no clear separation between the legislative and executive functions as both reside with the municipal council. This means that councils will have to develop a clearer understanding of these different roles and how they can best be managed in order to ensure that the oversight mechanism is not neglected.

Government departments should also inform the public about the services they are entitled to, but also the level and quality of public services they will receive so that they are aware of what to expect. These principles emphasise transparency and information as key to accountability. Public buildings need to accommodate citizens better and need to provide a more informative public interface in order for citizens to know what to expect, where to go and to whom they can talk if they do not receive particular services. In 1997 the Batho Pele principles were introduced to encourage public participation and promote citizens' ability to know and claim their rights. The Batho Pele principle includes among others:

- improve the public interface in government buildings to allow easier access to information and assistance by the public
- ensure all service-delivery points provide clear information on where citizens can go and who they can talk to if they are dissatisfied
- require frontline staff to wear nametags in order to make it easier for the public to provide crucial feedback in terms of the standard of service they received

### HARNESS THE ENERGY AND EXPERIENCE OF CITIZENS

Within the functioning of a developmental state there are two main forms of accountability. In the standard hierarchical model, junior civil servants are accountable to their superiors; the public service is accountable to its political principals, who are in turn accountable to the electorate. In the bottom-up approach, citizens hold public officials accountable at the level at which services are delivered. These approaches are mutually reinforcing. Bottom-up approaches are effective where there is a commitment to citizen engagement. Citizen groups cannot be expected to have the time or resources to fulfill a monitoring role, but can highlight shortcomings. Amongst others, citizens are often best placed to advise on the standard of public services in their communities and to suggest possible interventions (National Planning Commission, 2012<sup>ii</sup>).

The North West province must improve bottom-up accountability mechanisms that enable citizens to communicate their grievances and seek redress at the point of delivery. Routine accountability would enable citizens to provide ongoing insights into service delivery.

### ACTIONS

- Clarify and inform on the role of provincial legislature in providing oversight to the municipal executive.



- Strengthen the role of provincial legislatures; encourage them to improve oversight, and to hold the provincial executive to account in providing services equitably, effectively and honestly.
- The two preceding actions refer both to the legislature that has to become responsible for overseeing executive function of municipal and provincial service delivery. At local government level there is no clear separation between the legislative and executive functions as both reside with the municipal council, which can delegate executive functions to an executive mayor or executive committee. The lack of a clear dividing line between the executive and the legislature is a common feature. However, it will be important for councils to develop a clearer understanding of these different roles and how they can best be managed in order to ensure that the oversight mechanism is not undermined. Therefore *a structure should be developed to clearly define the different roles in terms of the legislature and the executive.*
- Reinvigorate the idea of social contract: between organised labour, government, private sector, civil society and communities.
- Improve bottom-up accountability mechanisms that enable citizens to communicate their grievances and seek redress at the point of delivery. Routine accountability would enable citizens to provide on-going insights into service delivery.
- Strengthen and improve the implementation of the Batho Pele principles which were introduced in 1997 to encourage public participation and promote citizens' ability to know and claim their rights. A study conducted by the North West Public Service Commission (2012<sup>iii</sup>) sought to assess the adherence of the courts to the service delivery principles of Batho Pele as a key strategy for the transformation of the Public Service delivery. The specific inspections for the report were conducted at the Ga-Rankuwa and Taung Regional Courts. The following was some of the key areas identified from improvement:
  - Reception areas: clear designated and manned reception areas should be provided.
  - Signage: inside signage should be provided in languages predominantly spoken in the areas serviced by both relevant courts to improve access to the previously disadvantaged communities of such areas. Obstructions to outside signage should receive attention through engagements with local municipalities.
  - Business hours: business hours should be displayed to improve access to operating hours.
  - Service charters: service charters indicating courts services and standards should be displayed to improve access and measuring of quality of services by the customers, and these should, as far as possible, be provided in languages predominantly spoken in the areas serviced by the courts concerned.
  - Complaint/suggestion boxes: clear complaints and suggestions procedures should be provided and placed where the public could easily access and be encouraged to utilise them.
  - Name tags: wearing of name badges should be a norm for all front and back office staff serving the public.

### 12.4.3. IMPROVE INTERDEPARTMENTAL AND INTERGOVERNMENTAL COORDINATION



Inter-governmental and inter-departmental coordination is very often required due to overlapping jurisdictions in almost all sectors of activity. The need for coordination is thus obvious for the purpose of pooling resources and talents to achieve provincial objectives. One of the most important components of coordination is the exchange of communication and information which allows the constituent units of various spheres of government (including various departments) to compare performance, and consider respective initiatives. Communication is essential for effective public service delivery and enhances the relations among provincial departments as well as amongst provincial and local government.

### 12.4.3.1. IMPROVE INTERDEPARTMENTAL COORDINATION

A high level of independence between individual departments often causes coordination challenges. This independent authority detrimentally affects the core function of the public sector, especially in areas where jurisdictions overlap considerably. Intergovernmental relations will not improve without a positive vision for the role of the provinces. This vision should focus on strengthening the ability of provincial government to carry out its core functions, especially education and health.

#### ACTIONS:

- Create a departmental hierarchy (through means of service level agreements rather than adopting amendments to an Act) specific to the delivery of certain functions. For example: in the delivery of sustainable settlements the Department of Human Settlements should be assigned an authoritative role in mobilising various departments (such as health, education, public works, public safety etc.)
- Ensure that information between departments is distributed without restrictions and involve provincial legislature in holding relevant parties accountable.
- Adopt a less hierarchical approach with routine issues being dealt with on a day-to-day basis between officials within a single department.
- Use the cluster system to focus on strategic cross cutting issues as well as promoting routine horizontal coordination on issues that do not need to be debated at cluster level.
- Where departments are unable to reach agreement or where issues fall through the gaps between departments, the Office of the Premier needs to bring the different parties together to mediate agreements.
- The North West provincial government needs to include the director-general from a national department on the selection panel when a new head of department is selected in the province from the equivalent department.
- Identify and resolve specific coordination problems, instead of trying to find new structural arrangements, which is destabilising.

### 12.4.3.2. IMPROVE INTERGOVERNMENTAL COORDINATION

The constitution requires that responsibilities, such as for instance economic development, be devolved to

The constitution deliberately refers to the term “spheres” of government, since the “tiers” would emphasise the existence of a hierarchical relationship between the three levels of government, with local government occupying the lowest rung. What the Constitution attempts to emphasise is the need for cooperative government.

local government where functions are best administered locally and municipal capacity allows. The province needs to devolve capacity in certain functions toward local government and instead focus more on its own core functions, especially education and health. Provincial government must also focus on building constructive intergovernmental relations and improving service delivery. The need for support in municipalities is especially pronounced in smaller municipalities typically in rural areas where a lack of technical capacity and economics of scale prevent effective

service delivery. There have been many short-term interventions to build municipal capacity, but capacity building is a long-term process. National and provincial government should promote local government as a career path in its own right through measures such as a local government graduate-recruitment schemes and skills-development strategies for technical specialists.





**THE RELATIONSHIP BETWEEN PROVINCIAL AND LOCAL GOVERNMENT**

The relationship between municipalities and the provincial government has often been challenging. Despite promoting decentralisation of functions toward local municipalities, the opposite has often happened, where municipalities are incapable of delivering specific services, which then becomes the responsibility of the province. Municipalities are essentially responsible for water, roads, sanitation, electricity and environmental health, while significant functions, such as agriculture, primary health care, education and social development are managed by provincial departments. Yet, some confusion exists. A particular problem is that there is little incentive for provincial departments to participate in municipal IDP processes, which makes for a lack of alignment between planning processes at the different levels and which often causes power struggles over which plans take priority.

**THE RELATIONSHIP BETWEEN TRADITIONAL AUTHORITIES AND LOCAL GOVERNMENT**

An additional challenge in terms of institutional alignment and coordination is the relationship between state, especially local government, and traditional authorities. The Municipal Structures Act (Act No. 117 of 1998 Section 81) indicates that traditional leaders may participate in the proceedings of the council of that municipality, and those traditional leaders must be allowed to attend and participate in any meeting of the council. The White Paper on Traditional Leadership and Local Governance of 2003 (RSA 2003) recognises that traditional leadership, as an institution located in the rural areas, has a role to play in the fight against poverty, homelessness, illiteracy, and the promotion of good governance. It recognises the role of national, provincial and district houses of traditional leaders in advising government on rural issues.

The institution of traditional leadership at local level can also participate in the municipal Ward Committees established in terms of national legislation. Traditional leaders will also continue to participate in municipal councils in terms of section 81 of the Municipal Structures Act, until legislation providing otherwise is introduced. Apart from customary roles traditional councils shall:

- support municipalities in facilitating community involvement in development planning processes
- communicate community needs to municipalities and other spheres of government
- recommend appropriate interventions to government to bring about development and service delivery
- promote indigenous knowledge systems for sustainable development
- participate in the development programmes of municipalities and other spheres of government
- participate in the development of policy and legislation at local level

Despite the provisions in the two acts, relationships between traditional authorities and local government structures are often problematic, representing rival centres of power (Goldman and Reynolds, 2007).

**THE RELATIONSHIP BETWEEN DISTRICT AND LOCAL GOVERNMENT**

The relationship between district municipalities and local municipalities is defined by numerous challenges, often resulting in districts and local councils competing rather than cooperating. The main challenges include:

- the division of roles and responsibilities between the two types of municipalities is inadequately defined and or understood
- DMs are supposed to provide support to the LMs but limited clarity is available on how such guidance should be implemented. Also, in some instances the LM has a higher capacity than the DM, causing the former to promote their own agendas without consultation with the DM resulting



in conflict or power struggles

- the LM and DM in some circumstances compete for available funding
- non-attendance at key meetings, inconsistent attendance by different officials, or attendance by junior officials who do not have the necessary information or decision-making authority
- unclear terms of reference for the intergovernmental relations (IGR) cluster forums
- municipalities struggle to get sector department planning and budgeting information and face to face discussion on the sectors' proposals
- the role of councilors are sometimes blurred between these two levels

Some of the most common strengths and weaknesses of local and district governments are highlighted below:

	STRENGTHS	WEAKNESSES
District	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Usually a larger budget than local municipalities</li> <li>• Some have significant capacity in terms of staff numbers and quality</li> <li>• Able to control their budget</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Inadequate differentiation of roles of district and local municipalities and from provinces</li> <li>• Limited capacity in critical areas such as engineering</li> <li>• Poor leadership and coordination</li> <li>• District municipality often competes for resources with the local municipality</li> <li>• Supporting role of LMs not clearly understood and there are no definite guidelines on how this issues needs to be addressed</li> <li>• Limited support from provincial government</li> <li>• IDPs often not strategic – and merely stapling together with LM IDPs</li> </ul>
	STRENGTHS	WEAKNESSES
Local	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Strategically placed in relation to communities</li> <li>• Local residents form majority of the staff and thus more in tune to reality</li> <li>• Greater access to communities, and knowledge of issues at community level</li> <li>• Have a budget to operate and have multi-level support e.g. district agencies and some provincial departments</li> <li>• Some are stronger than DMs</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Poor human resources particularly in critical areas, and recruitment not easy as rural areas</li> <li>• Lack of equipment</li> <li>• Limited resources to address the needs of the communities, and limited control of their budget which is often provided by the district</li> <li>• Limited hands on support from provincial government</li> <li>• Weak leadership and communication</li> <li>• IDPs often driven by consultants, too complex and don't add sufficient value</li> <li>• Some in debt due to lack of recovery of fees/charges</li> </ul>

#### ACTIONS:

- Ensure that information between spheres of government is distributed without restrictions and involve provincial legislature in holding relevant parties accountable.
- Increase assistance to local government in areas, such as economic development, where the role of provincial government is not clearly defined and the implementation of the function is better suited to local municipalities.
- Clarify the role of specific district and local councils and review these duties on a periodic basis.
- Mediate agreements between district and local municipalities where there is disagreement about the division of service jurisdictions and funding.



- The provincial government needs to focus on the core functions such as health and education.
- Consider establishing single-tier municipalities in secondary cities and where districts are not authorised to provide water and sanitation.
- Promote cooperation and coordination between government and traditional authorities and ensure that the latter become involved in the IDP and LED processes.
- Identify and resolve specific coordination problems, instead of trying to find new structural arrangements, which is destabilising.
- Promote local government as a career path through measures such as a local government graduate-recruitment schemes and skills-development strategies for technical specialists.
- Work with municipalities to strengthen their human-resources and management capacity. For this approach to be effective, it is essential that municipalities are committed to improving their approach to recruitment, management and training. This could be encouraged through mechanisms such as the preparation of standard frameworks linking staffing needs to a municipality's core functions. Linking skills plans to the IDPs of municipalities could ensure that greater attention is given to capacity building.

### 12.5. HUMAN RESOURCE DEVELOPMENT AND MANAGEMENT

The constitution highlights the importance of human resource development in its provision of the principles of good governance, by stating that human potential must be maximised by means of sound human resource management and career development practices. The current system of human resource management in the public service is often perceived to be over-centralised, excessively bureaucratic and lack a focus on results. Human resource planning is typically considered weak and position as well promotion criteria over emphasise educational qualifications and seniority instead of experience in the particular requirements of the post. Performance management is also underdeveloped.

While formal barriers to advancement for previously disadvantaged groups have been removed, many levels of the public sector are still inaccessible to external applicants, and there is still much to achieve in terms of creating a genuine culture of diversity. In short, the sector's capacity to predict and meet its human resource requirements, and to manage its human resources effectively, is inadequate.

Human resource management within the public sector will need to undergo fundamental change in order to achieve the following critical objectives of the public service:

- the development of a service delivery-oriented, multi-skilled and multi-cultural workforce
- the continuing drive for efficiency and effectiveness
- increased delegation of day-to-day management decisions to line managers
- creating a flexible environment that takes into account both the operational needs of the organisation and the needs of employees

#### THE CODE OF GOVERNANCE PRINCIPLES FOR SOUTH AFRICA

The Code of Governance Principles for South Africa (King Committees on Governance, 2009<sup>iv</sup>) is an internationally renowned approach toward corporate governance, sustainability and general ethical conduct in organisations in South Africa. It advocates several principles that play a very important role in deterrence and prevention of corruption while promoting ethical and transparent conduct and leadership. Its recommendations apply to all entities regardless of the manner and form of incorporation or establishment and whether in the public, private or non-profit sectors. Topics that are addressed by the code include stakeholder management, reporting and disclosure, risk management, sustainability, performance and



assessment of directors and director development and dispute resolution. Although the code is traditionally applied more commonly in the private sector, it provides very useful guidance in leadership and general ethical conduct and could potentially play a prominent role in building more capable public institutions and in preventing unethical and corrupt activities.

High ranking officials in provincial, district and local government needs to be encouraged to apply the principles of this code to improve the ethical and practical standard by which the institution conducts its administrative functions.

### 12.5.1. MAKE THE PUBLIC SERVICE A CAREER OF CHOICE

Skills shortages and a lack of capacity pose a threat to the ability of government to deliver on its core functions and to achieve the objectives of eradicating poverty and reducing inequality. Government does not provide the same exposure than the private sector and are often less attractive to young graduates, especially high skilled professionals such as engineers. The public sector should achieve representation of society in its workforce whilst upholding high levels of skill. As such it is important that relevant and extensive experience forms a strict prerequisite for senior positions and that long-term, in-job training be provided to younger less experienced staff. Rapid promotions need to be limited and focus should shift to making mid-level posts more attractive and fulfilling.

#### ACTIONS:

- Ensure staff at all levels has the skills, authority and support they need to do their jobs. Develop a shared philosophy in public service and clear communication from senior levels downward in providing support on roles and requirements of particular positions.
- Assist national government in formulating a formal graduate recruitment scheme for the public service and a parallel scheme for local government with provision for mentoring, training and reflection.
- Use assessment mechanisms such as exams, group exercises and interviews to build confidence in recruitment systems.
- Ensure new recruits are supported by high-quality management and long-term training both centrally and within their department or municipalities.
- Use placement and secondments to enable staff to develop experience of working in other spheres of government.
- Make use of existing expertise particularly in government departments and universities to provide specialist training.
- Unlock the communication channels between the University of the North West and government institutions to hold the university to account on its mandate of knowledge sharing.
- Develop mentoring and peer-review mechanisms for senior managers.
- Create retention schemes in order to encourage specialised staff and professionals to remain in the province. This should be made a strategic priority as a number of skilled people migrate to other provinces.

### 12.5.2. DEVELOP TECHNICAL AND SPECIALIST PROFESSIONAL SKILLS

Shortage of technical and specialist skills in the public sector remains a challenge. This is especially pronounced in departments such as the provincial Department of Public Works, which operates in technical space and therefore demands very specific and professional expertise. Management skills and project management (project planning, finance, design and implementation) are also often difficult to attract, especially in rural institutions where retention of high level skills is particularly difficult.



### ACTIONS:

- Use apprenticeships and bursaries to ensure the reproduction of technical skills and to attract young engineers in-training.
- Use experienced professionals, State-Owned Enterprises (SOEs) and the private sector to mentor and train young graduates and trainees.
- Develop technical career paths that allow technical specialists to focus on project work and training less experienced staff.
- Ensure managers have sufficient technical knowledge and experience for the work they oversee.



### 12.6. MAINSTREAMING PUBLIC PARTICIPATION

Public participation is a principle that is accepted by all spheres of government in South Africa. Participation is one of the cornerstones of democracy and should hold equal benefits for politicians, public servants and civil society. One of the main rationales for the current structure of the institutional system and the resultant role of local government in public participation, is that decisions should ideally be made at the lowest possible level, and that services should be delivered

and managed locally where possible.

Despite positive achievements so-far, it is necessary for participatory systems to be strengthened. Ward committees need to be capacitated, and community priorities that are identified through participatory processes need to be addressed in order to rebuild trust between the public sector and civic society.

Apart from commercial farmers, and the limited retail sector in small towns, the formal private sector in rural areas is not extensive and its involvement in local governance is generally limited. Very little coordination also takes place between local municipalities and business chambers, despite the extensive involvement of these chambers in the local business environment. Relationships with the private sector are also challenging in instances where private companies, especially in the mining industry, are major employers and generators of economic wealth within a region. These companies bypass local government and go through provincial or national government structures to acquire the necessary licences, typically creating a rift between them and the local council in that area. This is especially disconcerting since mining companies have an active role to play in local communities and should become partners with local authority in assisting to enable local socio-economic development.

### PUBLIC PARTICIPATION

Community participation in integrated development planning is meant to take place through ward processes but a specific challenge in rural areas is that wards are very large, typically covering thousands of people and spanning many kilometers. Ward committees also regularly lack effectiveness due to limited resources or powers with which to operate, and instability in terms of political factionalism. Despite the increasing acceptance in the practice of community participation by the public sector, political contacts are typically more likely to be included than local businesses.

### ACTIONS:

- Focus IDPs on the core municipal priorities and needs.
- The IDP process needs to be led by the municipality and not outsourced to consultants.



- Ensure participation in IDPs so communities are engaged in prioritising and making trade-offs and aware of the challenges faced by the local council.
- As a component of public participation communities need to be made aware of decision taken by local government in regard to service delivery priorities and the rationale behind such decisions.
- Municipalities need to engage communities in their spaces. Elected representatives and administrative officials should be prepared to go to community organisations, housing associations or business associations.
- The business sector needs to become much more involved in IDP processes and relationships between business chambers and local government needs to be strengthened.

### **12.7. BUILDING A CAPABLE AND DEVELOPMENTAL STATE IMPLEMENTATION PLAN**

The implementation plan for building a capable and developmental state was developed to support the strategic objective set out in this chapter. The following key programmes were identified towards building a capable and developmental state (Refer to Annexure 1):

- Developmental State Promotion programme
- Interdepartmental and Intergovernmental Coordination Programme
- Public Sector Capacity Building Strengthen and Mainstream Public Participation and Active and Meaningful Participation of Stakeholders programme



### NOTES

---

- <sup>i</sup> Gumede, W. 2012. Delivering a Democratic Developmental State for South Africa. North West Planning Commission Research Round Table : Rustenburg.
- <sup>ii</sup> National Planning Commission. 2012. National Development Plan. <http://www.npconline.co.za/pebble.asp?relid=25> Date of Access: August, 2012.
- <sup>iii</sup> North West Public Service Commission, 2012. Report on inspections of courts: department of justice and constitutional development.
- <sup>iv</sup> King Committees on Governance. 2009. Code of Governance Principles for South Africa.

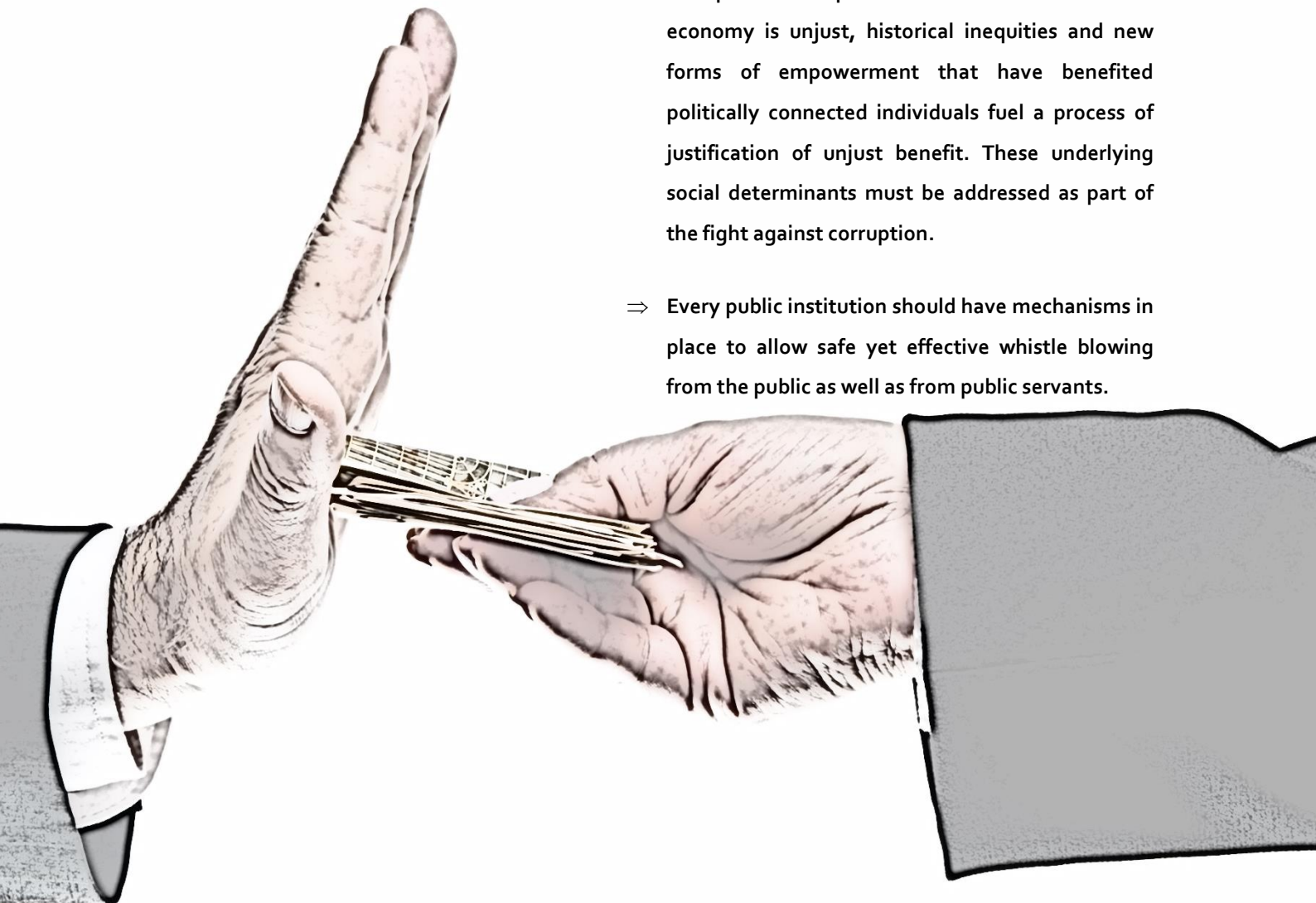




## 13. FIGHTING CORRUPTION

### KEY POINTS

- ⇒ Corruption affects the ability of government to deliver services, discourages investment and prevents business start-ups and business growth.
- ⇒ Corruption needs to be fought predominantly by means of deterrence, prevention and education. The public however plays a key role and through transparency in the public and private sector and by means of greater community awareness and access to information, society should hold the state to account on its developmental and service delivery mandate.
- ⇒ Strong social factors also play a key role in corruption. Perceptions that the structure of the economy is unjust, historical inequities and new forms of empowerment that have benefited politically connected individuals fuel a process of justification of unjust benefit. These underlying social determinants must be addressed as part of the fight against corruption.
- ⇒ Every public institution should have mechanisms in place to allow safe yet effective whistle blowing from the public as well as from public servants.



### **13.1. INTRODUCTION**

Good governance that is free from corruption is a critical element in the delivery of public services and in the partnership between all stakeholders involved in developing the North West province over the next two decades. Corruption has the potential to upset much of the good work that is done to encourage development and often affects the poor much more than the rest of society. Corruption however, is not only prevalent in the public sector, and often involves a combination of stakeholders. This means that achieving a system of governance and service delivery free from corruption is more than just a function of the public sector. Therefore it is necessary that the fight against corruption becomes one that is taken up by all sectors of society.

Fighting corruption has been identified as one of the priority areas towards future development in the North West province.

### **13.2. THE CURRENT PERSPECTIVE**

The Institute for Democracy in South-Africa (IDASA) concluded in September 2012 that the current level of corruption in the public sector is at its highest since 1994. The most common forms of corruption tend to be fraud and bribery. This is despite President Jacob Zuma expressing a strong stance against corruption in stating that it will not be tolerated in his cabinet. In the North West province, similar to the rest of South-Africa, corruption causes instability and discontent among the population, especially the poor, who are typically most affected. Corruption affects the ability of government to deliver services, discourages investment and prevents business start-ups and business growth.

A further challenge is that very few cases of corruption that are reported actually become finalised. Citizens are often frustrated with the lack of action taken by government officials to punish offenders for their actions and extended suspension periods, during which officials are still well paid, contribute to this frustration. It is also common for officials found guilty of corruption in one department to surface in another.

South-Africa has many agencies involved in the fight against corruption. While some countries have adopted a single anti-corruption body, a multiplicity of agencies provides the types of services that are essential in the South-African context and ensures a systemic resilience against interference.

In 2012, South-Africa saw the establishment of an independent, non-profit institution called Corruption Watch. This is an organisation which allows the public to blow the whistle on corruption.

#### **CORRUPTION WATCH AS MECHANISM FOR WHISTLE BLOWING**

Corruption Watch is a non-profit organisation launched in January 2012, which rely on the public to report corruption in order to hold leaders accountable for their actions.

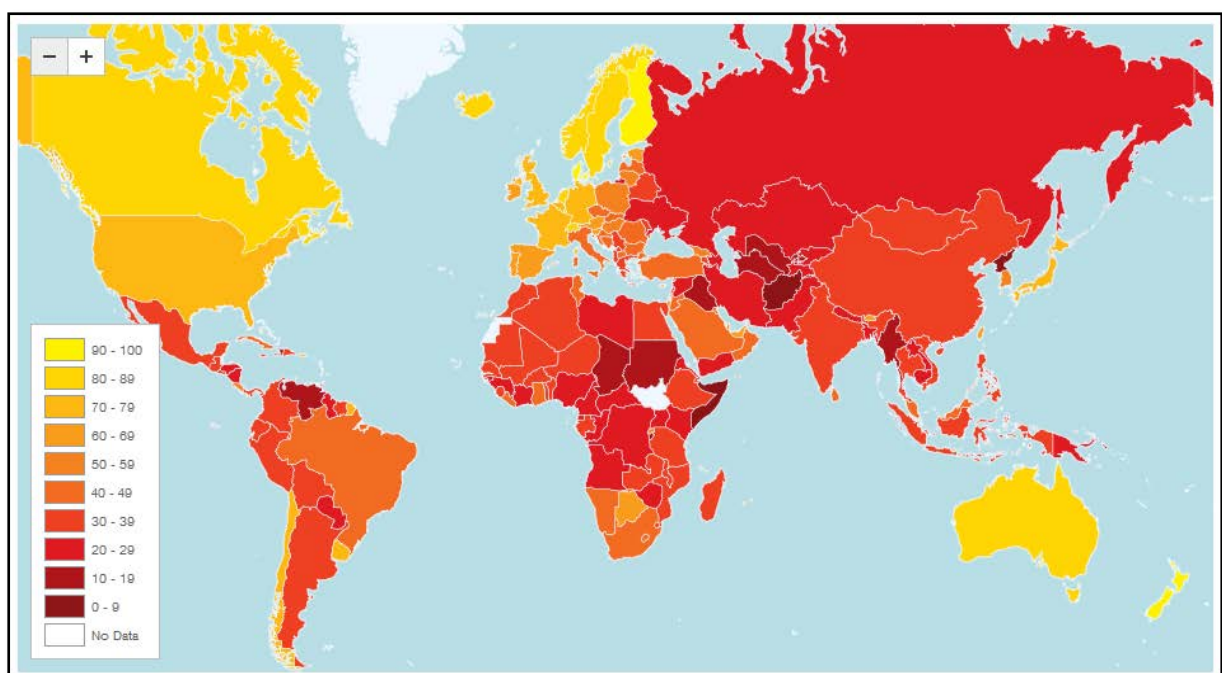
Corruption Watch provides a platform for reporting in order for anyone to safely share what they experience and observe in an effort to speak out against corruption. Reporting is done through a website, an SMS line, social media, email or post. Investigations are then launched on cases or alleged acts of corruption that have serious potential impact on members of society. The findings of such investigations are subsequently provided to authorities to take further action. The organisation also works with mainstream and community media to make sure that corruption is fully exposed.



The organisation also builds campaigns that mobilise people to take a stand against corruption. Such campaigns involve the public, community groups and other organisations such as trade unions. It is acknowledged that the best deterrent of corruption is to hold individuals accountable for any corrupt actions and to follow through with the punishment prescribed in the laws against corruption.

Although corruption is often hard to measure accurately, since most of it goes undetected or unreported, Transparency International annually releases a corruption perception index. This index scores and ranks countries based on how corrupt a country's public sector is perceived to be. It is a composite index drawing on corruption-related data collected by a variety of reputable institutions. The index is the most widely used indicator of corruption worldwide. The figure below provides an overview of the findings of the 2012 corruption perception index.

**Figure 13.1:** Corruption Perceptions Index 2012



Source: Transparency International, 2012<sup>1</sup>

According to the index, South-Africa ranked in the 69<sup>th</sup> position, out of a possible 176 countries, indicating that South-Africa is perceived to be 69<sup>th</sup> least corrupt. Although South-Africa compared very well to other BRICS countries (joint highest ranking with Brazil) seven other African countries ranked better than South-Africa. Also, South-Africa is moving backward in the ranking having occupied 54<sup>th</sup> place in 2010 and 64<sup>th</sup> place in 2011.

### 13.3. VISION 2030

In correcting the injustice that is brought about by corruption, the following vision provides the desired outcome of a joint effort during the following 18 years in this regard.

*By 2030 the North West province will comprise of both a population and a public service that have zero tolerance for corruption. Citizens will not offer bribes and have the confidence and knowledge to hold public and private officials to account. Citizens will also know which of their leaders have integrity and high ethical standards. Leaders in the different spheres of government and in the private sector will conduct themselves with integrity*



*and maintain high ethical standards. Anticorruption agencies should have the resources, independence from political influence, and powers to investigate corruption, and their investigations should be acted upon.*

*By 2030 the focus will have shifted from fighting corruption to increasing integrity, an aspect in which active citizenry will play a major part.*

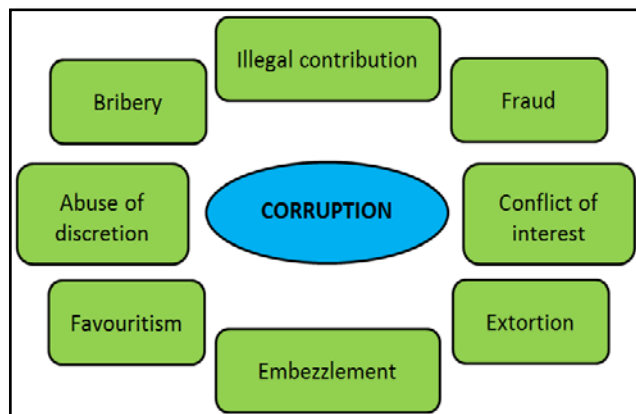
### 13.3.1. HOW TO ACHIEVE IT

Achieving the above-mentioned vision for 2030 will entail a joint effort from the North West provincial government, the various district and local governments as well as non-governmental organisations, private sector and civil society. Overcoming corruption at provincial level requires political will, sound institutions and an active citizenry that hold public officials accountable. In reaching the vision, therefore, several key priority areas have been identified:

- Building a resilient anti-corruption system
- Accountability and transparency

### 13.4. BUILDING A RESILIENT ANTI-CORRUPTION SYSTEM

Corruption frustrates society's ability to operate fairly and efficiently, and the state's ability to deliver on its development mandate. Corruption includes acts of theft of public resources by civil servants, embezzlement, illegal extraction of public resources, nepotism, favouritism, bribery, etc. It is therefore that corruption, although also prevalent in the private sector, manifest more prominently in the public sector. The impact of corruption in the public sector is also often more severe since it is much more likely to affect the poor, the uneducated and the marginalised. The most common outcomes of corruption in terms of the impact on development include:



- Hampered economic growth and reduced effectiveness in eradicating poverty
- Increases cost of services, especially for the poor
- Weakened democracy
- Social discontent and disorder
- Weakens the developmental ability of the public sector and the ability of the public sector to channel resources toward service delivery
- Reduces trust across society in government

Strong social factors also play a key role in corruption. Perceptions that the structure of the economy is unjust, historical inequities and new forms of empowerment that have benefited politically connected individuals fuel a process of justification of unjust benefit. These underlying social determinants must be addressed as part of the fight against corruption. Corruption needs to be fought on three fronts, namely deterrence, prevention and education. Deterrence helps people understand that they are likely to get caught and punished. Prevention is about systems (information, audit, etc.) that make it hard to engage in corrupt acts while the social dimensions of corruption need to be tackled by focusing on values, through education.



### PROMOTING PROFESSIONALISM IN THE PUBLIC SECTOR

The North West provincial government in combination with the municipalities included in its demarcation is not immune to the challenge and should all be encouraged to take up the fight to rid the public service of corruption. Corruption serves to undermine the effectiveness of public institutions and directly contradicts the principles underlying the spirit of Batho Pele or “people first”.

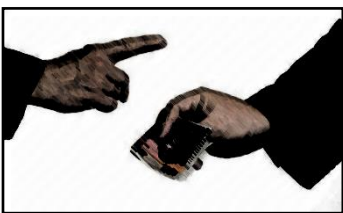
In this respect, the public must be able to report instances of corruption or unethical behaviour on the part of public servants without fear of victimisation or reprisal. Despite institutions that have been established to tackle this problem, such as the anti-corruption arm within the Public Service Commission, the Public Protector and the Auditor-General, local mechanisms need to be created for reporting on corruption or unethical behaviour. In addition to the above, a code of conduct for public servants is a vital tool in reinforcing a professional ethos. This Code of Conduct stipulates that public servants must not use their official positions for personal gain, but should always act in the interests of the public. It is further indicated that in the performance of their duties, public servants must:

- execute their duties in a professional and competent manner
- be honest and accountable in dealing with public funds
- strive to achieve the objectives of their institutions and the interests of the public
- promote sound, efficient, effective, transparent and accountable administration

### ACTIONS

- Restrictions on business interests of public officials at provincial, district and local government level need to be specifically refined, clearly stated and enforced accordingly.
- Provincial, district and local government should develop accountability frameworks that link the liability of individuals to their responsibilities.

#### 13.4.1. A SOCIETAL APPROACH TO FIGHTING CORRUPTION



Despite corruption commonly associated with the public sector, it is often the private sector that instigates corrupt activity, for example through paying bribes to government officials or for government contracts. There are also other incidences of corruption within the private sector such as price-fixing and collusion between businesses, as well as charging inflated rates for government contracts. When exposed, corruption is often investigated quietly and kept out of the public domain. Investigations

often lead to dismissal but rarely result in or include criminal prosecution.

The Code of Governance Principles for South Africa (King Committees on Governance, 2009<sup>ii</sup>) is an internationally renowned approach toward corporate governance, sustainability and general ethical conduct in organisations in South-Africa. It advocates several principles that play a very important role in deterrence and prevention of corruption while promoting ethical and transparent conduct and leadership. The code has been cited as the most effective summary of the best international practices in corporate governance and although compliance with this code is an obligation for companies listed on the Johannesburg Stock Exchange, many other large companies do not yet align their practices or their approach to ethical conduct with this code. Responsible corporate citizenship, which implies an ethical relationship between the company and the society in which it operates, is one of several key principles, particular to the private sector, on which the code is based. Additional topics that are covered by the code include stakeholder management, reporting



and disclosure, risk management, sustainability, performance and assessment of directors and director development and dispute resolution. The code could potentially play a prominent role in building more capable private institutions and in preventing unethical and corrupt activities.

### ACTIONS

- Efficient whistle-blowing mechanisms are required to facilitate the early detection of any violations so that corrective action can be taken. In this regard more should be done to inform the public about the available channels such as Corruption Watch. Every public institution should provide information about this organisation (in public areas) as well as its contact details.
- Codes of conduct need to be created for public institutions to guide the personal morality of public officials towards public service aims. Non-compliance with the code of conduct will need to be addressed.
- Create increased capacity for corruption investigations by providing increased funds to employ skilled personnel and sophisticated investigative techniques.
- Establish specialised teams of prosecutors and special courts to expedite the resolution of corruption cases.
- Political and administrative leadership needs to take the lead in attempts to improve public sector ethics.
- Develop and implement public education drivers to communicate the effect of corruption on the delivery of services.
- Advocate the relevance of the Code of Governance Principles for South-Africa 2009 among large private sector institutions as well as in local, district and provincial government.
- An obligation must be placed on the private sector to use the criminal justice system, not merely administrative sanctions, to deal with corrupt officials.
- An active civil society can fulfil a very constructive watchdog role provided the public is informed about government structures, legislation and regulations to perform their civic duties.
- A compulsory education programme on corruption needs to be introduced in the North West province. The programme should be aimed at institutions of higher learning and as induction for new employees in the private and public sectors. The educational programmes must clearly show the effects and the disadvantages of corruption.

### 13.5. ACCOUNTABILITY AND TRANSPARENCY

The National Development Plan states that transparency is an important element of public accountability. Dissatisfaction about lack of access to information on service delivery is prominent in public protests. Section 32 of the Constitution enshrines the right of access to information. The Batho Pele principles state that government should inform citizens about the services they are entitled to and government administration must be open and transparent. However in practice, the state has been poor at making information available timeously and in a form accessible to all citizens. Government officials are often reluctant to provide information when it is requested due to wilful neglect, lack of appreciation of the importance of the right, an institutional culture of risk aversion and/or secrecy and a lack of training.

#### PROMOTING TRANSPARENCY IN THE PUBLIC SECTOR

With regard to transparency in the public sector and in fostering an actively involved society, it should be noted that provincial government is required by legislation to provide full, accurate and recent information about the services they provide. In addition, provincial government should provide information regarding the following:





- staff numbers employed
- names and responsibilities of senior officials
- performance targets in respect of service delivery, financial savings and increased efficiency
- resources consumed
- sources of income
- targets for each year
- a name and contact number for further information

The aim of such information is to provide the public with key information which they are entitled to, and which will assist them in holding public servants accountable. This information should be readily available and should also be submitted to provincial legislatures to assist in oversight and scrutiny of executive activities. Provincial government needs to take the lead in fighting corruption, since the provincial legislature will likely play a key role in oversight at local level.

### ACTIONS

- According to the Promotion of Access to Information Act more “open data” (such as tender information, environmental impact assessments, mineral licenses, Social and Labour Plans) should be made available without request.
- Provide information on government procurement processes to allow increased opportunities for local SMMEs.
- Improve communication between public service providers (local or provincial government) and communities to the extent that communities are provided with all the relevant information on matters that affect their livelihoods. This is especially important in the prioritisation of certain activities at the cost of others. Communities are much more likely to accommodate service delivery shortfalls if they are aware that plans are in place to address the particular situation, even if those plans are not short term priority. Communities are also much more likely to become involved in developing its own solutions in partnership with government when a respectful and open relationship is maintained.

### 13.6. FIGHTING CORRUPTION IMPLEMENTATION PLAN

The fighting corruption implementation plan has been developed to support the strategic objective set out in this chapter. The role and responsibilities of various stakeholders and potential funding sources have been identified in the implementation plan.

The following key programmes have been identified in the fighting corruption implementation plan (Refer to Annexure 1):

- Anti-Corruption and Fraud Prevention
- Social Cohesion
- Moral Obligation





### NOTES

---

<sup>i</sup> Transparency International. 2012. Fighting Corruption Map. <http://www.transparency.org/> Date of Access: November, 2012.

<sup>ii</sup> King Committees on Governance. 2009. Code of Governance Principles for South Africa.





## 14. TRANSFORMING SOCIETY AND UNITING THE PROVINCE

### KEY POINTS

- ⇒ The values provided in the constitution and in the Bill of Responsibilities provide the basis for human dignity that should be taught to and accepted by each member of the provincial population.
- ⇒ Through sports, art and culture in the North West province, human wellbeing will be enhanced and stimulated and social cohesion will be promoted.
- ⇒ Every individual living in the North West province must realise his or her potential and role within society through active participation and leadership.
- ⇒ In building a society where opportunity is not defined by race, gender, class or religion, it is necessary to improve access to quality education, healthcare and basic services. In order to correct the imbalances of the past it remains necessary to implement and strengthen measures of redress.

### 14.1. INTRODUCTION

Social cohesion is the capacity of a society to ensure the well-being of all its members, minimising disparities, avoiding marginalisation and fostering a space where each individual part of a diverse society could feel at home and at peace. The underlying assumption of the process toward improved social cohesion is that the end result will be a society in which social integration has taken place and that the segregation caused by apartheid is substituted by a socially coherent society. To achieve such an outcome will depend on tolerance, civic education, values of human dignity, participation and cultural acceptance. In this regard the North West province faces a range of challenges not entirely unique to the rest of South-Africa.

### 14.2. THE CURRENT PERSPECTIVE

Despite some examples of social integration, communities in the North West province remain severely divided. This divide cuts across income and religious lines and due to historic policies also across racial, linguistic and spatial lines. Discrimination, especially against women in traditional settings, on the grounds of sexuality and against foreigners remains all too common. Opportunity also continues to be defined by race, gender and class and many rural individuals are imprisoned by the circumstances in which they are born into, especially in rural marginalised areas. These aspects contribute and reinforce the already significant unequal character the provincial economy.

Such inequality typically results in explicable discontent and distrust among stakeholders at the various ends of the spectrum and between communities and the public service. Examples of public discontent, as a result of the severe inequality combined with a lack of access to basic services, include the frequent public service protests; the recent national farm-worker strikes and most prominently, the events that occurred in Marikana during August 2012. Such event showcases the underlying social tension that is caused by a lack of socio-economic inclusion, economic inequality, lack of basic services and housing and deeply entrenched social divisions. More needs to be done by the public service, the private sector and labour representative organisations to ensure that such tragedy is never repeated and the wealth of the province also contribute to socio-economic inclusion, equal opportunities for all and social stability and unity among a diverse population.

#### 14.2.1. VISION 2030

*By 2030, all citizens of the North West province will be more aware of the things they have in common and appreciate each other for differences. Their experiences will progressively cut across the divisions of race, gender, space and class. The people of the province will be more accepting of others' multiple identities, their background, their belief and their culture. In the North West province there will be:*

- *Broad-based knowledge about and support for a set of values shared by all South-Africans including the values contained in the Constitution.*
- *An inclusive society and economy, which requires addressing the factors that sustain unequal opportunity. This will be done through building capabilities and redressing the wrongs of the past.*
- *Increased interaction between individuals from different social and racial groups. Strong leadership across society and a mobilised, active and responsible citizenry.*

#### 14.2.2. HOW TO ACHIEVE IT

Achieving this vision will require that everyone in the North West province accept the responsibility of adopting and promoting constitutional values, accommodating others, and rejecting discrimination based on race, gender, class or religion. In this regard both public and private sector play critical roles. While the public sector needs to ensure effective and equitable basic service delivery and developmental governance, the



private sector needs to accept the responsibility of fostering sustainable and responsible social development and integration. Communities also need to improve its efforts toward integration through increased interaction across racial and cultural lines, more active citizenry and by individuals becoming more involved in sports, arts, and culture and community service. Four main priority areas for social cohesion can therefore be identified:

- foster and promote values of human dignity
- opportunities, inclusion and redress
- active citizenry toward a social compact
- promote sports art and culture as an integral part of social cohesion

Residents of the North West should be proud citizens of the province and of South-Africa without discriminating against "others" based on race, gender, language origin or religion.

### 14.3. FOSTER AND PROMOTE VALUES OF HUMAN DIGNITY

For many years South-Africa was known to be divided as an unequal society. In 1994 the country emerged from this long history in which race, ethnicity and culture were used to exclude and discriminate against the majority of the population. Unfortunately the end of apartheid did not mean the end of the racial, political, social, economic and cultural divide. The effects thereof are still evident in the high levels of poverty and inequality throughout the country and throughout the province. The social composition of the national and provincial population lacks cohesion.

There are numerous issues that threaten social cohesion in the democratic system. Slow economic growth and transformation, unemployment, poverty, unequal access to services, discrimination, xenophobia and corruption are but to name some of the issues that communities are faced with. As a result of these issues not being addressed adequately, communities are becoming increasingly demoralised and dissatisfied. As the recent turmoil in Marikana has proven, if these challenges in communities are left unaddressed, it poses a threat to the long-term stability as well as economic growth prospects of the province. To counter this, government, public and private institutions along with all the citizens of the diverse provincial society must work together to build an inclusive, just and cohesive society in which not just a privileged few, but all members of society live in peace and prosper together. All human societies require sets of shared values, norms, visions and goals to secure co-operation and foster bonds of belonging.



Valuing and respecting all human beings is the foundation of social solidarity. To ensure social cohesion in the North West province the following principals needs to be included in all planning and development efforts:

- constitutional democracy
- human rights and equality
- non-racialism, non-tribalism and non-sexism
- unity in diversity
- inclusivity and social justice
- redress and transformation
- intergroup and community co-operation
- social solidarity
- active and participatory citizenship
- civic responsibility



Equally important in fostering values of human dignity is the importance of family in shaping independent, productive and responsible people, and the role of schools in promoting constitutional values. Schools can foster common values across language, culture, religion, race, class and space. Schools should help to produce inquiring minds – people who are empowered to question and challenge prejudice whenever and wherever they encounter it. It is therefore important that children are empowered to:

- appreciate diversity through respect and tolerance
- cope in an ever-changing environment
- understand that rights come with responsibility
- help transform the national character of South-Africa

To foster these values effectively, all teachers must integrate them in their everyday practice and interactions with colleagues, learners, the school management team and parents.

## ACTIONS

- Improving public services and spaces as well as building integrated housing and sport facilities in communities to ensure sharing of common spaces across race and class.
- Conduct comprehensive analyses and research on the challenges facing families in the North West province for which interventions must then be developed accordingly.
- All schools should use the Constitution of South-Africa and the Bill of Responsibilities to develop and implement a school value policy. At school assemblies the preamble of the constitution is to be read in the language of choice. The Bill of Responsibilities to be used at schools and prominently displayed in each work place.
- Develop and promote sustained campaigns against racism, sexism, homophobia and xenophobia.
- Promote gender equality throughout the province, especially in local government and in areas that are subject to traditional authority.
- Encourage public and other research institutions such as the NWU to conduct regular cross-sectorial research and monitoring into social cohesion developments and trends.

Figure 14.1: Bill of Responsibilities (Summary)

My responsibility	What it means
My responsibility in ensuring the right to equality	Treat every person equally and fairly, and do not discriminate unfairly.
My responsibility in ensuring the right to human dignity	Treat people with reverence, respect and dignity.
My responsibility in ensuring the right to life	Sanctity of human life, protect and defend my life and that of others.
My responsibility in ensuring the right to family or parental care	Honour, respect and help my parents, and my family.
My responsibility in ensuring the right to education	Attend school regularly, to learn, and to work hard, cooperate with and respect teachers and fellow learners.
My responsibility in ensuring the right to work	Work hard and do our best in everything we do. Living a good and successful life involves hard work, and anything worthwhile only comes with hard work.
My responsibility in ensuring the right to freedom and security of the person	Solving any conflict in a peaceful manner, no bullying.
My responsibility in ensuring the right to own property	Not to take what does not belong to me without permission, giving generously when able to.
My responsibility in ensuring the right to freedom of religion, belief and opinion	Respect the beliefs including religious beliefs and opinions of others.
My responsibility in ensuring the right to live in a safe environment	Conserve and preserve the natural environment, protect animal and plant-life, prevent pollution and no littering.
My responsibility in ensuring the right to citizenship	Obedying the laws of our country, ensuring that others do so as well, and contributing in every possible way to making South Africa a great country.
My responsibility in ensuring the right to freedom of expression	No spreading of lies, and to ensure others are not insulted or have their feelings hurt.

Source: NDP, 2012

## 14.4. OPPORTUNITIES, INCLUSION AND REDRESS

Success in life should depend on people's choices, effort and talents, never on their circumstances at birth. These circumstances differ considerably in the North West province where Apartheid policies have created an economic and spatial structure in which the majority of the population remains disadvantaged. The provincial economies primary sectors also contribute to social imbalances by means of poor worker-employer



relationships. This plan aims to propose actions that will assist in alleviating such unfair socio-economic structure and to achieve greater inclusion, which is a key prerequisite for achieving improved social cohesion.

The task of creating equal opportunities and building capabilities should begin with ensuring that everyone has access to quality basic services (see section 4), quality education and training (section 7) and quality health care (see section 10). The Employment Equity Act of 1998, the Skills Development Act of 1998, the Broad Based Economic Empowerment Act of 2003 and Land Reform policies also play important roles in redressing the imbalances and injustices of the past. Although the mechanisms of redress is a function of national government, stakeholders in the province (including private sector) need to accept and implement the elements of these acts in order to ensure that opportunities are equalised, capabilities are expanded and that economic inclusion occurs.

Improving social and economic inclusion and promoting equal opportunities and redress, the provincial development plan further addresses the following matters:

- reversing apartheid spatial policies and addressing human settlements (section 6)
- strengthening social security such that no individual lives below a minimum standard of living (see chapter 9)
- growing the economy and employment so that poverty is eradicated (section 3)
- rural and agricultural development and basic services provision (section 5)

### 14.5. ACTIVE CITIZENRY TOWARD A SOCIAL COMPACT

In line with the motto in South-Africa's coat of arms, ("!Ke e: /Karra //Ke" – United in our diversity) the diversity of the province should be considered an asset and not a liability, in fostering unity across society. As such, it is important that every person that lives in the province, need to take responsibility for participating in daily interaction toward making such a motto a reality and for contributing to creating a better future for everyone.

A key requirement in such an effort is active citizenry, community involvement and the promotion of integrity and leadership, which is by no means restricted to the public sector. Leadership does not refer to one person, or even a tight collective of people. It applies in every aspect of life. In particular, community leaders and public figures should demonstrate leadership qualities that include:

- The ability to lead by example and to follow rules that apply to everyone.
- Honesty, integrity and trustworthiness.
- The capacity to innovate, manage change, build enough support to drive an "essential" and not necessarily popular agenda.
- The ability to listen, especially to those with a different opinion, perspective and or priorities. Leaders should be able to create conditions that allow everyone to communicate in open dialogue. This requires tolerance, patience, openness to giving and receiving criticism, a willingness to admit mistakes, and an ability to re-examine one's own presuppositions.
- Ability to promote meaningful inclusion, helping to overcome barriers associated with class, ethnicity, gender, disability and other factors of exclusion. Leaders must seek to empower the otherwise powerless, building bridges to other sectors of society, including business, civil society, and faith-based communities, as well as to all levels of government.

Apart from the objective of fostering leadership principles across society, citizen participation remains critically important. Although such principle is already a central focus at local government level, more needs





to be done to formalise the findings of community interaction, reach a greater segment of society and build trust and confidence that participation will yield results. Effective community participation can shape the developmental process and hold government accountable for the services it is required to deliver. Information from interaction with communities can also prove very useful to all development actors (NGOs, public and private sectors) in formulating appropriate development strategies and plans and addressing challenges at a local level more accurately.

Achieving an active citizenry where participants strive toward principles of leadership around a common vision empowers people and places them at the centre of development. It can act as a catalyst for change and contribute toward building social cohesion between diverse people working together.

### ACTIONS

- All persons living in the province must learn at least one local African language (preferably Setswana). Business must encourage and reward employees accomplishing this target.
- Promote and improve citizen participation in forums such as IDP's, Ward Committees, School Governing Boards and Community Policing Forums.
- Increase parent representation on school governing bodies.
- Recognise and award organisations and communities who contribute to social cohesion in the province.
- Promote the principles of leadership in schools and in communities.
- Improve community consultation procedures by recording information better and making such information available in IDP's.
- Encourage public officials to lead by example through honesty, integrity and trustworthiness.

### FOSTERING A SOCIAL COMPACT

A social compact represents an agreement among individual people in a society or between the people and their government that outlines the rights and duties of each party while building national solidarity. There is now an urgent need to craft a social contract that will enable the North West province to achieve higher growth and employment, increase investment and savings. With a social contract, all stakeholders buy into a clearly articulated vision; have a shared analysis of constraints and are committed to finding solutions; and parties understand the objective of the social compact. The social compact should offer attractive benefits to each party and all parties should believe that the necessary sacrifices are relatively equitably shared amongst all participants.

A social contract would contribute substantially to providing the political, economic and social conditions for long-term development. The resultant accord must enjoy wide public support. It is also important to build confidence in the process of social compacts by making initial gains to balance sacrifices required and to audit and report on progress and shortcomings. For example even as negotiations continue government should invest more on social and economic infrastructure and deliver an expanding social wage to the poor, business should take a long-term perspective by investing more, and increasing employment and training. Labour has to recognise that some wage moderation is required and efforts to raise productivity are essential (NDP, 2012<sup>1</sup>).





## **14.6. PROMOTE SPORTS, ART AND CULTURE**

Through sports, art and culture in the North West province, human wellbeing will be enhanced and stimulated. Sports and recreational activities improve the physical health of people while encouraging social interaction between individuals or groups. Art supports and encourages the production of stories that facilitate healing, nation building and dialogue.

### **14.6.1. PROMOTE SPORT IN SCHOOLS AND COMMUNITIES**

All communities and schools should have access to sports facilities despite their location or income group. The majority of the time, rural communities and schools do not enjoy the same advantages of sufficiently provided sport facilities than their counter part in urban areas. There is a lack of funding for these facilities combined with the fact that municipalities do not view the provision thereof as priority. Sporting facilities does not generate any revenue for local governments and requires maintenance. For these reasons it is then rather viewed as a burden by municipalities than a positive contribution to the community. To reduce maintenance costs, municipalities will often fence the facilities off and only make them available for sporting events. This defeats the point of promoting sports in a community through adequate provision of facilities. It is important to create awareness among local authorities regarding the importance of sport and recreational facilities for the wellbeing of the communities they serve.

Apartheid resulted in segregated spatial development. Poor disadvantaged communities were located the furthest away from job opportunities and amenities such as sport facilities. This has prohibited people living in these areas to take part in sport. A new approach needs to be established where sporting and recreational facilities are developed in previously disadvantaged areas.

#### **ACTIONS**

- All schools must develop and maintain infrastructure for at least two types of sport.
- All schools should be supported to participate in organised sports at local, district, provincial and national levels. Encourage the formation of amateur leagues.
- Sport facilities and infrastructure does not need expensive buildings, but recreational environments with basic facilities that can function as community hubs.
- Communities should play an active part in promoting sport and recreation. Communities should organise sporting events, leagues, championships and generally look after the sports facilities once they are installed or developed.
- Daily interactions on an equal basis build social cohesion and common understanding. These interactions will be promoted effectively when people share more public spaces. Sport teaches discipline; it is an integral component of a healthy lifestyle and enables people to share common space.
- Built community gyms and sporting facilities in low-income areas and ensure accessibility to the facilities. Local authorities can promote exercise by ensuring that urban roads have proper pavements, developing cycle lanes and installing traffic-calming measures.
- Support and develop capacity building programmes. Improve maintenance of sporting facilities on local level and address backlog of facilities in the province especially in rural areas
- Reinforce and implement high performance programmes.
- Organise and facilitate the diversification of multi-coded facilities.
- Monitor and evaluate access to equal participation in respect of programmes, facility provision and utilisation.
- Promote training in sport administration, coaching, referees, first aid, events management and life skills.



- Incentivising the production and distribution of all art forms that facilitate nation building and social dialogue.

### 14.6.2. SUPPORT FOR ART AND CULTURE

Art and culture goes beyond visual and emotional stimulation, it also has economic advantages and potential. The creative arts sector should be supported by government and by the private sector as a sector that has a great potential for growth and job creation. The NDP emphasises the role of art in facilitating dialogue for nation building and so should the province. Arts and culture must be utilised to tell the story of the province and its people.

There is currently a lack of art subjects on offer in schools with a shortage of art teachers. The provincial Department of Sport, Arts and Culture have various programmes in place to promote art throughout the province. Amongst others they have arranged exhibitions for under exposed artists. Such exhibitions in rural areas do not attract a lot of attention and thus they have started the process of taking art to the urban and even metropolitan areas. This provides artist with wonderful exposure and opportunities. Such initiatives should continue to be implemented and promoted.



#### THE POTENTIAL OF THE PERFORMING ARTS INDUSTRY

The performing arts have a rich and vibrant tradition in South-Africa and in the North West. Having once been a popular channel for social and political commentary it continues to reflect issues of relevance in a democratic society. A large share of the output of this sector however, apart from the social commentary aspect, is currently aimed primarily at entertainment. This entertainment is provided through a range of activities, delivered by a diverse set of organisations and individuals. Mediums for the delivery and presentation of performing arts include for instance: theatres, television and radio, exhibitions, festivals, carnivals, opera houses, pubs and restaurants, etc. The activities or industries that are included in what is understood to be performing arts are broadly: theatre, dance and music.

**Theatre** potentially comprise of drama performances, plays, classical theatre, stand-up comedy, poetry, story-telling, cabaret, political and social satire, magic shows, musicals and music performances. Additional inputs that are involved with theatre include for instance costume design and manufacturing, set and stage decoration and construction, lighting and sound, marketing, and catering.

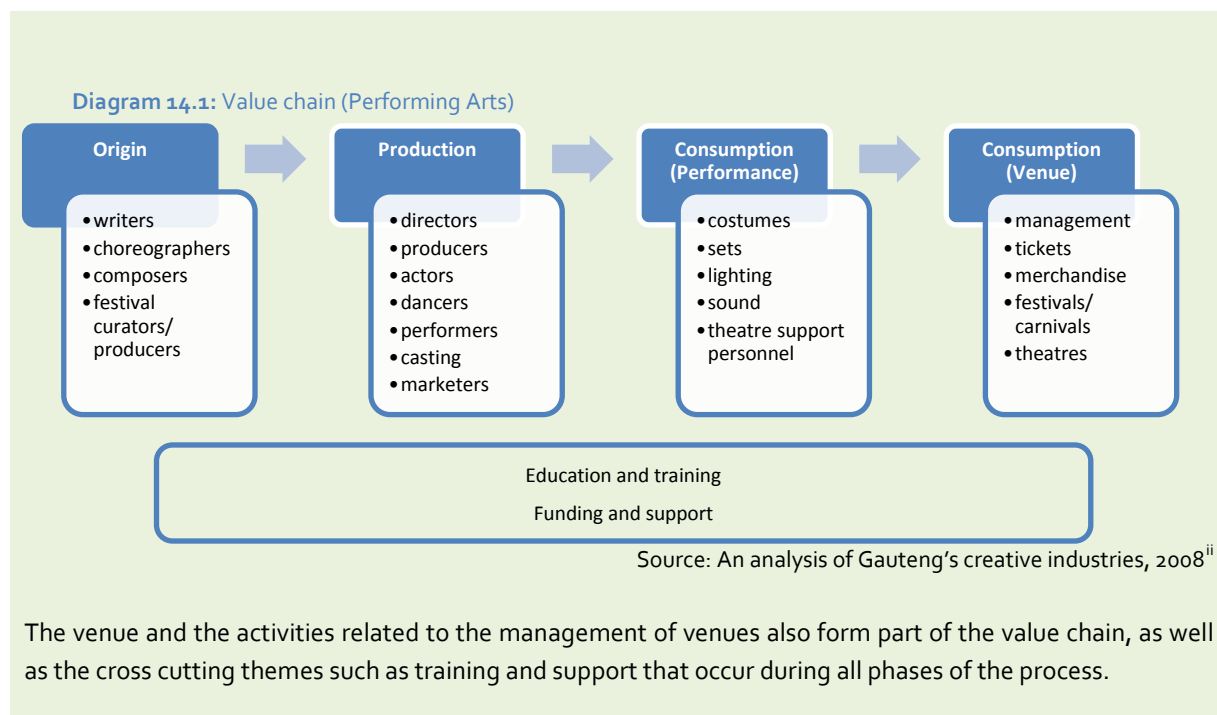
**Dance** predominantly comprise of the various genres such as contemporary, Latin, ballroom, African traditional, Afro-fusion, Hip-Hop, Ballet and folk. Additional inputs include music, equipment, costume design and manufacturing, set and stage design and construction, lighting and sound, and marketing.

**Music** that form part of the performing arts sector include opera, musical theatre, choir performances, orchestras and live music performances by solo artist or group/band.

The following diagram illustrates the value chain of the performing arts sector that allows for the creation of a consumable product.

Accordingly, from its origin, ideas are transformed into a product that can be consumed. This is done by the directors, producers, actors, performers and others. The product is then presented in the form of live performance where role-players in the production phase are also involved.





Heritage sites all across the province needs to be revitalised to expose the people of the province to their history, heritage and culture. The maintenance and operation of museums will also contribute towards the cultural experience of the province. Adequate financing for the revitalising of heritage sites and maintenance and operations of museums must be made available.

Library services are part of the mandate of the Department of Sports, Arts and Culture. Libraries offer such an important service to the people in the province. Libraries are a gateway to information in the province through access to computers and the internet. Such services have proved very popular in rural areas, but yet many libraries still lacks this service to the surrounding communities. Capacity is also often a problem with many libraries or facilities not having enough computers with internet access to keep up with demand. Mobile libraries are among other initiatives through which the department aims to bridge the information gap in the province.

As a province it needs to be emphasised that what we do with our cultures is of crucial importance to the achievement of reconciliation on a societal level. Culture has been used as a tool for good in human relations or a weapon for harm. In those episodes of modern human history when one group of people has enslaved or colonised another, culture was often used for the latter purpose, with terrible consequences. However though a progressive approach toward culture, often delivered through media such as television, radio, film and print, much can be achieved toward fostering social cohesion in accordance with the constitution. It plays a critical role in promoting non-racialism, non-sexism and educating the public in a demographic and inclusive philosophy. For this, and other reasons, culture demands attention in the North West province.

## ACTIONS

- Revitalise arts and culture in schools. Expose learners to history, heritage and culture.
- Promote the creative and cultural industries to contribute substantially to small business development, job creation, and urban development and renewal in the North West province.
- Providing financial and ICT support to artists to enable the creation of works expressing provincial creativity, while opening space for vibrant debate.
- Facilitate the mobilisation of resources in support of art development programmes.



- Incentivising commercial distribution networks to distribute and / or host art. Continue taking art from artists in the province to urban areas and exhibit their work for them.
- Develop cultural heritage maintenance plans – linked to national and local plans (monitoring).
- Promote cultural tourism which has proven to have great potential in the province.
- Develop and maintain a database of museums and heritage sites.
- Establish new libraries and satellite or mobile library services. Increase the number of mobile libraries in the province to reach rural areas.
- Provide infrastructure to support the use of ICT in community libraries.
- Create toy libraries to assist in Early Childhood Development (ECD).
- Increase the profile and use of community and institutional libraries through reading awareness and library.



### NOTES

<sup>i</sup> National Planning Commission. 2012. National Development Plan. <http://www.npconline.co.za/pebble.asp?relid=25> Date of Access: August, 2012.

<sup>ii</sup> Gauteng Department of Sports, Arts, Culture and Recreation. 2008. An analysis of Gauteng's creative industries. <http://www.britishcouncil.org/files/Low%20resolution%20pdfs/Methodology%20with%20all%20sectors/Methodology%20low%20all%20sectors%20spreads.pdf>

